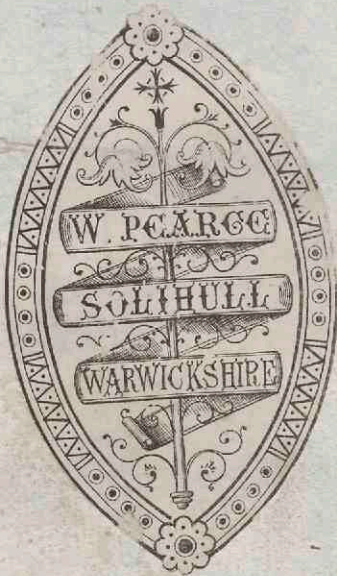




**The compleat horse-man and expert ferrier : in two bookes,
the first shewing the best manner of breeding good horses ...
the second, directing the most exact and approved maner how
to know and cure all maladies and diseases in horses ...**

<https://hdl.handle.net/1874/33778>



Veiling Sothely London 1979
(Via N. Israel)

Salte James Randall Esq

St. Louis, Missouri

Bibliotheek der
Rijksuniversiteit te Utrecht
Afd. Diergeneeskunde

*Gustavus Adolphus
King of Sweden*



engraved by Peter Stone

v. p. D. 421 09A 609b

THE COMPLEAT
H O R S E - M A N,
AND EXPERT
F E R R I E R.

In two Bookes.

The first, shewing the best manner of breeding good Horses, with their choice, nature, riding and dieting, as well for Running as Hunting, and how the Rider ought to behave himselfe in the Breaking and Riding of Colts; as also teaching the Groome and Keeper his true office, touching the Horses and Colts committed to his charge; and prescribing the best maner how a perfect Stable ought to be scituated and made, not heretofore so fully described by any.

The second, directing the most exact and approved maner how to know and cure all Maladies and Diseases in Horses: a worke containing the secrets and best skill belonging either to Ferrier or Horse-Leach: the Cures placed Alphabetically; with hundreds of Medicines never before imprinted in any Authour.

Published at the earnest request of sundry Noble and Worthy Gentlemen, for the generall good and benefit of the Nation.

By *Thomas de Grey*, Esquire.

The Second Edition corrected, with some Additions.

L O N D O N,

Printed for *Thomas Harper* and *Nicholas Bassell*, 1651.



T O
THE RIGHT HONORABLE,
F A M E S,
MARQUESSE HAMILTON,

Earle of *Arran and Cambridge*, Baron of *Even, Aberbroth,* and *Ennerdale*, Master of the Horse to his Majesty, Knight of the Honorable Order of the Garter, and one of his Majesties most honorable privy Councill.

My Lord:



O have presented this piece of Horsemanship to any other hand then Yours, had been very improper; as well in regard of the place your Lordship beares, as of my respects to your Noble Person.

Heere is a Subject (My Lord) worthy of your consideration, and the employments of your thoughts even serious; for in this most generous Creature, next unto

Man, consisteth the pleasure, honour, and defence of a most flourishing Kingdome.

I have given part of my Youth to the investigation of this beautifull and usefull Creature; I have searched many Nations for my better information; and albeit I have found some Climates more Fortunate then this of Ours, in the production of a happy Shape to this Creature, for the most part our Horses not being drawne out with such delicate Lineaments, nevertheless some of them, I have (where care and diligence have been used in the Breed) of most absolute, and perfect shape; and whereas frequently, the Barbary Jennet, Turke and Neapolitan Courser, are cried up for their beauties, yet as in some Shapes they excell, so in some other they may bee found defective.

But if wee regard the Spirit, Vigour, and doing of a Horse, no Nation, or Soyle, produceth a more Active, then this our Island of Great Brittain, as hath been well experienced by many Noble and memorable Services.

Unto which if wee adde a due observation in our Breed, both on the one side of the Stallion or Sire, and the Damme, our lost glory will be soone recovered.

But since the laying aside of the great Saddle and Cannon, and neglect of the Horse of Menage, since the applying our Breed onely to Racing, or (as I may better say) in furnishing our selves with Horses of speed to runne away from our Enemy, the most Ancient Honour of Horse-manship peculiar to this our Kingdome, and for which all other Nations highly esteemed us, is now almost Vanished and lost; insomuch as were wee pressed with thoughts of defence (from which the most prudent and watchfull Eye of Heaven guards us) wee should bee forced (I write this in blushes) to pull Horses from the Coach, and Cart, to fill up our Troopes.

Let it therefore bee recorded, (my Noble Lord) that whilst
you

you were Master of the Horse to his Majesty, an exact observation was established throughout this whole Kingdome, for the due breeding of serviceable Horses; to the furtherance of which most Noble designe, if these my Observations shall any way conduce, I shall blesse my Pen that it ever waded in such a Subject; professing my selfe to owe unto my Countrey all I have, and to it my Labours as a most loyall Subject and true Patriot, I most humbly offer.

And my good Lord, these Observations gathered in my Youth, I was advised by some Noble Friends (though now old) to publish for the generall good of this our Kingdome: Otherwise for my owne part I should have rather suppressed them, as not being now so fit a Subject for mee to treat off, but the Publique good hath over swayed mee. wherfore with these Oblations I conclude, Kissing your Lordships Handis, and shall ever professe my selfe,

H. T.

Your Lordships

Most humble

Servant,

THOMAS DE LA GREY.

The



The Printer to the Reader.

Courteous Reader, the Learned Author of this Elaborate Peece of Horse-manship and Ferriery did promise (as thou mayest see in his Preface to the Reader) that when this Booke should come to the Second Edition, hee would then adde a great deale more to the same worke; the which (to my knowledge) hee had accomplished. But Death preventing him before I got them into my hands, they are (among other things) most of them as yet detained: But doubt not, the next Impression, thou shalt bee sure to have them, as I am absolutely promised. This I thought good to give thee notice of. Farewell.

T. H.





To the Reader.



When I doe consider (*benevolent Reader*) the inconvenience whereinto that Man is plunged, who brings himselfe upon the publique Stage of promulgating his Bookes in Print, bee the subject never so laudable, and the Author no lesse cautelous and sufficient, endeavouring with all dilligence to prevent the brand of a black coale: nevertheless all industry applyed, he shall not passe without obloquy and aspersion.

This very consideration hath so affrighted and deterred me, that albeit I have had many great motives exciting me to make a tender of the Love, Duty, and Service I beare to my Countrey; yet when I doe contemplate the many censures I must undergoe, I have been evermore disheartned as well from beginning, as going forwards in this my desired purpose. Notwithstanding partly through the respect I beare to my Countries profit and honour, and partly by means of the importunity of many my right noble and generous friends, who have been eye-witnesse to sundry of my Cures, and those not a few uncouth and rare: I have adventured even now in my declining dayes, to leave this Worke as a Monument to ensuing times, no whit doubting, but that the judicious will friendly accept thereof; but as

for the malevolent and ignorant, I am most confident that the quills they shall dart at me, cannot go as from a Porcupine, and therefore will doe me the lesse hurt or damage.

I therefore am bold to put into thy hand this poore Worke of mine, which I have digested into two Books: In the first, I lay thee downe rudiments how thou mayest breed Horses to thy best advantage and liking; which albeit they may appeare unto thee to bee recent and unknowne, yet if thou wilt be pleased to put them in ure, and make triall (not digressing from my principles) thou wilt (I doe assure me) bee so farre from disliking them, as never hereafter to swerve or dissent from them. For if we shall seriously ruminare in how high esteeme that man is, who is owner and possessor of good Horses, how much commended, how much respected, how much talked of, and how well proffered for them: but when he shall bee known to bee a breeder of such good Horses, will not his *encomiums* bee the greater? but when together with these himselfe shall be knowne to be exquisite in Horsmanship, wherby to cause his Horse to shew himselfe in his Pace, Menage, and all other his Postures like as well becomes a right good Horse, perfectly mouthed, delicately borne, obedient to the hand, and to answer the Switch and Spur, will not (I say) that Gentleman be highly commended, and have more eyes upon him as he passeth along, than are commonly cast upon a Comet, or the Sun Eclipsed? yes undoubtedly. For if wee doe but note when a handsome Horse passeth along, wee may observe the people not onely gaze upon him as hee commeth towards and against them, but to turne themselves and
looke

looke after him so long time as hee continueth within their view and sight: Mans love to the Horſe is generally ſo great.

Sithence then the Horſe is a creature ſo generous, and therefore ſo much liked and beloved of all, in my poore judgement, it ſhould ſuit very well with every Gentleman of worth, ranke, and qualitie, to endeavour (if not to breed, yet at leaſt) to bee maſters of ſuch Horſes (which hee muſt keepe) that ſhall be truly handſome and comely, rightly bred, of good colour, cleane ſhape, well marked, and ſingularly well ridden and made, and ſo he ſhall the better advance his honour and reputation.

Having now bred, or otherwiſe by thy diligent endeavours attained unto ſuch Horſes as bee truly good, and for thy turne; the ſecond thing to be thought of, is, if they be not already made unto thy hand as thou deſireſt to have them, that thou then do procure ſuch a Rider, who is knowne to be a maſter of his Art, or otherwiſe thou wilt be much deceived, and far to ſeek of enjoying thy wiſhed deſires, and therefore I have given thee inſtructions how to make thy choice of ſuch a man, whereby thou ſhalt not be wronged in thy expectation, nor thy Horſe marred in his firſt making and handling. Neither have I taken upon mee to teach him his Art, (for that were a thing very impertinent) but thoſe documents which I have ſet thee downe muſt ſerve onely to ſhew thee how thou ſhouldeſt ſoon find whether the Rider may be for thy turn or not.

The third thing which thou art to take to thy conſideration, is, the good or harm that may come unto thee by the choice thou makeſt of thy Groome, or Keeper,

who may either through his ignorance, or inconsideration, soon make him unfit both for thy own use, or any mans else: out of which reason I have depainted thee a Groom in his lively colours, and if his conditions and qualities shall bee otherwise than what I have delineated, assure thy selfe thou doest runne a manifest hazard of marring that Horse thou didst hope should have been to thy hearts desire. And forasmuch as it is a matter very much praise-worthy to bee a Master of good Horses, to have them made perfect and ready, to have such Riders, Keepers, and Groomes, as be very perite in their faculties; yet if thy Stable be not every way fitting and correspondent, much disprofit and inconvenience may therby soon redound to thy Horse. I have therefore prescribed thee the means how thou mayest have a perfect and good Stable, with all commodities and accoutrements thereunto belonging: and therefore if thou wilt be pleased to make use of these my rudiments, and punctually observe these my grounds and principles, assure thy selfe thou wilt in short time aspire to that which will be thy honour and renown.

And to the end thou maiest the more perfectly and easily understand the full drift and sum of this my first Booke, I will here give unto thee an Epitome of it in a few lines, which may do thee much pleasure in the perusal thereof.

In the Introduction, I shew thee how needfull a creature the Horse is beyond all others, and what admirable things Horses in former times have perpetrated and done, whereof I produce thee instances of the famous acts of sundry brave and generous Horses, whose love to their Masters have been so great, as hardly to bee credited,

ted, if ancient Histories, and Annals of good integrity, had not engraven them in the memory of never-dying posteritie. We read of *Bucephalus*, what he did for the good, life, and safety of his Master; of the Horse of *Dionysius*, with what undaunted courage he comported himselfe in battell for the relief and succor of his Lord; it is recorded also of the Horse of *Antiochus*, what ill successesse befell *Centurettus*, who when he had slain *Antiochus*, would needes back the Horse of his slain Master. It is also noted what inly love *Nicomedes* his Horse bare to his Lord and Master, when after his death of meer grief famished himselfe. We read of *Aerhon*, the Horse of *Pallas*, who was evidently observed and seene to weep at the funerall of his Master. *Silius* makes report of two famous Horses called *Pelorus* and *Ciræus*, the one eminent for his prowesse and hardinesse in Vwarre, and the other for his unparalleld swiftnesse. Moreover wee may read, how that this poore creature hath so well merited of man, as that many have erected Monuments and Sepulchres, celebrated Exequies, builded and founded munificent Cities, set up Pyramides, made Epitaphs, erected goodly Statues, instituted Playes and Games; and all these in honour of the Horse; besides many other remarkeable things right worthy of note.

In the way of Breeding, I doe intimate unto thee the manner how, the season when, the place where, together with the colours, marks, and shapes, as well of thy Stallions, as of thy Race, or Stud Mares, and from what defects they must be free: what signes are best wherein to cover, what course to take with them that they may conceive, what exercise is fittest for them as well when they

they bee with Fole, as after ſoling; how to cheriſh thy Mares when their Colts ſhall runne by them, and how to breed up thy Colts till they come to handling, backing, and riding, with other circumſtances very neceſſary to bee knowne; and thus much briefly for the firſt Booke.

The ſecond Booke conſiſteth chiefly of the manner how thou maielt cure all ſuch diſeaſes and maladies (both intrinſecall and extrinſecall) whereunto either the life of the Horſe, or any of his limbes or members may be any way endamaged or in danger. This I have handled by way of familiar Dialogue, which I hold to bee beſt, for avoiding of prolix and over-tedious diſcourſes, by reaſon it will very much helpe the memory of the Reader, and keepe his minde the better attent upon the ſtate of the Queſtion or ſubject in hand, and by that meanes I may my ſelfe bee the better able alſo to explicate and deliver my meaning much more cleerly. In which Dialogue, I have introduced as protococtors, three perſons onely, viz. Firſt, *Hypophylas* a Gentleman, one who is the true lover of the Horſe: Secondly, *Hypparius* the Ferrier or Marſhall, one moſt expert in Horſe-leach craft: And thirdly, *Hypoſerus* his Servant and Journey-man, ſometimes his Apprentice bred up by him, from whom *Hypoſerus* hath had his education and knowledge in this Art; theſe bee all the *Dramatis perſonæ* to this Scene. Wherefore in the firſt Chapter, I doe endeavour to illuſtrate unto thee the true Office of the Ferrier, wherein I doe produce an exact examen of his function.

In the ſecond Chapter, I doe inculcate as well the cauſes of health as of ſickeſſe, wherein I make an abridgement

bridgement of all those things which all learned Physicians and Chirurgions (both ancient and modern doe from the grounds and principles of profound Philosophy) finde to governe and beare rule in the body of the Horse, without which hee can have no flesh, bones, sinewes, bloud, or life it selfe, wherewith to make up the entire structure of an originall body, and such are first the Elements; secondly, the Humours; thirdly, the naturall faculties; fourthly, the instrumentall members; fifthly, the spirits animall; sixthly, the spirits vitall; seventhly, the naturall parts, and so of the residue. And having sufficiently discussed all these things in due order and method. I doe then shew thee what meanes wee have to preserve the Horse from all inward diseases, which I doe finde to bee foure in number, *viz.* By Purge, by Sweat, by Phlebotomie, and by Vomit; and then doe I proceed to inculcate unto thee the causes of health and long life, which I doe make to bee in number twelve, which if thou doe well observe, they will redound to thy great utility and profit.

In the third Chapter I do demonstrate certain things most besitting a Ferrier to know and understand well, before hee shall take upon him to administer; in the handling whereof I doe begin first with the foure Elements, anatomizing unto thee their true natures and vertues, and how and where they bee scituate, things most needfull to bee knowne; then I go along with the two proper Elements, shewing from whence the seed and menstruall bloud is ingendred, then I passe forwards in intreating of the foure Humours, explaining their natures and vertues, pointing unto the places of their abode and residence, and what relation and coherence

rence they have unto the foure Complexions, I doe also shew thee what are the two spirits animall, and the two vitall, their natures, vertues, and places of abode and residence in the body of the Horfe. After all this I shew thee, that by duly observing the complexion of the Horfe thou art to cure, thou maiest thereby the sooner, better, and with more security and ease, perfect thy cure; nay, I go yet further with thee, in shewing unto thee an exact way whereby to know by the complexion it selfe, the diseases whereunto the Horfe is most propense; then I make knowne what bee the causes of the evill dispositions of the Horfe, which bringeth and begetteth unavoydable infirmity and sicknesse, whereof they bee two in number, *viz.* Intrinsicall and Extrinsicall, together with a definition of the nature of sicknesse; and so I go along in teaching thee the manner how thou oughtest to administer such Drinkes, Potions, Clifters, and Medicines, without any the least perill to thy Horfe, as also the time of the day most suteable to that purpose; and what exercise is most requisite to bee had after Physick or Medicine. And lastly, I come to touch briefly upon his urine and ordure, whereby to give the rules infallible how to know and understand the true state of the body of the Horfe, as well in health as in sicknesse.

In the fourth Chapter of this second Booke, I doe begin to handle the Cures in particular, wherein I runne a course by my selfe, which I have not knowne any before mee undertake: For whereas Master *Blundevile*, Master *Markham*, and others, doe begin with all the inward diseases which are to be cured by way of Physick, and they with the outward maladies which doe appertaine

taine unto Chyrurgiry; I have thought it much better to take the diseases Alphabetically, mixing the extrinsecall with the intrinsecall, by which meanes they will the sooner and more easily bee found, and turned unto more readily. And wheresoever you shall finde this * * marke inserted in the end of any cure, I have set the same there, to let you know that Receipt to bee undoubted, and approved for good and certaine, being by my selfe often practised and used. And those Receipts that have not the marke, are such Cures which I did procure from sundry able Ferriers, whereof I have had no triall or experience at all, for want of time and means, and therefore dare not avouch or crie them up for Mathematicall, albeit they doe appeare unto mee to bee probably good, but by reason I have not tried them, I would not adventure a *probatum*, or *ecce* upon them. Nevertheless if God permit mee to reprint, I doubt not but by that time to give them for approved and warrantable, and to adde many more unto them which I have already by mee, which I doe forbear to publish at this present, albeit I doe know many of them to bee as probably good as any of those.

In the other Chapters I go cleane through the whole Alphabet, according to the Method used in the fourth Chapter; and therefore let this abstract suffice for the present. And forasmuch as I have discussed the former things of Breeding, &c. in my first Booke: Yet my intention was nor at the first to trench so deepe into that subject, but to shew principally the *Ferriers* Craft and Art, out of an earnest desire I have to excite and stirre up our yong Gentlemen to assume some knowledge of a Mystery so necessary for them to apprehend, or at least-

wife to have a glimpse of, considering how rare a thing it is to finde a skillfull *Ferrier* among our rurall or Couarrie Smiths. For if the Nobility and Gentry of this our Isle of *Great Brittain* did truly know how honourable, and how commendable Horsemanship were, and how much they are esteemed and admired, who are the true professours thereof, they would labour more then they now doe, to breed and have good Horses; but it much troubleth mee to see how little esteeme Gentlemen now a daies have thereof. Some Horses they have, though not for Menage, yet for Hunting; but what manner of Hunting? Fox-hunting forsooth, or Harriers which bee as fleet as perty Grey-hounds wherewith they doe so much over-straine the strength of their poore Horses (forcing them over deep Fallows, rough Claies, and wet and rough Lands) that albeir those Horses bee strong and able, yet are they so toiled out therewith, as that when they come home at night, they would pittie the heart of him who loveth a Horse, to see them so bemired, blouded, spurred, lamentably spent, tyred out: Whereas if such Horses had been ridden to the great Saddle and Cannon, they would have infinitely delighted all men who should have beheld them.

But let me leave them unto their toilesome sports, and let my speech bee directed to such Heroick and Generous Spirits, who have a desire to informe and better their understanding in the secrets of this brave Mystery; who if they have a will to be edoctrinated therein, then for a Mathematicall ground of true Horsemanship, I must tell them, that they having and possessing of good Horses, yea and riding it selfe is little worth without
the

the knowledge of the *Ferriers* Craft, at the least in the Theorick or Speculative part, if not in the Practick; and therefore I could wish that every worthy Gentleman should have a good insight thereinto, albeit he doth not make it his Trade, Occupation, or frequent practice and profession. Yet it will not be amisse, he be able to know every disease in a Horse, its Symptoms, and how it commeth, together with the true signe thereof, which indeed is a matter of very great consequence. For when a Nobleman (*V. G.*) Knight, or Gentleman shall have a Horse that doth well merit his affection, and which shall be for his turne, if any accident or malady shall befall him, albeit he may not himselfe take upon him the Cure, and to Drench, Bloudy, or Dresse him with his owne hands; yet (sending for a *Ferrier*) he may discourse with him upon the Nature of the Disease, and thereby come to understand whether the *Ferrier* speaketh according to Art or not, and whether his intended course of administring, be answerable to true Art and perfect Science, and probably a secure way to perfect the Cure; so as if the Master and Owner of the Horse be not himselfe enabled with some superficial knowledge at the least, at what time he shall consult with the *Ferrier*, if not (I say) able to judge of the Mans sufficiency (the Smith himselfe being indeed insufficient) by mistaking the infirmity, hee may ignorantly administer or applie such contrarie Medicine, whereby instead of labouring to cure him, he shall most easilie and infallible kill him, to the no small regret and grieve of the Owner.

But *Ferriers* and *Smiths* may peradventure greatly re-
pine, and grumble at the publication of this Worke of

mine, like as to my knowledge, and in my hearing, they have most virulentlie exclaimed, and vehementlie inveighed against Master *Blundevile*, Master *Markham*, and others, wishing their Bookes burned, and the Authors at the Goodyere; for publishing and Printing them; pretending much wrong to be done, to such poor men who have served Apprentiships to the Trade, having none other way or meanes of livelihood but onlie this. But heerunto I answer, that these men have no cause at all to feare any prejudice thereby; and I dare boldly affirme the promulgation of Bookes will be so far from their harme or hinderance, as that it will be infinitelie to their benefit: For when they shall find any one Nobleman, Knight, or Gentleman, who will undergo so much paines as either to Bloudy, Drench, Corrosive, Cauterize, applie Cataplasmes, Emplaisters, Powders, Unguents, or the like to his Horse, whatsoever he hath attained unto by reading or otherwise; you shall have a thousand who upon any the least occasion will send for a *Ferrier* to take the Cure in hand. Againe, instead of this pretended prejudice, this commoditie will accrew to my brethren *Smiths*, *Marisballs*, and *Ferriers*, viz. they shall by promulgation of Bookes (of this Nature) become much more able, and *Imbui in studiis*, that is, much more learned and indoctrinated in this generous Facultie then ever they were before, by which meanes they will be esteemed much more famous and eminent, and cried up for the most expert and able Men in this most Noble Science. For how commeth it to passe, that Physitians, Chyrurgions, Lawyers, Divines, and all other Artists doe become so great Doctours of their Arts and Professions,

sions, and admired for most famous and learned Men, and so frequently sought after, enquired out, and sent for when occasion is? Is it not for what they have attained unto by studie and reading, untill which time they were not so hardie as to adventure upon practice? So as without their Librarie, they could never have been able to have attained unto that eminent knowledge they have afterwards aspired unto; neither could they otherwise have been possible able to practise and worke by true Art and Science. For the Workes of learned and eminent men, is the onlie thing that doth enable them, which are left as a never dying Monument to ensuing and endlesse Posteritie, as the common good to the Weale Publick, even to all ensuing Ages: Imitating therein the ancient Sages of Greece, that when a man had invented that thing which was knowne to be commodious to the Republick, lest the thing should be buried with the Inventer, and by that meanes raked up with him in the ashes of perpetuall oblivion: They ordained that the first Inventer should set up his Science to bee knowne by way of Record in their Publique Schooles in spacious Tables and in Capitall Characters of Gold with this Impresse, or Title, viz. καλλιόν και θεότερον ἀγαθόν ἢ ἐστὶν ἢ ἐνι. *Bonum pulchrius, & divinius, quod Genti est quam Uni.* That is, That thing is to be esteemed better and more excellent which is communicated to the Weale Publique in generall, rather then to bee imprisoned in the Bosome of any particular man. Wherefore that thing (I say) whereat I doe principally aime, is to publish the true Art of the *Ferrier*, a Faculty wherein I have been daily versed, and diligentlie practised for more then fortie yeares, and

that unto my no small labour and expence: and I doe well assure my selfe that peradventure no one Gentleman in this our Kingdome more, who hath done greater, more difficult, or desperate Cures.

During the time of my travels, I have for my better indemnity, not only perused what Authors I could meet with, who have written upon this Subject; but I did also make my selfe an eye-witnesse to the Cures of the most famous *Marishals* and *Ferriers*, the Cities and places afforded where I came, omitting no diligence which might inform or enable my knowledge; neither would I be too credulous, or give too much beliefe to fame or reports, for we have a Maxime in the civill Law, which saith: *Fama per se parum momenti habet ad probandum*: Fame alone is not of credit sufficient to satisfie or convince the understanding of Man, untill such time as hee hath made triall. For the common Proverb is, *Qui facile credit, facile decipitur*. He that easily believeth, is easily deceived. And truly thus much I am able to speake, that *France* and *Flanders* (for that in those two places I had most commerce and experience, albeit I travelled many other parts of Christendome) were the two Kingdomes in which I found the best, ablest, and most expert *Marishals*, or *Ferriers*; but of all the places where ever yet I came, I am able of my own knowledge to say thus much (and that with no small grief) that the worlde *Ferriers* generally I doe finde to be those who are of our own Nation: nevertheles, I doe not conclude or condemn all for insufficient, for some there be well knowne unto me very quaint and expert *Ferriers*; who can worke very well, and according to true Art and Method. I have therefore in this elaborate Worke of mine given you

severall Receipts for every Cure, and most of them approved by my particular practice and experience; Others againe I have inserted which are the Cures of other able men, which by reason they do sound probable unto me, I have suffered them to passe among my owne, (though I never had meanes or opportunity to make triall of them.) And the reason why I have inculcated so many severall Receipts to each Cure, are two; *viz.* First because that Receipt which will cure one disease, will not alwaies cure the same Malady in another Horse. Secondly, you shall finde some Receipts either very difficile to make, or the ingredients not easie to be gotten, otherwise they prove more chargeable than the Owner of the Horse is well able to defray: and therefore I have given thee Receipts for all sorts and degrees of Horses; howbeit those Receipts which are most costly and intricate to make and compound are commonly the very best, and worketh the best effects, and therefore I leave thee to thy selfe to make thy own choice.

Now if any man shall say, that I have robbed or rifled other mens labours: I answer, I have not robbed, but approved them; for by the same rule I may aswell object, that whosoever worketh by my Booke robbeth me, for if that be theft, I pray what Physitian is there in the whole world, (promulgating his Science) may not be as much censured and accused for rifling the Aphorismes of *Galen* and *Hipocrates*; yea and of others the Ancients and Moderne Authours also. But howsoever, I am so far from traducing other mens endeavours, as that I do both reverence and admire them, and esteem my selfe unworthy their Scholler. But I know no reason why I may not publish my knowledge of this Noble Art;

Art; for what saith a venerable Authour? *Qui se dicit scire quod nescit, temerarius est: & qui negat scire quod scit, ingratus est.* As that man is to bee accompted for most temerarious and rash, that shall take upon him to know that which in truth he knoweth not; so also doth he shew himselfe to be most ingrate, who denieth to know that thing which truly he doth know. Innumerable are the grounds which may be laid to the rearing of this Structure, which being so well knowne to all, by setting each downe in perticular, I shall therein but onely *Sisyphi saxum volvere*; consume much time (which to me is most precious) and labour to little purpose, and lesse profit; and therefore I will in this discourse draw towards an end, lest I might tire thee out with too long an Epistle; yet lesse I thought I could not inculcate, by reason there are many things in this worthy and noble Science, which might otherwise seeme to be very dark and abstruse, and the Cures I have (I say) carryed Dialogue-wise, *Ne inquam, & inquit sapius interponeretur*; meerly to avoid confusion: For *Aristotle* saith well; *Omne Ens naturaliter appetit suam perfectionem.* Every *Ens*, that is to say; Everyman hath a naturall propension to arrive unto that perfection to which he hath a will or desire to understand.

Now the reason why I did enterlace my first Booke with the Honours and perfections which Horses in former times have atchieved, as also with such rules and principles of breeding, shape, marks, colours, &c. was, lest otherwise I might be like to one who telleth a sick man of a soveraigne medicine for his infirmity, and yet conceales from him the use thereof. And therefore I doe make it my chiefest desire, and principall intention,

yea my obligation, not onely to illustrate each disease, together with its cure, but also to make up all the Attributes belonging to a perfect Horse, and such defects which be incident to so noble and usefull a creature, being likewise discovered.

If therefore it may please thee sometimes to retire thy selfe in the perusal of this Treatise, and with due and serious judgement, not so much to reflect upon the Method and forme of this worke, as of the matter or subject it selfe, then I doubt not but that thou wilt receive such benefit and contentment, as that thereby thou wilt be much bettered and enabled in thy understanding both for the breeding and well ordering of young Horses, and in the cure of every of their maladies.

And forasmuch as I have brought this my first worke to its period, which I may rightly resemble to a Structure or Building, my speciall care hath been to make it faire and beautifull to the eye, and to grace, garnish, and set it forth with varieties of divers sorts, wherein I have been very diligent to give it all satisfaction I have been able, and therefore I have laboured to paint and polish it forth with what variety is most necessary for so exquisite a building.

Lastly, sithence nothing more imports a building, then to lay a sure, and substantiall foundation, and withall to make the walls so tite and impregnable, as to be able to resist not so much winde and weather, as the violence, assaults, and batterie of detracting enemies: my care therefore hath been to have it founded and situate upon the unmovable Rock of a pregnant truth, And therefore considering I have applyed all this pains, and spent so much time and cost, which I might have

A

other-

otherwise both imployed and applyed to my more particular commodity, by which I have not onely finished this Structure, and made it commodious for thee, but I do also present it unto thee meerly for thy proper use and habitation; and therefore I hope that thou wilt not make such use therof, as men doe of an Inne, where he taketh a bait or repast, for one meale, or for a lodging, for one night and away, to wit, by onely taking a superficiall view thereof; but that thou wilt make it thy abode, at the least for some time; I meane by reading and digesting the whole worke in order as it lyeth treatably and seriously, and after by putting in practice what therein thou shalt find to be fit for thy use; so shalt thou reap and enjoy the benefit, my selfe the comfort, and the Common-wealth the honour.

If any leakes be in the Printing, impute them either unto the misprision of the Printer, or else to the negligence of him unto whom the charge of the correcting was committed; and if any be in the Authour, let the fault light upon those who spurred him so fast on to haste it to the Presse; but howsoever shew thy charity in correcting the faults and slips, as well of the one, as of the other: So shalt thou shew thy selfe to the world like thy selfe, truly Noble, and oblige the Authour to remaine ever thy humble Servant, and true Friend;
Farewell,

THOMAS DE GRAY.



To my Worthy Friend Monsieur de Gray, upon his exquisite piece of *Horsemanship* and *Ferriery*.

When Troy's Palladium, on whose fatall stay
Their fortunes, hopes, their Gods, their Altars lay;
was by Ulysses cunning hand surpriz'd,
And Pallas wou'd to see Troy sacrific'd:
The Greeks pretending recompence, returne
A Horse, whose entrals that vast City burne.
How different is thy Gift, since here we see
Pleasure with safety, strength with wit agree &
This frame exceeds that; but to nobler ends,
That hurts by fraud, by knowledge this defends:
And though in Ilium's Horse an Army rest,
Twill be far more to COMPREHEND this Beast;
Since Ignorance hath taught our Isle to lay
Her Art, on Fades that onely run away.
But when I looke on thine, and there behold
Soldiers made knowing, and the knowing told,
I cry, had this been given for that of wood,
Minerva had returnd, and Ilium stood.

S. J. B. B.

H. T. 2

To his good Friend, *Thomas de Gray*, upon his Book
called the *Expert Ferrier*.

WHilst other Readers vex in fruitlesse wayes,
And write adventurous Lines for vulgar praise;
Thou in a Noble Art, and usefull skill,
Ventest the labours of a modest Quill,
To make us by Thy well-spent Industry,
Supine neglects to know, and rectifie;
Since in this Piece of Thine, the Horse appears
(Whilst him his Rider as a Pilot steeres
Through stormes of courage) by thy awfull hand
Enforc'd to suffer, and obey Command.
Then, Thou, his innate Spirit to maintain
By propagation of a generous strain,
Unpractis'd Precepts with judicious heed
Freely affordst us in his better breed.
And lastly, that this worke may sully please,
Experiment all Cures of each Disease,
Which frequently occurre in this brave Beast
Are, with the lesse approv'd, by Thee express:
That all may say, we, in this Book have found
A Horse well bred, well menag'd, and sound.

S. T. H.



To my knowing Friend, Monsieur De Gray.

Old Edward, Noble Worcester, that Branch
Sprung from great John of Gaunt, and Royal Blanch.
Of Thee our de la Gray was wont to say,
To see Thee on Thy Horse of menage play,
was solid pleasure, for the Excellence
That fed the Eye, went further then the Sense.
And I believe it, since the Active part
That shines in Precepts of thy skilfull Art,
And comes to us from speculations taught
Through long Experience, and with labour wrought.
In these thy choice Phylippicks, makes this Land
Blest in the faire production of Thy hand.
Our skilfull Markham, and old Blundevill,
Or whosoe're hath toucht this marshall Quill,
Receives by Thee more light then was his owne,
Or was by th' Ancients, or by Moderns knowne.

G. F.



To my well-deserving Friend, *Thomas de Gray*,
upon his exact piece of *Horsemanship*
and *Ferriery*.

IF I who love a Horse next to my life,
Should now be mute in the commending strife
Of this thy *Horsemanship*, my *de la Gray*,
I might henceforth be banish'd all the play
At *Banstead*, *Winchester*, and *Salsbury*,
And sit me downe under this Horse and dye.

Nay, I will write before thy Booke, and fill
The vacant roome of some deserving quill:
And wish in all my sport to be as sure,
As when thou work'st upon a desperate Cure.

Wolfenstone.

Upon Monsieur de Gray, his most elaborate picce of
Horsemanship and Ferriery.

This Book's inform'd with a high Genius; this
Above the malice of detraction is
Nor needs a friends Encomium blaze it forth;

Its proper Vertue vindicates its worth:

Yet, since, by th' Authours happy care and paine

I understood how first to use the reynze,

And menage sonipes, I could not chuse

But vent this gratefull Rhapture of my Muse,

How that by it he amply doth impart

The essence of the Horsemans, Ferriers Art;

So that the Horse shall to perfection grow,

And no disease his courage brave o'rethrow.

Now I will leave Pegasus ayery courses,

And sue to mount one of his well-train'd Horses.

Ed. R.



To the Authour of the Expert *Ferrier*.

Her's *Mirror*, eak *Modell* of true Honour;
Fame waits on Thy name, Thou wait'st upon Her.
By Cavall'ry the *Golden Fleece* tha'st wonne;
Therein, Thou art a *Non-pareill*, That one
whose Fame shall die & Thine? It shall remaine
The Age, presag'd by *Ovid's* *sublime* straine.

I. H. D. M.

To my ever honoured Friend *Thomas de Gray*, upon his
select Piece of *Horsemanship* and *Ferriery*.

SAge hast Thou made our *Later Age*,
Thou art the *Phoenix* of our Time;
Certes, Thy rare Piece I presage,
Hast wonne the *Fleece* it's so *sublime*.
My yonger Pen cannot but wait on Thee,
whose Name shall ever be most dear to mee.

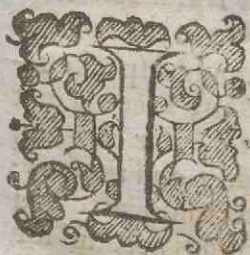
Francis Hawkins.



THE COMPLEAT
 HORSE-MAN,
 AND EXPERT
 FERRIER.

CHAP. I.

THE INTRODUCTION.



I f wee will but take to our serious consideration how many great obligations wee have to admire the infinite goodnesse of Almighty God in creating such a marvellous number of creatures, meereley for the use and service of man, whereof no one of them can bee wanting; and that amongst them all, wee have none more usefull, or which can bee lesse spared, then the Horse; no dumbe creature more generous, nor any that cometh so neere unto the pleasure of man, none can
 B serve

serve him better in time of Peace and War; none better for manuring and tilling the Earth, and to cause it to produce its fruits; none more usefull for bringing in the fruits of the Earth; none more behoofesfull to beare and carry him his long and tedious journeyes, in heate and cold, through thick and thin, by night and day; none better to carry him from danger, and to land his Master at the port of safety, then the Horse: and for his pastimes and recreations, no creature to bee compared to this: neither is there any creature created by the great Creator of all things, which doth so perfectly understand and connive with the nature and minde of man, or that beareth a more inly love to man, as doth this poore creature the Horse; for upon all occasions hee sweateth, hee trudgeth, hee toyleth, hee drudgeth, hee moyleth, he laboureth *pro viribus*, with great alacrity and cheerefulnesse (so long as his vitall spirits last) to give comfort and content to him that feedeth and cheriseth him, yea and that (I say) with such joy and alacrity, as if (like to a reasonable creature) hee found himselfe obliged thereto in the bond of all sincere duty and gratitude. For should I speake rather like a Philosopher then a Christian, I could not but agnize nature to bee admirable in all her workes, wherein man doth owe unto her infinite, and those very great thankes, in that shee hath accommodated and plentifully furnished him with all things needfull for his use, as also in that shee hath propagated (among all other) the Horse, the most usefull for the service of man, and who best acknowledgeth his Master. And that this may bee the better anatomized, I will shew you what I finde recorded by authentickall Authours
of

of the excellency of this praise-worthy creature.

The so much-renowned *Bucephalus*, who carryed his Master through so many conquered Kingdomes, serves for an example to all ensuing Ages, who would not suffer any man but great *Alexander* to back him, who seemed to bee proud at what time hee carryed so glorious and victorious a charge; and it is also written of him, that being wounded at the siege and sacking of *Thebes*, hee carryed him couragiously through the Troopes and throngs of all the Combatants, with incredible valour and courage, nothing at all esteeming or prizing the losse of his blood, being most desirous, and no lesse willing to do his Master all faithfull service, to the utmost of his power, and to the effusion of the last drop of his blood, labouring to purchase unto himselfe by his (not to bee paralleled) valour, and his resolute perseverance, a victorious advantage over the enemy. What never-dying high renowne, the Horse of *Cæsar* got, I hold little inferiour to that of *Bucephalus* & *Dionysius* the Tyrant of *Sicily*, in a great and well fought battle, was himselfe so hard put to it, that he was constrained to forsake his Horse, neverthelesse the poore beast made his way through the throngs of the Enemy; who all bloody and miery as hee was, gat him to a randevous his Stable. *Centaurettus* of *Galatia*, having in battle slaine *Antiochus*, he in a bravado mounted his Horse, who soon found by good experience, (albeit no whit to his advantage) that the sayd Horse retained a resentment of the death of his slaine Master: for the Horse so soone as hee felt this his new Lord upon his back, never gave over flinging, yarking, plunging, and bounding, commanding the Bit with his teeth, launching

ching out sometimes this way, sometimes that way, with so great impetuosity and fury, that at length hee cast his rash Rider to the Earth, and then fell to him with his heeles, redoubling his strokes in so thick and violent a manner, not giving over till he had slaine him out-right, whereby hee gave him little cause to triumph and glory in his temerarious attempt. Wee reade of *Nicomedes*, King of *Bithynia*, whose Horse so intirely loved him, as that his Master was no sooner dead, but the Horse presently forsooke his meate, and so continued, untill such time as hee languishing for very griefe, dyed of famine. *Virgil*, the Prince of Poets, maketh honourable mention of *Aethon*, the Horse of *Pallas*, sonne of *Evander*, who saith that this *Aethon* being present at the Funerall of his Master, wept for sorrow, as these two verses doe inculcate:

After came Aethon, bold in fight now weeping,
And in his teares, his mournfull visage sleeping.

Silius Italicus in his ninth Booke, doth highly extoll two horses, to wit, *Pelorus*, and *Cirrus*, speaking of them in this manner.

Ready Pelorus was to th' hand and rayne,
Obedient still, and of a generous strayne:
Hearing his Masters voyce Cirrus hies,
'Fore the beholders, and the winde of flies.

The tractablenesse and love that the Horse beareth to man, have been the occasion that sundry great personages have reciprocally answered it, by erecting of
 Statues,

Statues, and by building of most famous Cities to their honour and memory. *Alexander* before mentioned, founded an opulent City in honour of *Bucephalus*, and gave it his name, and celebrated his exequies. The Egyptians erected most magnificent Pyramides, and sumptuous sepulchres to such horses as had served them well in their wars. *Octavius Caesar*, and after him, *Adrian* the Emperor, interred their Horses with great pomp and solemnities, and caused famous Epitaphs to be ingraven upon their monuments. The Emperour *Commodus*, did the like to his Horse *Parfimus*, and commanded that hee should be buried in the *Vatican*. *Romulus* did institute Playes and Games called *Equitia*, in honour of Horses, and caused them to be presented in the field of *Mars*. The *Ethiopians* did so highly esteem of these noble creatures, as that they armed their Helmets with the skins of Horses, suffering their eares to remaine on, and they did weare their tails upon their Crests, like as now a daies men use their Plumes. Other Nations have done the like, who held Horses in no little esteem. Wee read of a Roman Emperour, who made his Horse a Senator. The ancient Astrologers have likewise attributed so much to Horses, that they have placed one winged amongst the coelestiall signes. The Poets hold that the Fountain (where the nine Muses used to bathe themselves, and to drinke) sprang up, by the blow of the foot which *Pegasus* gave against the two-topt hill, *Parnassus*. *Neptune*, God of the Sea, is surnamed *Hippius*; by reason that (as the Poets doe fable) the first Horse that was ever seen, received his origen from him, or from a stone whereon *Neptune* had poured water. There remaineth much more to be said in honour of the Horse, then

there hath been already delivered. Wherefore omitting further Encomiums, and attributes, I hasten to matters of greater consequence. Sithence therefore the case so standeth, that this dumb creature is by Almighty God given unto man, as a creature of so usefull importance; what thankfulness then are we bound to give unto him for so great a blessing and benefit? And therefore what diligence is required of us; yea, & what carefulnesse ought we to use, in travelling to attaine to this so necessary a creature in the most exact manner we are able? Nor can this possibly be acquired to our true content, unlesse we do apply our best endeavours herein; for the Ancients have this Proverb, *All rare and excellent things are hard to compassse*: and therefore we ought to apply all care and industry to attaine unto good Horses, which can never bee so well done, as by *breeding* them; for they must bee the Horses that will bee able best to serve us in those offices whereunto wee shall intend them, according as hereafter shall be most exactly illustrated.

CHAP. II.

Of the best manner of Breeding.

THERE are so many diversities of opinions, so mainly defended *pro & con*, that maketh men fearefull to bring that to publique view, which long practice and experience hath brought them to know and understand to be most true and infallible: Nevertheless I presuming, that the more judicious may peradventure

venture favour my Reasons and Grounds; allowing them at least for probable and good; if they shall adventure to make tryall, which if they bee pleased so to doe, I am confident they will both allow and approve of this my manner of *breeding*, above all other wayes heeretofore practised; who finding it to bee much better, will never bee brought from the same method, and therefore I would not have any man to condemne mee before hee shall first have made tryall.

My counsell therefore is, that such generous spirits, unto whom Almighty God hath extended his benigne hand, would take to their consideration, how needfull a thing it is for them to lay hold upon this so noble and profitable a blessing and benefit, by applying their best care and diligence to breed, good, able, and serviceable Horses, which may bee as easily performed, and in a manner with as little cost, as in breeding Jades and Baffles, unusefull and unprofitable. For by procuring a good and able Stud of choyce Mares, and by endeavouring to get select Stallions, which for mettle, spirit, shape, colour, markes, and the like, shall bee knowne to bee rightly bred, and truly generous, as well (I say) the Mares as the Stallions; and these, yong, handsome, of size indifferent, that is, neither too small, nor too large, long-legged, or under-bodied; but well knit, limb'd, and joynted; it will bee beyond all peradventure, but that you shall have Horses fit wherewith to serve your Countrey upon all occasions, and your owne turne and your friends, and acquire to your selfe no small honour and commendations both from your Prince, and the Weale Publick. And this the better to bee performed, you must understand that some things
are

are necessary to be considered. First, that your grounds bee fit for *breeding*, and those not to bee such as bee low, wet, fenny, moorish, or marish; but they must bee Pastures upland, hilly, and in some places stony and rocky, for Grounds of this nature are very profitable for your Colts, to scope, run and play in; it helpeth their winde, it knitteth their joynts, and hardeneth and maketh tough their hooves: Some of your Grounds ought also not to bee without Underwoods, Bushes, Fursells, Broome, and the like; these will serve for shelter at what time the cold windes doe blow; the residue of your Grounds ought to have Lawnes and Plaines, wherein should bee better grasse then the former; and in these Lawnes, is needfull there should be great Oakes, and such like Timber-trees for them, whereby to shelter them from the scorching Sunne in the extreame heates, especially during the time of the Canicular dayes; and these trees will also defend them from the buzzing and stinging Fly, which otherwise would greatly annoy and afflict them: You must also accommodate your Grounds with partitions convenient, as well for change, which sometime is most requisite, as also whereby to segregate each sort of Cattell by it selfe; as your yong and old, rase or breeding Mares by themselves, your weanlings by themselves, your Fillyes by themselves, and your stoned Colts by themselves, according as your best judgement shall dictate; otherwise your breed will bee in confusion, and come to nothing, and so you may run the hazard, to lose both your cost and paines. Places must bee also made apart, wherein both your Mares with sole, and those who have their Colts sucking upon them, may

run

run by themselves, with all quietnesse and retirednesse ; and every of these partitions must bee so sufficiently fenced, as that no one sort of Cattell can breake into the other. And I doe yet further advise, that these Grounds bee well furnished with sweete and wholesome water, whereof ought not to bee any want, either in Winter or Summer, for otherwise you may endanger the tainting and surfetting of them.

Furthermore, that certaine Sheds and Hey-houses be erected for them to bee fed in, during the time of the Winter, when grasse is scanty, and not so much nourishing, and the cold Windes, Frosts, Raines, and Snows, may greatly pinch and annoy them ; in which housings, would bee set up Racks and Mangers whereat to feed them ; there would also be laid cleane straw for them to lye upon, which will very much comfort and keepe them warme : But above all, the greatest care must bee had to the fences in generall, whether wall, (which is evermore the best) pale, quicksets, broad diches, or high bankes, lest they should at any time breake forth, and trespasse your neighbours to bastardize, and wrong your breed ; and you ought also to institute a trusty and diligent Bayliffe or servant, whose onely function should bee to make his fence-walke morning and evening, as duely as any well experienced Keeper or Woodman doth his Pale-walke, to see that the fences bee fast, and his Cattell safe : and let him not faile every day, once at the least, to take a true tale and inventory of every sort of Cattell hee hath in his severall Grounds, for feare any should bee missing, or some misfortune befallne any of them ; and if hee shall finde any wanting, let him not rest searching, untill hee hath found it ; and

if it bee in danger or sicke, let him not give over himselfe if hee can, (otherwise let him haste to call company and strength enough) to free it out of harmes way.

Now as touching the Grounds themselves, as I would not have them too rich, or too ranke and deepe with grasse; so must they not bee too barren, short, and mossie; for as well in this subject, as in all other things, the golden meane is evermore to bee preferred. Having thus provided your selfe of a Stud of the choicest and ablest Mares, for age, colour, shape, and markes, your Stallions also of like attributes, your care must bee to see your Mares well covered, for in this chiefly consisteth the life and quintessence of your *breeding*. Bee you therefore marvellous carefull, that neither your Stallion or Mare, have any of these ensuing defects; *viz.* neither Moone-eyes, watry-eyes, or blood-shotten-eyes, or other defect in their eyes or sight, no taint in their winde by Glanders or otherwise, no way subject to Mainge, Mallender, Sellender, Splents, Spaven, Curb, Ring-bone, Scratches, Kybed-heeles, or any other the like sorances; that they bee not Cock-thropled, but their Throples very loose; for let either Stallion or Mare have any of these maladies, then bee you well assured their Colts will take them as hereditary from their Parents: Insomuch as when you esteeme your selfe confident of such yong Horses, you so much desired to bee master of, you will bee mistaken; for instead of a Stirrier or Horse for mannage, you have bred him fit for nought else but the plough; and in the place of a Hunter, hee proves a Mil-horse; and in hope you had a Horse for a Course, hee proves for no better use but the Cart; and him you desire to have for your
owne

owne Pad-saddle, you will bee constrained to sell him to a Carrier, to beare a Pack-saddle with a burthen.

To come to intreate of the time most fitting for covering your Mares, let that bee so done, that they may cast their Foles in the dead of Winter; as either in *December*, or *January*; for during their time of going with Fole, to wit, from the day of their Covering, unto that of their Foling, is commonly twelve moneths, and ten dayes: Yet some doe aver, they doe want eleven dayes of twelve moneths, of which computation there is just three weekes oddes: Others againe doe affirme, that a Mare goeth but onely eleven moneths, and ten dayes, wherein is greater oddes; but I have found it to bee a most certaine rule which never did faile mee (unlesse in a yong Mare upon her first Colt, who will want some few dayes of the ordinary account) and long and frequent experience hath made mee to bee very perfect, that a Mare goeth (unlesse some mischance or other accident hath otherwise occasioned) twelve moneths and ten dayes: For when at any time I have beene present when a Mare hath beene covered, I have in the very minute entred into my Almanacke, the very day and houre in which shee took the Horse, and because I would not bee deceived, I have beene present at her foling, and I have found the time never to faile me. And therefore I could wish all breeders to observe with mee the same course, and they shall finde this account to fall out just as I have delivered. If your Mare bee covered about *S. Lucies day*, which is the thirteenth of *December*, then will shee take about *S. Williams day*, in the same moneth in the year following. But before you suffer her to bee covered, lets remember, the *Stallion* or
 Mare.

Mare be at grasse, but taken into the house, sixe weeks or a month at the least; during which time, let them be both very well fed with good old Hay and Oates, well dusted and sifted, to the end they may have strength and feed to perform the office for which you have them. But if you will have your Mare certainly to conceive, then take blood from both sides of her necke, and let her bleed at either veine well nigh a quart; which must be done five or sixe dayes before she is to be covered; and the next day after her bleeding, give her in a quart of new milke, halfe a iij. of Artimesia, *alias* Mugge-wort, chopped very small, a peece of sweet Butter, and ℥ 2. of London Treacle warme; all these put upon the fire till the Butter and Treacle be dissolved, and give this to the Mare blood-warme in the morning fasting, and so the next morning againe, and let her drinke be white water. This drinke is most soveraigne to cause conception, it provoketh feed abundantly, it openeth the pores in the body, and causeth the Mare to keepe the feed she receiveth from the Stallion; moreover this drinke comforteth the wombe and matrix very much: so as it is great oddes but that she being thus ordered, will bee sped and conceive, unlesse she bee a Mare of great sterility, which supposed, she is not to be kept for a race or breeding Mare.

Moreover, if you be desirous to have your Mare to conceive a Horse-colt, rather then a Filly; observe then this lesson I shall here give you, and you shall finde it an infallible rule, which will never misse, *viz.* At what time you would have your Mare to be covered, Let it bee done when one of the first five masculine Signes do raigne, which are either *Aries, Taurus, Gemi-*

ni, Cancer, or Leo; but if she shall be covered when any of the Feminine or watry signes are predominant, as *Virgo, Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricornus, Aquarius, or Pisces*; then be you confident it will be a Filly. For this have I often tryed, and found it seldome or never to fayle me, especially if the winde be either West or North (but West is best) at the time of her covering, and you will finde this my rule to be most infallible, for experience hath taught it me: And I have attained unto more knowledge by experience, then I was ever able to aspire unto, either by reading and study, or by hearing what others have dictated, taught, or told me: For wee have a maxime, *Experience is the best and ablest mistresse, and moderatrix.*

Now for the manner of the covering of your Mares, let her be brought into some place abroad, and there fastned to some strong post; then bring out to her some stoned Jade first to dally with her, and he will provoke her to an aptitude and desire of coity; which done, let the Stallion be led forth towards her, betwixt two or more lusty strong men who may be able to master him if he should prove unruly, and let him leape her; and let this be done in a morning betimes fasting; which done, another man standing by with a pail of cold water ready in his hand, in the very time when the Horse is dismounting, let him cast the cold water upon her shape, which by reason of the coldnesse, the strength of the cafter, and the suddennesse thereof, will cause her to shrink in, and trusse up her body, and it will be the meanes to make her retaine the seed in the matrix, otherwise the womb would not peradventure so soone enclose it, but for some time after, howsoever the womb

would draw together, but not so suddenly, whereby upon the Mares motion there might be some danger of dissolving. Take then away the Stallion, and let the Mare be put into some remote place alone, from sight and hearing of other Horses and Mares, but let her neither eat nor drinke in foure houres after, neither let her have any water at all till night, and then give her either a sweet mash, or white water. After she hath been thus Covered, you shall know whether or not she hath either conceived, or lost, or cast her seed, by many evident symptoms which will appeare to your eye; for if she retaineth a good stomach to her meat, and so continueth, if she do not neigh at hearing or sight of other horses, if she do not pisse oft times in the day, casteth not her eye about gazing continually at every noyse she heareth, pricketh not up her eares, and that in three or foure dayes after her covering, her belly seemeth to be more gant, her haire more slicke and close to her skin, shewing of a brighter colour, and she seemeth to fall away and become lean; if (I say) any of these Symptoms do appear in her, then is it an evident signe she hath kept her seed and conceiveth, but if the contrary appeare in her, then hath she lost it and ingendreth not.

But as for offering her the Horse againe ten dayes after, together with such like circumstances, I hold them impertinent for this place, being so frequently knowne and practised, and therefore my labour may well be spared. But for her keeping and ordring after her Covering, let her not drink that she desireth, but continue her with the same dyet which formerly she had before her covering for three weekes or a month after, lest the seed might fortune to be impaired, before the Colt be sufficiently

sufficiently formed in the wombe, and let her bee kept sweete and cleane as may bee, and that without any labour or exercise during that three weekes or moneth: After which tearme you may, if you please, inure her to moderate labour, wherein have a speciall care of foure things: First, that shee bee not at any time galloped, or runne off from her winde: Secondly, that shee bee not put to carry heavy burthens: Thirdly, that shee bee neither laboured or travelled in extreame heat: And lastly, that her exercise bee not such which may provoke her to sweat violently, for every of these things will cause her to miscarry.

1.
2.
3.
4.

Shee being thus with sole; shee must bee kept in the house untill mid-May, at least, and then let first her shooes bee taken off, her feet pared well, the Frush and heeles opened, and plates after the manner of running shooes (but not to come home to the heeles) set on; let her runne in the driest Ground you have, yet not so short of grasse, but that shee may at her ease fill her belly at least once a day, and about the latter end of September, (if not before) let her bee very carefully taken into the house, but so quietly, that you shall not endanger the hurting of her belly, either by the rushing of other Horses and Mares against her, or through her unruly leaping, or inconsiderate brushing against posts, doores, or the like. Let her bee kept thus in the house to the time of her soling, and long after, and let her diet be as before is prescribed.

And when the time of her soling approacheth, let her keeper attend carefully upon her, putting her into a house convenient for her, unhaltered and untied, lest in soling, the Colt receive damage, by reason that

Mares

Mares doe commonly cast their soles standing: Wherefore let not the roome whereinto you put her, bee too streight, but very warme (for warmth is a great comfort as well to Mares with sole, as in soling) and let good store of straw bee laied, that the Sole may fall from the Mare the softer, and bee in lesse danger of harme, and let her (I say) bee watched for feare the Sole come not right; and so soone as shee hath soled and licked it dry, let her keeper presently milke and stroake her, and that before the Colt doe sucke her, which will both cause her to give downe her milke, making the same to multiply, and also keepe the Udder that the milke doe not clod, which if it should doe, the Mare might happily in short time become dry, whereof if there bee any perill, I then advise you to draw as much milke from her as you can, and boile it with the leaves of Lavender, or Spike, and so bath her Udder therewith warme, continuing so daily to doe, untill by this meanes you have broken the curd, knobs, and knots, causing them to bee dissolved. And as for the water which shee is to drinke for some time after her soling, let it bee either sweete Mashes, or white water, and a moneth after her soling, give her a Mash, putting thereinto the powder of Brimstone, or Savin, or the like, which will bee a great preservation of the Colt; and then if shee bee moderately laboured either at Plough or Harrow, if shee will draw, as well the Mare as Colt will prosper the better; provided shee bee kept from raw meat while shee remaineth in the Stable, by which meanes shee will the sooner recover strength, lust, and courage, and have store of good milke, which will cause the Colt to thrive the better, and to grow to bee of the
greater

greater bone, which above all things is a matter of greatest consequence. And that you suffer not the Colt to sucke the Mare when shee cometh from worke, untill shee bee thoroughly cold, lest thereby you surfet the Colt.

Thus much I have thought fit to handle of this subject; and albeit I have laboured heerein to attaine to brevity, nevertheless the premises well considered, I shall not greatly offend in prolixity, howsoever this my manner of *breeding* being different from the old received Customes, will not (I doe assure mee) passe void of censure. But as touching old Customes, thus much I doe averre, that as they are in many cases of that force, as no Law is able to abrogate; so on the contrary part, many of them are so absurd and ridiculous, as nothing can bee more; for what saith the Civill Law? *Those things which by event or successe of time are found to bee pernicious or hurtfull, even those things ought to bee repealed, yea albeit they were at the first found profitable.* Which ground holdeth good in nothing so much as in old Customes, for of their absurdities, I am able to produce instances not a few; howsoever with many, *It is one of Hercules greatest labours to beate many a man from his old Customes bee they never so bad, albeit Custome is a meere Tyrant, and his sovereignty most insufferable,* as a grave Authour very well observeth.

CHAP. III.

How to make and order your Stable.



AVING thus waded into this mystery of Breeding, I hold it a thing very behoovful to be handled, how your Stable ought to be accommodated. First therefore your Stable should be scituate where the ayre is wholsome, pure, and good, and the ground dry: the structure would be either of free Stone or Brick, but Brick is best, most wholsome, and warmest: besides this benefit Brick hath, which Stone hath not, of being very dry, for Stone will weep, and sweat drops of water against raine and mysty weather, which begetteth damp, and causeth Rheumes in Horses. Your Stable ought not to have any unfavory Gutter, Channell, or Sinke neare to it, no Jakes, Hogsties, or Henroust, whereby to annoy it. It would be also seeled over head, and have strong doores, with locks, bolts, and barres unto it. The Rack would not be made too high, or too low, but placed in an indifferent proportion, and and so artificially set, that neither the dust or the hay-seeds may fall into his mane, or upon his neck and face. The manger would be set at an indifferent height, made deep, and of one entire piece, as well for strength as for conveniency to be kept sweet and cleane. Let the flore be pitched with flint, and not planked. The windows would be made with handsome shuts and casements, and well glazed, as well to keep out cold and winde, as also (when there may be cause) to let in the coole and fresh

fresh ayre. Againe, take heed there be no lome wall or plaister, so neare as that the Horse may reach thereto with his mouth: for upon that he will gnaw, which may do him much prejudice, and be the cause of much dangerous sicknes; for Lome and Lime are suffocating things, they will infect and putrifie the blood, endanger the Lungs, and be no friend to his winde: neither suffer any dung to lye neare him. Furthermore there would be made a faire Loft, wherein to lay hay, and convenient lodging chambers for your Grooms, whose nearnesse, together with their care and vigilancy might prevent many dangers and inconveniences which may accrue unto your Horses by night. Also let a neat Saddle-house be contrived with Bings for Provender, and in it Presses, wherein to lay up the Saddles, Bridles, and all other furniture appertaining to Horses, and an *Aqueduct* wherewith to bring water to the Stable. And lastly, other Stalls would be erected remote, wherein upon occasion to sever the sick from the sound. Many other accoutrements there are belonging to a perfect Stable, as partitions with boards, posts, and bars, with pins driven into every post, whereon to hang Bridles and the like; shelves also fastned to the wall serving for many uses, to place necessaries upon, &c. which being known to all men, will be needlesse for me here to repeat.

But you may peradventure startle at paving, rather then planking your flore, preferring planks as warmer, and much better then flint or a pitched flore can be; as also for that it is a new thing, little practised, and seldom heard.

But give me leave (I pray) a little to inform your

understanding in this one poynt, by which means your judgement may fortune to be much bettered. First therefore, whereas novelty may be objected, I shall most easily affoyle that point, even from the selfe-same ground in the civill Law, which I inserted in the conclusion of the precedent Chapter, *viz.* That things found to be prejudiciall, ought to be inhibited, although they might be thought needfull, and good in foreknown times. For that paving of Stables is better then planking them; I have reasons not a few wherewith to satisfie a reasonable man. First, it is much more durable and lasting, supposing the flore to be pitched by an expert workman: Secondly, it is lesse charge by much, and therefore in that point the better: Thirdly, for a Horse to stand continually upon a pitched flore, it emboldneth his feet, and treading the more: Fourthly, it is the most excellent thing that may be for Colts, who are unshod; for it hardeneth their hooves, so as by custome they will be as bold to go upon stones, rocky, and hard wayes, as Horses that are shod: neither will a pitched flore suffer the hooft to go abroad in manner of an Oyster: besides the use thereof will make their hooves more tough, durable, and hollow, insomuch as when they shall come to be shod, and to have exercise, they will carry their shooes much longer, better, and with more ease then otherwise, if they had been used to a planked flore.

Paving of a
Stable much
better then
planking.

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.

The Incon-
venience of a
Planked flore.

- 1.

Now on the contrary part, which concerneth the planked flore, that (I say) cannot in reason be so good by many degrees. First, it is more slippery, out of which reason a metled horse may soone be in danger to be lamed or spoyled by some sudden slip, whereof I have had

had often experience, which a pitched Stable is not so subject unto: Secondly, the planks often times shrinking, the Horſe (eſpecially if he be a ſtirrier who is accuſtomed to curvet in the Stable) may eaſily break a plank, and his foot getting into a hole, or between the planks, the Horſe plunging and ſtriving may eaſily break his leg before he ſhall be able to get it forth, whereof I have more then once been *ocularus teſtis*: Thirdly, when you put forth your horſes to run at graſſe all, or the moſt part of Summer, during which time the ſcorching heats will ſo ficcicate and dry the planks, which will cauſe them to warp, and the pinns which holdeth them down to the joyces will rot, and ſo the planks give way, eſpecially when horſes (who not being handled in ſome months before) becomming wild, ramage, and unruly, are newly brought into the Stable, who feeling the planks to move, yield, and give way under them, will fall from ſtarting thereat, to ſtinking, leaping, bounding, and plunging, till they have diſlocated the planks, and thereby have endangered both themſelves, the reſidue of their fellows, and thoſe who might come to their help and ſuccour, which is a thing very frequent in a flore of this nature: Fourthly, whereas you may imagine that a planked flore is warmer then a paved or pitched, I do know the contrary; for your pitched flore hath no vaults or channels under them, like as hath your planked, wherewith to convey the water which paſſeth from the horſes; by which means the horſe lyeth over a moyſt and dampiſh place and vault; and beſides that, the evill ſavour of the horſe-piſſe will be evermore in their noſe, which is moſt unwholſome, noyſome, and many times the cauſe of much infirmity;

neither can it in reason be so warm as is the pitched flore, for that the chinks and awger-holes bored through the planks (which must alwayes be kept open to letforth the urine) doth give way to the cold wind, which continually ascendeth up to the horse, as well lying as standing, cannot but do him much dammage. I do therefore affirm, that if your Groom have a care to litter his horse well, so as he may lye soft and warm, (which is a prime property appertaining to his office) your horse will then prosper, and like much better upon a pitched flore then he can upon a planked; provided your flore be laid even, not higher before then behind, more then so much that may make the water to avoyd to his hinder feet, where there ought to be a small gutter to cause it to passe away; for in raising your flore so much, I doe abstract from the ancient ill custome, by reason that a Horse standeth higher before then he doth behind, his hinder legs will swell, and so he becometh lame; besides, it giveth him a taint in the back and kidneys; and to conclude, his long standing in this uneasie manner, begetteth in the poor beast much paine and grieft, and this occasioneth unto him (which would not otherwise be) the putting forth of Wind-gals, Pains, Scratches, and such like noysome forances.

Another thing may peradventure bee thought strange, which I have handled in the former Chapter, where I intreate of *breeding*; in that I would have the time of the Mares *foling* to bee either in *December* or *January*, this being in the very depth of Winter, as well when the season is commonly coldest, and when little or no grasse is to bee had, so as of necessity the Mare must

Of the time of
Foling.

must bee housed, and fed with hard meate, whereby her milke will bee in so small a proportion, as either to endanger the starving of the Colt, or else at leastwise keepe him so poore and feeble, as not to bee able to grow, thrive, or prosper to any purpose. To satisfie this scruple, I say from long experience, that the Winter season for a Mare to sole in, beyond all peradventure, is the very best, as well for the Mare as the Colt, supposing shee bee kept in a warme house; and as for her milke, shee will have great plenty, and that much better and more nourishing then that milke which the Colt shall sucke from his Damme at grasse, so as thereby the Colt shall bee more lusty, strong, healthy, greater of bone and stature, better able to endure hardnesse, better knit, cleaner limbed, more readily joynted and hooved, and keep his flesh better then that Colt that is soled in *May, June*, or any the hotter months: and my reason is, that albeit grasse causeth greater plenitude of milke, (which I deny not) yet is not the same so good and nourishing: for the milke which the Colt sucketh at grasse, is very thin and watry; and albeit winter food begetteth not so great a quantity of milke, yet the same will be thicker, more substantiall and of greater nutriment, (the Mare being very well fed) which will feed the Colt very fat, and make him more lusty and strong, (as I have sayd) then if the Mare the whole Summer and Winter through, and in all the extremity of heats and colds had been kept abroad. Moreover, the Colt besides the milke he draweth from the Mare, will also feed with her upon Hay, Oates, Bran, and such like food, which will do him much pleasure: But some againe will say, that their teeth are so tender,

The Colt better nourished in the Stable, then at grasse in winter.

as that they will not be able to chew and eat such kind of hard meates; I answer, they are very much mistaken, for, not only my selfe alone, but sundry others have with me been eye-witnesses of the contrary; therefore this needs no further solution. And whereas it hath been objected unto me, that that Colt which is foled in *May*, or *Solstice*, in that season, the Mare will have store of milke, thus much I do ingenuously confesse, but then what manner of milk will it be? None other then such as shall be marvellous thin and watrish, (as I sayd before) which abundance will also fayle, even when the Colt hath most need thereof, that is, when the Colt beginneth to come up to some strength, and at what time he should receive most nutriment; to wit, when the winter commeth on, whose Snows, Frosts, cold raines, and Flouds will not a little nip and pinch the Colt, and enfeeble the Mare in such terrible and desperate manner, that she will want her former plenty of food, warm and dry lodging, and other necessary reliefe and sustentation, and so in like manner, her abundance of milke, at what time her poore Colt should depend upon the enfeebled Mare, who is not able to supply its owne need: by meanes whereof it must necessarily fall out, that she must bring both her selfe and her Colt to extreame poverty, not being able to sustaine her owne life, much lesse her Colts and her own, and so become feeble before winter be halfe spent; and over and above all this, the Colt will by his running abroad with the Mare, become so salvage and wilde, as that if any infirmity should happen to seize upon it, its owne unrulinesse will be so great, that the Cure may thereby become the more difficile: for to speake truly, infinite have

have been, and dayly are the numbers of Colts; yea, and those many times rightly bred, which have miscarried and perished in this nature.

I do therefore conclude, and as a friend to my Countrey averre, that the ablest way to breed up the best and most serviceable Horses, is (as I have before inculcated) after this method and none other; and therefore I am bold to advise all noble Gentlemen, who are lovers of good Horses, and of this mystery, to make tryall, and to put these my rudiments in execution, and he will never (I do well assure me) hereafter, either alter or swerve from them; for of this kinde of *breeding*, I have had more then forty yeares good experience: during which time, I intimated these my grounds to a Knight, an intimate friend of mine, who was a great lover of good Horses, and as great a Breeder, as a lover of them, and very well versed in Horse-manship, who hearing my reasons, and throughly digesting them, approved of them so well, as that he fell to follow these my instructions, and esteeming them sufficient, would never be brought from them after; he affirming, no way comparable to this: for he found by plaine demonstration, that whereas in former times in breeding (as commonly he did, ten or twelve Colts yearly;) when they came to Backing, Riding, and proof of those ten or twelve, he thought himselfe well appayed, and his labour and cost well bestowed, if two or three at the most proved right, and to his minde; whereas ever after, in ten Colts thus bred and reared up, hardly any one missed, which proved not right and to his good liking: and this manner of *breeding*, made him more in love with this mystery, then ever before, reason dictating

ting it so well unto him. For, most certaine it is, when the Stallion and Mare are both right, and have all their true attributes, and the time, season, and manner of breeding, with all circumstances thereunto belonging, punctually and in every poyn^t duely observed; it will be a hard matter for the Colt to prove ill: but if otherwise, then marvell not if the Colt answer not your expectation, according to the Greeke Adage, which saith; *καὶς κόραυθ' καὶν ἄνδρ,* *Fade Sire, Fade Colt.* Wherefore if upon tryall it shall appear to you, that you have hitherto been to seeke of the true grounds, and of the originall causes why you have not bred so many good Horses as you have desired, doe not then wonder that *The cause of your error, and of so great a mischief hath stoln upon and deceived you:* for the great decay of good Horses, together with those infinite errors in breeding, and Horse-man-ship, that increase that is, being in so vile a manner of base Jades; have so swarmed in this kingdom, as that (a lamentable case to be related) of one rightly bred, we now a dayes have a thousand Jades; to the great dishonour, disprofit, and weakning both of King and Countrey. And what is the reason? I shall in a word tell you: *It is impossible for a man to bring his work to its wished perfection, who never knew the true grounds of his principles.*

CHAP. IV.

Of the Marks, Colours, and Shapes of Horses.

HE next thing befitting our subject, is to speake (albeit briefly) of the Colours, Marks, and perfect Shapes of Horses: Wherein I will first deliver other mens opinions, and lastly, mine owne. Some there be who hold that Colours, Marks, and Shapes are little materiall to make up a perfect Horse, which I will not contradict, for my meaning is not to traduce or controule any man: but this I will say, that if a good Horse have these properties adherent to his goodnesse, then is he questionlesse in much better esteem; for if beauty be added to his other inward vertues, then is he (like to the nightingale in the beginning of Aprill, heard, and hearkened unto) more praiseworthy, and better prized. For a Horse, if he be good and serviceable, well mettled, bold, and hardy, of a gentle condition, of a round and comely trot and pace, lightly and well borne, obedient mouthed, sure on foot, tough, strong, and easie; will (I say) not such a Horse bee well esteemed? But if together with these good properties, there shall be added, good colour, true marks, and perfect shape, which causeth him to appeare most beautifull to all beholders: will not these endowments set him the better forth, and cause him to be the better esteemed, of every man desired, and much more money offered for him? nay, shall

not you (whose the Horse is) be come unto, be sued unto, have letters sent you from sundry friends, and will not your selfe prize him at a higher rate then otherwise you would have done? yes assuredly; and hereof I make no question. True it is, and I must confesse no lesse, that a Horse may be very good, and performe his function very well, who hath neither good colour, true marks, or perfect shape; neverthelesse, these extrinsecall vertues are more frequently to be found, and better observed to bee in good Horses, in whom are colour, marks, and shape, than in Horses which are otherwise. Wherefore because these things are termed exterior vertues, and therefore takes it object from the eye only, I will conjoyne them altogether in this my discourse, and shew you what hath beene, and is the opinion of both ancient and modern Writers. *Virgil* in his *Georgicks*, handling most accurately sundry points of Husbandry, among other things, in his third book of *Georgicks*, describeth the Horse, as well his breeding, and his severall sorts of employments, as his colour, shape, and marks; yea, and that in most exquisite manner: And thus he beginneth:

Let the Males goe
without restraint to Venery, and so
By timely breeds preserve a perfect kinde.
Their first age best, all wretched mortals finde;
After diseases and old age do come,
Labour, and deaths inexorable doome.
There still will be, whose bodies with thy will
Thou would'st wish chang'd. Therefore reparaire them still,
And lest thy kinde quite lost thou finde too late,
Prevent the losse and yearely propagate.

And

And such a choyce you must in Horses make,
 By him, whom you for Stallion meane to take,
 As hope of all the race, elect with care,
 Even from a tender Fole such Colts as are
 Of generous race, streight, when at first they'r fol'd,
 walke proudly; their soft joynts scarce knit, and bold,
 Dare lead the way, into the rivers enter,
 And dare themselves on unknowne seas to venture.
 Nor frighted with vaine noyses, tosty neck'd,
 short headed, slender belly'd, and broad back'd;
 Broad and full brested; let his colour be
 Browne-bay, or gray, white proves not commonly,
 Nor flesh-colour, when wars alarums sound,
 His nostrils gather, and breath fire, no ground
 Can hold his shaking joynts, his feare advances,
 His thick curl'd Mane on his right shoulder dances.
 His back-bone broad and strong, the hollow ground
 Trampled beneath his hard round boose doth sound.
 Such was that Horse, which Spartan Pollux tam'd,
 Fierce Cyllarus, and Mars his Horses sam'd
 By th'old Greek Poets, or those two that drew
 Achilles Chariot: such a shape and hew
 At his wives comming, flying Saturne tooke,
 And all high Pelion with shrill neighings shooke,
 yet when disease or age have brought to nought
 This horses spirit, let him at home be wrought,
 Nor spare his base old age. A Horse growne old
 Though he in vaine attempt it of, is cold
 To Venerie, and when he's brought to try
 (Like that great strengthlesse fire in stubble dry)
 In vaine he rages; therefore first 'tis good
 To marke his age, his courage and his brood,

with other arts how sad a horse will be
 when overcome, how proud of victory.
 Dost thou not see when through the field in speed
 Two racing Chariots from the Lists are fled,
 The young mens hearts all rise, as forth they start,
 And feare with joy confounded strikes each heart ?
 They give their Horse the raynes, and lash them on,
 Their hurried wheel'es enflaming, as they run ;
 Now low they goe, now rise as they would flye
 Through th' empty ayre, and mount up to the sky :
 No resting, no delay, a sandy cloud
 Darkens the ayre, they on through shoutings loud
 Of standers by, all sweat, and som'd do fly,
 So great's their love of prayse and victory.
 First Eriethonius Chariots did invent,
 And by foure Horses drawn in triumph went.
 The Peletronian Lapithes first found
 The use of backing Horses, taught them bound,
 And run the Ring ; taught Riders t' exercise
 In martiall ranks both equall Mysteries :
 The Masters of both these have equall need
 To finde out Horse of courage, and good speed,
 Though ne're so nobly borne, though oft in game
 They won the prize, and for their Countrey claime
 Epire, or sam'd Mycenæ, or else tooke
 Their birth at first from Neptunes trident stroke.
 These things observ'd at Covering time, they care
 To make their Stallion strongly fat and faire
 The father of their brood ; for him they mow
 Choyce grasse, sweet streams, and corne to him allow,
 Lest he should faile his pleasant worke to doe,
 And th' young ones starvelings from his hunger grow.

But they of purpose keep the females light
 And leane: and when they have an appetite
 To venery, let them not drinke nor eate,
 And course them oft, and tye them in the beate,
 When in full Barnes the ripe corne crowded lies,
 As empty chaffe before the west wind flies.
 And this they doe, lest too much rancknesse make
 The breeding, soyle, and fatted furrowes take
 Too dull a sense; but that they should draw in
 Seed with desire, and lodge it safe within.
 But if thy minde thou more to war doe give,
 Or through Jov's wood, wouldst racing Chariots drive,
 And swiftly passe by Pifa's River side:
 Thy first taske is to make thy Horse abide
 To see the soldiers armes, heare their loud voyces,
 The trumpets sound, and rattling Chariots noyses,
 And oft within the stable let him heare
 The clashing whip, heel more and more appeare
 To be delighted with his masters prayse,
 And when he strokes his neck, his courage rayse.
 When first hees wean'd from sucking, let him heare
 These things, and trembling be compel'd to weare
 Soft halters oft about his head; but when
 His life hath seene four Summers, teach him then
 To run the Ring, in order high to beat
 The ground, and both wayes skilfully curweat
 As if he toyl'd, then let him with his speed
 Challenge the wind, and from all curbing freed,
 Scowr o're the champion fields so swift, that there
 The sands no print of his light-foot doe beare.
 So when the Scythians gusts, and North-west wind
 From their cold quarter fiercely blow, and bind

The dry clouds up: all o're the waving field
 Corne bows with equall blasts; woods tops do yield
 A murmuring noyse, long waves roule on the shore,
 Forth flies the wind, sweeps lands and waters o're;
 Thy Horse thus ordred to the races end
 All bloody fom'd, victoriously will tend,
 Or else his tamed neck will better bow
 To draw the Belgian Chariot; let him grow
 Full fed, whence he is broken well, nor feare
 His growth; so fed before he's broke, he'll beare
 Too great a stomach patiently to feele
 The lashing whip, or chem the curbing steele.
 But no one care doth more their strength improve,
 Then still to keep them from veneriall love. &c.

See how the Horses joynts all tremble, when
 A Mare's known sent he through the ayre doth feele;
 No stripes, no strength of men, no bit of steele,
 No Rocks, nor Dikes, or Rivers in his way,
 which roule whole mountaines, can his fury stay. &c.

But strangest far
 Is those Mare's furious love, which Venus sent,
 when they their Master Glaucus piece-meale rent.
 Love makes them mount o're lofty Gargarus,
 And swim the streame of swift Ascanius.
 And when Lov's flame their greedy marrow burnes,
 Most in the Spring, (for heat then most returns
 To th' bones) upon high rocks they take their places,
 And to the western wind all turn their faces,
 Suck in the blasts, and (wondrous to be sayd)
 Grow great with sole without the horses ayd.
 Then o're the Rocks and Valleys all they run,
 Not to the North, nor to the rising Sun,

Nor Caurus quarter, nor the South whence rise
 Black showers which darken and disturb the skies.
 Hence flows thick poyson from the groyns of these
 which Shepheards truly call Hippomanes;
 Hippomanes, which oft bad Step-dames use,
 And charming words, and banefull herbs infuse.
 But time irreparable flies away. &c.

Du-Bartas that famous French Poet, doth likewise in his Treatise of the Handy-crafts, excellently describe the colour, shape, and properties of a good Horse, in the fourth part of the first day of the second week, which beginneth thus :

Cain as they say with his deep fear disturbed,
 Then first of all th' undaunted Courser curbed;
 That whilst about anothers feet he run
 With lusty speed he might his deaths-man shun.
 Among a hundred brave, light, lusty Horses,
 (with curious eye marking their curious forces)
 He chooseth one for his industrious proof,
 With round, high, hollow, smooth, brown, jetty hoof;
 With pasterns short, upright, (but yet in mean)
 Dry sinowy shanks, strong, flesseless knees, and lean,
 With Hart-like legs, broad breast, and large behind,
 With body large, smooth flanks, and double chin'd:
 A crested neck, bow'd like a half-bent bow,
 whereon a long thin curled Mane doth flow:
 A firm full taile, touching the lowly ground,
 with dock between two fair fat buttocks round.
 A pricked ear that rests as lit le space
 As his light foot; a lean, bare, bonny face,

Thin joule, his head yet of a middle size,
 Full lively flaming, sprightly rouling eyes:
 Great foming mouth, hot fuming nostrils wide,
 Of chesnut hair, his forehead starry'd:
 Two milky feet, a feather on his breast,
 whom seven years old at the next grasse he guest.

This comely Fenner, gently first he wins,
 And then to back him adively begins.
 Steady and streight he sits, turning his sight
 Still twixt the ears of his Palfrey light.
 The chased horse, such thrall ill suffering,
 Begins to snuffe, to snort, to leap, to fling;
 And flying swift his fearfull Rider makes,
 Like some unskilfull Lad that undertakes
 To bold some Ships Helm, whilst the headlong tyde
 Carries away its vessell, and her guide;
 who neer to drowned in the jaws of death,
 Pale, fearfull, shivering, faint, and out of breath,
 A thousand times (to heaven erected eyes)
 Repents him of so bold an enterprize:
 But sitting fast, lesse hurt then fear'd, Cain
 Boldens himselfe, and his brave horse againe
 Brings him to pace, from pacing to his trot,
 From trot to gallop, after runs him out
 In full career, and at his courage smiles,
 In sitting still, he runs so many miles.

His pace is faire and free, his trot is light
 As Tigers course, or Swallowes nimble flight:
 And his brave gallop seems as swift to go,
 As Biscaine Dart, or Shasts from Russian Bow.

But roaring Canon from his smoking throat,
 Never more speeey spewes the thundring shot

(That

(That in an Army mows whole Squadrons downe,
 And batters, Bulwarks of a summon'd towne)
 As t his light-Horse sends, if he do but feele
 His Bridle slack, and in his side the heele;
 Shunning himselfe, his sinewy strength he stretcheth,
 Flying the earth, and flying ayre he catcheth;
 Borne whirle-wind like, he makes the trampling ground
 Shrink under him, and shake with doubling sound,
 And when the sight no more pursue he may,
 In fieldy clouds he vanisbeth away.

The wise wax't Rider not esteeming best,
 To take too much now of his lusty beast;
 Restraines his fury, then with learned wand,
 The triple-corvet makes him understand:
 With skilfull voyce he gently cheares his pride,
 And on his neck his flatt'ring palme doth glide:
 He stops him steady still, new breath to take,
 And in the same path brings him softly back:
 But th'angry Steed, rising and rearing proudly,
 Striking the stones, stamping, and neighing lowly;
 Cals for the Combate, plunges, leaps and prances,
 Besomes the path, with sparkling eyes he glances;
 Champs on his burnisht Bit, and gloriously
 His nimble fet-locks listeth belly-high;
 All side-long jaunts, on either side he justles,
 And's waving crest coragiously he bristles;
 Making the gazers glad on every side
 To give more roome unto his portly pride.

Caine gently strokes him, and now sure in seat,
 Ambitiously seeks still some fresher feat:
 To be more famon, one while trots the Ring,
 Another while he doth him backward bring:

Then of all feare he makes him lightly bound,
 And to each hand to menage rightly round:
 To stop, to turne, to caper, and to swim,
 To dance, to leap, to hold up any limme:
 And all so done, with time, grace, ordred skill,
 As both had but one body and one will:
 T'one for his part no little glory gaines,
 T'other through practise by degrees attaines
 Grace in his gallop, in his pace agility,
 Lightnesse of head, and in his stop facility:
 Strength in his leap, and stedfast menagings,
 Aptnesse in all, and in his course new wings. &c.

A famous Ferrier of *Paris* delivereth these colours
 of a good Horse, which because they are in French verse,
 I have Englished them *verbatim*, thus:

If you desire a Horse thee long to serve,
 Take a browne-bay, and him with care preserve:
 The gray's not ill, but he is prized far
 That is cole-black, and blazed with a star:
 If for thyselfe, or friend, thou wilt procure
 A Horse, let him white-Lyard be, he'l long endure.

Of the colours
 of a Horse.

And the same French-man sheweth, what be also the
 properties and markes which a good Horse ought to
 have; whereof three are to be of an Oxe, three of a
 Fox, three of a Hart, and three of a Woman. Those
 three of an Oxe, are to have, a faire and full eye, a large
 neck, and to be strong and short joynted. Those three
 of a Fox, are, to have a comely and short trot, small, and
 long eares, and a bushy tayle. Those three of a Hart,
 are

are to have leane and drye legs, to be well risen before, and a leane head. Those three of a Woman, are to be large and faire breasted, to have a beautifull and full haire, and gentle to his Rider and Keeper.

The same Authour delivereth yet further what ought to be the colour and shape of a good Horse. Those Horses (saith he) that are of a chest-nut colour, with Mane, and Tayle black, are commonly good. The Sorrell, if his Mane, Tayle, Knees, Fet-lockes, and list along his back, be black, and are for the most part good, if they be otherwise free from evill conditions; as not at any time to lye downe in the water, restife, and such like bad qualities. The Brown-bay, Dun, Dapple-grey, iron-grey, if their extremities be black, are many times very good, if they be well chosen. All Horses (saith he) must have good Legs, good Feet, and their Fet-lockes must not be overcharged with hayre; they must have also good eyes, obedient mouthed, and well metled: they must not have fat or fleshy legs, but to have a great belly, well risen before, streight backt, not charged with over-great shoulders, he must have a thin bended neck, like a Carps back, a good Crouper, large Thighes, round well spread Buttocks, and a traine well set on: a leane, dry, and thin Head, a full sparkling Eye, a wide Nostrill, a wide, thin, and leane Jaw, a loose Tropell, a well-trussed-together Body, and Legs not too long; being thus accoutred and shaped, it is very probable he will be very serviceable. Hee also sheweth signes whereby to know the good or evill sight of a Horse. Every horse (saith he) hath a feather in his Face betwixt his eyes: if the sayd feather bee high above the eyes, then hath hee assuredly a good

Of the shape
of a Horse.

How to know
the good sight
from the bad
of a Horse.

and perfect sight; but if the feather be below his eyes, the horse then hath oft times a bad sight: Observe this rule well, and you shall finde it to be a thing most certaine. He also giveth other marks touching the Legs of a horse: which briefly are, that a horse must have his fore-legs above the knees, to be strong, flat, and large, albeit the lower part of the Legs be small: provided he have a good foot, which supposing, hee may prove a horse of long continuance. Another Authour speaking of the colours of Horses, doth denominate them after this manner, *viz.* A Browne-Bay, a Blacke-Roan, or Black full of silver hayrs, Cole-Black, Chest-nut, Dark-Bay, Fly-bitten, or White-Lyard. The Browne-Bay is so highly esteemed with all Nations, as that they doe with one assent alwayes rank him in the very first place of colours: the Italians and French doe so much prize the Brown-Bay, as that they evermore call that colour *Bayary Loyall*, the Loyall Bayard, or more properly according to our English phrase, trusty Bayard. The French, Italians, and Germans doe very far commend and prefer three sorts of Colours in Horses; to wit, the Browne-Bay, the Chest-nut, and the Cole-Black; but they doe evermore preferre the Browne-Bay to the first place. Master *Blundevile*, and Master *Markham* doe both accord in the choyce of the Colours of the Horse, and they never doe faile in preferring the Browne-Bay to the first place.

What shall I neede speake any more of Colours; I will now proceede to their Markes, wherein, albeit in most things all in a manner doe agree; yet onely in some few points there is some small difference. All generally assent in the white Starre, and white foote,

Which bee the
best colours
of a Horse.

if the blaze bee not too broad, or the foote too high white about the Pasterne, for then it is called hosed, or buskened: Some commend the shimme, or rase downe the face, if it bee not much broader then a three-penny silke Ribben, but then it must come to end just between the Nostrills, and not bee more on the one side of the face, then on the other. This indeede is of all true Horse-men esteemed a most beautifull good Marke, and well becommeth a good Horse. Some would have the foote being white, to bee on the far foote behinde, and some againe on the neare foote before: I have heard some highly commend the Horse to have two white feete a crosse, to wit, the far foote behinde, and the neare foote before, like as had a Horse of the old Lord *Sandes*, being a Courser, which hee brought out of *Italy*, with so much charge, labour, and perill of his life, (as his Lordship did fundry times report unto mee,) which was of a darke bay, and his two feete a crosse white; howsoever I have knowne some Horse-men dislike of the same Markes, yet I could never heare the reasons of their dislike. A Knight of my acquaintance would highly commend the Horse, who had a white foote, which was bespeckled with black motly spots; affirming that a Horse so marked did betoken good mettle, great valour, and a heroick spirit, for hee would alwayes call such a Horse, *Equus generosus*, a Horse of a brave spirit; and this hee would report, was taught him by old Sir *Henry Lea*, that famous Horse-man, and no lesse excellent Breeder, of whom this Knight bought many delicate Colts, some of which were thus marked. All good Horse-men doe attest, that the Horse with much white upon his face, raw nosed, sheath, yard, tucell,

Of the markes
of a Horse.

ell, and hooves white, skin white, and legs hosed, and wall-eyed; is generally weake, faint, of a cowardly condition, tender, and washy of flesh, subject to rebellion, restifeness, to starting, stumbling, evill sighted, subject to tire, dangerous to his Keeper, for biting and striking; and in a word, of a most base and evill condition. For *the countenance is the true Index of the mind: And a lewd looke prognosticateth a lewd condition: And againe, a deformed countenance doth delineate a wicked and deformed disposition and manners.* It is holden for a good Marke in a Horse to have many Feathers about his body, as upon his forehead, so it bee scituated above the eyes, and the higher it stands, the better: Also upon the middle of the Neck neare to the Crest, under the Neck in the middle of the Throple, upon the Brest, and upon both the Flanks, and upon both Buttocks, which for Horses to have Feathers in these, and such like places, is most commendable.

Feathers holden to bee a good marke in a Horse.

Now as touching the perfect and true shape of a Horse, wherein wee have more contrariety of opinions, then are either in the Colour or Marks, whereof I have given you a taste already: Neverthelesse, I will demonstrate how far commonly all doe meete in the shape of a well timbred Horse. First therefore it is required that the hoofe bee black, smooth, dry, large, round, and hollow: The Pasterns straight and upright, Fetlocks short, the legges straight and flat, called also lath-legged, the knees bony, leane and round, the neck long, high-rear'd, and great towards the Breast, the Breast large and round, the Eares small, sharpe, long, and upright, the Forehead leane and large, the Eyes great, full, and black, the Browes well filled, and shooting outwards, the Jawes wide, slender, and leane, the Nostrills wide,

and

The perfect shape of a Horse.

and open, the Mouth great, the Head long, and leane like to a Sheepe, the Mane thinne and large, the Withers sharpe and poynted, the Back short, even, plaine, and double chined, the Sides and Ribbes deepe, large, and bearing out like the cover of a Trunke, and close shut at the huckle-bone, the Belly long, and great, but hid under the ribs, the Flanks full, yet gaunt, the Rump round, plaine, and broad, with a large space betwixt the Buttocks, the Thighs long and large, with well fashioned bones, and those fleshy, the Hams dry, and straight, the Trunchion small, long, well set on, and well couched, the Trayne long, not too thick, and falling to the ground, the Yard and Stones small; and lastly, the Horse to bee well risen before. And to conclude, the perfect shape of a Horse, according as a famous Horseman hath described, is in a few words, thus; *Viz.* A broad Forehead, a great Eye, a leane Head, thinne, slender, leane, wide Jawes, a long high reared Neck, high reared Withers, a broad deepe Chest, and Body, upright Pasternes, and a narrow Hoofe: And this is the common allowed, and approved shape of a perfect Horse; so as if any of these things bee deficient in him, hee cannot bee sayd to bee a Horse of a perfect shape: Wherefore I conclude that if a Horse of a good Colour, well marked, and rightly shaped, and right also by Syre and Mare; it will bee seldome seen that hee should prove ill, unlesse his Nature bee alienated, and marred, either in the Backing and Riding, or else that hee bee otherwise wronged, and most shamefully abused by the meanes of a haire-braine, negligent, or inconsiderate Rider or Groome. But I may in this poynt bee taxed to hold a Paradox; for some may object

ject unto mee, that many times Horses, who are of the best Colours, best Markes, and truest shapes, doe nevertheless prove arrant Jades, restiffe, stubborn, ill natured, subject to tyring, and the like: I answer, I acknowledge all this to be most true, for I have knowne Horses, who upon their first view, have beene in extrinsecall shew so hopefull, as that they have promised what a man could expect from them; which notwithstanding when they have come to the test, they have beene a scandall to their sex; but this is not a thing frequent, for in every one of these who have thus miscarried; you shall have twenty who will prove right, and answerable to your minde: I have also known Horses, which wanting these good attributes, and who have beene as different from those wee call good, even as Chalke is from Cheefe, who have proved very good Horses: howbeit I will not counsell you to breed upon such an one, who albeit hee may bring you Colts, yet I dare not promise you hee shall ever bring you a good Colt, whereof I have oftentimes made tryall, as well for Horses of Mennage, as for Hunters; and Horses for the Course. Neither neede there any more be sayd upon this subject.

CHAP. V.

Of the Office of the Rider and Groome.

Having now bred Colts according to my instructions, which you may well hope will prove to your mind and best liking, neverthelesse some things there yet remaine whereof duly to consider; and that is, that when you have thus (I say) bred your Colts, which you may very well hope are right, your eye and judgement for Shape, Colour, and Marks promising no lesse; it then behooveth you to be very cautelous in the Handling, Breaking, Riding, & well-ordring them, whether you intend them for Menage, Course, Hunting, or the Rode; in any of which an especiall care would be had to provide you of Riders, Grooms, and Keepers, such as shall be known to be expert in their faculties; in which principally consisteth either their direct making, or marring, and finall ruine. For we cannot say, that a Colt (yet unhandled) at three or foure years of age, is, or can be a perfect good Horſe, whilst hee remaineth (I say) unriden, unhandled, and unmade, untill such time as he hath been taken up into the Stable, made gentle, taught to lead, content to be shod, to be Back'd, Broken, Ridden, Wayed, Mouthed; and to bee brieve, brought to his utmost perfection. By this time you will come to be able to know and understand his true Worth, Ver-

tue, Nature, Disposition, and Quality, his Pace, his Raine, or Bearing, his Toughnesse, Strength, and Affability, his true worth, and goodnesse, and what other attributes are befitting a generous Horse.

What manner
of man a Ri-
der ought to
be.

His Rider therefore must bee an expert and able Horse-man, and his Keeper every way as sufficient; otherwise what defects you shall find in your Horse, are not to be attributed to him, but either to his Rider, or to the Groome. Wherefore your care must be, that both Rider and Groome be knowne sufficient, lest for want of true science, your Horse may est-soones be brought to assume such sinister conditions, from which he will not be weaned in a long time after. Wherefore if your Rider be knowne to bee an able man, and your Groome sufficiently skilfull, you must then expect that perfection from your horse, you ever hoped. For my part thus much I aver, that this Noble Science (Noble, I call it, for that it is a faculty well bebecoming a truly Noble Gentleman) is an art wherein I have beene versed and travelled for morethen forty yeares, as well at home, as in parts abroad, in which I have most diligently consumed much time, as well to the labour of my body and minde, as to my no small expence: and it doth not a little trouble me that in places where I come here in *England*, I doe finde so few Horse-men, (considering it is an Iland that doth abound in Horses, whereof no Kingdome under heaven more) and yet so many Braggadochies there be, who will so crack and boast of their skill in this heroick Science, and when I shall begin to discourse with them of Horseshanship, they will talk so fillily, and so impertinently, as makes me blush to heare them: insomuch as I have much trouble with
my

my patience in forbearing to let them know their absurd folly: and if I but aske them any easie question concerning this mystery, they presently fall into strange and preposterous discourses, venting many incredible wonders, as far from sense, and as high above the Moon, as the Moon is above us, and they are as poore, and as ignorant in the true nature and knowledge of the Art, as not to be able to understand the very first grounds and principles in Horsemanship. Others there bee, who have attained to so much superficiall speculative knowledge by reading the works of Master *Blundevile*, Master *Markham*, and others, getting thereby some glimpse of speculation, but lesse true practise, (wherein is as much difference as betwixt us and the Antipodes,) and therefore in what esteeme they either are or can bee among Horsemen, is most easie to be imagined. Others there are, who being so active and dexterous, as to be able to sit a rough, unridden Colt, a few plunges, by fast holding with both hands to the Mane and Pummell, and by clinging with their legs close to the body of the horse, rill by striving and his violent disordered agitation, hee hath put himselfe from off his winde; he will not stick presently to promise to himselfe, the true and entire mystery of able Horsemanship. Others againe I oft meet with, who by sometimes frequenting the Muzc, where Riders use to menage; who after have made no bones to cry themselves up for as good and as able Horsemen, as any in *England*. Others I doe very well know, who by reading, have made some petty practise howsoever (God knowes) to very small purpose (so far forth as their diminitive skill was able to extend) upon such (not rightly bred Geldings, and small Nags of their

owne; wherein they have assumed unto themselves so much pretended knowledge, as that they have in their disjoynted discourses, not spared to tax the famous *Alexanders*, and other eminent Riders of this our Kingdome for Novices, and meere ignorant Horsemen. Such (I say) is the vanity and arrogance of these our dayes, in which ignorance dareth to adventure to traduce knowledge, and Vice lay an obloquy upon Vertue. For *unlesse a man do arrive unto the depth of profound knowledge, he shall be derided; but like as he either hath or hath it not, he shall be either commended or scorned.* For you shall not see one in a hundred of these pretenders of knowledge; who doth not so much as understand the terms of this generous mystery; and therefore I may truly say of them: that *Not to know the termes or principles, is to be ignorant of the Art it selfe:* And yet I have knowne some of these so impudently weak, as to take upon them to teach, whereat I have not a little marvelled, it being a generall received rule, *viz. It is impossible for a man to teach that which he never learned.* And further a venerable Authour saith, *He that will be his owne scholler, shall be sure to have a foole to his master.* For assuredly, *great folly and weaknesse is to be observed in that man, who shall take upon him to be a master or teacher, who never knew what it was to be a scholler.*

But if you desire to have your Colts come to the height of perfection, let then your care bee to furnish your selfe of a good Rider, and such an one who is well knowne and cryed up to bee an exquisite Horseman. He must not be of life dissolute, or debauched, nor of nature harsh, furious, cholerick, or hayre-brained: for the least of either of these vices, are unbeseeming a per-
son

son of this profession: but he must be of life sober, and in his function laborious and diligent, of complexion Flegmaticque, and patient, he must be master of his passions; for *A wise man knoweth how to conquer and overcome himselfe*: for that Rider that is cholericke, rash, hasty, and soone provoked to impatience, can never make a good Horseman, let him love the Art never so well, neither shall hee bee able to make a Horse so perfect as otherwise hee might have done, were hee otherwise conditioned; but let him apply his best endeavours, yet that Horse hee maketh, shall have defects, which his inconsiderate harshnesse hath caused. For if your yong horse be rightly organized, and as well natured, as well mettled, and as correspondent for markes and colours, he seldome proves ill in the making, supposing his Rider be master of his Art, but if otherwise, by which meanes he do fall into imperfections or vices: it is not much to be wondred at, for those his evill conditions and faults are not so much to be imputed to the horse, as to his teacher, and as touching curfines and correction to bee used to young Horses, wee have a generall rule in Horsemanship, which is, *that he is not cryed up for a good Horseman, who wanteth knowledge how to bring his horse to perfection by sweet and gentle meanes, rather then by correction and severe chastisement*: yet that correction must sometimes be used, no man but knoweth, to bee as necessary as his meate; neverthelesse let correction be so considerately applyed, as not therein to exceed the limits and bounds of moderation; Let it, I say, be done to amendment, and not to destruction or confusion, and utter marring of him: for discretion in a case of this nature is a most precious jewel, and highly to be valued,
and

and when his Rider shall at any time correct him, let it be done in the very instant when he offendeth, and doth justly merit the same, and not otherwise, for else he will not know the cause why he was chastised, whereby he becommeth rather confounded then amended: so on the other side, when the horse doth well, let him be cherished and much made of, which will the better encourage him in the same way of going forward in well-doing.

What manner
of person a
Groom ought
to bee,

And as touching the Groome, hee must bee a man who must truly love his horse, and so shape his course towards him, as that the horse may love and dote upon his Keeper, otherwise the horse may soone get so many evill habits, which hee will not easily alter or forget. For as *Aristotle* learnedly saith, *Like as you order him, so shall you finde*: For the Horse by nature is the most loving creature to man of all other bruit creatures, and none more obedient, none more intelligible, none more desirous to please; wherefore if he be sweetly, mildly, and plausibly dealt with, he will be also reciprocally: Otherwise if his Keeper bee harsh, furious, cholericke, and passionate, the horse will bee put besides his patience, stare and see boggards in his Keepers face, become rebellious, fall to striking, biting, and other vices, to the often endangering as well of the life and limbs of his Keeper, as of his Rider, and others: For the old Proverb is most true, *Patience once wounded or wronged, is soone turned into fury and rage*. For the horse is not said to be *Creatura animalis*, a creature endowed with a reasonable soule; but is, *Creatura simpliciter animata*, a creature which hath onely life and sense; as learned Philosophers do teach: a creature (I say) in whom is onely life, sense, and

and memory, but discourse hee hath not, and therefore must bee governed by judgement and discretion. If therefore your Groome bee a man of a loose, evill, and debauched life, or not otherwise able to governe, or to master his passions, hee is wholly unfit to supply this place, and to take a charge of this nature upon him: yea hee must bee a man of a boundlesse patience, hee must bee judicious and discrete, by which meanes hee may with the greater facility, and lesse difficulty bring his Horse to bee of the same identity, parity, and essence with himselfe, their loves and hearts truly united; so as hee may at pleasure mould and fashion him into what forme hee desireth: Hee must continually toy, dally, and play with him, and teach him to play the wanton, bee alwayes talking and speaking pleasing words and phrased unto him: Hee must leade him abroad morning and evening when the Sunne shineth warme, and then run, scope, and shew him all the delight and contentment hee is able: Hee must duely curry, curbe, and dresse him, wipe, dust, pick, and cleanse him, feede, pamper, and cherish him, keepe him warme and sweete, bee alwayes fiddling and doing something about him, bee often tampering with his heeles and legs, often taking up his feete, rapping him gently upon the soles, and knocking him softly upon the Coffins, untill his Keeper hath taught him to take up any foote of himselfe at first bidding: His Keeper must have him alwayes so cleane of his body, setting upon his coate so perfect a glosse, as that a man may almost see his face upon it. His feete would bee kept stopped, and the coffins dayly annoynted, his heeles free from scratches, and other such like sorances; and his Keeper ought al-

so to keepe so continuall a vigilant eye upon him, and all his actions, as well in his feeding and drinking, as otherwise, whereby no symptomes of sicknesse or infirmity (inward or outward) shall bee able so soone to shew its head, but they may bee as easily, and as soone cured and amended, or else prevented: For *to amend a fault in the beginning, is far better and more easie, then when it hath bene long accustomed*: For our old Proverbe is, *Things are sooner prevented then amended.*

But I am loath to wade any further into this subject, for this is not that I intended when I began: Yet since I am thus far imbarqued in it, I will give you a few Rules which may bee profitable both to the Master and the Groome, which if they bee well observed, you may undoubtedly keepe your Horse long in very good estate and health. First, therefore before you put your Horse to grasse (I speake now of Horses which have bene ridden and exercised) some foure or five dayes; or a weeke before, take blood from him according as your discretion or the Ferrier by his Art shall dictate: The next day after give him the drinke of *Diapente*, mentioned in *lib. 2. chap. 7. Sect. 2.* with good Sack, and let him after his drinke bee inured to hardinesse some dayes before his turning forth, by taking by degrees his cloaths from him, lest by doing things on a suddaine, hee fortune to take more cold, then you can easily cure: neither would I have you put him forth till the midst of *May*, at the soonest, for till that time, grasse will not have bite enough for him to fill his belly, nor the season warme enough, (and let the day wherein you turn him forth be a warme Sun-shine day, and about the houre of ten;) for Horses pampered in warme stables, and

Rules fit to be
observed.

I.

kept

kept close, will be subject to take cold, if a discreet order and course bee not taken with them. Secondly, let him bee taken up from grasse about the feast of Saint Bartholomew, which is upon the 24. day of August, or soone after, for then the season doth begin to let fall cold dewes, which betideth no good, but much harme to your horse, and then beginneth the heart of grasse to fayle, so as the grasse which then hee feedeth upon, breedeth no good nutriment, but grosse flegmatick and cold humours, which putrifieth and corrupteth the blood. Let your Horse, I say, be taken up about the day before mentioned, but with all the quietnesse that may bee, for feare of heating him, by reason his grease hee gat at grasse is tender, so as every little motion will dissolve the same, wherby the blood may be inflamed, and so the Horse be brought into eminent perill at least of sicknes, if not of death. A day or two after you have him in the stable, or sooner, let him bee shod, and let blood, and drencht, as before is shewed you; for this preventeth Yellowes, Stavers, and such like diseases, which the Gaule and Spleene occasioneth, which the heart and strength of grasse (through the ranknesse of the blood) doth ingender in his body; Then purge and cleanse him both outwardly and inwardly, like as you are taught *lib. 2. chap. 2.*

Thirdly, search your Horses mouth, both then and at other times often, for feare of Barbes, Bigs, Blisters, and Cankers, and such like maladies which are very incident to breed in the mouths of Horses, which by the colour of the spots of his Gums, Tongue, and Mouth you may perceive, and so the better and more easily both prevent and cure all such diseases as are inherent

4. to those parts. Fourthly, rub and wash sometimes your Horses mouth and tongue with vinegar or Verjuice mingled with bay salt, but Verjuice is the better, and let some passe downe his throate, for it is both wholsome and good. Fifthly, observe your Horses
5. Eyes, and Countenance, which if you doe finde to bee heavy, drowisie, and dull, then bee you confident all is not well within him: Then take bloud from him and give him the drinke of *Diapente*, or *Diatesseron*, and hee shall doe well againe.
6. Sixthly, observe well his standing, and his going, if you doe perceive him to felter with any of his feete, be it never so little, or else which foot soever hee doth favour, let the Groome presently take up that foote, and examine it, if hee can feele any place warmer then other, let him now assure himselfe something is amisse there; take off the Shooe, and search the foote carefully, to see whether Gravell, or Nayle bee any cause thereof; but if you doe finde all well there, search the heele and frush, if you finde not any thing there, search higher for some swelling that may bee in the pasterne-joynt in the legge, or backe sinnew; and when hee hath found the fault, and cause of his complaint, let him presently informe the Ferrier, who is to apply his remedies, and by this meanes hee shall discharge his duty as well becommeth him.
7. Seventhly, observe also if hee put forth his foote more then usually hee was wont to doe; then assure your selfe, the grieft lyeth either in the knee or shoulder; if it bee so, presently advertise the Ferrier, who knoweth what is best to bee done with him.

Eighthly,

Eighthly, when you are to take your journey with him, water him in the house, and give him his breakfast of good cleane Oates, sweete, and well sifted; then bridle him and tye him up to the Rack, then curry, dresse, and saddle him, but draw not the Girts too freight till you come to take his backe; then presently cast his cloath over him, lest hee take cold, and when you come to take his backe, draw his Girts freight, and so on Gods name begin your journey, but for a mile, two, or more, go faire and softly, for if you heat him too soon, he will not digest his meat, but crudities will arise in his stomack, which you shall perceive by his scowring and purging, as he travelleth, whereby you may either founder him in his body, or else cause a *Calientura*, burning Fever, or some other worse infirmity to seize: and as you doe travell him, when you are come some foure or five miles from home, alight from him and walk him, sometimes standing still to see if you may provoke him to stale, for it is very wholesome and good, which you may also do well to attempt when you dismount and walk him down any hill: and some three miles before you come to your journeys end, ride him into some River or other watering place, unto his belly, but no deeper in any wise, and then let him drink, yet not so much at the first, as hee desireth, but by degrees, first taking up his head to cause him to wash his mouth, whereby to free it from filth and fome; then let him drinke halfe his draught, and lastly, so much as in reason he will: Then observe upon what pace you brought him to the water, with the same pace (and neither softlier nor faster) ride him a mile or better, by which time he will have warmed the water in his belly,

without taking cold or harme. This watering him thus, will very much refresh him, cause him to forget his wearisomenesse, and when hee shall come to eat, it will be with very good appetite, which otherwise hee would not have done. A mile at least before you come to your journies end, slack your pace, and begin to goe more softly, to the end he may not be too hot when hee shall be set up, have him without delay into the Stable warme, well littered up to the belly; but take heed you suffer him not to be either walked, or washed, for these two things are very pernicious, and most dangerous for him, and the cause of more sicknesse, forances, and death to Horses, then of all other things besides. So soone as you have brought him into the Stable, the first thing you doe, off with your Coat, and tye him up to the empty Rack; then litter him up to the belly, ungird him, take off his Saddle, rub his back with speed, and put his Cloath upon him, and upon that his Saddle againe, and gird him with his Sursingle, then make cleane his stirrops, stirrop-leathers and Girts, and rub him downe both Legs, Belly, Body, Breast, Head, Face, and Neck, and so stufte him up with cleane dry straw, and let him stand so upon the Bit an houre, evermore looking upon him, lest hee sweat anew, which if you shall perceive, then to allay it, take away some of the straw wherewith he is stufed, and he will coole againe, if you finde him in good temper, unbridle him, and wash his mouth with water and salt, and wash also his Bit, and so bridle him up againe, and give him some good Hay in his Rack to champ upon, for halfe an hours space. After come to him againe, and then unbridle him, put on his Coller-halter, and so give him

him fresh Hay to eate: Then rub him all over, and so let him stand till you have supped; then come to him, and give him either a sweet mash or white water, which when he hath drunke, let him eate Hay for halfe an hour after, and then give him his Proven-der, but by degrees, not too much together, for feare of cloying him, which so soone as hee hath dispatched, unsaddle him, and rub his body all over, cloath him up warme, and whispe him up round with small whisps: Which done, rub his legs drye, pick, and stop his feete, and anoynt the Coffins, and Croners of his hooves, giving him hay for all night: and lastly shake up his litter about and under him, that so hee may lye soft, and warme: and thus doing, leave him to his rest.

The next morning, come to him early; and first observe whether or not he hath layn down; then look upon his Ordure, whether it be laxative or costive, or if hee have avoyded any grease, which if hee hath, give him with his Oates, a handfull or two of Hemp-seed, and so order him as you are accustomed, or otherwise, as you in discretion doe find to bee most requisite. Many other rudiments there are to bee given, which for that they are so commonly knowne to every Groome, are impertinent to rehearse: Onely in a word for a close, I say, that a good Groom ought to be a man of good life, and sober demeanour, no Tipler, no haunter of Ale-houses, or Taverns, (like as too too many are) no lyer abroad from his Horse in the night, nor long from him in the day, and an early riser; the Stable must bee his Combing house; hee must not bee so intimate with any as with his Horse; have enter-
courie

course with none so much as with him; hee must bee his principall associate, and make him of his Cabbinet-Councell: his Horse must bee his onely *Idaa*, the onely Mistresse whom hee must court, and serve: and so soone as he doth suspect but any the least inconvenience in him, let him instantly impart it to the Ferrier, and looke what the Ferrier doeth give in directions, let his Keeper diligently observe and execute accordingly; for it is an argument of a proud and preposterous condition in a Groome, to swarve from the instructions which the Ferrier shall at any time give. Ninthly, as the Groome must have a speciall care he doe not pine, or under-meate his Horse in his diet, so he must be as cautelous he doe not cloy him by laying before him too much Provender at once: but his way must be to give him little at once, and often; he must eat up all before he give him any more; yea he must eat it with good appetite, otherwise hee may marre his appetite utterly, and bring him to loath his Provender; and looke what Hay and Provender hee doth at any time give him, let it be sweet, well dusted, and throughly purged from Feathers, Hennes-dung, Cats-dung, stones, gravell, and such like filth, which are things hurtfull and troublesome to his stomach and feeding; for they will cause him to refuse and forsake his meate, unlesse pure hunger shall constraine him thereunto; for such kinde of nasty meate and foode, will engender in him noysome and noxious infirmities.

Tenthly, as touching the furniture and Caparison which the Horse is to wear, the Groome must be carefull to keepe them cleane, bright, and handsome: the

the Saddles, after sweating and travell, well ayred in the Sunne and Winde, and after beaten and dusted, the stirrops wiped cleane, with the strops and other such like leathers thereto belonging and appertaining, and so put up safe and handsomely with their cases and coverings upon them to preserve them from dust : The foot cloaths (if hee have any under his charge) cleansed, brushed, and neatly folded up; the Bits taken from the Head-stalls, and cleane washed, dryed before the fire, and wrapped up in an oyly cloath to keepe them from rust and canker, and the Bosses carefully also made cleane, together with their Bits, and so layd up in the Presse or Chest made for such like purpose. The Head-stalls and Reines, Croopers, and other accoutrements would likewise bee wiped, made very cleane, and hanged up in the Presse in their proper places : The Girts, Surfingles, Stirrip-leathers, and such like necessaries, would bee diligently viewed and examined, cleansed, and made cleane, and if any thing bee amisse or broken, let it bee mended incontinently, lest they should bee to doe when they were to bee used : In conclusion, nothing should bee out of order at any time, but every thing (as well Stable as Saddle-house) kept cleane, neat, and sweere, which will purchase unto the Groome no small respect with his Lord or Master, and much more reputation and applause of so many as shall bee an eyewitnesse thereof.

II.

the Saddle, after lyeing and travel, well aired in
 the Sun and Wind, and after beaten and dusted, the
 Linings wiped clean, with the knees and other such
 the leather there belonging and the harness, and to
 put up safe and handsonly with their cases and cov-
 ers upon them to preserve them from dust & the too
 clean, if it be drye any more for the use of the
 bridle, and newly lathered; the harness taken from
 the Horse, and clean washed, dryed, before the
 fire, and wrapped up in an airy cloth to keep them
 from rust and water, and the harness carefully also
 made up together with their bits, and put up in
 the Partition Chest made for such purpose. The
 Head-stall and Braces, Croppers, and other accoun-
 tants would be likewise wiped, made very clean, and
 hang'd up in the fire in a proper place. The
 Girth, Saddle, and other leather, and iron like necessi-
 ties would be diligently viewed and examined, clean-
 ed, and made close, and if anything be amiss or bro-
 ken, be repaired accordingly. Let the day be still
 be so long as they were to be used. In conclusion,
 nothing should be out of order or wanting, but every
 thing as well as the saddle-horns) kept clean, neat,
 and sweet, which will purchase unto the Owner a
 small profit with his Order, Market, and much more
 reputation and applause of so many as shall see any
 worth the trial.



THE COMPLEAT
 H O R S E - M A N,
 AND EXPERT
 F E R R I E R.

The Second Booke.

CHAP. I.

*Of what poynts consisteth the Office of the Ferrier :
 Hanaled Dialogue-wise.*

Hypophilus.



After Sergeant Ferrier,
 you are well encountred:
 I have been often at your
 house and shop, with a
 desire to have spoken
 with you, but could ne-
 ver have the good for-
 tune

to finde you at home.

Hyppiatus. Sir, it may well be, that you may come often to my house and yet misse of me, unlesse it be at certain set hours, for that I having many Cures dayly in my hands, and besides, I am frequently sent for by many to looke upon sicke horses; marvell not you cannot so easily finde mee at home: but what is your pleasure now that you have met me?

Hypophylus. You may remember (good *Hyppiatus*) you promised me (upon our last meeting) to assist me in the perfecting of my Cures, which so long since I purposed to publish, and now I would gladly know what day and place you would appoint for the finall dispatch of the bulesse.

Hyppiatus. Truly Sir, the time now fits well, for I have dispatched all my affaires for this day; wherefore sithence we are met so neare my house, wee will enter, where wee will bee retired into a private chamber, prohibiting any accessse unto us, my man *Hypposerus* onely excepted, whom I will interrogate in such points as shall concerne the Ferriers Art or Science: and you sitting by, making your selfe very attent to our discourse, and taking in writing the prime heads of our discussion, when any thing passeth wherof you may desire to bee better informed, propose the same, and wee will give you a full solution.

Hypophylus. Your motion likes me well, for it will be the best course you can thinke of whereby to give me ample satisfaction.

A formall Examen of the Office of the Ferrier.

Hyppiatus. What is the Ferriers Art?

Hypposerus.

Hypoferus. It principally consists of foure things, to wit; Science, Experience, Knowledge, and Handyworke.

Hyppiatrus. Letting passe the first three, tell mee what is Handyworke?

Hypoferus. Handyworke is to heate the Iron well, to Sodder well, to Forge well, to turne a Shoöe well, to make and poynt a Nayle well, to pare the hoofe well, to Cauterize well, to let blood well, to bee light, and well-handed, bold, and hardy in dressing of a Horse well, of such Accidents as may happen unto him.

Hyppiatrus. What are the Principall Members of the Creature?

Hypoferus. They bee three, viz. the Liver, the Heart, and the Braine; and if the Creature bee offended in any of these three, especially the Brain, which is in the top of the head, then I say hee will dye.

Hypophylus. I alwayes tooke the principall members of any living Creature to be foure.

Hyppiatrus. Therein (Sir) you were mistaken, for any of these former three being hurt, there is evermore present death, especially the Heart, and the Braine: But if any other member besides these three bee hurt, yet may your Horse live, and doe well againe. But which member (I pray you Sir) doe you hold to bee one of the foure principall members?

Hypophylus. The Stones or Gignitors.

Hyppiatrus. How doe you assoyle this Ojection Hyppoferus?

Hypoferus. Most easily Sir, that the Gignitors cannot bee any one of the principall members, reason teacheth us: For you cannot so much as touch any of these three;

but you doe either kill the Creature outright, or else desperately endanger him. Now supposing the *Stones* may fortune to receive hurt or dammage, yet if I bee in despaire of healing or curing them, I can neverthelesse cut, or take them cleane away from the body, or cause them to fall away by other good meanes, or by medicine, without perill of his life; hee will onely thereby lose his naturall heate, whereby hee will bee disinabled from having any disposition to *Coiry*, or power of *Procreation*.

Hyppiatrus. What is that which goeth from the Head of the Horse, and diffuseth it selfe through-out all other Members?

Hypoferus. They are two *Sinnewes*, or *Tendents* which are white, and have a Liggature beginning at the very end of the *Nose*, and extend themselves along the *Neck*, and along the *Back*, and maketh their extent to the foure *Legs*, and taketh their Ligaments in the fore *Feet*.

Hypophylus. I was in good hope *Hypoferus*, you would likewise have spoken of the number of the *Sinnewes*, and where every one is seated; for it is a thing very materiall, and I doe the rather desire it for that I am not as yet perfect in that poynt.

Hyppiatrus. That was but forgotten both by my selfe and him Sir, wherefore *Hypoferus* make answer to the Gentlemans demand.

The number
of the sinews.

Hypoferus. I shall doe it most gladly; wherefore as touching the *Sinnewes* wee say, that there are in every Horse twenty nine, or thirty, great and small. First, the two great *Sinnewes* which I named before, which have their first Origen from the end of the *Nose*. Item

two branches which are maine *Sinnewes* that proceed from the *Braine*, and runneth downe the *Cheekes* to the *Teeth*. Item there are from the *Shoulders* to the first joynt of the *Armes*, or *fore-Legs* downewards, two great *Sinnewes*. Item from the *Knees* to the *Pasternes* are foure great *Sinnewes*, with the same number in the hinder part. Item in the fore-part of the *Breast*, and about it, as well within as without, are ten *Sinnewes*, some greater and some smaller. Item from the *Raines* of the *Backe* to the *Stones* are foure great *Sinnewes*. Lastly, one great maine *Sinnew* which runneth along to the end of the *Tayle*. So as the full number of the *Sinnewes* are twenty nine, or thirty, which are to bee discerned.

2.

2.

8.

10.

4.

1.

Hyppiatrus. What is that which we do commonly call *principall* or *vitall* *Bloud*?

Hypposerus. Those bee *Veines* which are vessells of quicke or running *Bloud*, which men doe call *Vitall* *Bloud*.

Hyppiatrus. What is that which men doe call *Vitall* *Bloud*?

Hypposerus. It is that which when the *Creature* sleeperth, his *bloud* is in continuall agitation, and never ceaseth.

Hyppiatrus. How many *Veines* hath a *Horse* in his whole *body*?

Hypposerus. To speake properly, a *Horse* hath but onely one *Veyne*, which is that which wee call the *Median*, or *Lives* *Veine*, which is in the *Liver*, being the true *Fountaine*, *Source*, and great *Tun* from whence the *Canes*, *Conduite-pipes*, and little *Veines* (as the smaller *Rivers* doe separate themselves) which doe

run

runne thorough all the parts and members of the whole body.

Hyppiat. What call you Separation?

Hyppos. Separation is of two Kindes, viz. ascendant, and discendant: those which doe ascend to the Head and Body, are called *Veines ascendant*; and those which doe runne low, or to the Legges, and lower members, are called *Hollow, or Descendant Veines*.

Hyppophyl. I did ever thinke and believe till now, that a Horse had more *Veines* then one; how then cometh it to passe that wee open *Veines* in so many severall parts of the body, being so different *Veines* the one from the other?

Hyppiatrus. I answer you Sir, if you bee pleased to examine your Paper, there you shall finde how that *Hypposerus* told you that a Horse hath but onely one *Veine*, and it is a most infallible verity, for that all those other *Canes* which you call *Veines*, are but the very same with that One, which evermore standeth full of *Blood*, up to the top, conveyed into him, which sayd great *Veine* is annexed unto the *Liver*; which *Veine* doth resemble a great *Tunne* or *Cesterne*, which conveyeth the *Blood* into all the lesser *Veines*, by which meanes they continually remaine full, having no vacancy or want: Like as a *Cesterne* (*V. G.*) receiveth its water from a *Pumpe*, and so conveyeth and bestoweth it into and among the smaller *Pipes*, oftentimes storeth with plenty of water, a whole *Village* or *Towne*, or at least a whole *Family*.

Hyppophylus, I understand you well; but now friend *Hypposerus*, tell mee I pray you, in how many *Veines* may a man take *Blood* from a horse in case of necessity?

Hypposerus.

Hypposerus. In many parts, to wit: In the Neck, in the weeping-Veines, under the Eares, and in six other places of and about the Head; as in the *Palate-Veines*, in the Tongue, in the *Flank-Veines*, in the *Breast* and *Spar-Veines*: In the foure members, to wit, the *Legges*, *Thighes*, *Pasternes* and *Feete*; also in fundry other places, according as necessity shall require it, and in places which may the better kill the Malady or Disease of the sayd Horse.

Hypophylus. But yet I was in good hope you would have delivered the Reasons for which you doe open any Veine, as also which they be in particular.

Hypposerus. The Veines which wee doe usually open, are; First, the two *Temple-Veines*, which ease the paines in the Head, comming of Colds, Rheumes, Feavers, Yellowes, and Stavers, Drowfinesse, Frenzy, the Sleepy-evill, Falling-evill, or any grieffe in or about the Eyes or Braine. Secondly, wee open the two *Eye* or *weeping-Veines*, being most soveraigne for such Diseases whereunto the Eyes are subject; as *watery* or *weeping Eyes*, *Blood-shotten*, *Pin* and *webbe*, *haw*, or the like. Thirdly, wee open the two *Pallet-Veines* in the Mouth, and those doe cure the *Lampas*, and any inward sicknesse within the Body; as the *Yellowes*, *Stavers*, *Anticor*, *Surfets*, *Drowfinesse*, *Tyrednesse*, or wearinesse of the Body; or if the Horse have any Malady in the Throat, as the *Strangles*, *Quincy*, *Kernells*, *Pustills*, either within or without; it many times helpeth *Inflamations*, *Glanders*, or the like: For the eating or swallowing of his owne blood, is most wholesome and soveraigne in such cases. Fourthly, we doe usually open the two *Neck-Veins*, which helpeth *Farcins*, *Yellowes*, *Stavers*, *Scabs*, *Main-*

The Number
of the veines.

The partic-
lar veines.

2. 2.

3. 2.

4. 2.

- ges, Agues, Feavers, Colds, Surfets, Glanders, or any other Malady, which may bee any way noxious to the inward parts of the body : And it also preventeth suddaine sicknesse, if you have any suspect thereof. Fifthly,
2. 5. the opening of the two *Plate* or *Breast Veines* doe helpe the Anticor, Sicknesse of the Heart, Morfounding, which is the foundring in the body by over riding, whereby the Grease of the Horse is molten; it also preventeth Diseases in the *Liver, Lungs*, and inward parts grieved; and sometimes hurts in the *Shoulder*, which causeth lameness before. Sixthly, wee use to touch the two *Arme* or *Thigh Veines* before, which helpeth Foundring in the *Fore-feete*, Mallenders, Splent, Screw, Ring-bone, and such like infirmitics in the *Fore-feete*, and such other higher parts. Seventhly, wee use to take *Blood* from the foure *Shackle Veines* before, and this is very good for the *Crown-scab*, Ring-bone, and such like Diseases. Eighthly, wee use to strike the two *Spur Veines*, which cureth the Farcin in the *Sides*; morfounding, swelling under the *Belly*, which is a Disease called the Feltrick, and the like. Ninthly, wee prick the two *Toe-Veines* which doe helpe Frettizing, Foundring, Hoofe-bound, beating of the *Horses Feete* by riding upon hard and stony wayes, and the like. Tenthly, wee open the two *Thigh-Veines* behinde; and this doth helpe the griefes of the *Kidneys*, Swellings in the *hinder legges*, Foundrings, Selenders, Scratches, Kybes, &c. and it helpeth also Diseases in and about the *Belly*, as pissing of Blood, pissing oft after great and extraordinary labour, and the weakenesse of the *Reines*, the *Back*, *Belly*, *Guis*, or any other the inward parts, the *Curb*, *Spaven*, and such Diseases which come of rankenesse of *Blood*. Eleventhly, wee sometimes doe
4. 11. open

open the foure *Shackle Veines*, behinde ; and this is very good against foundrings and other paines in and about the *Feete*. Twelfthly, wee let *blood* in the two *flank* or *hanch-veines*, and this is most profitable for all kinde of Feavers, the *Stones*, Poverty, and the Felter-worme. Thirteenthly, wee draw *blood* from the two *taile-veines*, which cureth the mainge in the *taile*, falling off the haire, or the itch in the *taile*. And these are for the most part all the *Veines* which are usually opened, or that my selfe have ever knowne, or have seene my Master open, which are very great meanes to helpe these Diseases by mee mentioned. So as the full summe or number of *Veines* which *Ferriers* use commonly to open, are thirty. Other *Veines* there are which are of a smaller proportion, and therefore not fit to bee opened. Neverthelessse some *Ferriers* there are, who have fondly reported unto mee that they have let *Horfes blood* in many of those small *Veines*, but I could never learne for what purpose the same was done : Let this therefore which I have heere set you downe, suffice for this matter.

12. 2.

13. 2.

Hypophylus. I have heard you *Hypposerus* attentively, but yet I would most gladly understand one thing, which is, that whereas you say that the opening of these *Veines* doth helpe and cure such Diseases, I would gladly bee satisfied heerein ; for if by the opening of these *Veines* the *Horse* will bee cured, then wee may spare much labour in applying drinckes, purgations, clisters, and such other things, which wee usually make and give to *Horfes*.

Hypposerus. Sir, I assure mee you cannot bee so ignorant as you speake ; for this opening of *Veines* and *blood-letting*,

letting, doth not alwayes absolutely cure those diseases which I have named; but it doth sometime asswage the malignancy of the malady, sometimes it preventeth diseases, and sometimes againe it preparerth the body the better to receive such physicall drinckes which doe inwardly cure them, and such Salves, Oyles, and Unguents, which doe drye and heale up outward infirmities; but that *blood-letting* doth absolutely cure them, I say it doth not, howsoever in some cases it may.

Hippiatrus. What is that which departs from the head of the horse, and serveth him for his principall members?

Hypoferus. I have shewed you that already: they be *sinnewes* and *nerves*; these *sinnewes* which depart and proceed from the *head*, give sence and feeling, arriving in the body of the creature, and so diffuse and spread themselves through all the principall members, which doe descend from the *head* unto all the other members, which make a conjunction of the *bones*, of the *legges*, of the body, and of all the other members.

Of the bones. *Hippiatrus.* How many bones hath a horse, and how are they scituated in the body?

Hypoferus. There are in the body of every horse, two hundred fifty and seven bones.

Hippiatrus. Name them severally.

Hypoferus. All the bones which every horse hath whereby to make up an organall body, are these: *Viz.*
 39. hee hath in his *head* thirty nine, and forty *teeth*: the
 40. bones in his *head* doe comprehend the *Crocks* and *Hairdles* of the *scull*, albeit they bee composed of parts and
 2. parcells of certaine other bones; also the two flat *Hairdles*,

dres, which from the *Palate*; and the *Fork* of *Throat* 5.
 harmful, the *Chine* fifty two, the *Breast* one, *Ribes* that 52
 ry fixe; the *Fore-legges* and *Fore-feete* have forty four, 1.
 and the *hinder-legges* and *feete* forty. So as the whole 36.
 structure of the body of a Horse whereby to perfect a 44.
 full building of *bones*, consisteth of about 257. or 259. if 40.
 they bee rightly computed; which doe represent them- 259.
 selves altogether at what time the perfect *Anatomy* of
 a Horse is laid open.

Hyppyratrus. *what naturall composition hath the Head of the horse?*

Hypposerus. Hee hath *Eyes* to see, *Eares* wherewith to heare, *Nostrils* to smell or scent, a *Mouth* and *Tongue* to taste and eate, and wherewith to nourish him.

Hyppyratrus. *what naturall composition hath the whole body of a horse in generall?*

Hypposerus. The whole Body hath its *Heart*, *Liver*, *Lungs*, *Spleene*, *Stones*, and *Gignitors*: All which are called the *Noble Parts*, and that most justly: For when either the one or the other of any of these parts receive hurt, or damage, the poore Beast is in perrill of his life, except in the *Gignitors*, according as I have declared.

Hyppyratrus. *what Maladies or Diseases are most usually incident to the horse?*

Hypposerus. Sundry Diseases, as namely, *Auynes* and *Grippings*, called in French, *Tranchaisons*, *Foundrings*, *Farcins*, *Mainges*, and very many more which severally to recite, would spend much time: Nevertheloffe, I will handle briefly their natures, dividing them into sorts, viz. moist and dry; the moist doe proceede commonly from naughty blood, the dry commeth of heate; as the *Scab*, *Mainge*, and such like Diseases proceeding from

from moistnesse; some againe are called Leprosies, or the Elephantique mallady, by reason that Elephants are much troubled therewith, and every Disease is knowne by its proper symptomes.

Hyppyatrus. *What bee the signes whereby to know the humid or moist Diseases?*

Hyposferus. The humid or moist malady is properly called the Glanders, which oft times proceedes from the *Liver* and *Lights*, when they bee infected with putrefaction and rottenesse; or when they breed inflamed Lumps, Knots, or Kernels under the *Chaule*, which all doe come of cold taken by immoderate riding and labour, and want of care afterwards, which begetteth evill humours in the body, which when they shall begin to breake from the Horse, by his running and purging at the *Nose*, whereof other Horses will have a desire to lick, and thereby they do become infected.

Hyppyatrus. *Many horses there bee which doe run at the Nose, who have not the Glanders.*

Hyposferus. 'Tis very true, but this Disease of the Glanders may be knowne by its Knots, Kernels, and Pustils which arise under the *Jaw*. You may also know it by the colour of the corruption which the Horse venteth: For, if that mattrative stufte bee greene, and of a strong and offensive savour, or if it bee white, and stinketh, as also viscous and slimy; then bee you confident it is the Glanders; but if hee shall cast forth corruption at his *Nose*, which is white, and that by bits and gobbets, which doth not stinke or have any evill savour or smell, then it is not the Glanders, but some distemperature which commeth of a cold lately taken, which is easily cured, if it bee not let runne too long, for
there

ther is great danger in delay.

Hyppyatrus. *What bee the arid or dry Diseases?*

Hyposferus. They are an alteration of the body, which wee doe commonly cal Surfets and Pursivenesse, which is occasioned oft by riding of a Horse beyond his strength or breath, especially presently after water, or by putting him to too much labour, or too violent running and freyning, or by washing him when hee is very hot.

Hyppyatrus. *How commeth a Horse to have the Tranchaisons or Gripings?*

Hyposferus. By suffering him to drinke when hee is too hot, or by overriding him; they also come of bad winde which ingenders in him, and not by suffering him to stale in his riding in convenient time, and of evil humours.

Hyppyatrus. *What signes have you of the Scabbe or Mainge?*

Hyposferus. Wee may with good reason say that this Disease wee call the Scab, Mainge, or Itch in a Horse, proceedeth of too great abundance of ill blood, which when it is once inflamed by over-hard riding, causeth its Leprosie to come forth upon the *Skinne*, which commeth to bee an itch running over the whole body, beginning betwixt the flesh and the skinne, inso-much as it will cause the haire to fal away, from whence ordinarily doth proceede a dry scurfe or scab, which is very contagious.

Hyppyatrus. *How commeth the Farcin to the Creature?*

Hyposferus. No way so soone as by a bad Stable, whether Swine and Poultry doe resort, for their dounge is most

most pernicious: Also by evill dressing, which may bee a great cause, and by too much rankenesse of blood, and by some wound, hurt, or blow with a staffe, especially if the staffe have knags or knots upon it, sometimes by enter-firing, and hewing, and lastly by spur-galling

Hyppyatrus. Which bee the foure Maladies which doe most appeare when a horse sheweth by his action, that he is in danger of death, by the said Diseases?

Hypposerus. That hapneth often by too much ventosity, or by eating too much raw meate, or to have drunke being very hot: It commeth also of the coldnesse of *Urine*, or having ridden him too hard too long together, not giving him leave to pisse.

Hypophylus. I pray *Hypposerus*, give mee leave to demand of you, what you would doe in such a case, by your best endeavours, to save the life of the poore beast?

Hypposerus. In a case of this nature, I would first take blood from him, if I found just cause for it, and then should I administer a laxative clister, which should bee both comforting, and yet operative, which is inserted in *lib. 2. chap. 6. Sect. 8. clif. 2.* Or else I would give him a drinke of good operation, which you shall finde in *lib. 2. chap. 7. Sect. 8. clif. 6.* either of which, or both, are most soveraigne in this case. But if I shall finde, that the malice of the malady doth not continue in the body, but falleth downe into the foure legges, as usually it will doe: Then doe I use to open the Veines in those places, and in the necke also, or in any other part I shall judge shall bee most necessary, and of his blood I will make a restrictive charge, adding thereunto Wheate-meale, Bote, *Sanguis-Draconis*, Egges, the strongest white-wine Vineger, and such like, which I will more
at

at large expresse in the place of Cures: This (I say) will I apply to all the foure *Legges*, and over and against the *Kidneyes*, the *Breast*, *Throat*, *Feete*, and the like places, then would I cup the bottome of the *Soles*, I will also apply to the foure *Legges*, *Garters*, which I will tie hard above the *Knees* and *Hammes*, and so governe my selfe in performing the Cure, according to the strength, vertue, and greatnesse of the Horse, and as my judgement shall dictate unto me.

Hypocratrus. By how many wayes may evill come to a horse?

Hypocserus. Two wayes, viz. by nature and by accident against nature; as of those Diseases which fall downe into the *Legges* and *Feete* of the Horse, from whence doe come *Scratches*, *Splents*, *Squibs*, *Mallenders*, &c. with other kindes of humours and accidents as well in the body of the Creature, as in the members; and *salvo aliorum iudicio*; these things appeare unto me to comprehend in them the aforesayd accidents, which doe happen to the Horse, even as soone by nature many times, as by accident or against nature.

Hypophylus. *Hypocserus*, I doe not well understand this poynnt: You say that these things may happen as well by nature, as against nature, which are to my understanding a plaine contradiction. I pray explicate yet your selfe more fully.

Hypocserus. Those things which are against nature, I told you are by accident; but when I say that certaine Diseases may as well come unto him by nature as by accident; yea even in the selfe-same Disease, my meaning is, that if the Stallion bee troubled with the same disease at what time the Mare, who is the Damme of
 L this

this Colt is covered, I say that then the Colt himselfe shall bee capable of the same malady. As if the Stallion or the Mare (Parents to the same Colt) have for example a Spaven, I say that the Colt will naturally have a Spaven; and thus I have explicated my selfe, and answered your demand.

Hyppiatus. But what call you accident, or against nature?

Hypoferus. As thus, *verbi gratia*; if walking your Horse in your hand in the fields, or elsewhere, and that hee happen to bee stricken with some cudgell, leaver, or heavy bastinado, or with some sword, hatchet, bill, or other edge-toole, or that you should enforce him to doe more then what nature or strength were well able to compass; or leading him upon plaine ground, hee might wrinch any member, or sway his back, or breake his legge, either by the stroke or stripe of some other Horse, or otherwise accidentally, or should by misfortune fall downe some steepe precipice, whereby he may breake or dislocate some limbe or member: All these disasters wee usually doe call Accidentall, and all such things of this nature.

Hyppiatus. Which bee the Elements which doe give life and nutriment unto man, and all other living Creatures?

Hypoferus. They are foure in number, that is to say, Fire, Ayre, water, and Earth; whose natures if you shall please, I will discusse elsewhere.

Hyppiatus. No I pray let us have them both now and elsewhere, their natures, conditions, and qualities.

Hypoferus. The nature of Fire is to bee hot and dry; Ayre to bee hot and moist, water to bee cold and moist,
and

and Earth to bee cold and dry.

Hyppyatrus. Doe you know the twelve Signes of the Zodiack, and how they doe governe the body of man, and of all Creatures?

Hyposerus. Yes, I doe know them all perfectly; and thus are they called; *Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, Virgo, Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricornus, Aquarius, Pisces*: These doe all governe the twelve months of the yeare, and are placed above the Zodiack.

Hyppyatrus. Doe you know the names of the Planets, and their numbers?

Hyposerus. That I doe very well, and they be seven in number; to wit, *Saturne, Jupiter, Mars, Sol, Venus, Mercury, and Luna.*

Hyppiatus. What parts doe the twelve Signes before mentioned governe?

Hyposerus. *Aries* governeth the Head, *Taurus* the Neck, *Gemini* the Shoulders and Armes, *Cancer* the Stomack and Breast, *Leo* the Heart, *Virgo* the Belly and Guts, *Libra* the Reines and Buttocks, *Scorpio* the Privy parts, *Sagittarius* the Thighes, *Capricornus* the Knees, *Aquarius* the Legs, and *Pisces* the Feet.

Hyppiatus. In what dayes is it best for a horse to be let blood?

Hyposerus. If there bee no extraordinary cause, as in case of desperate sicknes, or so; then *Jan.* the third, and the fiftene. *February* the fourth, and ninth. *March* the seventene and eightene. *Aprill* the tenth, and sixteen. *May* the first, and thirtee. *June* fiftene, and twenty. But for *July* and *August*, by reason that the *Canicular* dayes be then predominate, blood-letting is not so good, but onely in urgent case of necessity. In *September* the

eleventh, and twenty eight. *October* the eight, and twenty three. *November* the fift, and sixteene. *December* the fourteene and twenty six. And these daies doe we hold to bee the very best, unlesse dangerous or suddaine sicknesse doe cause us to alter the same, for in cases of necessitie, no daies are to bee regarded or observed: For

*Qui retinente vita, & non sit mortis imago:
Si semper fuerit vivens, morietur & infra.*

Hyppiatrus. what medicine would you apply to a horse, who may have any of the foure Maladyes?

Hypoferus. I would give him of the foure Cordiall Waters, which I would make, of Buglas, Savin, Succarie, Aqua-vitæ, Endife, and the like.

Hyppiatrus. How would you make a comfortable drinke?

Hypoferus. I would make it of certaine Cordialls, to wit; of Sugar, Cinamon, Cloves, Nutmegs, Saffron, Licoris, Anniseeds; all these in fine powder, adding thereto white wine, and all these infused in a cleane earthen pot, and hereof would I make a drinke.

Hyppiatrus. whereof would you make an operative drinke?

Hypoferus. I would take white Wine, Sallet-oyle, Aloes, Rubarb, Agarick, Duke, or Duck-powder, Horny, Cordiall-powder; and of all these things would I put such a quantitie as I should thinke requisite, and according to the strength and corpulency of the Horse.

Hyp;

Hyppiatus. Whereof would you make a laxative Clister?

Hyposerus. Into a laxative Clister I will put either of Pellitory, Melelote or Cammomile (but Pellitory is the best) and of this would I make a Decoction, and to this Decoction would I put Sallet Oyle, Hony, Aloes, and Verjuice of the Crab.

Hyppiatus. What bee the natures of your principall Drugs?

Hyposerus. Agarick purgeth the *Braine*, Aloes the *Breast*, and body, Rubarb purgeth the *ewill water*, and it openeth the *Liver*, and helpeth obstructions, and opilations, Aristolochia-Rotunda mollifieth the *Breast*, *Liver*, and *Lungs*, and Bacchalaurei or Bay-berries, doe mortifie the peccant *Humours* which doe ingender in the *Breast*, or *Entrayles* neare about the *Heart*: and Saffron (if it bee discretely given) doth marvellously comfort and enlighten the *Heart*.

L 3

CHAP. II.



CHAP. II.

Of the causes of Sicknesse in generall; and the causes
of Health and long Life.

Hyppatrus.



OW that wee have proceeded thus farre, in a discussion of the Office of the *Ferrier*; Let us approach yet nearer to intreat of the Cures, and that wee may goe on *Pedeterim*, and *Gradatim*; Let us first discusse the causes of maladies; and therefore I demand of you, *what are the true causes of the sicknesse of the horse?*

Hypposerus. Sir, that man which hath a desire to become an *Expert Ferrier*, must apply himselfe to understand the true nature of two things, *viz.* of *Generation* and of *Corruption*, in which I could never finde the least discord in the Primary nature of Horses, albeit compounded of the contrary nature of the *four Elements*. But I will proceede in Anatomizing unto you the verity heereof, more particularly, whereby you may the better understand my meaning.

Hyppophylus. But friend *Hypposerus* in my judgement, you begin to assume too high a pitch for ordinary *Ferriers*, who are in a manner all or the greater number unlettered persons; and therefore will never bee able to understand what *Generation* and *Corruption* meaneth, for these

these are tearmes taken from the Grounds of *Philosophy*; and therefore above their *Genius* or *Sphere*.

Hypoferus. Sir, there bee many things necessary to bee duely knowne, and as diligently to bee observed in him, that desireth to bee a perfect and able *Ferrier*, which whosoever shall bee defective in, hee may well bee an *Empyreticall-Horse-Leach*, but skilfull *Ferrier* or *Marshall* hee shall never bee. And for that you please to say, that I fore too high, because I began my discourse with the tearmes of *Generation*, and *Corruption*: If you had not interrupted mee, I should have explicated my selfe so clearly, as that a very reasonable judgement might easily have apprehended mee; for I hold it not a thing fitting to puzzell mens *Braines*, either with *Chimeras*, which they are not able to understand, or with overlong, and tedious discourses, of things meerely impertinent: But if you shall bee pleased to heare mee with patience, I will touch upon this subject, to wit: What are the causes of Sicknesse in generall, as also of Health and long Life; and that *Laconica brevitare*, and so leave the rest to your judgement, and practice; especially, considering what other Authours (my Masters) have so learnedly, and no lesse sufficiently intreated in this very Art.

To begin therefore (and but to say, what I said before) with the causes of sicknesse and death of Horses in generall, in the true knowledge whercof, consisteth their preservation; I doe hold it a thing most needfull that wee doe perfectly know that thing which wee do call *Generation* and *Corruption*, which all *Physitians* and *Philosophers* have so much discussed both in their Schools and Writings; and how the body of the Horse (like also

Of the foure
Element's,
Fire, Ayre,
Water, and
Earth.

Of the foure
Humours,
Bloud, Flegme,
Choller, and
Melancholy.

also to that of man) is compounded of the foure Elements, viz. Fire, Ayre, Water, and Earth. The natures of these foure Elements are different: For Fire is hot and dry, but it participates most of Heat. Ayre is hot and moist, but chiefly moyst: Water is moist and cold, but most cold: Earth is cold and dry, but most dry. Fire and Ayre are both light Elements; and Water and Earth both heavy. Foure Humours also there are, which bee as it were foure Children to these foure Elements: and these are; Bloud, Flegme, Choler, and Melancholy. These foure Humours are attendant upon the foure former Elements, without which a naturall body cannot bee made: for Bloud naturally (if it bee perfect) is hot and moyst, but taketh most from heate, and therefore is subordinate to Ayre. Flegme is cold and moist, but the principall quality thereof is coldnesse, and therefore hath reference to water. Choler is hot and dry, but his chiefest nature is heate, and therefore is governed by the Element of Fire. Melancholly is cold and dry, but his chiefest condition is drynesse, and therefore subjects it selfe to the Element of Earth. Now the fountaine of the bloud is the Liver, which dispersing it selfe by the helpe of the veines into all the parts of the body, nourisheth and preserveth the same. Flegme preoccupateth the braine, being a cold and spongy substance, and the seate of the sensible soule. Choller inhabiteth the Liver, which being hot and dry, maketh a pleasing harmony with the bloud. Melancholy resideth in the spleene, which is the receptacle and discharge of the excrements of the Liver. From whence wee may collect, that it hath its proper use and end: as for demonstration, bloud principally nourisheth the body, Flegme occasioneth motion

motion of the *joynts* and *members*. Choller exciteth and provoketh the *body* to avoyd its *excrements*: and lastly, Melancholy disposeth the *body* to an appetite. Whereupon all the learned Philosophers doe with one unanimous assent agree in this, that in every *naturall body* there are foure principall *instrumentall members*, from which all the parts of an *organicall body* is said to be framed, and these are the *braine*, the *heart*, the *liver*, and the *stones* or *gignitors*; and each one of these doe performe its true function to all the particular members of the *body*: for the *sinners* doe receive their sustentation from the *braine*, and these are called *animall spirits*; the *arteries* from the *heart*, which are *vital spirits*, the *veines* from the *liver*, which are *naturall parts*; and the *seed-vessels* from the *Stones* or *Gignitors*, as the place of *generation*.

The instrumentall members. The brain, the liver and the stones or gignitors.

Now forasmuch as I have shewed you the foure *Elements* with their true natures, the foure *Humours* with their qualities, and the foure *instrumentall members* with their true conditions: It now remaineth that wee intreat briefly of the foure *naturall faculties*, which is in every *body*, together with their true attributes: The first *faculty* is to *eate*, the second to *retaine*, the third to *concoct*, and the fourth to *expell*. And to answer to these foure faculties, you must understand that there are residing in the *body*, the afore-named *Humours*, that is to say, *Bloud*, *Flegme*, *Choler*, and *Melancholy*, whereof *nature* maketh use of the service of but one of these onely to worke upon, which is an *excrement*, which wee do justly call *whey*, or *wheyish-bloud*, whose engendring is wrought in the *Liver*, and so conveyeth it selfe into the *veines*, at what time the foure humours doe take from

The foure naturall faculties. To eat, to retaine, to concoct, and to expell.

the *body* that forme and substance it ought to assume: and of this very *liquor* doth nature serve it selfe, to resolve the *meate*, and so to operate that the same may passe through the straight *Caves*, *Conducts*, *Pores*, and *Passages*, carrying nourishment to all the parts of the *body*. You must therefore understand that the *veines* are the receptacles for the *bloud*, which is mixed with the *vitall spirits*, so as the said *veines* have their source or origin from the *Liver*, whereby their office is to exhaust from the *Liver* unto the *veines* the said *whye* substance, and to inject part thereof through the passages into the *Bladder*, and from thence againe forth of the *body*: by which means the *body* is freed from offence, and from sustaining damage: whercof two of the *veines* conduct part of the said *whye* from the *Liver* unto the *Cods*, and so to the *seed-vessels*, where it remaineth with some small quantity of the purest *bloud*, by which meanes, the operation of the *Stones* (whose quality are hot and dry) do thereby effect a most perfect *Seed*. Which two *veines*, nature (who is the most exquisite Artist, and *quæ nihil habet vitii*) hath planted one in the *veines* on the right side, which endeth in the right *Cod*, and another semblable in the left; both which take their issue from either of the *Cods* accordingly; besides, nature hath bestowed upon the right *Cod* much heate and drynesse, so hath she also given unto the left, as great a quantity of cold and moysture, the right *Cod* by meanes of its heate engendring the Male, and the left by reason of its cold engendring the Female, and so likewise is it as well of the Female, as of the Male of every creature. But now to come to the *Heart*, which is formed with the *Liver* and *Braine*, and maintained with the purest *bloud*, which

which is so excessively hot, as whilst the creature liveth, if you put but your finger into its hollow part, it is impossible to continue it there long without burning or scalding the same, from whence it must necessarily ensue, that the *liver* being the fountaine of all the *blood*, must of necessity have great and abundance of pure *blood*, wherewith to support and maintaine the structure of the whole *body*, and the *vital spirit* of any creature is none other thing then a *corporeall fume* or *vapour*, (to speake properly) very pure and subtile; begun in the *heart* by the operation of the naturall heate, spread by the *arteries* and *veines*, to refresh and comfort the whole *body*; which agitative or *subtile spirit* proceeding from the *heart*, and *vital spirits*, being a continuall motion, by reason that motion and agitation is the true life thereof, which continually remaineth in all living creatures. But the *heart* which may bee truely and rightly stiled the *fountaine of life* and *heate*, nature hath assigned it its proper place, which is to bee scituate in the Center, that is the middle part of the *body*: From whence proceedeth life and heate into each organ of the *body*, by which means they are preserved and enabled to perform their naturall and proper function. And as touching the *cocks*, if the *liver* bee not well stored, nay full of pure and perfect *blood*, neither is the creature able to concoct and digest its meate, nor can the *cocks* bee hot: So as if there bee in those parts a defect of heate, the *seede* of the beast cannot bee perfectly concocted, by which meanes the Horse becommeth frigid and impotent, and without any power at all of *Procreation*. And this is as much as neede bee sayd of this subject: Whercin if I have any way erred, or not delivered my selfe so clearely, where-

by to bee understood as I desire, the blame must light upon the great desire I promised to brevity: Howsoever I have endeavoured what in mee lyeth, to dilate and explicate my selfe at full.

Now I will begin to shew you what meanes wee have to preserve Horses from all inward Diseases; which consisteth of foure wayes, *viz.* by *Purging*, *Sweating*, *Flebothomy*, or *Blood letting*, and *Vomit*. As touching the first, which is *Purging*, it is twofold, to wit, outward and inward. This *outward purging* is by cleansing the outward parts, which must bee done immediately at what time you take up your horse from grasse, which would be about *Saint Bartholomewes* day, for then the heart of grasse doth begin to decline, and therefore after that day, the grasse he then feedeth upon, breedeth no good but bad and corrupt bloud, and so consequently sundry sorts of maladies and infirmities in his body; besides, the ayre beginneth then to grow sharpe, which is also very dangerous, yea and most contagious for him; and if you suffer him to runne after that time, his hayre will grow long and rough, so as he will not have for that Winter any flicke or glittering coat. Of this outward cleansing or purging your Horse, you shall find taught you in *lib. 2. cap. 6. Sect. 6.* and the manner how and when it would be done, *viz.* in a warme day in the Sunne, at what time every part and member of him would be soaped, washed, dryed, and cleansed from all manner of *sweat*, *scurfe*, *dust*, *dirt*, and *filth*, yea and that all his whole *Body* over, especially his *Mane*, *Tayle*, and *Cods*, who being thus cleansed and made dry againe, and his yard drawne, cleansed and annointed with tryed Hogges grease, let his *Eares*, his *Mane*, (just so farre as
the

Cleansing and
purging. Of
outward Pur-
ging.

the top of the head-stall will cover, and no more) and under the Chaule, be handsomely trimmed, then pull away by the roots all the smelling hayres about and under his mouth and nose, and the long *staborne hayres* under and about his *Eyes*; which done, cut away about a handfull of the lower part of his Tayle even and decently; then cause the Ferrier to shooe him up, but let him be carefull to pare him neatly, and to open the Heeles and Frush. Then cloath him up warme, and stopped with small wispes: this done, annoint all his hoofe, with the ointment (having first washed them cleane, and made them dry againe) prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap. 11. Sect. 9.* Then let his feet be picked cleane, and stop him with Oxe-dung.

Now as touching his inward purging, this ought to be done evermore before you put him to any labour or exercise: And first let him be raked, by causing some one who hath a small hand and arme, to annoint them first with a little sweete Butter, or Oyle de Bay, but some doe use Sope, which I doe hold too sharpe, and so putting his hand into his *Fundament*, let him bring forth all his dung, and while hee is in so doing, let him try to feel for Bots or Worms, which may stick fast unto the great *Gut*, and the place where the dung lieth; which if hee finde, let him pluck them away gently, and by degrees, and so bring them all out; this done, give him the Clister mentioned in *lib. 2. cap. 6. Sect. 8. Clift. &c. 4.* and so soone as the Horse hath received it Clister-wise, then presently clap his taile close to his Tewell, and so cause him to keepe it so long as you can; and this would be done, three or foure dayes before the Full or Change of the Moone. The next day

Cleansing and
purging in-
wardly.

Drinke 1.

Drinke 2.

after, give him his first drinke, inserted *lib. 2. cap. 16. Sect. 14. purg. 4.* the next day following, give him his second drinke, shewed you in *lib. 2. cap. 16. Sect. 14. Purg. 5.* and so follow such directions shewed you in those Rules.

Let blood.

Sweat.

Vomit.

Powders to be put into his Provender.

The next day following you have thus given him his two drinke, let him *blood*; if you shall finde the *blood* to bee very bad, take the more from him, if reasonable good, take the lesse; but if very good, then draw your cord, and so doe but give the *Veine vent*, and no more, then afterwards keepe him with warme *Mashes*, as is taught you else where. The next day after *blood-letting*, sweat him like as is prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap. 18. Sect. 28. S.* And if you doe discover any cold in him by any symptoms, then give him the vomit prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap. 20. Sect. 1. V.* And to prevent any obstructions in the *Liver* or *Lungs*, or his *Heart* any way oppressed, or otherwise to preserve the *blood* pure, and from corrupting; all which inconveniences may bee a ready meanes to bring your Horse to his end; give him in his Provender, such Powders and other Simples which you shall finde in sundry places of this Treatise; for this will refine his *blood*, and preserve his *Liver* from infection, and keepe him in perfect health.

12. Causes of health & long life.

Thus far Sir, I have declared unto you what I understand of the Cause of Sicknesse in generall. It remaineth now for mee to inculcate what are the causes of health and long life, which to bee briefe are twelve in number: *Viz.* The first is Nature, good digestion, and good Nutriment; the second is moderation in feeding and dyet; the third is, moderate labour; the fourth is, moderate use of sleeping and waking; the fifth is, moderate

moderate spending upon Mares: the sixth is, moderate journies: the seventh is, wholesome ayre: the eighth is, not to be exercised too soone after grasse: the ninth is, to be kept from raw and greene meates: the tenth is, not to bee suffered to eate or drinke being hot: the eleventh is, not to be either washed or walked at the end of his dayes journies: the twelfth is, to give him with his Provender, such powders and simples, as are prescribed you in all those Chapters which are by mee mentioned.

Hyppiatus. You have spoken well *Hypposerus*, but I would have you shew mee, how long life is acquired by these causes, which as yet you have not done, for you have but onely delivered them in generall heads and termes: wherefore I would gladly know what you can say of them in particular.

Hypposerus. I will Sir: these twelve causes of long life doe come to a Horse, either inwardly or outwardly, which howsoever they must bee holpen eyther by Art, by Industry, or else by judgement and discretion.

Wherefore you must know that whatsoever is naturall must necessarily proceed from good temperature, and proportionate mixture of the foure qualities of the body, so as the just and adequate proportions of temperate mixture, are the true causes of long life, by reason that all mixtures of superfluities are against these three things, *viz.* Nature, good digestion, and sound Nutriment. For heat and nutriment are then well proportioned, when neither the moysture with its two great quantity is predominant, whereby it devoureth the heat; nor when overmuch heate too suddenly consumeth

I.

What things
do hinder a
ture, digestion
& nutriment.

sumeth and destroyeth the moisture ; howbeit there must bee a necessity that the heate must have a kinde of regallity and dominion over the moisture, otherwise it will never bee able to nourish the body as it ought.

2.
Moderation
in eating.

The second cause of long life, is the moderation of their naturall appetite of *eating*, it being available either in excesse to kill and destroy, or in moderation to save: whereby the Horse shall dayly reparaire the decay of his humidity, by supply of moderate nourishment, and never over-whelme or suppress his heate with too great abundance of moisture, nor mixe his *Humidum Radicale* with too much superfluous impurities, for extreames are evermore perillous and ill, as well in excesse as in defect: For as too much eating (bee the meate never so good and wholesome) hindreth good digestion, and ingendreth Crudities, together with an evill habit of the Stomack; so likewise too spare a diet doth as much weaken and decay nature, by reason that the heate which thereby will arise in the stomack, will first over-charge, and afterward conquer the Radicall moisture; both which are friends to sickness and death.

3.
Moderate labour.

The third cause of long life is moderate labour, a matter very much effectuall to digestion, and therefore to long life, dilating, and spreading nutriment into every member of the body: for over-much rest, breedeth in the body superabundance of bad humors, which copleth the body: for want of which moderate exercise, it is as it were cast into a sleep, and in a manner through lumpishnesse besotted and benumbed: from whence doth spring another mischief equivalent to the former,

to wit: a collection of excrementall superfluities, occasioned through lazinesse and idlenesse, by reason that the horse for want of moderate exercise, is not able to digest his received nutriment; by which meanes many maladies are ingendred in his body, proceeding from corruption in the bloud, crudities in the stomacke, and the like, because hee hath in his body (as a man may properly say) a very sinke or standing-poole of unnaturall humours. And therefore I give all men this caveat, viz. to bee very carefull they doe not put their horses to over-much labour and travell, untill such time as they have well digested their meate, for that by their immoderate exercise, they over-clog their stomack, and so they cannot have a true concoction, their stomacks being full, and their bodies cloyed and over-much stuffed with raw and cruded humours, which through violent exercise are dispersed, first into all the Veines, (corrupting the bloud) and from thence into all the parts of the body, which ingendreth so many noysome infirmities within the body, and so many loathsome sores without the body, as will not easily be cured: and therefore it doth greatly behoove a man, that his horse (if he love him, and desire to keep him long) his exercise be neither too intemperate, nor too little, but ordred with judgement and discretion.

The fourth cause of long life is moderate use of sleeping and waking, for these are the maintenance of health and long life, if they be had with moderation, and both are very noxious otherwise beyond measure. For inordinate watching is a maine enemy to health, for it wasteth and consumeth the vitall spirits, and it decayeth the *Humidum Radicale*, causeth maceration and sterility,

4.
Moderate
fl. epe.

What manner
of thing sleepe
is.

sterility, it is an impediment to the operation of the *Braine* and sense, it begetteth sicckitic in the *Braine*, and aridity in the *Marrow*, and worketh the evill effects in the *Liver* and *Lungs*. On the otherside, immoderate sleep hindreth health, quencheth the naturall heat, and consumeth the moysture in the *Body*: for sleep is but a vapour ascending from the stomach to the *Braine*, which stupifieth the *Brain* for a season, and during that time it maketh the body senslesse; and the sooner it being provoked by over-much feeding, stuffing, and filling of the belly; and therefore it greatly standeth a man upon that hee hath a vigilant care to his horse his sleepe, that it bee moderately taken, for as I said but now, as too much sleep is noxious, so also too little is as prejudiciall.

5.
Moderation
in spending u-
pon Mares,

The fifth cause of health, and health and long life is that great care bee had in keeping your Horse from excessive in spending himselfe upon Mares, for that is Deaths Harbenger, by reason it doth after a most violent manner, consume the spirits, debilitateth the *stomack*, dryeth up the *braine* and *marrow*; and therefore the reason why a Gelding (if hee bee kept free from surfets) is longer lived then the Stoned-Horse: So likewise the reason why a Mule, being a mixed creature, (howbeit a Monster in nature) is longer lived then either of them; for that his justing (howsoever without fruit) in that kinde is but once onely in the whole course of his life; and therefore I could wish, that one Horse bee not suffered to cover above three Mares at the most through out the whole yeare, and that from the yeares of his coming to sixe, untill hee hath attained twelve, and no longer; for when a Horse hath once scene twelve
years

yeares of his age, nature will then begin to decay, whereby hee shall not bee able to beget Colts which can prove so good and serviceable, as those hee begat in his yong yeares. For besides (hard and toylsome labour) this act of coity with Mares, doth more weaken and dull him; for you cannot bee ignorant of the old Proverbe, which saith; *Omne animal post Coitum triste.*

The sixth cause of long life is, moderate riding in long journies, for by intemperate driving his heat from the inward into the outward parts of the body, is the cause that the fire of *Choler* will bee enkindled, which will be so vehement as that it must needs prove an infinite horrore unto nature, so inflaming the *bloud*, that if the Horse at the same instant bee not very empty and cleane in his *body*, the *bloud* and *humours* being mixed together, will bee through the violence thereof, dispersed into all and every part and member of the *body*, and then a sudden cold taken upon it (which rarely faileth) doth instantly putrifie and corrupt the *bloud*, and congealeth it to the unavoydable perill of the life of the Horse: especially if after this intemperate riding, hee bee either suffered to drinke, or ridden into the water, as many of your surly and lazy *Groomes* are accustomed to doe. My councell therefore is, that when you have any long journey in hand, let his travell bee moderate, inhibit walking, washing, or giving him cold water; but so soon as you shall dismount him, let his *Keeper* have him into the Stable welllittered, and thoroughly rubbed through all the parts of his body till hee bee throwed dry, let him be cloathed and stoped up warme, and at a reasonable time, let him have white water.

6.

Moderate
journeying.

7. The seventh cause of health and long life, is ; whole
 Wholom Air. some ayre and soyle, cleane keeping, painfull and good
 dressing, the Stable kept neat, sweet, and warme ; his
 food old, sweet, cleane, and dry, well sifted and shaken,
 and freed from dust and filth ; his litter sweet and dry,
 and all wet and old litter removed from under his feete
 and manger, and let all evill savours be removed from
 about the Stable.

8. The eighth cause of health and long life is, not to
 Not to travell too soone after
 grasse. suffer your Horse to be travelled or exercised too soone
 after you have taken him from grasse, untill such time
 as hee bee thorowly purged and cleansed from his sur-
 perfluous and bad humours, which he gat by being at
 grasse in time of his rest, and full feeding, which cer-
 tainly are not a few ; but heereof I have sufficiently
 spoken before in this very Chapter, and therefore I passe
 it over.

9. The ninth cause of health and long life is, not to
 Not to eate raw or greene
 meate. suffer him to eate any raw, or greene meate whilest he
 shall be kept in the Stable, for that such dyer doth be-
 get many bad and humours oppugnant to nature ; as
 Feavers, Surfets, Yellowes, Stavers, Anticors, Morfound-
 ding, and the like ; all which will debilitate Nature,
 and endanger the breeding of many desperate diseases,
 to the perill as well of the Horses life, as health,
 if extraordinary care bee not had (by way of preven-
 tion) in very good time, by the diligence of an *Expert
 Ferrier.*

10. The tenth cause of health and long life is, by kee-
 Not to eate whilst hee is
 hot. ping your Horse from meate and drinke whilest hee is
 hot, for that doth weaken the heart and spirits ; it is
 an enemy to the Appetite, and digestion, engendreth
 Oppilations,

Oppilations, and Obstructions, corrupteth and putrifieth the blood, breedeth Feavers, and many other maladies, as is very often the occasion of suddain death.

The eleventh cause of health and long life is, to be very precise, that you doe not permit your Horse to be walked or washed after labour, or travell, if in his travell he hath been heat, but presently after you dismount him, let him bee led into the Stable, well littered, warme cloathed, painfully rubbed and dried; but hereof I have spoken sufficiently in the sixth cause, and elsewhere.

11.
Not to bee
walked or washed.

The twelfth and last cause of health and long life is, to use sometimes to put and mixe with his Provender, certaine powders, viz. the powder of Anniseeds and of Licoris, or of Fenugrick, Turmerick, Bay-berries or Brimstone, white-Lilly roots small chopped, Enulacampane rootes, if greene and newly gathered, otherwise dried and beaten to fine powder, or the roots of *Polipodium* of the Oke or its powder, Savin, Marsh-Mallows, Rue, Ilope, Hore-hound, or Colts-foote: these either small chopped if you give them greene, or else dried and given in powder, which Simples will keepe him sound and in perfect health, for their vertues are to purifie the blood, prevent Obstructions, open and resolve the Liver, coole the Blood, and preserve the whole structure of the Body in excellent health.

12.
To mixe certaine
powder
with his Provender.

Thus have I (as succinctly as I have beene able) declared the reasons of sicknesse in generall, together with the true causes of health and long life, the contrarieties whereof will engender in your Horse, infirmities and death:

death: for the sensitive Bodies as well of all other creatures as of Horses, are often (upon the least cause given) disgusted & brought out of joynt & temper, by reason of the assiduall warfare of the never-ceasing-jarring Elements, that it not a little importeth a masters care to looke very narrowly into the state of his body. For put case that time and experience doe approve the contrariety of the before named inherent qualities of Heate, Cold, Drynesse, and Moisture, the formall causes of all intrinsecall diseases, the continuance and unperceivable lingring in them, together with the true cause of their suddaine and untimely death: Yet is there meanes as easily to be found, as well for the prevention of all ensuing sicknesse (if wee will but apply our care and diligence) before it approacheth, as for the able curing of them when they are come, and palpably perceived; according to the opinion of famous *Galen*, who saith: Hee that preventeth the cause of sicknesse, preventeth the sicknes it selfe: for take away the cause, and the effect followeth not.

Hypophylm. You have spoken well *Hypposerus* upon this subject; but yet your last Article is not without difficulty, in that you doe advise to administer certaine powders, and other simples unto a Horse in his Proven-der, which should conserve him in health, and prevent all inward diseases in him. I cannot certainly but approve very much hereof, in that they bee most soveraigne in such cases you speake of, but the manner of administering them, is the thing I much stand upon, knowing right well that these simples (or the greater part of them) are of strong and offensive scents and smels, and others are as far disgustfull and unpleasant
to

to his taste, whereby he may very easily be induced by disliking those powders and simples, to loath and utterly forsake his Provender.

Hypposerus. Sir, you object well, neverthelesse, give me leave to tell you, that in cases of this nature, Use (we say) makes perfectnesse: True it is, that horses will have an aversion from these kinde of drugs and simples, but what then? have you no feare, for rather then he will not eate his Provender at all, hunger will in time bring him to it, yea as well those Powders, as his Provender: provided you doe not offend him, by putting in too great a quantity at once, but by degrees, & that by a little at a time, till custome hath made him perfect; and most certaine it is, that some horses are so coy, dainty, and choyce feeders, as that you can hardly provoke them to eate any Provender at all; whereas others there be who are so great feeders, as that they will make no bones to devoure what meate soever you shall lay before them; for it is very homely viands, which a good stomacke will refuse: neverthelesse if you shall finde that your Horse cannot bee brought to take these things with his Provender, you may then sometimes administer of these Powders and other simples, with good Ale or Beere, giving it him as you give drinks, and it will suffice: howbeit it will do him more good to be given in his Provender.

Hyppiatrus. what is the best thing to bee given to a Horse to preserve the Liver from infecting, and to refine the blood?

Hypposerus. I have knowne many things administered in this case, but the very best is, to take the roote of *Polipodium* of the Oke, to wash it, and to make it
 Liver to pre-
 serve.
 very

very cleane; then cut or chop it very small, then take Liver-wort, one handfull, small chopped also, and so much Rubarb as the weight of a tester, either cut very small, or grated: give him this in his Provender three or foure mornings together fasting, and give him no meate in three houres after, and let his drink be white water for that day, and give him this monthly, and once in halfe a yeare, make tryall of his *bloud* to see how pure or foule it is, and administer accordingly.

Hypophylus. I pray you *Hypoferus*, what is the true nature of *Rubarb*? whether is it purgative or binding?

Hypoferus. Truly Sir, *Rubarb* hath too contrary natures: for if you either scrape, grate, or cut it; then is it a loosener, for it dissolveth and openeth the *Liver*, and expelleth the obstructions thereof; it expulseth all bad humours in and about the *heart*, *liver*, and *spleene*; it cleanseth the *body*, and sendeth away the peccant humours among the excrements, and all such things as may annoy or offend the *intrayles*: But if you shall pound or beat *Rubarbe* in a Morter, or otherwise, the spirit thereof being a subtile *body*, will *Transire* and flye away, whereby the operation thereof will be to binde, and be no way profitable.

Hypophylus. Let this suffice for the present, I have detained you too long from your particular affairs; it now grows late, and therefore I will take leave till our next meeting, which (God willing) shalbe to morrow at the same houre, at what time I shall not fayle you; for that I desire a finall end of this businesse: wherefore for this present I will take leave, recommending you both to God.

CHAP. III.

Of such things which are of necessity to be knowne by
every expert Ferrier, before he doth
adventure to administer.

Hyppophylus.



hitherto *Hyppiatus* wee have proceeded orderly, and your servant *Hypposerus* hath discoursed very accurately and pithily: Nevertheless some things there bee which yet he hath not put home enough, whereby I have not received that full satisfaction I desire.

Hyppiatus. Sir, Sithence wee are met here againe to discusse such things whereof you desire to informe your selfe; my will is to have you fully and substantially satisfied (if it may be) in every poynt, which might concerne this our subject; wherefore I intreate you to propose your doubts, and look in what *Hypposerus* may faile, my selfe shall endeavour to supply to the utmost of our best skill.

Hyppophylus. Sir, I thanke you, but withall one favour I must beg of you, and that is, that for that my memory may peradventure faile me (it being none of the best) if as things occurre to my thoughts, I should aske any question that might happen to bee out of season and
O order,

order, yet you will not take it ill that I should interrupt him or you in your discourses.

Hyppiatus. No truly Sir, will I not, and therefore begin to make your demand, and *Hypoferus* shall give you answer.

Hypophylus. I thanke you, then thus: As touching the composition of the *body* of the Horse, more I grant might have been spoken in words, but not more to purpose; for a man to run into divisions and sub-divisions, were but to beget confusion in the unlearned Reader, (such are your ordinary Smiths for the most part, for whose instruction I do principally undergoe these pains) and to send him away worse satisfied in his judgement, then before. Whereas a plaine and succinct method doth more edifie and instruct him then the other can doe. I therefore demand of you *Hypoferus*, that forasmuch as you have spoken well of the foure Elements; to wit, Fire, Ayre, Water, and Earth, yet have you not demonstrated their natures, or where they are placed. For true it is, my selfe, and all men doe perfectly know; that these foure Elements are not these foure materiall and visible Elements which wee daily behold and make use of, as things most usefull for us towards the sustentation of our livelihood: being creatures, without which wee cannot live: but I would gladly have you shew what their true natures bee, being things incorporate, and therefore concealed from our eyes: I would also know in what parts they doe raign, and have their identity or being.

Hypoferus. Sir, as touching the natures of these four Elements, I have sufficiently made appeare unto you in *Capitulo precedenti, parte in initio*, but as touching the se-

cond

cond part of your demand, I say, that these foure Elements which be in nature so dissonant and distinct one from the other: as that nothing can bee more, no white can bee more opposite to blacke; neverthelesse that you may know these Elements, I thus averre. The Fire is highest, being neare neighbour, or adjoining to the Moone, and therefore naturally hot: Ayre is placed next unto it, and therefore naturally light. The Water is annexed unto the Ayre, and therefore naturally moyst. And the Earth is scituate next to the Water, but lowest, and out of that reason, naturally heavy. As touching their vertues all the learned doe hold, that Fire by meanes of its heate, exciteth matter to generation, and occasioneth warmth in every living body, and it doth ripen things raw and undigested, in such excellent and subtile wise, as that the Ayre, which is of a more grosse nature, may the better enter into the body, making a commixture with the Fire, whereby also it moderateth the heate of the Fire, the coldnesse of the Water, and the drynesse of the Earth, so as difference may the lesse oppresse the Body. The Ayre by reason of its moystnesse maketh the matter apt to receive its naturall shape, and through the instinct of the Fire its naturall heate, causing the mixt Bodies as well subtile as penetrable, as well Light and moving, whereby they be neither too grosse nor too heavy, and with all the Ayre cooleth and abateth the extremity of the burning heate of the Heart, Liver, &c. As touching the third Element, which is Water, its nature is, that through the coldnes thereof it congealeth, conglutinateth, and bindeth in mixt Bodies both the parts and members together, to wit, *Sinnewes, Bones, and Flesh;*

The nature of
the foure Ele-
ments.

1.
Fire.

2.
Ayre.

3.
Water.

4. so as the Water by meanes of its coldnesse doth temper
 and assuage the violent heat of the Fire, and the con-
 density of the Aire, collecting those things together
 which they otherwise would have dissevered. And as
 touching the Element of Earth, its nature is by meanes
 of its drynesse and Siccity, in mixt *Bodies*, so to harden
 and fasten them together, as that having once assumed
 their shapes, it causeth them to retaine and keepe them,
 which otherwise by the force of the other Elements
 would be so lax and loose, as not to be able to hold to-
 gether, wherein I could produce many familiar instan-
 ces, which for brevities sake I am inforced to omit. But
 the opinion of the best *Physitians* is, that when any natu-
 rall *Body* dyeth, the substance thereof returneth back a-
 gaine to those Elements from whence they came. Thus
 you may plainly see, that Fire is naturally hot, and
 therefore separateth: Aire moist, and therefore giveth
 Shape: Water cold and therefore bindeth: and Earth
 drie, and therefore naturally hardneth, and keepeth its
 impression: Wherefore in any Malady in a *Horse*, ob-
 serve but this one Rule, *viz.*, that when at any time an
 Inflammation shall arise in the *Body*, be you confident it
 proceeds of Fire, and therefore you must administer
 (if you will performe a right Cure) things contrary to
 that Element; to wit; what may be agreeable to Aire
 and Water, whereby to moisten, coole, and allay the
 rage of the heat. If it be a *Flux* of *Bloud*, or the like, pro-
 ceeding from the abundance of moisture; which takes
 its origin from the Element of Aire, then must you ap-
 ply Medicines which may connive with the Earth,
 whose drynesse may harden such moisture. If it pro-
 ceed of *Cold Rhumes*, or the like, whereby the infirmity
 hath

hath its source from the Element of Water; you must then administer Medicines cohering with the Element of Fire and Aire, which may be able through its heat and moysture to expell all cold and grosse humours. And lastly, if the grieffe bee Maingenesse, or the like, which commeth from the Earth, which be dry and arid infectious diseases, then must your applications bee had from the Element of Fire, whose nature is to dissolve all siccativive humours: wherefore (I say againe) that heate being too predominant is asswaged by the meanes of moistnesse and coldnesse: too great moistnesse by heate and drynesse, over-much coldnes by heat and drynesse, and too great a proportion of drynesse by heate alone.

Hyppophylus. But then tell mee, I pray you, bee there no other Elements, or beginnings in living Bodies, more then these foure before named?

Hypposerus. No Sir, not any other which have their beginnings; but there are two other which the Learned doe terme proper Elements: viz. the Ingendring of Seed, and Menstruall Blood; but these (I say) do assume their essence from the other foure Elements, whereby they become a Body, which otherwise they could not, and therefore are subordinate to them, and they take their place after them.

Hyppophylus. Having spoken sufficiently of the natures and qualities of these foure Elements: what say you to the Humours?

Hypposerus. I say that the Humours are also foure in number, which Physitians doe stile the first qualities, according, as I have formerly intimated: and these foure are Blood, Phlegme, Choller, and Melancholy: Blood being

The four first
Qualities.

being sweet in taste, *Phlegme*, neither sweet, bitter, nor
 sowre, and therefore of no taste, or if of any, (like to
 that of good Oyle) rather sweet then otherwise: *Chol-
 ler* is bitter in taste: and *Melancholy* is sowre in taste:
 So as by these tastes you may distinguish them: and
 these Humours have reference or neere affinity unto
 the foure Elements; for like as I have before agnized,
Bloud is of the nature of the *Ayre*; *Phlegme* of
 the *water*; *Choller* of the *Fire*; and *Melancholy* of the
Earth: and these Humours have their particular abode
 and residence in the *body*, absolute and peculiar to them-
 selves; as *Bloud* hath his abiding in and about the
Heart; *Phlegme* in the *Braine*, *Choller* in the *Liver*, and
Melancholly in the *Spleene*, whereby we may the better
 come to know what Complexion raigneth in every
Horse, as also how hee is naturally qualified and dispo-
 sed: for the *Horse* that is of a *Sanguine Complexion* is
 commonly a Bright Bay, who is of disposition jovially,
 wanton, or merry, agile and of motion temperate, nei-
 ther too fiery, nor too dull or melancholly: Your
Milke-white is of *Complexion phlegmatique*, whose pro-
 perty commonly is to be lunt, heavy, and slow: Your
Bright-Sorrell hath commonly reference to *Choller*, and
 hee is naturally for the most part fiery, hot, and ever
 free-mettled, but yet of no great strength: Your *Mousse-
 Dun* and such like rusty and sut-colours are commonly
 of a *Melancholy Complexion*, and they bee ordinarily co-
 wardly, faint-hearted, subject to starting, sloathfull,
 restife, stubborne, disobedient, revengefull, &c. but if
 these *Complexions* bee rightly symbolized, and doe all
 meet in one and the same *Horse*, according to each ones
 proper nature, they doe performe their functions as
 they

they ought in a perfect harmony, whereby the *Horse* remaineth sound and healthy: but if there bee discord or disagreement in the Elements and Humours, there must bee the like in the *Complexions*, and then doth the poore *Horse* suffer for it to the danger both of Life and Health.

Hypophylus. I ever understood that there are certaine *Spirits* which doe remaine in the *Body* of every *Horse*: doe you know them *Hypoferus*?

Hypoferus. Yes, I doe, and they bee sayd to bee two in number, *viz.* The *Spirit Animall*, and the *Spirit Vitall*; the *Spirit Animall* hath its residence in the *Braine*, by which meanes it giveth motion, feeling, and power to the *Horse*, through the ayd of the *Sinews*: and the *Spirit Vitall* makes abode in the *Heart*, which is the one-ly cause of the excessive heate thereof, which disper-
Spirit Animal.
Spirit Vitall.

seth the *Bloud* into every part and member of the *Body*. For the *Heart* and the *Braine* are in equality absolutely different, the *Heart* being most violently hot, (as I have before shewed) and the *Braine* is as extremely cold: and so hereof needs not any more be spoken in this place.

Hypophylus. But may not a man conjecture to what infirmities or diseases *Horses* may probably bee subject by their *Complexions*?

Hypoferus. Yes Sir, very easily, yea and that with so great advantage and profit to the *Cure*, if the *Ferrier* bee expert and skilfull in the making and applying of his Medicines, as that nothing can be more. For example, the *horse* that is of colour either *Bright-bay*, or *Dark-bay*, with a pleasant and cheerfull countenance, or if he be a
The disease known by the Complexion.
 white.

Of the Sanguine Complexion.

white Flea-bitten, white-Lyard, or Black with a white-star, or race downe the face, or white-foote; if hee bee of either of these colours, we hold him to be of a *Sanguine Complexion*, and in *Horses* of this *Complexion* the Element of Aire is most predominant, and they be commonly of nature affable, well-metled, active, and of good strength; but the Maladies whereunto they are most usually incident are Leprosies, Glanders, Consumptions, & the like; yet these *Horses* are frequently of so able Constitutions, as that they have vigour enough to endure good and strong Medicines: provided these Medicines be not too hot, but cooling. The *Horse* which is *Milke-white*, *Yellow*, *dunne*, *Sanded*, or *Pie-bald*; these take more from the Element of Water than from any of the other three; and these we say are of a *Flegmaticke Complexion*; and they are naturally slow, dull, heavy, and nesh or wash of their flesh; and they bee most inclined to *Pores*, *Rhumes*, paines in the head, *Stavers*, *Yellowes*, and the like, and these *Horses* can undergoe good strong Medicines, if there bee cause to administer such; provided these Medicines bee not made of Ingredients, that bee not over cold.

Of the Flegmatick Complexion.

Of the Melancholy Complexion.

The *Horse* whose colour is *Mouse-Dunne*, *Chestnut*, *Browne*, or of a foote-colour, or *Iron-Grey*; these are commonly of a *Melancholy Complexion*, participating more of the *Earth*, then of any of the other Elements; by which meanes they are of nature dull, heavy, dogged, restife, faint-hearded, &c. and therefore most inclined to Inflammations in the *Spleene*, *Siccity*, and *Aridity* in the *Liver*, to the *Dropley*, *Frenzy*, and the like; these *Horses* are better able to endure stronger Medicines then any of the former; provided those Medicines be

bee not siccatrizing or drying, but such as are both cold and moist. The *Horse* whose colour is cole-Black, without any white at all, a deepe Iron-Grey, a Bright-Sorrell, or the like, such coloured *Horses* wee say bee of a *Cholerick Complexion*, and they partake more of the Element of *Fire*, then of any other of the three former, for that they are by nature Fiery, hot, too free, and hare-brained, and therefore cannot bee very strong of constitution; wherefore the *Ferrier* must bee very carefull he doe not administer any strong medicine to such a *Horse* at any time, for so he may soon destroy him.

Of the cholerick complexion.

Hypophylus. But yet *Hyposerus*, I would bee glad to know of what *Complexion* that *Horse* is, in whom all the foure *Complexions* doe joyntly meete, as namely in that *Horse*, that is either of a Browne-Bay, or a Dapple-Bay, Dapple-Grey, a Black full of silver haures, a Black-Rone, a Red-Rone, or the like.

Hyposerus. Sir, as I cannot give you more *Elements* then these foure before named, so I am not able to give you more then foure *Complexions*; but yet that one *Horse* may participate of them all, is a thing possible enough, and this is the very best *complexion* of all other; yea and the most perfect: For *horses* in whom the foure *complexions* doe meete, cannot but bee the best and most able of all other, yea and the best for *shape*, for *colour*, and for *mettle*, the soundest and most healthy; for howsoever they may accidentally fall into infirmities, neverthelesse they are not naturally inclinable to any, and therefore when a *Ferrier* shall at any time have occasion to administer unto them, hee must bee very circumspect the physick bee punctually administred according to the nature of the disease, and hee must examine

Of the foure complexions meeting in one horse, which is the best and most perfect.

mine both the cause and time of his first languishing; as whether it bee a sicknesse newly taken, or long before, whether it proceeded of a Surfeit, Hard-riding, Evill-dyet, &c. by which meanes hee may administer his physick (whether Pills, Potions, or Clusters) the more securely: For medicines given upon a first sicknesse, and before the Horse bee farre spent and weakened through the distemper of the malady, may bee compounded the stronger, and will worke to more effect, but after a long sicknesse, when as the *spirits* both *vitall* and *animall* are enfeebled, the *elements* are in open rebellion each one against the other, and the humours in a confused distemper; then (I say) must the physicall medicine be so tempered and ordered, so as that nature must bee assisted, but no way further perplexed or troubled, whereby the evill humours must bee sent away, the *body* cleansed and acquitted of the causes of its distemper, and then it will not bee long before the poore *creature* may recover strength and sanity, and so repaire daily the decay of his former state of health.

Hyppophylus. *How doe you hold the causes of sicknesse?*

The causes of sicknesse defined.

Hypposerus. If you meane the causes of sicknesse simply, you must understand, that all Maladies and Sicknesse of what nature soever they bee, are *affects* and evill *dispositions* (as learned Physitians doe call them) unnatural, which doe proceede, and are, as it were, the Precursors which doe most violently hale and pull sicknesse after them, and thus in a word doe they define the causes of sicknesse, and not otherwise.

Hyppophylus. *How many sorts of causes be there?*

Two causes of sicknesse.

Hypposerus. Onely two degrees, *viz.* *Intrinsicall* and *Extrinsicall*: the *Intrinsicall* are those which are ingendred

dred within the *body*, and therefore cannot bee made visible to the eye, but are made knowne by their symptoms: The second are *Extrinfecall*, and therefore are more easily discovered and knowne by outward object, wherefore they neede no further discourse.

Hypophylus. *How doe you define sicknesse as it is in its owne nature?*

Hyposewus. *Agritudo*, or *Infirmitas*, is none other thing then that which is contrary to nature. For all intrinfecall infirmities most commonly possess and seize upon the whole *body*; and those are most frequently Feavers, Pestilence, Convulsions, &c. Other infirmities againe doe attach, but onely certaine members or parts of the *body*, as Colds which doe perplex the *head*, Surfeits which doe annoy the stomach, and Splents, Spavens, Pearles, and Hawes in the eyes, and the like extrinfecall sorances, but more sorts of infirmities and maladies I never knew, every severall of which may most easily and palpably bee discovered. as well by their inward as outward signes.

Hypophilus. *what is your opinion as touching the administering of Drinks, Potions, and Clifters to a sicke horse, to wit, whether it be better to apply them very warme, or but indifferently.*

Hyposewus. Sir, even in this very point is a speciall heed and care fit to bee had and taken; for by giving Medicines or Clifters too warme, a Ferrier may easily undoe all, and utterly destroy the *horse* he would labour to cure; yea with as great facilitie, as if he gave him in the place of a wholesome *Cordiall*, a formall *posson*: for you must understand that a *horse* of all other living *Creatures*, can worse indure to receive inwardly hot things,

Sicknesse defined.

How to apply inward medicines.

things, by reason that he is inwardly so extreemly hot by nature, and therefore whatsoever thing is to be administered to him, ought not to be more than bloud warme at most, by any meanes, for that nothing can be more noxious to him than the endangering the scaling of his *Stomack* and *Intrayles*; besides, let his drinks and inward medicines be given him in the most leisurely manner you are able, for feare of suffocating him; neither suffer any man (as I have seene many use to do) to pinch his *Gullet* or *Wind-pipe*, whereby he is provoked to cough most violently, for it is a thing most dangerous both to his winde, and causeth oft times fleshy stufte like to the *Garget* to grow in his throat. Now for the administering of Pills, Balls, and such like medicines, little advice is required, if they be not made too great, onely if you take forth his *tongue* first, and then put them up into his *mouth*, you cannot doe amisse, but of this method no man can be ignorant.

Hyppophilus. *What time is best wherein to administer your Medicines to a sick horse.*

The time w^{ch}
to administer.

Hypposerus. Evermore in a morning fasting, unlesse upon urgent occasion (as in case of sudder and dangerous sicknesse, which may happen to fall out upon a sudder accident;) and the longer hee bee kept fasting from meate and drinke, as well before he taketh his Physicke, as after, it will bee the better; for by that meanes his medicine will worke the more kindly in his *Body*, for he ought to bee kept from eating and drinking at least three houres before and after.

Hyppophilus. *Is it requisite he be exercised after the taking of his Physicall medicines?*

What exercise
is most meet
with physick.

Hypposerus. Sir, a little moderate exercise is very necessary, whereby his Physicke may worke the better, and

and the sooner, as to trot him upon so easie a pace as you can cause him to take, otherwife to walke him up and downe out of the winde in the warme Sunne, by the space of a quarter of an houre, but then so soone as he cometh into the Stable, let his Stall bee littered before hand well, then presently cloath him up, and stop him warme, and keepe the aire from him, neither let his Keeper goe from him in three or foure houres, but let him rivet his eies upon him continually, observing well his postures, and as occasion may require, let him bee at hand to helpe and supply the *horse* with all things necessary.

Hyppophilus. May a man attaine to any knowledge of the health, or indisposition of the horse by observing his Ordure or excrements?

Hypposerus. Yes may he Sir, and that very much; in-
 fomuch as I would advise all carefull Ferriers who have a desire to attaine reputation by their Art, that before they doe administer any inward medicine, whether Purgations, or Cordials; that they be carefull first (if possible) to see his *Ordure*: for I do finde for the most part the *Ordure* is correspondent to the food the horse eateth, especially for the colour; for if he run at grasse, or be soyled in the Stable, then will his *dung* bee evermore greene, howbeit of a more bright, and sometimes againe of a more darke colour, and it will bee rather soluble then hard; but the indifferent colour, and freer from hardnesse is ever best, and doth make appearance of the more sanity and health of the *beast*, as also that he is thereby the lesse subject to costivenesse, and therefore in better state of *body*. But if his *Ordure* bee very bright and laxative, it is an infallible signe that hee hath eaten

Of Excre-
ments.

some thing that is against nature; as a Feather, or some naughty Worme, some Spider, or the like unwholesome thing, otherwise hee scowreth of some inward cold which hath formerly lurked in his *stomack* or *body*: But if his *dung* at grasse or soile bee very hard and coltive, which hee putteth forth with round and hard trattles, then is it a great signe that hee is very hot in his *body* and inward parts, which may endanger the *Stavers*, or else doth show that hee hath a surfeit which hee got (before his putting forth) through intemperate riding, washing, raw, or evill food, or the like, whereby the *horse* is in danger to become morfounded, to have the *Yellowes*, or *Jaundise*, or a *Feaver*, which will otherwise hardly appeare in him in its effects untill his comming into the *Stable*, at what time due order must bee taken for speedy prevention. But if your *horse* doe feed upon *Straw*, then will the colour of his *dung* bee yellow and somewhat hard, long, and well compact, all which be tokens of a healthy and a sound *body*; but if it bee reddish, and exceeding dry, it is a signe of ensuing sicknesse, by meanes of a great drought in the *body*, and so also if it bee thinne; but if it bee blackish, and doth not smell strong, then is it a signe that the *horse* is in danger of death. But if your *horse* doe feede upon *Hay* and *Oates*, and that hee bee found in *body*, then will his *Excrements* bee a browne, yellow, moist, and well compact, but if the brownesse bee converted into reddishnesse, you may bee then well assured that hee hath some distemperature in his *body*, but when it converteth into blacknesse, then if prevention bee not speedily had, death ensueth; and as touching the smell, that falleth out according to the quantity of the *Pro-*
vender

vender you give him, for the more Provender, the stronger will bee the smell of his *Ordure*, and Pease and Beanes will cause his *Ordure* to smell stronger then Oates, and Bread more then any Graine or Pulse; and the more Bread and Provender you give him, the more perfect and sound shall you keepe him in his *body*. But if his *dung* bee browne and slimy, and shine withall, then bee you assured hee hath much greace which lieth in his *body*, which Physick must fetch away from him, for then also is his *blood* putrified, corrupted, or enflamed. But if you doe finde by his *Excrements* that hee voideth undigested stufte, which you may know by the whole cornes of Oates, Wheate, and other Graine he sendeth forth in his *dung*, then perswade your selfe, that your *horse* hath lately taken a formall surfeit, which may right easily bring him to his end, if a discrete course be not speedily taken: In a word, if his *dung* bee black, and hath little or no smell, then make you no question but that hee is in danger of death, which will full soon after follow, if the greater care bee not taken to hinder and prevent the same.

Hypophylus. *Have you made the like observations of the Urine or Water of the Horse?*

Hypposerin. Yes indeede have I, whereby I have not a little profited my selfe, and attained unto great experience, insomuch as I dare boldly averre, that that Ferrier shall never come to bee an expert Artist, who shall not bee very well versed therein, nor bee able to administer his Medicines aright, who shall not bee very observant of the *horses urine*: For if hee shall finde his water to bee either pale, whitish, or yellow, not much unlike to the colour of Whey, or fat Amber, or if it bee

Of Urine.

not

not very cleere, but smelleth somewhat strong; let the *Ferrier* then be confident the *Horse* is not sick, but sound and healthy, and in perfect state of *body*; but if his *Urine* bee extreame cleare and white, and of the colour of *Rock-water*, and withall slimy, then hath hee a taint in his *Kidneies*, *Reines*, or *Back*, or else hee enclineth to the *Stone*, or else hee hath some stoppage in his *Kidneies*. But if his *water* bee high coloured, like to the colour of strong *Beere*, then is it a token the *blood* of the *horse* is enflamed, and that hee is subject to a *Feaver*, or to some strong *Surfeit*; but if it bee red, and of the colour almost of *blood*, then is the *blood* more enflamed, which came of over hard *Riding*, which may prove very dangerous to his life. But if it bee of a pale greenish colour, thick, and viscous, then certainly his *Back* is growne weake, and hee is in danger of a *Consumption* of his *Seed*. But if it be high coloured and nebuled or mixed with small *Clouds*, with a kinde of blacknesse therein, then this doth demonstrate ensuing sicknesse and death, if it bee not carefully prevented. But if the *Nebulosity* bee disperfed into severall parts, and not combined as it were into one *Masse* or *Body*; this then argueth, that the malice of the disease beginneth to depart, whereby the *Ferrier* may have great hope of the health of the *horse*: And thus farre I have by diligent observation found to bee most certaine, whereby I have brought many a desperate Malady to its wished Cure, which otherwise I could not so easily have effected.



CHAP. IV.

The manner of handling the particular Cures.

Hyppyrus.



Sir, I doubt not but that wee have proceeded farre enough into this subject, for I cannot see what can bee spoken more; let us now come to the particular Cures, handling each one in its proper place.

Hypophylus. With all my heart; but I pray let mee desire you, that wee may not onely handle the Cures themselves, but the severall Diseases to which a horse is or may bee subject; together with the causes of such diseases, the signes how to know them, and the meanes and manner how to cure them.

Hyppyrus. All shall bee done to your minde Sir: Wherefore I pray proceed.

Hypophylus. I will: Neverthelesse I hold the best and clearest way will bee to handle the Cures by way of *Alphabet*; whereby whosoever doth desire at any time to informe himselfe of any Cure, hee may the more readily turne thereunto, without looking over the *Index* or *Table*.

Hyppyrus. I thinke not that to be amisse.

SECT. I. A.

Hypophylus.

Then thus : Tell mee Hypposerus, doe you know the Receipt which is called Acopum ? Doe you also know its Nature ? whether it is a Medicine to bee taken inwardly, or an Unguent to bee applied outwardly ?

Two things to be observed in every Cure.

Hypposerus. Sir, to make answer to two things in one, I say ; first, it is impossible for any man to become a perfect *Ferrier*, who shall not first know unto what diseases a horse is enclinable : Secondly, what bee the causes of every disease in particular : Thirdly, how, and by what waies and meanes these diseases doe accrew : Fourthly, the signes how to know and distinguish them : And lastly, the meanes and manner how to cure them. Secondly, as touching this your demand of *Acopum*, and its true Nature ; I answer, that I doe know it well, to bee a most soveraigne thing in some causes ; for I have occasion to make use thereof very often : It is both a medicine to bee taken inwardly, and an Oyntment to be applied outwardly. Master *Blundevile* was the first that ever brought the Knowledge and Use thereof into our Kingdome, who had it from the *Italians* when hee lived in *Naples*, as himselfe told mee, where it is very much used ; and hee also affirmed that it was formerly in much use and high esteeme among the ancient *Grecian Ferriers*, who gave it the name of *Acopum*. Master *Markham* hath also in his *Master-piece* the same Receipt, but hee would make it his owne, for hee giveth it no name, but stileth it in his nineteenth Chapter of his *Cures Physicall*, thus :

thus: *A most famous Receipt, which is both a singular Drench, and a singular Oynment*: And in reciting the Ingredients, hee maketh the quantities but the fourth part of what Master *Blundevile* setteth downe, which is in effect one and the same thing; and hee relateth likewise the same Vertues thereof, which Master *Blundevile* doth; onely Master *Markham* saith that foure or five Spooonefulls heereof must bee given with a pint of Sack or Malmesey; as also that the *limbes of the horse* being bathed therewith, it is good against wearinesse and tyrednesse; and lastly, hee saith, that being given in Wine, it cureth all kinde of inward maladies; all which particulars, Master *Blundevile* nameth not.

Hippophylus. *What is the reason that Master Markham doth set downe but a quarter of the Ingredients in the making of this famous Receipt?*

Hypoferus. His reason is good, Sir, and I will approve of his judgement therein: for if any man should make so great a quantity together as Master *Blundevile* doth set downe in his Receipt, it would not bee spent whilst it were good, but onely by such a *Ferrier* as hath daily use thereof, and such an one will bee hardly found; for the newer and oftner such like *Receipts* are made, the better they bee, and yelde more profit when they be administred.

Hippophylus. *Is this Receipt hot or cold in operation?*

Hypoferus. It is hot in working, otherwise it could not hold good in cases of Surfeits, Tyrednesse, and of Convulsions, and the like, wherein consisteth its chiefest vertue, being administred outwardly; but being administred inwardly, it is not altogether so hot, for then the ancient *Ferriers* would not have prescribed to have

have it taken with Sack or Muskadine, both which are very hot; for it helpeth all Feavers for the most part; but yet I would not have it administred inwardly in so great a proportion as Master *Markham* adviseth, for hee (as I said before) alloweth foure or five Spoonfulls to a pint of Sack or Muskadine; unlesse it be to be given in very cold Causes, for the Wine it selfe is very hot. But both my Master and my selfe doe commonly administer two Spoonfulls at the most at a time, in a pint of white Wine, or with a quart of good Ale or Beere, which wee hold to bee much better and safer, and wee have found it evermore to worke to our hearts desire; inso-much as we have both wrought admirable Cures therewith, I do assure you.

Hypophylus. I pray deliver me this Receipt, just as Master *Markham* hath it.

Hyposerus. I shall Sir, most willingly; but then you must understand that the quantities will bee more intricate to weigh forth, whereby to make it the more punctually.

Acopum.

Take *Eusforbium*, halfe an ounce, *Castoreum*, one ounce, *Adraces*, halfe a quarter of a pound, *Bdelium*, halfe an ounce, and halfe a quarter, *Pepper* one ounce, *Foxe greafe* halfe an ounce, *Opoponax*, one ounce, *Lacerpitium*, three quarters of an ounce, *Amoniacum*, halfe a quarter of a pound, *Pigeons dung* as much, *Galbanum*, halfe an ounce, *Nitrum*, one ounce and a quarter, *Spuma nitris* three quarters of an ounce, *Ladanum*, a quarter of a pound, *Perethrum*, and *Bay-berries*, of each three quarters of an ounce, *Cardanum*, two ounces, seede of *Rue* halfe a quarter of a pound. Seede of *Agnus Castus*, one ounce, *Parfely-seede* halfe an ounce, dried Rootes of
Ireos,

Ireos, or *Flour de luce*, one ounce and a quarter, *Isope* and *Carpo Balsamum*, of each a quarter of a pound. Oyle of *Floure de luce*, a quarter of a pound, and halfe a quarter. of Oyle de-Bay as much, Oyle of *Spikenard*, three quarters of a pound, *Oleum Cyprinum*, three quarters of a pound, and halfe a quarter, the oldest Oyle Olive, a pound and a halfe, *Piche* a quarter of a pound, and two ounces, *Turpentine* a quarter of a pound; melt of every of these that will bee molten severally by themselves, and then mingle them with the residue of the ingredients being first beaten to fine powder, and after they have boyled a little on the fire, take it off, and straine it into a cleane gally-pot, and so keepe it for your use; and when you are to administer of it to your Horse, let it bee given as before is shewed, and if by long keeping it wax hard, then soften it with the Oyle of *Cypresse*, so that it may be good and thick, * *.

Hypophylus. *What are the Vertues of this Receipt, called Acopum?*

Hyposeru. Master *Blundevile* and Master *Markham* doe tell you, to wit, it helpeth *Convulsions* in the *sinewes* and *muskles*, it draweth forth all noysome humors, and disburdeneth the head of all grieffe, being put up with a long *Goose* feather annoynted in it into the *nostriils* of the horse; it healeth (I say) all manner of *Convulsions*, *Cramps*, *Numnesse*, and *Stringholts*, *Colds*, and *Rhumes*; it dissolveth the *Liver* being troubled with *opulations* and *obstructions*; it helpeth *Siccity* and *Aridity* in the *Body*; it banisheth all wearinesse and tyrednesse, if his *Limbes* bee bathed with this medicine: And lastly, it cureth all sorts of inward *Diseases*, if it bee administr'd by way of *Drench* to a Horse

*Acopum its
vertues.*

in Wine, strong Beere, or good Ale.

SECT. 2. A.

Hypophylus.

Doe you know another Receipt, which is called Arman?

Hypoferus. Yea Sir, it is a Confection in great request in France among the Ferriers there, and now we have it heere in England; and it is a most soveraigne medicine to bee given to a sick horse, and it is to bee administred inwardly.

Hypophylus. *What bee the principall Vertues of the Arman?*

Hypoferus. It provoketh a good appetite to meat, and causeth good digestion; it taketh away all annoyances which doe either clog or otherwise trouble the stomach; it cooleth the inward heate in the body; it helpeth all Agues and Feavers; it is most excellent against Surfeits; it is an infallible remedy for the Quinsie or Squinancy in the throat comming of cold taken, and very good against the Tranchaions or gripings in the belly or guts, proceeding of winde, and such like inward infirmities.

Hypophylus. *How doe you make this confection?*

Hypoferus. Take Hony of Roses a pound and halfe, the Crums of the whitest Mancher made into fine powder, *quantum sufficit*, then take Nutmegs, cordiall powder, and Cinamon, of each an ounce and halfe; mix all these being made first into fine powder, then put it into a cleane Glasse or Gally-pot, and moysten it with Rose

Arman.
I.

vineger,

vineger; that it may be of a thicke substance like unto pap, all your Ingredients being very well incorporate together, and so keepe it to your use. And when you have occasion to administer of this *Arman*, take some of it upon the end of a Bulls pizell, and put it into his mouth, and let him champ thereon; but if you give it to a Horse that hath a Quinsie, let him gulp down two horns full, as also to a Horse that hath a Feaver, and is much distempred therewith, and it will give him health, in two or three times taking, and give him also an appetite to his meat. But then you must remember that he take this in a morning fasting, and let him fast three or foure houres after, and his drinke must bee for some time either sweet Mashes, or white water, and a spare dyet, till he be somewhat recovered.

Hypophilus. *I pray what is that thing you call cordiall Powder, and whereof is it made?*

Hypoferus. *Cordiall-Powder* hath not its name for nought, for its nature jumps right with its *Epitheton*: this we have also from the *French*, who use to give it to their sick Horses which are far spent and enfeebled with a Consumption in the *stesh, liver, &c.* for it is a most restorative *Cordiall*, comforting the *vital parts*, and *spirits animall*, and restoreth it to *Sanity*: and thus it is made.

Take Cinamon and Sugar, of each foure ounces, and of fine Bolcarmoniack two ounces: let all these be made into very fine Powder, and mixe them well together: keep this Powder from aire made up close till you have occasion to make use thereof. I doe use of this Powder in very many Receipts, as you shall hereafter understand.

Hypophilus. *Have you any other sorts of Cordials besides this?*

Hypoferus.

Cordiall Pow-
der.

Hypoferus. Yes Sir, I have another Powder which the French doe call *Duke*, or *Duche-Powder*, which little differeth from the former *cordiall powder*, onely it wanteth the *Bolearmoniack*. Wee have also another *Cordiall*, which is an *Electuary*, and is knowne by the name of *Electuarium Theriacum*, by reason it hath much *Treacle* in it; and we do compound this *Electuary* thus.

Take Syrop of Violets, Syrop of Lemons, Syrop of Roses, of each halfe an ounce, adding thereunto of your best *London Treacle*, one ounce, mingle them well together, and it is a most soveraigne *Cordiall* to bee administered unto Horses which are dangerously sick and weake.

Hypophylus. why doe you rather chuse *London Treacle* before *Venice Treacle*, *Treacle of Genoa*, or our common *Treacle*.

Hypoferus. This *London Treacle* I doe select for all medicines for Horses, rather then any other *Treacle* whatsoever, by reason it worketh the best with them of any other, for that *Venice Treacle*, and that of *Genoa* are too hot; and your common *Treacle* is nothing at all worth, it being made onely of the drosse and excrements of *Molasses*, which is none other thing then the drosse of the refining of Sugar, for I have made tryall of them all; but this *London Treacle* I doe finde to bee most agreeable to the nature of Horses: Wherefore both my selfe and my Master doe use none other, unlesse in some particular causes, wherein we administer sometimes the *Treacle of Venice*.

Hypophylus. what meane you by your white water?

White water.

Hypoferus. white water is none other thing then water made hot in a cleane Kettle, and when it is hot enough,

I use to put into it a quantity of *wheat-bran*, and sometimes *Barly-meale*, which I commonly prescribe to sicke Horses in *Physick*, instead of *Mashes*, for that when *Mashes* are either not to be had, or that they are not necessary for my purpose (as in some cases they be not) or to prevent giving of cold water; I make use of this *white water*, which must evermore be given blood warm, according as our ensuing discourse shall declare.

Hypophilus. But now let us returne to this *confection* you call your *Arman*: what other *Vertues* hath it more then what you have already delivered?

Hypoferus. Truly Sir, I have shewed you before in a manner all its *Vertues*; and to recite them againe, I say, it is most soveraigne for Horses that have taken a cold, or have *Inflamations* or *Pustils*, under their *Chaule*, or thereby are troubled with the *Quinsie* or *Squinancie*: These maladies this *Confection* will helpe, if it be given good and thick with a horne, for having the *Quinsie* in the throat, if in giving this *Arman*, it provoketh him not to cough, then take some of the *Confection* upon the end of a *Buls-Pizell*, and put it a pretty way downe his throat, by which meanes hee straying to cough, may breake the *imposthumation* in his throat, whereby the Horse may be in lesse danger of his life; and causing the *matterative* stuffe to vent out, the Horse will be in short time perfectly cured.

Hypophylus. Are there any other kindes of *Arman* besides this?

Hypoferus. Onely one more Sir, which also the *Arma* 1.
French have brought amongst us, which is not altogether so operative as the former; and this it is, viz. 2.
Take Hony one pound, and warme it a little upon the
R fire,

fire, then take halfe a pint of Vineger, and a little Wheate flower, and one penny-worth of Pepper in fine powder, mixe all these, and administer it blood warme, as aforesaid.

Hypophylus. With what manner of Vineger doe you usually make up your medicines?

Vineger.

Hyposeruus. When we speake in generall termes of Vineger to bee put into any medicines to bee given, either for inward or outward diseases; wee alwaies intend it must bee the strongest and best *white-wine Vineger*; but if it bee of any other kinde of Vineger or *Verjuice*, wee then doe give it in the Receipt, its proper name.

Hypophylus. As touching honey wherewith you make up your medicines, what manner of honey must it bee?

Honey.

Hyposeruus. That should bee made of *life-honey* onely, and of none other, unlesse *common-honey*, or *course-honey*, be in the Receipt particularly named, as it many times is.

Hypophylus. Let us now goe on to somewhat else: what hold you good for the head-ach in a horse?

S E C T. 3. A.

Hyposeruus.

WEE administer according to the nature of the Disease, for that the paines in the head are severall and distinct diseases, and therefore have severall cures.

Hypophylus. Which bee those severall maladies, and how

How may a man know and distinguish them each from other?

Hyposcerus. A judicious and cautelous observation is it, whereby wee doe know and distinguish all sorts of maladies: for the Horse being a *dumb creature* without reason and speech, is not able (like as *man* can) to tell you where his paine lyeth, and therefore it must bee the eye and judgement of the Ferrier, to bee able to observe his true *symptomes* whereby hee may goe right to accomplish the *Cure*, otherwise hee must of necessitie faile. Wherefore as the diseases of the *head* are of severall natures, every of which doe beget his paine, even so are the medicines which we apply as different. Now these paines in the *head* doe proceed from the *braine*, or from the *panicles*, by which meanes they doe properly breed Megrims, the Night-Mare, Glanders, Rhumes, Cathars, Apoplexies, Convulsions, Palsies, Frenzies, the Takings, Sleeping-evill, Madnesse, and the like: all which commonly doe proceed from the substance of the *braine*, or from the *panicles*; for that from the *Cels* and *Ventricles* through which the *spirits animall* doe give feeling and moving to all the parts and members of the *body*, the diseases before mentioned doe engender.

Ach in the Head.

Hyppophilus. From what grounds hath this head ach its source or Organ?

Hyposcerus. The grounds and causes are many Sir: some being inward, and some outward, as by meanes of some *chollerick humour* which may be predominant, by which meanes it doth oft times breed in the *panicles*, or else of some heat taken through violent labour, and sometimes by some blow given him in the *Poule* or other

ther place of the *head*; and some doe hold it com-
meth of some evill favour, which I also doe allow of;
sometimes it commeth of *Crudities* and *raw digestions*
from the *Stomack*, by reason there is so great a sympathy
betwixt the *Stomack* and the *Braine*, whereby they doe
continually participate as well of their good dispositions
in health, as of their domages in the least of their infir-
mities and sufferings.

Hypophylus. But many there bee who doe hold stiffly
that a *Horse* hath no *Braines* at all, but onely a kinde
of *windy liquid substance*, not unlike unto a kind of jelly.

Braines.

Hypoferus. That opinion is most erronious, for a
horse hath a most perfect *braine*, like as hath any other
living *Creature*, albeit indeed not in so great a proportion
as other *Animals* have. For naturall reason doth dis-
tate that if a *horse* had not his *braine*, it were impossible
for him to have semblable diseases in the *head* which
both *Man* and all other living things have, who are
(I say) likewise subject to such *Maladies*; which could
not proceed from any other causes but onely from those
before premised. Neither were it possible for a *Horse*
to endure so great labour and toyle, or to undergoe so
great and so many waies, such extreame violences as
daily he doth, if nature had not endowed him with his
organall parts correspondent to his strength, ableness,
and activity of *body*: neither could he have any memo-
ry at all, but appeare a *Lump of flesh* and *bones* without
motion. But not to verberate the *Aire*; I affirme that a
horse hath his *braines* in as compleate measure, albeit
(as I have but now touched) not in so great a quantitie
as other *Beasts* have, but in as ample, solid, and suffici-
ent manner, as any other living *Creature*, together with
the

the *skinne*, which Artists doe call *Pannicles*, which doth adhere to the *bones* conducted by the *Cells* or *Conduits* by which the *Vitall Spirits* doe give some feeling, sence, and motion to the *body*, from whence proceeds the causes of diseases and sicknesse. And for your better satisfaction if you please I may be present when at any time your *Huntsman* is to cut up a *horse* for your *bounds*, I will let you see most plainly both the *Braine* and the *Pannicles*.

Hypophilus. *How shall a man come to know when a horse hath any paine in his Head?*

Hypoferus. The Symptoms are most evident, if you eye him well: for his eyes will swell and become watry, and oft times Matterative; hee will hang downe his *head*, as if hee were sleepey; hee will pricke his *eyes* upright, forsake his meate, and his sight will bee dim.

Hypophilus. *What Cure have you for the Head-ach?*

Hypoferus. Some use to perfume his *head* with the stalks of Garlick and Frankinsence, two or three severall times, which will bring much liquid stufte forth of his *Nose*, which indeed is very good, and I doe practise it sometimes as occasion is offered; but then withall after I have perfumed him, I use to let him *bloud* in the *Palate veine*, and in both the *weeping veines*: And when I doe not perfume him, I take the longest feather of a *Goose*, and moisten it well, in *Oile de Bay*, which I put up into his *Nostrils*; and this doth both open and purge his *head* abundantly, and then keeping his *Poule* warme, together with moderate diet, for three or foure daies after, I then take *bloud* from the *Neck-veine*; and give him

him all the time of his Cure either good *Mashes* or *white-water*, and undoubtedly hee will doe well. But sometimes if I finde his *head-ach* commeth of cold taken, wherein he may be inclining to an *Ague* or *Feaver*, I then besides drawing *bloud*, doe both apply *Acopum* to his *Nose*, like as I said for *Oile de-Bay*, and also give him thereof to drinke, as I have formerly prescribed. If he be *Feaverish*: take a pinte of *Muskadine*, the yolkes of five new-laid *Egges*, and a head of *Garlick* picked, pilled, and bruised, *Pepper*, *Cinamon*, and *Nutmegs*, & somuch as well I can take up upon a *Tester* or six-penny piece: these all made into very fine powder; give him to drinke *bloud-warme* three daies together, and let him fast six hours after. * *

S E C T. 4. A.

Hypophilus.

How doe you make *Aegiptiacum*?

Hypoferus. Wee have two sorts of them; the first we doe call *Black-Aegiptiacum*; the second *Red*, both *Corrosives*; for their natures bee to corrode and eate away all manner of dead, proud, rotten, and naughty flesh out of any old *Sore* or *Ulcer*, and they do also cleanse and prepare a *Sore*, make it apt to be healed with carnifying, or healing *Salves*.

The first is thus made.

Take course English Honey two pound, *Verdegrease*,
Diers.

Diers-Galls, and Green Coperas, of each foure ounces :
 Let all these be made into powder and mixed together,
 and so put into an earthen pot, and set upon the fire,
 keeping it with continuall stirring ; but so soone as it
 beginneth to boile, take it from the fire, and let it coole,
 for by suffering it long to boile, it will become red,
 which will not be so good. This black *Ægyptiacum* be-
 sides what I have said before of its vertues, is also ve-
 ry good to dissolve the *hooves* of the *horse*, if they bee
 too drie or hard : so as it will cause the corruption, if
 any be in the *foote*, to ascend above at the *Crownet* where
 the haire is, and also to restore and repaire the *hoofe* of
 the *horse* when the *sole* is taken out : and in this nature
 you must use this Unguent, but onely at the third dres-
 sing after you have taken out the *sole*. * *

Ægyptiacum.
1.

The second Ægyptiacum is made thus.

Take course Hony two pounds, Verdegrease foure
 ounces, greene-Coperas two ounces, beate the Verde-
 grease and the Coperas very small to powder, then
 put it into an earthen pot, and put unto it a litle Vine-
 ger, and so boile it very well till it become red and keep
 it for your use. * *

Ægyptiacum.
2.

Another.

SECT. 5. A.

Hypophilus.

What is your best Cure for a Horse that is Accloy-
 ed ?

Hyposernus.

Accloy.

Hyposferus. Sir, this Malady so called by the *French*, is the same we call prick't with a *Naile* in the *Shooing*, and it is easily cured if the *Ferrier* be skilfull, and that it be also taken in time. And thus wee worke, *viz.* First, take out the sole, and cut the *hoofe* round about the place pricked, that no corruption bee remaining behind, fill it up againe with hurds steeped in whites of Egges; dresse him thus three daies together, then heale the fore up with salt made into fine powder mingled with Vineger, or else with Diers Galls, or with Mirtle, or Lentils, and anoint the outside of the *hoofe* with black *Egyptiacum*. * *

Another.

Take a little cotten or bumbast, and steep it in brown Sugercandy molten, and apply it with a hot Iron to the place. And if the foot be bruised with the shooe, or that the femall horne be hurt or bruised, then cleanse and prepare the place first, and then apply unto it a quick or live Spider with a hot Iron, and so tack on the shooe, and let him not come into any wet till hee bee fully cured. * *

Another.

Take Sallet Oile, Turpentine, and Rosinpitch, all molten together, put it very hot into the hole where hee is pricked, and so stop the hole with Hurdes. * *

SECT.

S E C T. 6. A.

Hypophylus.

What Receipts have you for all inward Diseases?

Hypoferus. The *Spaniards* have one Medicine with which they Cure all Diseases; and albeit I say they doe cure all Diseases with this one Receipt, yet my meaning is, that looke whatsoever the infirmity bee, they administer none other thing but that one, whether it cure or kill; and this they call a *Cataplasme*; of which they make no small account, which they give as Pills.

Take Wheate Meale twelve pound, Anniseeds foure ounces, in fine powder, Brimstone in powder three ounces, Fennugrick in powder three ounces & *sem.* Comin in powder three ounces, Honey two pound, good Sallet Oyle one pound, & *sem.* of good Sack as much, or so much as will suffice to make it into a *Cataplasme* or *Paste*. This *Cataplasme* (say the *Spaniards*) or Medicine, is all of it to bee put into a stone pot well nealed, and so boyled untill it bee thick, so as when it is cold it may bee made up into Pills or Balls; whilst it is in boyling it must bee kept with continuall stirring, otherwise it will burne too; and being thus made into Pills, give him of them every morning fasting, for foure or five dayes together, or longer if you shall see cause; for that (say they) it is most soveraigne against many Maladies. It killeth all sorts of Wormes within the *body* of the *horse*; it also helpeth the Diseases of the *Lungs*, and inward parts,

and it is generally good for any inward cause; and an excellent locall plaister to bee applyed outwardly. It is the *Spaniards* principall *Physick* for their *Jennets* and *Barbaries*. I have made tryall thereof sundry times, and I do find it to be most useful in all cold Causes; and truly it is most Cordiall, for it doth bring a leane and poor *Horse* unto flesh and good state in a little time * * *

All Diseases a
Cataplasme.

A second *Receipt* I also have, which cureth all inward Diseases, which I had of a *Rurall Smith*, who was cryed *yp* for a famous *Ferrier* all the Country about: So I having heard so great a report of his skill, address'd my selfe unto him, and when I had conferred with him, putting him hard to it in the matter of his Art; hee at last ingenuously confessed unto mee that hee had but this one only drinke, which gat him all his Knowledge and Credit, which with much pressure I wrested from him, under condition that I should never make him knowne, wherein I have precisely kept my word. And the Cure and Drinke is this: *viz.* Take Wheat Meale six pound, for as much as will bring the Ingredients into a stiffe Paste, Anniseeds two ounces, Comin two ounces, wilde or bastard Saffron one dramme and halfe, white Wine foure Pints, Fenugreke one ounce and two drammes, Brimstone one ounce and halfe, good Sallet Oyle one pint and two ounces, English Hony one pound and halfe; powder and searce what is to bee powdred and searced, then compound them together, and make it into one body into a stiffe Paste, and so keepe it in a cleane Gally-pot close covered for your use. And when you have occasion to use it, make a Pill or Ball thereof, of the bignesse of a mans fist, and so lave and dissolve it into two Gallons of faire water, till it bee all molten
into

into the water : Let your *Horse* drinke heereof so long as you please both morning and evening , and let him have none other water to drinke , to the end hee may bee the better compelled to drinke of the Water, which in the end hee will doe, and like it very well, * *.

Of this *Cataplasme* I have made often use, and I doe finde it to bee a soveraigne *Receipt* for many infirmitie; it also preventeth much inward sicknesse ; it raiseth and battleth a *Horse* much better then either *Grasse* or *Provender* ; and it giveth him *Life*, *Spirit*, and *Stomack*, and keepeth him in perfect health.

Our ordinary *Coutrey Smiths* have yet another *Drinke*, which they administer upon all inward causes, and truely it doth oft times hit right, especially in cold causes, viz.

Take *Fennugrick*, *Turmerick*, *Graines*, *Anniseedes*, *Licoris*, *Long-Pepper*, *Comin*, of each halfe an ounce, and of *Saffron* one dramme ; and of *Hearbes*, take *Selendine*, *Rue*, *Pelamontine*, *Isop*, *Time* and *Rosemary*, of each, like much, but yet no more then will make of them all but halfe a handfull : First, chop small these *Hearbes*, and put them into a quart of good *Ale*, and when they have boyled a while, iput in your *Spices* finely powdred, and then boyle them againe with a small fire ; then take it from the fire, and straine it, and put to the liquor the quantity of an *EGGE* of sweete *Butter*, and halfe an ounce of *London Treacle*, give this to your *Horse* blood warme, and ride him moderately after, and then set him up warme and well littered, letting him fast foure houres after, and let his drinke bee either a sweet *Mash* or white *Water*. This is very good against *Feavers*, *Colds*, and the *Yellowes*, * *.

All Diseases.

3.

SECT. 7. A.

Hypophylus.

I Met not long since with a Disease called *St. Antonies Fire*, I pray is there such a Disease?

Hypoferus. Yes Sir, there is such a Disease, but it so seldome comes to a Horse, as that few Ferriers have had occasion to cure the same; by reason very few know it, and therefore marvell not in that they cannot cure the same. *Saint Antonies Fire* is that burneth in the flesh most extremely, and hath in it so great malice, as that looke what you doe apply to the place (unlesse you hit the Cure right) it will doe it no good, but more harme, much after the nature of a *Noli me tangere*, or *wild-fire*. This Disease is also called by some the *shingles* in a Horse, and like as the Disease it selfe is very rare, and seldome knowne in a Horse, so also is the Cure as uncouth and strange. For my part I will not professe my selfe to be any whit more skilfull then indeed I am: This indeede I never yet observed to bee in any Horse: I onely have heard some Ferrier talke thereof; but yet I never heard but of one man, who was ever truely able to make a Cure thereof; and this was a Knight of very good worship who taught it mee, hee averring confidently unto mee, how that hee had cured three severall Horses of this very malady. I asked him whence this Disease proceedeth, and what are the symptomes wherby to know the same; hee answered mee that he could never rightly come to bee mathematically assured how it breedeth, or occurreth to the Horse, but by guesse onely,

onely, and that himfelfe thought it came from some cholericke blood paffing to his head into the braine and pannels, which causeth the Horfe to become ftarke mad, as to bee deprived of his memory, in not knowing his Keeper, or any other body elfe; yea his fury is fo great, as to refift stripes, to flight and contemne correction, bee it never fo fevere, hee will endeavour what in him lyeth to perpetrate what mifchiefe hee is able, by biting, striking, and endangering whom or whatfoever thing commeth into his way, and when hee cannot have his minde of living creatures, whereupon to wreake his mallice, then will hee doe it partly upon dead creatures, by biting and gnawing his Manger and Rack-ftaves, and by striking the Posts and Barres with his heeles, and partly upon himfelfe, by beating his head againft the wall and ground; hee will alfo forfake both his meat and sleep, or naturall reft, untill hee dyeth, if hee bee not in time cured, which is thus.

St. Antonies
Fire.

Take firft helpe enough, and caft him, which done, take a worme which groweth in a Fullers Teafell, and put this worme alive, and without any hurt into a quill, then flit the skinne of the fore-head, of the Horfe under the fore-top, and open the fame round about with your corner, making a concavity an inch round every way and better, betwixt the skinne and the bone; which done, blow the fayd Worme out of the quill into the place which you made hollow as aforefayd; but take heede you doe not kill the Worme in fitching up the skinne againe, becaufe that the Worme may not get forth; and after twenty dayes the Worm will dye, and in that time the Horfe will be throughly cured. This cure was taught mee by the aforefayd Noble Knight, with which

hee affirmed to mee, that hee had cured three or foure
Horfes.

S E C T. 8. A.

Hyppophylus.

W *What say you to an Anticor?*
Hypposern. Sir, I say it is a Disease
whercunto Horfes are oft times enclie-
ned, and it commeth sundry wayes, to wit, sometimes
with too much feeding without exercise, sometimes of
too hard and immoderate riding, or other labour; both
which wayes the *blood* of the creature becommeth cor-
rupted and inflamed, which maketh its residence in and
about the heart, which if it should not have a way to
make its vent, it would quickly kill him, by which
means many good Horfes dye suddainely, and the cause
unknown. This Disease is apparent to the eye by a swell-
ling, which will arise in the middle of the *breast*, just a-
gainst the *heart*, from whence it taketh its name, which
if it bee not soone prevented, will ascend to the *throat*,
and then it is certaine death. It commeth likewise by
Surfeits taken by heats and colds, sometimes also by
Feavers, which are malignant, and sometimes againe
by feeding upon unwholesome meates. The signes to
know this Disease before the swelling doe appeare are
these, hee will bee sicke and groane many times when
hee is layed, hee will hang downe his head, and forsake
his meate, and then if hee should desire to eate, what
meate hee loveth best, whether Hay, Grasse, Proven-
der,

der, or Bread, lay it upon the Ground before him, and if hee hath a minde to eate thereof, albeit hee make proffer to bring his *mouth* towards it, yet hee shall not bee able to reach it, but will sooner famish; when you doe perceive the swelling to appeare, first draw blood from both the *Plaiie-Veines*, but if you cannot finde them, then let him *blood* on both sides of the *necke*, to a good proportion; which done, you may give him the drinke of *Diapente*, with Beere or Ale, putting therein one ounce of browne Sugar Candy, and halfe an ounce of *London Treacle*, which will drive the sicknesse and grief from his *heart*; which done, annoynt the swelling with this Oyntment.

Take Hogges grease, Bores-grease, and Basilicon, of *Anticor.* each three ounces, incorporate all these well into one body, and annoynt and rub the swelling therewith every day till it come to a softnesse, and then open it, and let forth all the corrupted matter; then wash the Sore with your Coperas water mentioned in *lib. 2. chap. 10. Sect. 4.* and then put in your greene Oyntment prescribed you in *capite ibidem*, and it will bee soone whole. * * Thus have I cured many Horses of this Disease, and I never failed if the Horse had not beene swelled too high towards the *throat* or *necke*, before I tooke him in hand. * * But Master *Blundeviles* and Master *Markhams* cure for an *Anticor*, is thus.

First they let him *blood* in the *plate-Veines*, and then they give him this drinke. Take a quart of Malmesey, and put thereto halfe a quarterne of Sugar, and of *Cinnamon* two ounces, and so give it him blood-warme, and keepe him warme in the Stable, especially his *breast*, that no winde doe offend him; and for his drinke, let

let it bee warme Mashes, and such meate as hee will eate. And if the swelling doe appeare, then besides letting him *blood*, they doe strike the swelling in divers places with their flegme, that the corruption may goe forth, and annoynt the place with warme Hogs greafe, and that will cause it to weare away, or else grow to a head if it bee kept warme. Thus Master *Blundevile* and Master *Markhams* cure is in effect the very same. Master *Markham* also prescribeth *Malmsey* and *Diapente*, which is used also by others, and it is very good; and hee also saith that some doe administer *Doctour Stephens water*, which hee affirmeth hee hath seene to have wrought in this kinde strange effects. For my part I submit, for that these *Receipts* seeme very probable; howsoever I never did experiment any but that onely which I first inserted, which I had of a famous Ferrier in *France*, and therefore I finding mine to bee infallible, made tryall of none other.

S E C T. 9. A.

Hypoferus.

Upper Attaine.

WHat is that you doe call an Upper Attaine? *Hypoferus*. It is none other thing but a swelling of the Master or *Back-jewel*, of the *fore-legge* above the *Paster-n-joint*, and most commonly commeth by an over-reach; that is, when the Horse in running either downe a hill, or upon deepes, or upon or over-thwart high furrowes of plowed Lands, or upon other evill or uneven Grounds, doe strike the

toe of his hinder foote against the great sinew of the fore-
legge. This I say, we tearme an *Upper Attaint*.

Hypophylus. How may a man come to know assuredly
that the grieffe lyeth in that sinew?

Hypoferus. Your eye and hand (Sir) will shew it you
very palpably; for the sinew will swell, and burne, and
be sore, and the Horse will halt therewith.

Hypophylus. What Cure have you for it?

Hypoferus. Wee use to apply to the place a charge
restringent which must be siccarive.

Hypophylus. I should rather thinke that by applying,
supplying, or mollifying Oyles or Unguents, you might cure it
sooner and much better.

Hypoferus. Heerein Sir, under your favour you are
much mistaken: For all things that are suppling are
most noxious unto these kinde of Maladies, by reason
that all Oyles and Unguents will cause the sinew to
swell much more then otherwise; and therefore wee
doe apply siccarive and drying things. Some use Cau-
terizings, which indeede will cure, and set the Horse
upright againe, but therein are two inconveniences;
to wit: First, albeit it taketh away his paine, so as hee
desisteth from hauling, yet will the place bee ever af-
ter swelled, which will bee a continuall eye-sore, du-
ring his life: Secondly. the markes and stroakes where
the Iron went will bee ever after scene, making the
haire of a different colour; both which are great ble-
mishes to the horse.

Hypophylus. wherein then consisteth your best Cure in
this Case?

Hypoferus. I alwayes use for a Sorance of this nature
to apply this ensuing Charge.

Astraint upper
or back sinew
praine.

Take Cantharides two ounces, Mastick foure pennyworth, Venice Turpentine two pennyworth, Euforbium foure drammes, Black Rosin six ounces, Aqua-forbium two drammes; beate the Cantharides and Euforbium into fine powder; then first melt the Masticke and Black Rosin, then put in your Turpentine, which so soon as it is molten, put in your Cantharides and Euforbium, and let all boyle together, keeping them stirring, and have a speciall care it boyle not over; and when you have taken it from the fire, put in your Aqua-forbis, and so stir them well together, and put it into a glasse or gally-pot, and so keep it for your use. And when you have occasion to use the same, first wash and bath the grieved place well, then with your Splatter, spread it upon the place being made warme, and clappe flax upon it of the same colour, and give him rest, and hee will doe well. But hee must have time, and after a Weeke that hee hath bene thus charged, let him bee put forth to grasse if it bee not in Winter, or the Winter or cold weather approaching. * * * Another.

Take the whites of two new layed Egges, and the powder of Bole Armoniack and the best and strongest white Wine Vineger, incorporate these very well together with the powder of Sanguis Draconis, and having shaven away the haire as aforesayd, spread it good and thick upon the grieved place, adding still more every three dayes for fiftene dayes together, and then put him forth to grasse, and let him runne a whole March, and after so long as you shall thinke to bee sufficient, and hee will bee found againe. * * * This I have also made tryall of, and I have found it to bee right good.

A French Marshall taught mee a Medicine for an A-
straint

taint or *Over-reach*, whereof I did never make use; howbeit hee protested unto mee hee thought it one of the best cures that hee could ever know; and I my self saw him dresse a *Horse* therewith, but how the *Horse* became cured, I had not time to know, by reason I departed from *Orleans* before the Cure was performed. And the Cure was this. Take one or two handfulls of *Saxafrage*, and all the Sewet of a Loine of Mutton, and a pint of white Wine; chop the Hearbe, and mince the Sewet very small, and so boyle all these together, which being thus well boyled, take a sufficient quantity of *Horse-dung*, newly made by a *Horse* that goeth to grasse, and putting it to the other Ingredients, worke it to a Salve, and apply it plaister-wise to the place good hot, renewing it twice every day for so long time as you shall think to be convenient.

Now Master *Blundevile*, and Master *Markham* doe both agree in the Cure of an *Attaint*, which is thus: First, wash and bath the place with warme Water, and shave the haire so farre as the swelling goeth; then scarrifie the fore place with the poynt of a Razor, that the blood may issue forth: Then take *Cantharides* and *Euforbium*, of each halfe an ounce, powdred, and mingle them together with a quarterne of Sope, and with a shy spread some of the Oyniment over all the fore, suffering him to rest in the place where you dressed him for one halfe houre after, and then you may take him into the Stable, there letting him stand without Litter, and so tyed that hee may not touch the fore with his *Mouth*, and then the next day use him in the same manner againe; then the third day annoynt the place with fresh Butter; continuing so to doe by the space of nine

dayes, and at nine dayes end, make him his bath.

Take Mallowes three handfulls, a Rose-Cake, and Sage of each a handfull; boyle them together in a sufficient quantity of faire water; and when the Mallows are become soft, put in halfe a pound of Butter, and halfe a pint of Sallet Oyle, and then being somewhat warme; wash and bath the fore place therewith every day once, till it be whole. This medicine I confesse I never tryed, but I thinke it very good. Master *Blundevile* hath onely this, but Master *Markham* hath fundry others; some of which, I will relate, to the end, the *Ferrier* may make his choice. *Another.*

Take Dialthea, Agrippa, and Oyle, and mixing these together, lay it to the swelling. *Another.*

Take also Frankinsence, Rosin, Tarre, Euforbium, Turpentine, Fenugrick, of each a quarter of an ounce, of Sewet one ounce, of Oyle one ounce, of Wax three ounces, and three quarters of an ounce of Myrrh; mix and melt all these together, and plaister-wise lay it to the place till it be whole. *Another.*

Take also Sanguis Draconis three quarters of an ounce, Bole-Armoniack one ounce, Oyle as much, Mastick three ounces, Sewet as much, and as much Swines grease; melt and mix all these together, and lay it to the swelling, and it will take it away.

Another Cure I found in an Old Manuscript, with which I have cured many *horses*, which have been much swelled, which is this: *viz.*

Take Turpentine, of Venice one ounce, and Aquavita, three spoonfulls: beate them together in a Bladder, or some other convenient Vessell, untill they come to a perfect salve, then annoynt the fore very well therewith, and

and heat it in with a hot Brick, or a hot Iron ; and thus doing foure or five times, it will set him upright. * * * This I have often tried, and it is very good.

S E C T. 10. A.

Hypophylus.

What is that you call a Nether Attaint?
Hypophylus. It is also an Over-reach sometimes, and sometimes againe it cometh by a Wrench, sometimes by a Straine, sometimes by treading upon a sharpe stone or stub, and sometimes it cometh by a blow, and it is called properly a *Nether Attaint*, by reason it being commonly upon the fore-legge, like as is the other; it is neverthelesse placed lower then the other is; for whereas the other is above the *Fet-lock Joint*, this is under it, for it is commonly upon the *Heele* or *Crush*, nor is it oftentimes visible to the eye, howsoever it may bee felt, as well by the heate and glowing which will bee upon the *Heele*, as also by the softnesse, for there will bee a *Bladder* or blister of viscus corrupt matter like to Jelly, which will grow in the place; and besides it will make the *Horse* to complaine, and it will bee also somewhat swelled. I have cured sundry *Horses* which have had this malady, and they have done well again. The Cure is thus.

Take a peece of *Filliting*, and binde it above the *Pitern-joint* a little good and hard, which will cause the blister or swelling the better to appeare more visible to the eye; make Incision with your Incision-Knife, and

Attaine Nether,

crush out all the corrupt Jelly, and congealed matter. Then heale it up by washing the sore with Coperas water, declared *in lib. 2. cap. 10. Sect. 4.* and after annoynt it with the greene Oyntment mentioned in *capite & Sect. ibid.* and so in short time it will bee whole and sound againe. * *. This is a very hard Cure for your ordinary Countrey *Smiths* to take in hand to performe, if they bee not well acquainted with the nature of this Malady. Master *Blundevile* and Master *Markoam*, have both this manner of Cure, onely they differ from mee in the healing Salve.

 S E C T. II. A.

Hyppophilus.

VV *Hat Cure have you for the Avives?*
Hypposerus. This tearme *Avives* wee have also gotten from the *French*, which our *Ferriers* doe call the *Vives*. It is a Disease which growes under the *Eares*, and *secundum vulgus*, it is called the *Fives* or *Vives*, from the *Eares* it creepeth downe towards the *Throat*, which when they begin to enflame will swell, and not onely paine the *Horse* very much, but also prove mortall, by stopping his *winde* they will kill him out-right, if it bee not in time cured; and I my selfe have seene and knowne *Horses* dye of this malady. It proceedeth most commonly of Ranknesse of *Blood*; in the Cure, care must bee taken that you doe not touch the *Graines* or *Kernells* with your fingers. The *Avives* or *Vives* are certaine flat *Kernells*, much like
 Bunches

Bunches of Grapes which grow in a cluster, close knot-
 ted together in the place; the most certaine cure is to
 cut the *skinne* longest wayes, and to lay the Kernells or
 Graines open, and then with an Instrument made like
 to a paire of Pliers to pinch forth the Graines, then to
 apply unto the place either a Linnen-cloth, or a few
 hurds steeped well in whites of Egges well beaten, and
 so bound on, and renewing it dayly, it will cure it; but
 you must heale up the *skinne* with the Greene Oynt-
 ment before spoken of *in cap. & Sect. ibid.* * *. But the
 common cure is to draw downe the fore with a hot I-
 ron just in the midst, so farre as the swelling goeth, and
 then under the roote of the *Eare*, draw to other stroakes
 of the fashion of an Arrowes head, then open the *skinne*,
 and with a small paire of plyers, pull out the Kernells,
 and so cut them off, but have a care of the *Veine*; that
 done, fill the place with Bay-salt made into fine pow-
 der, and after heale up the sore with the aforesayd Oynt-
 ment. * *. This have I also practised, and performed
 the Cure, but with greater difficulty then the former,
 by reason of the Fire which I put to the place, and
 therefore I doe hold my former Cure the better, safer,
 and speedier. * *

Master *Blundevile* and Master *Markbarn* doe say, that
 the *Italians* use to take a sponge well dipped in strong
 Wine Vineger, and bound to the Sore, renewing it twice
 a day till the Kernells doe rot; then they open the nea-
 thermost part of the softnesse, and so let the corruption
 forth, and then fill the hole with salt finely brayed;
 and the next day they wash away the filth with warme
 water, and the next day after, they annoynt the Sore
 with Honey and Fich flower mingled together till it be
 whole.

whole. This Cure I never made tryall of, but it seemeth to mee to be a very good and probable Cure. Another for the *Avives*.

Take Tarre, tryed Hogs grease, Bay salt, and Frankinience powdred, of each so much as will suffice; melt these on the fire all together, then with a clout fastened to the end of a stick, boyling hot, scald the places foure or five mornings one after another untill the inflamed places do become soft and ripe. Then with your incision knife, slit the skin, and let forth the corruption: then to heale up the sorances, take tryed Hogs grease and Verdigrease made up into fine powder, melt them upon a gentle fire, but suffer it not to boile more then a waume or two at the most, then take it off, and put to it of ordinary Turpentine, as much as will suffice, and so stir all together untill it be cold. And herewith anoint the sorances daily till they be whole * *. This is very good.

Master *Markham* in his *Master piece*, hath a Cure for the *Avives*, which he intituleth; *A most rare and certain approved Medicine, which will cure the Vives, without either burning, melting, rotting, or any such like violent exercise.* But as yet I did never experiment the same. The Cure is this.

Take a penniworth of pepper, beaten to fine powder, Swines grease a spoonefull, the juice of Rue a handfull, and of Vinegar two spoonfuls, mixe all well together, and convey it equally into both the eares of the Horse, and so tye or stich them up, then shake his eares that the medicine may sink downwards: which done, you shall let him blood in the neck-veine, and in the temple-veine. And this (saith he) is an infallible Cure.

SECT.

SECT. 12. A.

Hypophylus.

What disease is that which we doe call the Arraistes?

Hypposernus. Arraistes is also a French Epitheton, which is a disease wee do commonly call the *Rat-tayles*, ingendring in the *heeles* of a Horse, not much unlike to the *Scratches*, but that it is much more venomous and malignant. It commeth of too much rest, and the *Keepers* want of care in the not rubbing and dressing him, as also by reason that the Horse standeth continually in the *Stable*, his fore-feet being higher than his hinder-feet: for by reason of his great rest and pampering, the *bloud* corrupting in his *body*, falls down into his *hinder-legs*, and breedeth this disease, which now we do call the *Arraistes*, or *Rat-tayles*. The best Cure for this Malady is, first, to let the Horse bee ridden till hee bee warm, whereby the veins will swell, and the better appeare. Let him *bloud* in the *seilock-veines* on both sides, making him to bleed well; and the next day after, wash the sores with warme water, and then clip away all the *hayre* from about the sores, then anoint the grieved places with this Ointment, *viz.*

Take green Coperas, and Verdigrease, of each two ounces, and of common honey foure ounces; beat your Coperas and Verdegrease very small, and so worke them with your honey, to a perfect Unguent, and here-with anoint the sores daily till they be whole. * * *. And thus we do conclude this Chapter.

Arraistes or
Rat-tayles.



CHAP. V.

SECT. I. B.

Hypophylus.



What is your best way to breake and heale
the backe of a Horſe that is ſwolne?

Hypophylus. Wee have many
wayes to cure a malady of this na-
ture: If the place bee ſwelled, and
yet not ripe enough to be opened,
then apply that remedy which you
ſhall finde taught you hecreator,

to reſolve or ripen the ſame; and when it is ripe, put
your Inciſion-Knife unto it, or a hot Iron, and ſo open
it in the loweſt part, ſo as the putrefaction may the
more eaſily paſſe away; then every morning inject this
Lotion with a Sringe, which is thus to bee made, *viz.*

Back ſwelled.

Take Honey-ſuckle-leaves, Plantine, Ribwort, Yar-
row, Burſa-Paſtoris, Knot-graſſe, and Cumphrey, of
each halfe a handfull, boyle theſe in a quantity of run-
ning water, till a moiety bee conſumed, then ſtraine the
Hearbes from the water, caſting away the Hearbes, and
then ſit the water upon the fire againe, and ſo ſoone as
it beginneth to boyle againe, put into the ſayd water
honey of Roſes one ounce, Allum and Alkenet, of each
two drammes, ſtirre all theſe well together, and let it
boyle till theſe latter ingredients bee well diſſolved,
then

then take it from the fire, and when it is cold, put it into a cleane glasse, keeping it close stopped for your use. Use this water every day five or six daies together, and it will cure any Sorance in the *backe*, or other part of the *body*, provided that to *skin* the sore, you apply a rag made wet in the said water. * * Another Receipt I have wherewith I have cured many galled backs, and other sorances : which is as followeth.

Take water and salt, and boile them well together, and first wash the sore place therewith. Then take pepper made into very fine powder, and strew it upon the sore, and it will heale it in very short time. * * A third I have much more soveraign than the 2 former, which cureth not only all galled *backs*, but any other wound whatsoever.

Take Rosin, and common Pitch, of each six ounces, Masticke and Incense, of each one ounce, Turpentine, Galbanum, Bolearmoniack, of each three ounces, melt, dissolve, and incorporate all these together upon a gentle fire, and as they doe begin to coole, make them up in rolles, and when you would use this Salve, spread it upon a cloath or leather, somewhat thin; but if you be to use it without either cloath or leather, to any outward part that is not yet broken, then lay it on much thicker than you use to do Plaister-wise; and whilest it is warme, clap *flocks* of the same colour upon it. This *Emplastrum* as it cureth any swelling, gall, wound, sore, or hurt; so it ripeneth, breaketh, and healeth all impostumations, biles, and pustils. It is also a most excellent *defensative plaister* for the staying, and drying up of all evil humours, and also very soveraigne for *swaging* of swellings. * *

Another Receipt I have taught me by a worthy *Knight*, but I never made use thereof.

Take the leaves of *Almart*, and wash them, and lay them all over the place; and albeit you ride him every day, yet will he heale very fast. But if he do remaine in the Stable without exercise, if you put the water of the leaves upon the place, it will heale him speedily.

Another Receipt I have which was taught me by a *French Marisball*, howbeit I made no triall thereof, but hee commended it to bee *tresbonne*; which is this, viz. Take three parts of sheeps dung, and one part of Wheate or Rye-flower, and drie the flower, and then knead them together, and bake it a little, and apply it bloud warme to the place.

SECT. 2. B.

Hyppophylus.

Is there a Disease in a Horse called the Barbes?

Hypposerus. Yea Sir, there is such a disease, and it groweth in the mouth under the tongue naturally, for every Horse hath them, neverthelesse there is no harm in them, untill they do become inflamed, and then they will swell with corrupt bloud, proceeding from naughty humours, and become raw, and so trouble and paine the Horse, so as hee cannot feed without much griete: for it commeth by means of evill humours, and inflamed blood. I never heard of more Cures then two for this malady,

malady, which is to take hold of his *Tongue*, and on either side under it of the *Jaw*, you shall see two Teats or Paps; clippe them away close, and then wash the place with a little water and salt, and they are cured. The other Cure.

Take a paire of Sizers and clip them away from under the *Tongue*, and let them bleed, then prick him in the *Palate* of the *Mouth* with your Fleame, that hee may bleed the better, then wash the places with white Wine Vineger, Bolearmoniack, and Bay-Salt, of each as much as will suffice, and for three or foure dayes after, let him see that no Hay-dust stick upon the places so clipped, and hee will soone bee well againe.

SECT. 3. B.

Hyppophylus.

What good Receipt have you to dissolve and dry up all ill humours in the body?

Hypposerum. The best thing that I could ever know, is a certaine *Bath* which I make, wherewith I bath him, and I doe finde it to bee right good, which I make thus, *Viz.* Take Sage and Rolemary, of each a handfull, of the Barke of the Roore of Beech, three pound, and of the Barkes of yong Elmes, Oakes, and Ashe, of each a handfull, of Nop, Penny-Royall, and of Chest-nuts, the Rindes being taken away, of each a handfull, three or foure white Onions cleane pilled and cut into small picces or slices, red Wine three pottles,

Bar's for Humours to drye the n up.

strong white Wine Vineger two pottles ; boyle all these together, and cause your Horse to bee walked a quarter of an houre before, a good pace, that hee may bee onely warme, then let him bee presently bathed with this *Bath* good and hot, and then set him up warme, and let his drinke bee either sweete Mashcs, or white water ; bath him thus three dayes together, and feede him with such meate as is sweete and whole some, and let him not bee ridden into any water in eight or tenne dayes after, and this will dissolve and dry up all his bad *Humours*. * *. This I learned of an *Italian Rider* in *Bruxels*, whom I saw practise it very often whilst I was there, and rode with him. And since I have my selfe administred it to many good Horses heere in *England*, with which I have done very much good.

Hippophylus. Now that wee speake of Bathes, I would gladly know what are their Vertues ?

Hypoferus. Bathes have beene much more in use in former times then now they are, howbeit I and my Master doe use them often, and wee doe finde great profit by them : For they are fomentations, which bee the most comfortable things of any to the joynts and limbes of a Horse. Bathes dissolve all ill humours, and gives heate and warmth unto all the Members that are benumbed with cold, or forwant of Blood ; it comforteth and strengtheneth them, and it giveth very great ease to the pained *Sinewes*. Besides, it asswageth swellings in or about any outward parts of the body ; for legges swelled, stiffe or benumbed, or for any other joynt pained or grieved, or for any *string-hault*, *crampes*, or *convulsion*. I commonly use a *bath*, which doth in short time cure all such like maladies. And my *bath* is this.

bath for
legges.

stiffe

Take

Take Muskadine and Sallet Oyle, of each a pint, Bay-^{Bath.}
 leaves and Rosemary, of each two handfulls, let them ^{I.}
 boyle halfe an houre, and when you are to bath your
 Horse therewith, rub and chafe the grieved place with
 a whispe or haire-cloath a pretty while, then put the
 foote into some broad bowle or payle, whereby to pre-
 serve the Liquor and Hearbes, and lave and bath him
 thus a quarter of an houre; which ended, binde upon
 the place a piece of Sheepes or Lambes skinne, with
 the woolly side to the *legge*, and let him stand so foure
 and twenty houres; apply this five or sixe times, and it
 will be a perfect cure. * * *

Another *Bath* I have, which is most soveraigne to cure
 all gourdy, gowty, and swoln *legges*, which commeth
 either by Farcin, Scratches, or the like, wherewith I
 have cured very many Horses. And thus it is made.

Take the Grounds of a Beere Barrell, with the Barm, ^{Bath.}
 Smallage, Featherfew, Winter-savory, Cumfry, Mal- ^{2.}
 lowes, Rue, Set-well, Penny-Royall, Wormewood,
 Arch-Angel, of each a good handfull, and of the leaves
 and Berries of Missetow three or foure good handfulls,
 Sheepes Tallow one pound, tryed Hogges-grease halfe
 a pound, three or foure handfulls of Rye or Wheate
 Branne; boyle all these together untill all the Hearbes
 and Missetow become soft; but bee sure you have li-
 quour enough, and a little before you take it from the
 fire, put into it some Hay: With this bath his Legges;
 first one, then the other, putting still that *Legge* which
 you are to bathe into a broad Bowle or Paile, as is a-
 fore shewed; and when you have bathed that *Legge*
 sufficiently, then take of the Hay in the Bath, and make
 ing a Thum-band thereof, rowle it about the *Legge* a-
 bove

bove the uppermost or middle *Joynt*, and put off the hearbs betwixt his *Leg* and the *Thumb-band*: and so use the other *Leg* or *Legs* which are swelled and need bathing: Which done, powre of the liquor remaining upon the *thum-bands*: and thus let him be bathed here- with every day once, for so many daies together as you shall thinke requisite, and it will bring downe the swelling quite, and make him sound. * *

Another Bath I have no lesse excellent, wherewith I have done many rare cures. *viz.*

Bath.

3.

Take Smalage, Ox-Eye, and Sheeps Sewer, of each like much, to a good quantitie: Chop them small together, and after stamp them in a stone Morter; then boyle them with mans Urine, and bathe the grieved parts herewith warme, doing as before with a Bowle or Paille: then with *Thumb-bands* of soft Hay made first wet in cold water, rope up the member, as well above as below the grieffe. Use this as oft as you shall see cause, but if the grieffe happen in travell, then by bathing him thus over night, and roping him up, he will be able to travell againe the next morning without complaining. * * This I doe assure you is a most excellent Bath, and it cureth any Lameness which commeth either by stroke, straine, or other Accident.

Bath.

4.

One other Bath I have whercof I never made use, taught mee by a *Gentleman*, who was well versed in *Horse-Leech-craft*. And his Receipt is this: *viz.*

Take Savine, and the Barke and Leaves of the Bay-tree, Pellitory, Rosemary, Sage, Ruc, of each three ounces, boile these in a Gallon of white Wine, untill halfe

halfe be consumed: herewith bathe your *Horse* as before is shewed, and whether the griefe be visible or not, use it and you will finde it an approved Medicine. After this manner hath the *Gentleman* delivered me this Receipt, which hee protested to mee to bee most soveraigne: which I can neither commend nor dispraise, by reason I never yet had experience thereof. And thus much of *Baths*, now let us passe to other matters.

S E C T. 4. B.

Hypophilus.

I Pray you Hypposerus, can you shew me what is good to cause a *Horse* in the *Stable* to Belly well?

Hypposerus. That can I Sir, for many *horses* by being kept long in the *Stable* (especially yong *horses*) will feldome have good bellies, for their bellies will shrinke up towards their *Flanks*, and they become as great as *Running Horses* use to bee, when they are dieted for a *Course*; which doth betoken great Costivenes in them, which proceedeth of much unnaturall heate in the *body*; and such *horses* never thrive or like well, for they be naturally tender, and wash, or flew of their flesh: and therefore such a *horse* I could wish you not to keep, but to put away as soone as may bee. For if hee come once to hard labour, you cannot possibly keep him sound, but be often sick and unhealthy. The best Cure which I have was taught me by a *French Marisball*, who told me that every *horse* hath about his *Cods* two small strings, which extend from his *Cods* to the bottome of his belly,

Belly gaunt.

to wit, of each side one; which said strings you must break with your finger, a thing very easie to be done by those that have practised it; and when you have broken them, you must anoint that place every day with fresh Butter and *Unguentum Populeon* mixed together; this done, in short time hee will come to *Belly* well.

This I never my selfe tryed, but he that taught it me did much practise it, and he brake many of those strings of sundry horses in my sight.

SECT. 5. B.

Hypophilus.

VV *Hat* meanes have you to helpe the paine in the *Belly* of a Horse?

Belly paine.

Hypoferus. This disease is that wee call the *Collick*, which the *Italians* doe call *Colon*, from whence our *English Ferriers* derive the word *Collicke*: the *French* call it *Tranchaisons*, which is a paine or griping in the *Belly*, comming sometimes of cold and wind, and sometimes of grosse *Humours*, which lie in the small *Guts*; sometimes by reason of abundance of *Billions* or sharpe *Humours*; and sometimes by inflammations in the *Body* caused by feeding upon raw and bad meares, which occasion *Crudities*. But of this wee shall have occasion to speak more in its proper place of the *Collick*: Only thus much, that whereas paines and Gripings in the *Belly* do proceed oftentimes from the *Liver*, and the working of the *Spleen*, which is most ventosous. But I thinke it not amisse to give you one Receipt wherewith

to cure any Gripings or paines which may at any time proceed either from the *Liver, Spleene, or Mil.* Neither have you any Signes whereby to know this disease, but only the same for the *Collick.* And the Cure is this.

Take *Isope, Cowslips, Liverwort, Lung-wort,* of each like much, so as all when they bee together, they doe not exceed halfe a handfull. Then take *Gentiana, Aristolochia, Ronunda, Pennugrick, Enula-Campana,* dried long-Pepper, of each halfe a spoonfull, and one spoonfull of Honey: chop the hearbs small, and make the other simples into fine powder, and boyle them in a quart of Ale or Muskadine, which is much better, and give it him bloud warme, and ride him an houre after, then set him up warme, and foure or five houres after give him boiled barley, and for three or foure dayes, let his drinke be either Mashes or white water. * *
With this I have done many good Cures.

S E C T. 6. B.

Hyppophilus.

What is good to heale the tongue of a Horse, which is hurt with the Bit or Haulter.

Hypposeris. If the tongue of your Horse be hurt or cut with his Bit or Haulter, or by any other accident or mishap, the best way to cure and heale it, is: Bit wherewith
the tongue
hurt.

Take Mell-Rosarum, and annoynt it therewith, with a Linnen Ragge fastened to the end of a sticke, let the Sore bee so annoynted three or foure times a day, and let

let him alwayes after dressing stand upon the Trench one houre, and in short time it will bee whole. With this I have cured many Horses, some of which have had their Tongues cut more then halfe through. * *. Another Cure I have, which a French-man taught mee, which is as followeth.

Take red Hony, the marrow of powdred Pork, quick-lime and Pepper, all made into fine powder, of each like much, boyle all these together, still stirring it till it come to an Oyntment, with which annoynt the Sore twice every day till it be whole. With this Receipt I have cured sundry good Horses, and I doe know it to bee very good. * *.

S E C T. 7. B.

Hypophylus.

How may a man stanch the bleeding at the Nose, or when a Veine is cut, or a wound given, whereby a Horse is in danger to bleed to death.

Bleeding to
stanch.

Hypposernus. Wee have many wayes wherewith to stanch bleeding, as well at the Nose as elsewhere. As thus, take the tender tops of Isop, and stampe them to mash, and put them up into his Nose, or lay and binde it to the wound or veine cut or broken, and hee will bee suddainly stanch. * *. *Another.*

Take Bursa-Pastoris bruized, and apply it to the place, and this is very good. *Another.*

Take the powder of the stone called *Emachile*, and blow it up into the Nose, or lay it to the Veine or wound, and

and the blood will be stanch'd. *Another.*

Take his owne blood, dry it, and make it into fine powder, and apply it as is aforesaid, is very good. * * *

Another.

Take the tops of the angriest and yongest red Nettles, and stampe them very well, and laid to the place, will stanch bleeding. * * * *Another.*

Take Hogges dung, and apply it as aforesaid, is very good. * * *

Take also Bumbast-cotten, Woollen cloath, Silke, Felt, all these burned, or the Hearbe called Clownes-all-heale, will doe the like. * * *. All of these I have often tryed; and doe finde them right good.

S E C T. 8. B.

Hypophylus.

W

That is good against blindnesse?

Hyposerus. Blindnesse may come many Blindnesse. wayes, and therefore if it bee that which commeth of filmes, or thicknesse in the *Eyes*, which of all other kindes of this nature is easiest to bee cured; I will remait them to their proper places. But for filmes onely I will give you one or two Receipts. But first it were fit you should understand how this Disease commeth to a Horse. If hee bee subject to have a thicknesse or white filmes in his eyes; it commeth most commonly of a *rhume* which passeth into his eyes from his head, which you may soone perceive by his continuall weeping, and sending forth watery moisture, which will

runne from his eyes upon his face; which when you shall observe, let then his Keeper sundry times every day wash and bath his eyes with cold water newly drawne from the Well; and this will prevent his *filmes*, and cure that *flux* or *rhume*; but if the *filmes* doe come before you observe that he had any such *rhume* or running at the eyes: Then

Take mans dung, and put it into a Fire-pan, and so burne it untill it come to be a cole, then beate it to fine powder, and put thereof into a Goose-quill, and blow it into his eyes twice a day; and this will cleare his eyes againe. * *

Take also the tops of the angriest yong red Nettles, a handfull, and stampe them very well, then put it into a fine Linnen cloath, and then dip it into Beere a little, and so straine forth the juyce; which done, put a few graines of salt, bay or white to it, and when it is dissolved, drop of this liquor into the grieved eye, one drop; and doe thus morning and evening, and it will take away not onely a *filme*, and other such like thicknesse which may hinder his sight, but it will also take away a *Pearle*. These two Receipts I have often practised, and I have found them very good. * *

Hypophylus. I have heard some say that they can make a Horse suddainely blinde, and yet after restore him to his perfect sight againe; but I think they doe boast and crack of more then they be able to doe, how thinke you *Hypoferus*?

Hypoferus. Why truely Sir, this is easily done, and I will briefly discover unto you the secret, which is thus.

Take Saffron, and dry it, and make the same into very fine powder as much as will suffice, and put of this powder

powder into a quill, and so blow it into his eyes, and when it hath remained there by the space of halfe a quarter of an houre, wipe this powder from his eyes so cleane, as that it may not bee discerned, and this will make him stone blinde. But if you bee desirous to have him to reassume his sight againe; then

Take Garlick, and chew it in your mouth, and then whilst it is still in your mouth, breath into his eyes, and in five or sixe times thus doing, hee will againe see very perfectly. * *. But this latter must bee administred within eight dayes after the Saffron was blowne into his eyes, otherwise his sight will never be recovered. * *.

SECT. 9. B.

Hypophylus.

VV *What is good against the biting of a mad Dog?*
Hyposerus. I have onely three Cures for it, whereof I never had occasion to make tryall; howbeit they were all recommended unto me for speciall good; The first is:

Take the tender tops of Rue, Boxe-leaves, and Primrose-Rootes, of each a handfull, pound them together in a mortar, and put them into a quart of new milke, with *London* Treacle one ounce, and so give it him blood warme. This proportion will serve very well for two Horses. *Another.*

Biting of a mad Dog.

Take Hobgoblin, Perewinkle, and Boxe leaves, of each one handfull, first mince them small, and then stampe them very small in a stone mortar, and with milke.

Milke or Beere administer it, both at the Change or Full of the Moone. A third Cure I also have, which is this:

Take the Hearbe which groweth in dry and barren Hills, called *The Starre of the Earth*; you must give it three dayes together; the first time you must gather three of these Hearbes with all the whole Rootes, and wash them cleane, and wipe them cleane, then pound them well, losing no part of them; which done, give it your Horse in Milke, Beere, Ale, or white Wine; but bee carefull the Horse take all the Hearbes and Rootes; but if you will, you may make up these Hearbes and Rootes in fresh or sweete Butter, which will doe as well; the second day give your Horse five of these Hearbes and Rootes, like as you gave him them the day before; and the third day give him seven. Doe this punctually as I have heere prescribed you, and bee you well assured your Horse will bee perfectly cured: For albeir I my selfe have never tried this medicine, yet I doe know the party of whom I had this Cure, hath cured much Cattle of all sorts therewith; for it cureth all sorts of living Creatures which shall bee bitten by a *mad Dog*: I my selfe can say thus much of this Receipt, that I knew it cure a whole *Kennell of Hounds* of a Gentlemans, one Beagle excepted, which they did not suspect to bee bitten, which indeede was bitten, so hee fell mad and died, but all the residue escaped and did very well. Another time a *Gentlemans* sonne of my acquaintance was unfortunately bitten by a *mad Dog*, who was cured by the party who taught mee this Receipt, and this yong *Gentleman* (for hee was then but a Boy of ten Yeares old) was so farre spent with the ran-

cor of the Disease, before this man tooke him in hand, as that his *head* began to bee addle, and hee to talke very idly, yet hee cured him, so as hee lived and did well, and is at this houre living, hee being now come to mans state, and a very handiome and proper man, whose Parents whilst they lived, I very well knew, and with whom I was very intimately acquainted. * * *

S E C T. 10. B.

Hypophylus.

VV *What remedy have you for a Spaven?*
Hypoferus. Wee have two sorts of *Spavens*: The one wee call a *Through wet, Blood or Bog-Spaven*, the other a *dry or Bone-Spaven*; the first of these two is easily cured; the second may be cured, but such a cure is not for every Ferrier to take upon him to compass: For that it is a Cure of very great difficulty, and of no lesse danger. To speake therefore first of the *Blood Spaven*, it is a Disease which groweth upon the *hough*, with a swelling which is full of *blood*, which though it bee greatest upon the inside, yet the swelling appeareth also upon the out side, being fed and nourished by the great *Veine*, which runneth along the inside of the *thigh*, and so commeth along the inside of the *hough*, and so downe the *legge* to the *pasterne*, and so from the *pasterne* to the bottome of the *foote*. This malady commeth by meanes that the blood is corrupted through hard riding, especially when the Horse is very yong. Now the *blood* being through over much heating

Blood-spaven.

too much stirred, it begetteth a fluxible *humour*, which being marvellous thinne, falleth to running downwards towards its Center, but it is stopped in its passage in the *hough*, where it resideth, and by that meanes swelleth, and so becommeth a Disease, which pestring that place, makes the *joynt* stiffe, whereby hee becommeth itarke lame, not being able to go, but with great difficulty and paine. The signe is most easie, being most apparent to the *eye*. The best way to cure it, is; first, to shave away the haire on both sides the swelling, so farre forth as the swelling goeth; then take up the *thigh Veine*, and let it bleed well; which done, tie the *Veine* above the *Orefice*, and let the *Veine* bleed from below what it will; whereby the blood which was assembled about the spaven place, which caused the former swelling, is by this meanes sent away; then with your Fleame or Incision Knife, make two Incisions in the lower part of the swelling, and after prick two or three holes in each side of the *hough* where the Spaven is, that the medicine may take the better effect, and when the *blood* and *water* hath ventred away so much, as it will doe, binde round about it, plaister-wise the whites of Egges and Bolearmoniack very well beaten together, either upon Hurds or Linnen cloath, and make it fast about the *hough*, so keepe on the plaister. The next day take it off, and wash and bathe the sorance with this *Bath*, viz. Take Mallowes and the tops of Nettles, and boile them in water till they bee soft, and therewith bathe him. Then take Mallow-Roots, Brancha Urfina, Oyle, Waxe, and white Wine, so much as will suffice, and boile them, binde this warme to the sorance round about the *hough*, and sew a cloath about it, and so let it remaine three dayes more;

Bath for a
Bloud-spaven.

more ; and every morning stroke it downwards with both your hands gently, to the end the *bloody humour* may issue forth. The fourth day *bathe* and wash it very cleane with the former *Bath*. That done, Take Carana, and stone Pitch, of each one ounce, and of Brimstone a quarter of an ounce made into very fine powder ; melt these together on the fire, and when it is almost ready to bee taken off, put into it of Venice Turpentine halfe an ounce, and make a plaister thereof, spreading it upon leather, and apply it to the place warme, round about the *hough*, and so let it remaine untill it doe fall away of its owne accord ; or if it doe come off sooner then you might thinke fitting, then make another plaister of the like ingredients, and apply it as before. * * *. This is the best cure that I could ever know for this malady, with which I have cured many *Blood-Spavens*. * * *.
Another for a Blood-Spaven.

When the swelling doth appeare upon the inward part of the hough, take up the thigh veine, and let it bleed from the nether part of the leg, till it will bleed no longer, and after give fire to the Spaven both longst-waies and crosse-waies, and then apply a restrigent charge to the place, and thus it will bee cured. This I never tryed, but positively speaking, I hold it to bee a very good Cure.

S E C T. II. B.

Hypophilus.

How do you cure the drie or Bone-Spaven ?
Hypoferm. This malady is not easily cured but with great difficulty and danger: it is a
great

Bone spaven.

great hard crust, yea as hard as a *bone* if it be let runne, sticking, or indeed growing to the *bone*, much closer then the barke of an Oake to the body, and it is upon the inside of the *hough* under the *joynt* neare to the great *veine*, of which I spake of before in the Cure of the *bloud-spaven*; by which meanes the Horse that hath such a *Spaven*, cannot chuse but halt. This *bone-spaven* commeth two waies; the first through hard riding, or other kinde of intemperate labour, whereby the *bloud* dissolving, falleth downe and maketh its residence in the *hough*, which doth in short time become drie and hard as any *bone*, from whence the sorance taketh its denomination. Secondly, the Horse may have this *malady* by inheritance or kinde either from the Sire or Dam, as I have before specified in the second Chapter of the first Booke, where I doe intreate of *Breeding*.

The Signe to know it, is evident enough; viz. by your *Eye* and *hand*, for it is both visible and palpable enough, and as easie to be seen and felt as the *Leg* it selfe. The best way to cure it, is, first by taking up the *thigh-veine*, which caused it, and fed and nourished it, and let him bleed well, and so put him into the Stable, and do no more to him for that day; the next day shave away the haire from off the *Spaven*, and rub it hard with a Rowling-pin (having first anoynted the place with *Petroleum*, and chafed it well in with your hand) or some other round and smooth stick, morning and evening for foure daies together, and at the fourth daies end, slit downe the skin with your Incision-knife, the full length of the *Spaven*; but be very carefull you doe not touch the great *Artery* or *Veine*, both which do lie very neare; for

for if you doe never so little hurt the great *Artery*, you utterly maim the Horse past all recovery ; having thus done, lay to the place the Herb called *Flamula* bruised, and binde it on that it fall not off, for two dayes more ; then for three daies after : Take *Cantharides* and *Euforbium*, and incorporate them well together, (being before beaten into fine powder) with black Sope, and Bay salt, and lay this to the place, and thus dresse it every morning ; this will lay the *Bone* and *Crust* bare. After take *Fearne-roots*, *Hounds-tongue*, and *Boregrease* ; incorporate all these together, and lay it to the place, untill you perceive the *Crust* to bee loose, and to bee wasted ; assay now and then to loosen the same with your *Cornet* or other Instrument, and if you can with conveniency take it off quite, doe so : Which done, heale up the wound with your *Greene Ointment* prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap. 10. Sect. 4.* You may also apply to the *Sorance* after the aforesaid *Corasives*, a *Plaster* of strong *Agiptiacum*, till it hath fretted off the flesh upon the *Crust* so bare as possibly may bee, and so you may the better attempt the taking away of the said *Crust*, or by rubbing it with a *Rowling-pin*, or a *Hassell-stick* annointed with *Petroleum* till the *Crust* be converted into a mattrative substance, or other thinner kind of corruption, which may very easily be drawne away. And thus have I cured the *Bone-Spaven* severall times : Which Disease I cannot easily commend to be cured by any, but those who have before hand seene some other skillfull *Ferrier* to doe it before him, and the Method hee useth in the working, by reason that the Cure is so extreamply difficile, and over-dangerous.* *.*
 But when at any time you doe perceive a swelling begin

to bee in the *Spaven-place* of your horse, whereby you may suspect it may prove a *Spaven*; for prevention whereof.

Take naturall Balsome, and having first shaven away the haire, annoint the place with the said Balsome, for two or three daies: and after you shall repress the *Humours* with this Charge.

Take Oyle of Roses three ounces, Bole-Armoniack one ounce, wheat flower halfe an ounce, and the white of one Egge; make all these into one body, and every day (having first annointed it with Balsome) lay on the said Charge. * *.

Hypophylus. *But let us looke back againe to the Eyes: what say you to Blood-shorten Eyes?*

For a *Bone* or *Dry-Spaven* or *Curbe*: First, take up the veine that feedeth it (whether *Spaven* or *Curbe*) as well below as above, then give it fire, then charge the place with pitch made hot, and clap flax upon it, then foure daies after, you must dulcifie the sorance with the Oyle *Pampoleon*, and fresh Butter molten together upon a gentle fire, and when the scarre shall bee fallen away, you must apply unto it a kind of stufte which is called *Blanco* or white, made I thinke of *Jessoc*, and so continue it untill it bee whole. * * . This is very good.

S E C T. 12. B.

Hypposerus.

I Say Sir, that *Blood-shorten Eyes* may easily bee holpen, if a right Cure bee taken, and the *Ferrier* perite; for
as

as touching *Eyes*, they are a tender *Member*, soonest hurt and offended of any part about the body of any living creature; and therefore there ought the greater care to be taken in the cure thereof; and take this by the way for a point of good Counsell, and for a good Rule, that in administring to the *Eyes*, you be very carefull that your *Medicine* be not too cold, but often made and renewed; for by using old made *Medicines*, either their *Vertues* doe passe away, whereby the *Member* dressed receives no good; or else, by being too old, the *Medicines* may most easily putrifie and corrupt, and so by that meanes doe much more harme then good to the *Member* you hoped to cure; insomuch as if you be not very cautelous in making and compounding your *Receipts* for the *Eyes* aright, you may most easily endeavouring to cure one *Eye*, not faile in putting out both. All *Diseases* in the *Eyes* come onely of two *Causes*, viz. First, either inward, or outward: Secondly, by means of some *Blow*, *Stripe*, *Prick*, *Cut*, *Bruise*, or some such like accident. The inward causes doe either proceede from evill *Humours*, which doe make their resort to the *Eyes*, or else by the meanes of some cold taken, which breaketh forth at the *Eyes*, into some great *Flux*, or else by meanes of some hot, sharpe, or salt *Humours* which doe make their resort to the *Eyes*; all which doe and will engender *Blood-spotten*, weeping, or watery *Eyes*; and these doe proceede from inward causes. Now these *Maladies* which have their source from outward causes, are (as I have before mentioned) either by a *Blow*, *Stripe*, *Prick*, *bruise*, or the like, which will cause paine and anguish, and such like inconveniences, whereby the *Member* being distempered through heate, burning, glowing,

Blood-spotten
Eyes-

glowing, &c. will weepe and send forth much moisture, which will produce not onely *Blood-shotten* and *weeping* Eyes; but also (if Art and Care bee not added in time convenient) Dimnesse of Sight, Filmes, Pearles, Pin and Web, Dragons, Serpentine, and such numberlesse Sorranes, yea and direct *Blindnesse* it selfe, without speciall providence and care used by way of prevention. Wherefore for Maladies of this Nature, I will prescribe you a few Reccits, which shall bee very good and approved. First therefore, whereas the common cure in practise among our ordinary *Ferriers* and *Smiths* is, to draw *blood* as well from the *Temple-Veines*, as for the *Neck-Veines*; my Counsell is, (which experience is taught mee by my *Master* heere, and it hath not a little profited and pleased mee) to be very cautelous how you draw *blood* from weake and enfeebled Eyes, as *Blood-shotten* and *Rhumatique*-Eyes, must bee (unlesse in cases of extreame necessity) for by so doing, I have knowne *Horses* in like cases which before they had *blood* taken from them were able to see a little, but after *blood-letting* they have become so blinde as a *Beetle*; nor were they ever able (no Art wanting) to see more, so as they after became very notable strong, and able *Millhorses*. First therefore I averre, that instead of opening a *Veine*, I counsell you to lay unto the *Temple-Veines* a *Charge*, whereby to stay and hinder that *flux* of noxious *humours* which were the cause of this Malady; and let this *Charge* bee made thus. Take Pitch, Rosin, Mastick, of each like much; melt all these together, and either apply it upon a plaister made of Leather cut round, or of Velvet, of that colour, or as neare to the colour of the *horse*, as may bee, or else lay it good and warme to the

Blood shotten
Eyes, a charge.

Temple-

Temple-Veines, with a cloath fastned to a stick, and before it bee cold, clap Flockes of the same colour to the place, and let it so remaine on, till of it selte it fall away. Then dresse the grieved *Eyes* with these ensuing things.

Take the white of a new-layed Egge, Honey, Selendine, and red Fennell, of each so much as will suffice; stampe them all well together, and so binde it unto the grieved *Eye*. * *. But if you doe finde, that the sight waxeth thicke; and that you observe dimnesse of sight in him, through his weeping: Take then *Lapis Calaminaris*, and put it into the fire making it red hot, which infuse or quench in a pint of white Wine; which done let the stone bee made red hot, and quenched in the same Wine the second time, and so in like manner the third time; and after the third quenching, when it is through cold, dry it; and beate it into fine powder, and put the powder thereof into a glasse Viall, and put thereto your white Wine wherein your stone was quenched, and after it hath stood and infused one whole night at the least; put one drop of the cleereft of the Wine into the *eye* of the *horse*, and so into the other *eye* also twice a day, till you have stayed the *Rhume* and quite cleared his *Eyes*. * *. *Another.*

Take the Juice of Selendine, Red-Fennell, Vervine, and Rue, of each a like quantity, viz. one Branch, or Sprigge of either; stampe them together, and straine it through a cleane fine linnen ragge into a little cleere running water; then put into it as much grated Ginger, and Bay-salt finely powdred, of each so much as will lie upon a two penny piece, putting all these into a glasse-viall, let it stand to fertle, and when you doe see

it as cleare as it will be, drop a drop of this water into either eye morning and evening blood warm, &c. * *

Another.

Take also Ale-hoofe (which is indeede your true ground Ivy) and stamp it well in a stone mortar, and if it be too drie, put therinto a little white Rose water, or the water of Eye-bright distilled, then straine it into a glasse, and annoint, wash, bathe, and taint (if need be) the sorance therewith, and in short time it will cure the eyes perfectly. * * The residue of Receipts I reserve to their due places.

S E C T. 13. B.

Hypophylus.

VV *What good Cure have you for a blood-running itch?*

Hypposerius. This sorance commeth to a Horie commonly by means of some extreame heat given him in the body through over-violent exercise, where by the blood is inflamed, some whereof getteth betwixt the skin and the flesh, which running too and fro, being salt and billious, it there doth itch and smart, provoking the Horse many times to rub, scrub, and bite himselfe: Which disease if it be let run long, will come to be an *Elephantick leprosie*, or at least a terrible mainge: by which means he will soone infect all the Horses which are in the Stable where he standeth, for it is a contagious malady and loathsome. The best way to cure this itch before it proceed further, is, Take Chamberly new-ly

Blood-running
itch.

ly made, two quarts, Bay salt a handfull, unflaked Lime a handfull, Enula-campana-root dryed and finely powdered, a handfull, but if not dryed, then Greene, cut into thin slices, Hens dung a handfull: boile all these together awhile; then with a stick with a clout fastned to it, wash the Horse all over so hot as hee may well suffer the same: use this three or foure mornings together, and it will cure him, keeping him to a spare dyet, and giving him white water. * *

S E C T. 14. B.

Hypophylus.

What is good to prevent Blowing and Pursiveness in a Horse?

Hyposferus. You must first understand Sir, the true nature of this griefe, as also how he came by it, whereby you may the more easily know how to cure the same; for that there be sundry waies and means whereby a Horse may come to be breathlesse and short of winde, and every one of them may bee a severall disease, and so require a distinct remedy. But if you mean a shortnesse of wind onely, then know that many Horses are naturally thicke winded, as being *cock-throated*, narrow *chawled*, &c. Also shortnesse of wind may come unto him accidentally, as when being *fat* and overladen with *flesh*, or by being too ranke of *blood*, or by too much glut and foulness in the *body*, then is he subject to shortnesse of breath and pursiveness; so as upon any motion or exercise hee will sweat, pant, blow, and

blowing and
Pursiveness &c.

heave at the *flanks*; and this commeth upon him by immoderate riding, eating, drinking, and rest. And such like exercise causeth the *panch* of the Horse (if hee be put to any sudder motion or exercise) to bee so hard and strutted out, as that he must so straine his *lungs*, (*the bellows of the body*) as to cause a dislocation in them, by means whereof they cannot execute their office or function as they ought; and if care and remedy bee not speedily had, he will in short time be past all recovery; and then he is brought to that disease which the vulgar do call *broken-winded*: wherefore to prevent it, administer unto him this ensuing Cure.

Let all the hay he eateth, (nor let him eat all he desireth, for such Horses are commonly great feeders) bee sprinkled and moistned with water, which will asswage his excessse of drinking, and very much coole his *bloud*, which cannot but be inflamed. Then give him every morning, for foure or five daies together, two Eggs steeped twenty foure houres in the strongest white wine vinegar you can get: give him (I say) these two Egges, and then the vinegar after, then ride him softly an houre after, which done, set him up warme, and three houres after, give him hay sprinkled with water, and at night when you doe give him his Oates, wet them in Beere or good Ale, and let his drinke be white water. * * Do this ten daies, so that about the beginning of *May*, and about *Michaemas*, hee may bee in breath; and so keepe him to spare dyet, but with discretion. * * This medicine will both purge him, and scowre from him much flegme and filth, as well at *nose* as *mouth*, and hee will bee both sounder and in better health a long time after; provided hee bee also kept to moderate exercise. And if

if after you have thus drenched and dyeted him, you do not perceiue his blowing and lifting at the *ribs* and *flanks* to cease, then bee you confident your Horse is past all cure, onely still moisten his meat as before is inculcated, and hee will hold out the longer. * * Another Receipt I have for the same malady, which if hee bee not past all cure, will doe him much good, which is this, *viz.*

Take Wheat Meale, the powder of Lung-wort, *alias* Mullet, Gentiana, Anniseeds, Comin-seeds, of each three drams, make them into fine powder, and make paste with them with honey, and fresh butter, of each like quantity, so much as will suffice, and put to it the yolkes of two new laid egges; make this paste into pills, and every morning fasting give him three or foure of these pills rowled up in the powder of Enalacampa-na, and the powder of Licoris, of each like much. These pills preserve the winde of the Horse marvellously, and keeps him alwaies in breath, and therefore good they be often used. * *

Of these two Receipts I have had great experience, and a third I was taught, whereof I had not oft made trial, yet with that little experience I have had of it, I do find it to be right good, being as followeth.

Take the Excrements of a sucking Childe, and put unto it a pint of white Wine; let it boile till the one halfe bee consumed, and so give it him blood-warme. This will cause him to forsake his blowing for fiftene daies; so as when hee beginneth againe to blow, give him the same medicine againe, and so keepe him with this from time to time, so oft as you shall have cause, and by this meanes you shall have his winde good. * * But then you must beware you put not into the Wine

too large a proportion of the Excrements, for it will make him to bee very sick, and peradventure endanger him, for howsoever when at any time you doe administer it, it will make him very sick. Remember also to sprinkle his meat, and to give him white water.

S E C T. 15. B.

Hyppophylus.

V V *What is your opinion of Botts, Trunchions, and Wormes, their severall sorts, and how doe you kill them?*

Hypposerus. The generall Opinion is, that there are but two sorts of these kinde of creeping Creatures, to wit *Botts* and *Wormes*, for they hold that *Trunchions* and *Botts* are both one and the same thing, but they are much mistaken; for *Botts* are of a different shape and colour from *Trunchions*, and of different natures, for *Botts* doe breed and reside in the great gut adjoining to the fundament, but *Trunchions* doe breed and make their abode in the maw onely, and if they bee suffered to remaine any time within the body of the Horse, they will make their way through the aforesaid great gut, and the *trunchions* through the maw, both which *Vermine* doe bring death to the Horse. Now I doe averre, that there is a third sort, which have none other denomination then plaine *Wormes*, unlesse you will adde the word *maw-wormes*, and so stile them *maw-wormes*, which name indeede is most proper to them, by reason that they select for their resting place the *maw* onely, from which they

Botts, &c.

Three sorts of Vermine which doe engender in the body of the Horse.

they never depart, where they doe cate small holes through the *maw*, by meanes whereof the Horse dieth.

The *Bots* are a kinde of little wormes with great heads and small tailes, they breed and live as I said before in the *great gut*, adjoyning to the *fundament*, and they may bee taken away most easily by putting in your hand, and by picking them from the *gut* to which they are fastened. 1. Bots.

Trunchions are in shape short and thick, and of a pretty bignesse, and they have black and hard heads, but they must be sent away by medicine. 2. Trunchions.

Maw-wormes are long, red, and slender, much like unto earth-wormes, most of them of the length of a mans finger, and some are longer; these must also bee taken away by medicine. All these three sorts doe ingender in the *body* of the Horse, by meanes of evill, raw, and flegmatique meates, which have turned to bad digestion, whereby putrified matter hath bred in the *maw*, and from thence these three sorts of evill creatures have engendred. You may very easily know when your Horse is troubled with them; for hee will sweat with paine, stampe with his *fore-feet*, and strike at his *belly* with his *hinder feet*; hee will also turne his head towards his *belly* to looke upon it, and forsake his meate, he will also groane, tumble, and wallow; he will also rub his taile, as if it were troubled with the itch. Now how to kill these Wormes is very difficile, for feare of endangering the life of your Horse; onely medicines must bee given which must cause them to distast the *maw*, and to feed upon such drinckes being sweet, whereby hee may void them with his *dung*. I will heere give you many Receipts, some of which I have very much experimen-

3. Wormes.

experimented; and the first is this, *viz.*

Take of Egremony one handfull, chop and stampe it small, and put into it a quart of new Milke, with brimstone made into very fine powder, halfe an ounce; give this to your Horfe fasting blood-warm, and keepe him upon the trench fasting three houres at the least, and at night give him white water. * * * *Another.*

Take the guts of a well growne Chicken, (all but the Gizard) and rowle it up warme in the powder of brimstone, and bay-salt, and put it downe his throat, and trot him up and downe halfe an houre, doing as before. * * * *Another.*

Take new milke, and the powder of brimstone, this doth the like. * * * *Another.*

Take Saven, and Worme-wood chopped and stamped small, put to it a pint of Muskadine, and give it him warme. * * * Take also a quart of brine newly made, and give it him to drinke. * * * *Another.*

Take as much *Precipitate*, *alias Red Mercury calcined*, as will lie upon a two penny piece of silver, and convey it into a piece of sweet butter the bignesse of an egge, in maner of a pill; give him this in a morning fasting, the Horfe having stood all night in his *Mussell* at the empty *Rack*, unless extremity doe compell you, for in such a case you may administer it at any other time. When you are to give it him, take forth his *tongue*, and make him swallow the whole pill, then ride him a while up and downe, and after set him up warme, causing him to fast three houres after; and with this medicine you may kill all manner of *Bots*, *Trunchions*, and *wormes*, of what kinde soever; yet at the giving, you must bee wondrous circumspect and carefull; for this
Precipitate

Precipitate is a very strong poyson, wherefore you must bee very observant of your proportion, wherein you ought not to exceed, except with good caution. Again, if you mixe your *Precipitate* before hand with a little sweet butter, the quantity of a Hasell-nut, and then afterwards lap it up in the greater lump of butter, it may bee received by the Horse to his lesse danger, and it will besides very much allay its evill quality. But this I leave to your owne discretion, assuring you that there is hardly any thing comparable to this, for this Disease. * * This Receipt I have administred unto three Horses onely, whereof the first and last I cured, but the second died under my hands; but I doe assure you not for any want of care. * * *Another.*

Take *Sublimatum* so much as can bee taken upon a Be.s. two penny piece of silver, and made up in butter, will kill the Bots in a Horse, if it bee administred as was the former Receipt. This I did never try. *Another.*

Take a quart of good Ale, of Rue, and Saven, of each a quarter of a pound, of Stone-Crop halfe a pound; bray all these in a mortar, and put them to the Ale, and boile it well, then straine it, and give it him blood-warme, and he will void them. *Another.*

Take of new milke a quart, and a penny weight of brimstone in fine powder, and twenty of the long haire of his taile, cut them very short, and put it altogether into the milke, and give it him to drinke, and then throw a handfull of bay-salt into his mouth, and hee is cured. * * *Another.*

Take a quart of strong Wort, and give it him to drinke blood-warme, and let him fast eight houres after.

Another.

Take the first day a quart of new milke, and put to it halfe a pint of Honey, and give it him warme; this will cause them to give over gnawing and feeding upon the maw for a season, by reason they will drinke and suck the milke and honey for a time; the next day, give him his drinke.

Take a quart of sweet Wort, or of your strongest Ale, especially if it bee new, then take a quarter of a pound of Ferne-roots, of Saven halfe a pound, of Stone-Crop halfe a pound; stampe them altogether, and put to it of Brimstone and of foot, of each two spoonfulls, both well powdred, and let all these bee well steeped in Wort or Ale two houres, then straine it, and give him of this two good horne fulls, then bridle him, and let him stand upon the trench sixe houres, but this will not kill them; the third day give him these purging pills. Take of Lard one pound, let it bee laid in water two houres, then take nothing but the pure fat thereof only, beat it well in a stone mortar, and put thereto of Anniseeds, Licoris, and Fennugrick, all made into fine powder, of each halfe an ounce, Aloes powdred, two drams, and of Agarick one ounce; make all these well mixed into one body, and divide them equally into sixe Pills or Balls, then the Horse having fasted over night, give him in the morning three of these Pills, annointed first with honey, then cloath him up, and litter him well, and keepe the Stable warme, and at night give him a sweete Mash, and for three daies after, let him have none other drinke then white water. These Balls will so purge the bad humours that breed and nourish these *vermine*, that the Horse will bee perfectly cleane and free from them, of what kinde soever they are; and you shall

shall finde them to come away in his *dung*, and the most of them to bee living; for no medicine (but those two onely of *Precipitate* and *Sablimate* before remembred, in which is so great perill) can kill them. * * This Receipt before any other I have made most use of, and I finde it to bee the very best, and most infallible of them all; and this will hardly leave one *Bot*, *Trunchion* or *worm* in all his *Body*: I forbear to report unto you, what quantity of these *Vermine* a *Horse* hath voyded at a time, for I love not to relate *wonders*. Another Receipt I will deliver you, howbeit not equivalent to the former, which is this, *viz.*

Take the tender tops of green broome, and of Saven, of each halfe a handfull, chop them very small, and worke them up into Pills with fresh or sweet butter; and having kept the *Horse* over night fasting, give to him three of these Pills in the morning early, then set him upon the Trench, and let him fast two hours after, but give him no water till night, and that white water. * * This also have I experienced, and have found it to be very good, for it hath caused the *Horse* to voyd many of these bad *Cattle*. I will conclude with this: *viz.*

Take a quart of milke warme from the Cow, and put to it Honey halfe a pinte, and give it him the first day; the next day take Rue and Rosemary, of each half a handfull, stamp them well together, then let it infuse, together with the powder of Brimstone, and Soote so much as will suffice, four hours in Wort or Ale a quart, then straine it, and give it him bloud warme; then let him be walked or gently ridden an houre or two, and so set him up warme and give him Hay an houre before you give him any drinke, which let be white water, and

you must not give him Hay in foure or six houres after you have given him his foresaid drinke ; and you must withall remember, that in all medicines aswell for this kinde of Malady, as for any other, his drinke must be either a sweet Mash, or else white water. * * This also is a very good Receipt, and I have had good experience of it, and it hath evermore wrought well. * *

S E C T. 16. B.

Hypophilus.

What help have you for a Brittle Hoofe ?
Hypposermis. This commeth two waies; to wit, by nature, or by accident : it commeth naturally when the *Stallion* who begat him, or the *Mare* which did Fole him, was subject to the same infirmity ; and therefore I do advise all men to forbear Breeding with such a *Stallion* or *Mare*, for all their *Colts* will be in danger to partake thereof. If it come accidentally, then must it fall out to come either by some Sufferet that fell down into the *Feet*, which caused a ficcidity in the *Hoofes*, or else in that he had been formerly Foured or heat in the *Feet*, and not well cured. I need not shew the signs whereby to know this Malady, being it is most apparant. As touching the Cure, I will give you but only one Receipt for the present ; by reason I shall have occasion to handle it more largely when we come to intreat of the *Hoofes* ; and the Cure is this : viz.

Take a Rape, or a Drawing-Iron, and with either of these make the Coffin of the *Hoofe* fine and thin, in all such

such places as you shall see cause, and pare the *Soles* very thin also; then apply to the *Feet*, as well *Soles* as *Coffins* this insuing Charge. Take Rie-bran, or for default thereof, Wheat-bran, *Oxen* or *Cowes*-dung, of these so much as will suffice, then take Sheeps Suet, and Hogs grease tryed, Tarr, and Turpentine of each half a pound, mince the Sheeps-Suet very small, and melt it on the fire, then put to your Hogs-grease, and when these be molten, put in your Oxe or Cow-dung, stirring them well together, then by degrees put in your Bran, continually stirring them, and lastly your Tarre and Turpentine, and when you have kneaded all these so well together as that they are become one body, and like to paste: take them from the fire, and so keepe them for your use, and being onely warm, stop his *Soles* therewith, but tack on his *Shoos* first: but for his *Coffins* make Bags of course cloath, and first covering all his *Coffins* good and thick, fasten those bags over his *hoofes* to his *Pasterms*, but take heed they be not too hard tyed, yet so as they may stay on; dresse him thus every day once for fifteen or twenty daies together, and let him not in all that time touch any water with his *Feet*, and his *hoofs* will become firme and tough again. After, if you turn him forth into moist ground, it will be the better, if the season will permit it. You must during the time of his Cure give him continually white Water. * * This Cure I have often tried, and it is very good. * *

S E C T. 17. B.

Hypophilus.

What doe you hold good to be applyed to the Heeles and Feet of a Horse, that is bruised and beaten with tra-
well?

Hyposferus. Sir, I will give you only one Receipt for this Cure, which I have often used, and it is so truly a good one, as that it's equall can hardly be found. And thus it is:

Pruised heels
and feet.

Take of the tender tops of the moist, angry, and stinging Nettles you can get one handfull, stamp them very well in a Morter, and when they be thoroughly beaten, put unto them of Turpentine and tried Hogs grease, so much as will suffice, to bring it to a formall Unguent: Apply this to the *Feet* and *Heels* of your *Horse*, in bags or clouts, and let this be done the very next morning after you come where you may rest him, renew this every day once, and in short time he may be sound and well againe. * *

S E C T. 18. B.

Hyppophylus.

Vhat is good to allay burning with Shot, Gun-powder, or Wild-fire?

Hyposferus. For this malady I use evermore to take Varnish, and to put it into faire water, and to beat the water and varnish very well together, then I poure away the water from the varnish, and so with a feather I annoint the place burned, and in few times dressing, it will kill the fire; which done, I heale the sorance with carnifying and healing salves. * *

This is very good.

Burning with
shot.

But I will now give you two or three other Unguents, which are most precious against all sorts of burnings, which is this.

Take

Take Hogges-grease, as much as will suffice, set it upon the fire, and let it boile well, and as the skimme ariseth, take it away with a feather, or such like thing, untill no more will arise; that done, and that it hath boyled enough, then put it forth into an earthen vessell, and set it forth in the open aire foure or five nights, after which time you must wash it in a great quantity of cleere running or fountaine water, to the end it may bee free from salt or other filth, and wash it so long in sundry waters in some great bowle, untill it come to bee very white; then melt onely this Ointment, and so keepe it for your use, wherewith annoint the place grieved, and in short time it will cure them. * * This I had of a famous French Marishall, and I have often used it, and I have ever found it to bee most soveraigne for all sorts of burnings. But if Hogges grease may not bee had, then take the fat of Bacon, and wash it well, and it is marvellous good. * * *Another.*

Take fresh butter, and the whites of Egges, of each as much as will suffice, beate them well together, till you bring them to a formall Unguent, and annoint the places burned therewith, and it will speedily take away the fire and cure them soundly. * * This is all speciall good. *Another.*

Take a stone of quick-lime which must bee well burned, (that which is best burned, will bee lightest) dissolve it in faire water, and when the water is settled, so as all the Lime remaineth in the bottome, straine the clearest of the water thorow a fine cleane linnen cloath, then put unto this water either the Oyle of Hemp-seed, or of the Oyle of Olive, of like quantity with the water, and so beating them well together, you shall have

an excellent Unguent most precious for all sorts of burnings. And the nature of these three Unguents bee to leave no scarres. Wherefore wee apply them for most soveraigne remedies, as well for man as beast in cases of this nature. * * This also I have often tryed, and I have found them all to bee most singular.

S E C T. 19. B.

Hyppophilus.

How doe you take away Bunches, Knors, Warts, and Wens, from a Horse?

Hypposcerus. These kindes of soiances doe come to a Horse, by meanes of much ranknesse of bad blood, which is engendred of *peccant humours*, which *humours* doe proceed of naughty meat. They are so apparent to the eye, that any man may point at them with his finger. The way to free your Horse of them, is first: Take up such Veines as you may know to feed them; then shave away the haire from about the places, and for foure daies togethe r, lay *Egyptiacum* to them; at foure daies end, wash and bath the places with strong Wine vinegar made hot; then take Wine vinegar one pinte, green Coperas, and Diers Galls, of each four ounces, Cantharides two ounces, bay salt one handfull, make these into fine powder, and let them boile on the fire with the Vineger a little, and so wash the soiances therewith scalding hot, and every third day continue thus to doe till you perceive them to drie up. Let the scurf fall away of its own accord at leasure, if any more shall

Bunches,
Knors, &c.

shall happen to grow forth afterwards, apply the same medicine againe, albeit it was formerly cured by the same thing : yet I have not seen any Horse to fall into the same malady againe, and during the time you have him in cure, let him not come in any water, but keepe him in the Stable warme. * * Another Cure is this: First (as before) shave away the *hayre*, and take up the *veins* which feed those sorances, then six daies after, let him *bloud* in the *beeles* to draw away the *humours* downwards: then wash and bathe him well with hot vinegar; which done, take a quart of Oyle of Nuts, and Verdegrease powdred two ounces, and a quarter of a pinte of Inke; mix all these well together, and apply it cold to the places, rubbing and bathing them well therewith, and if the Knots and Warts do not begin to drie up at the first dressing, then must you begin againe every fourth day, untill such time as they be thoroughly cured. * * Another. Take course honey one pound, Verdegrease in powder three ounces, mix these well together with the finest wheat flowre, and so bring it to an oyntment, and after you have cleansed the sorances as before is shewed you, apply this oyntment to the place with a rowler: if there be any Warts among the Knots, cut them away cleane before you doe apply the said ointment, and thus doing ten or twelve daies every other day, hee will bee perfectly cured. * * Another. Shave away the *hayre*, and take up the *veins* as aforesaid, then wash and bath the place well, then take mutton sewet, mallows, and brimstone, make a decoction hereof, and when you have very well bathed the sorances with the said decoction, take the substance thereof, and putting it betweene two linnen cloathes, make it fast

to the place over night, and in the morning take it away, which done, apply unto the place this Unguent, viz.

Take Vineger and mutton Sewer, the gumme of the Pine-tree, new Wax, and Rosin of each like much: melt all these together, (but put in your Gum last) and so annoint the sores with a feather twice every day till they bee whole. Of this Cure I never made triall, but it seemeth to be a good one. You must not forget in every of these Cures to take up such *veines* which in your judgement you may finde to feed those sores, and to shave away the *hayre* from about them cleane. Now with this other Cure, I will conclude. Wash and bathe the places with the decoction last before mentioned, and lay the substance to the sores. Take then new Wax, Turpentine, and Gum, Arabicke, of each like much: melt them to an Unguent, and herewith annoint the sores; during which time, let him come into no water, and the Poult of Mallowes, &c. must bee every night applied till hee bee whole. Another.

Take (and to conclude) blew slate and Brimstone, of each four ounces, Verdigrease one ounce, made into fine powder, then take fresh butter foure pound, melt it in a small Kettle or Posnet, and so soone as the butter is molten, put into it all the former ingredients, and so let them boile well; and when you have brought it to a perfect Unguent, take it off, and keep it for your use. And when you would use it, warm thereof upon a chafing dish and coles, and annoint your Horfe therewith upon the sore, and that but once, and it will suffice. But you must let him *bloud* the day before you annoint him.

him in the *neckveine*. And at the end of eight dayes, take a quantitie of cold Lee, and three ounces of blacke Sope, and wash the sorance therewith. This quantitie of ointment will serve but onely for two Horses. Of this Receipt I never had occasion to make triall; but it was taught me by a famous *Marishall of France*, who commended it unto me for an extraordinary good Receipt; and truely it seems to me so to be.



CHAP. VI.

SECT. I. C.

Hypophylus.



What is good to be applyed to a Horse, that hath cast himselfe in his Halter?

Hypoferus. This commonly cometh to a Horse which being tyed downe to the Manger, his *earre* or *Poule* itching, with his hinder Foote scratcheth the place that itbeth, so as when hee taketh away his

Foot, the Haulter catcheth into the *Pasterne Joynt*; which he feeling, falleth to striving, whereby he casteth himselfe downe, and by meanes of the hardnes of the Cord, he is gauled even to the very bone, and many times if he be not oportunely rescued, the Halter doth strangle him,

him, and he found stark dead. But if the *Horse* doe escape with life, he will bee neverthelesse terrible gauled, which will soon rankle and swell, unlesse cure be presently administred. The signe whereby to know it, is apparant enough. I will give you onely two Receipts for this sorance, whereof the first shall be this, *viz.*

Cast in a Ha-
ter.

Take the leaf of the hearb called Saubfucus, stamp it and strain it, and take only the juice thereof, and apply the said juice to the sorance by washing it therewith, after take a linnen cloath, white and clean, and make it into three or foure folds, steeping the cloath in the said juice, and bind it on to the place grieved, but in Winter when the said leafe is not to be had, you must take the second rinde thereof, and do therewith as before, but then note, that before you wash and apply the said juice to the wound, you must first wash the sorance with warm water, and then apply your sayd juice, and hee shall be perfectly cured in short time. This I never yet experienced, by reason I could never yet meet with the Hearb. This second I have often tried, and I have found it to be infallible, *viz.* Make a Rowle of fat Woolle, and steep the same in Vineger and Sheeps sewet so much as wil suffice, boyled together til it commeth to be very thick, and let the Rowle be full as long, or rather somewhat longer then the place gauled: apply this to the sorance Plaister-wise, and binde upon it a cleane linnen cloath, changing it twice a day, and in short time it will be whole. This is right good. * *

SECT.

S E C T. 2. C.

Hyppophilus.

W *What Cure have you for a Canker?*
Hypposerm. This is a very loathsome
 forance, which if it be suffered to run long
 will so fester, and corrupt the place where it hapneth,
 that it will violently eat, even to the very *bone*: if it fall
 upon the *Tongue*, it will eat the very root in sunder; if
 in the *Nose*, it will eat the very *Gristle* through; You
 may easily know this forance, for that the places will be
 very raw, and bleed often, and manytimes you shal per-
 ceive a white scurfe to grow upon the place grieved.
 For it is a most *Cankerous Ulcer*, which oftentimes is ingen-
 dred of a fretting humour. It commeth two waies,
 that is, either of naughty, and corrupt *blood* procured
 by meanes of unwholsome meate, or by some *Bilious*
Humour which came to the *Horse* by an extreame cold Canker.
 not long before taken, which will cause his breath to
 stink loathsomely. I will deliver unto you sundry Cures
 for this forance, which my selfe have experimented, and
 have found them to be very good.

Take white Wine halfe a Pinte, Roch Alome the
 quantitie of a Wall-nut, Bay-salt half a spoontull, En-
 glish Hony one spoontull, Red-Sage, Rue, Ribwort, Ho-
 ney-Suckle Leaves, Yarrow, Plantine, Bramble-
 Leaves, of each like much, but of every one a little:
 boil all these in the white Wine so much as will suffice,

till a quarter bee consumed, and then first inject of this Water into the forance, or else if the *Canker* bee in the *Mouth*, wash the place with a clout fastned to a sticks end, and so dresse him therewith twice a day or oftner if you shall see cause, till it bee whole. * * * *Another.*

Take greene Coperas, and Alome, of each one pound, white Coperas foure drams, boile these in a pottle of running Water untill almost the one moiety bee consumed, then take it from the fire, and put into it of Honey halfe a pound, then holding up his *Head* with a Drenching Staffe (but yet not too high) with a Pewter or Elder Seringe or Squirt, inject it into his *Nose* (if the *Canker* bee there) blood-warme; which done, give presently his *head* liberty, whereby hee may snuffle and blow forth the corruption, and faile not to inject him thus three or foure times one after the other at every dressing; and doe thus Morning and Evening till it bee whole, which will not bee long. * * * But if it bee onely a fore *Mouth*, and that it come to be a *Canker*, then

Take of the strongest white Wine Vineger, and make it thick with powdred Alome, and so wash the forance therewith two or three dayes together, for this will kill and destroy the *ulcer*, then heale up the forance thus: *Viz.*

Take of faire Water a quart, Alome, and Honey, of each foure ounces, Maudeline leaves, red Sage, and Columbine leaves, of each a handfull; boile all these in the Water till halfe bee consumed, and every day twice, that is, Morning and Evening, wash his *Mouth* therewith blood-warme, and it will heale him. * * * *Another.*

First make this strong Alome water, *viz.* Take Alome halfe a pound, Honey halfe a pint, red Sage, and Wood-

Wood-bind-leaves, of each a handfull : boile all these in faire water, till halfe be consumed : with this water and hearbs, wash and rub the Sores till they become red and raw, then take white Wine Vineger halfe a pinte, Alome powdred two ounces, Ginger powdred halfe an ounce, and of life Honey halfe a pinte, mixe all these well together, and therewith annoint the Sore Morning and Evening, and it will cure him. * * *

All these Receipts I have made triall of, and have found them to be right good. *Another.*

Take the juice of the root *Asphodill* seven ounces, Quick-lime, and Arsnick of each two ounces, beat and incorporate all these together, and put them into a new pot close stopped, and let it boyle till it come to ashes; these ashes you shall apply to the Sorance twice a day, but the sore must be first washed with strong Vineger, as before is taught.

S E C T. 3. C.

Hypophylus.

How cure you that Horse who hath cast his Hoofe?
Hyposerus. This is a troublesome Sorance, yet with care it may be cured: it commeth either by meanes of some Foundring, or by an Accloy, Prick, Stub, Graveling, Quirterbone, or other hurt within the *Foot*, which breaking out above round about the *Cronet*, and in time the *Hoofe* breaking, it falleth from the *Foot*. I need relate no Signes whereby to know the same. The Cure is thus.

Take

Casting the
Hoofe.

Take *Aqua-fortis* the strongest you can get, and first with a Rape, or Drawing Iron, file or draw away the old *Hoofe* somewhat neare, then touch the *Hoofe* so prepared with your *Aqua-fortis*, three or four severall dressings, and no more: this done, annoint the *Foot* with the Unguent wee do commonly make for *Horses feet*: viz. Take Hogs-grease three pound, Pach-grease two pound, Venice Turpentine one pound, new Wax halfe a pound, Sallet-Oile one pound: melt and mix all these upon the fire, and herewith chafe, rub, and annoint the *Coffin* of the *Hoofe* up to the very top; and this will bring a new *Hoofe*. * *

Take also Turpentine halfe a pound, Tarre halfe a pinte, new Wax halfe a pound, Sallet-Oile one pinte: melt all these except the Turpentine together till they be well mixed, and a little before you take it from the fire, put in your Turpentine, and so stir it till it be cold; but before hand make him a Buskin of Leather, with a thick sole, made fit for his *Hoofe*, but wide enough, that it may be tied about his *Pasterne*, and dresse his *Hoofe* with this medicine, laying Tow or Hurds upon it, and so put on the said Buskin, and fasten it to the *Pasterne* joynt, or a little above, but so as the Buskin may no way offend or trouble the foot, renewing your medicine every day once till it be whole. * *

This Receipt is also most soveraigne for a Horse that is *hoofe-bound*: and as the new *hoofe* beginneth to come, it behooveth you carefully to observe where it groweth harder or thicker in one place more than in another, or crumbleth, or goeth out of order or fashion any where about the *hoofe*, which when you shall perceive, file the place with your Rape, and so keep the *hoofe* in good fashion,

shion, by which means there will come a verie perfect hoofe again : which being, put him out to grafs into some moist Pasture or Meadow, for that is the onely way to cause the hoofe to become tough.

Hyppophilus. *What is the reason that in all your medicines in which you use Turpentine, you put that in last, and not when you put in your other ingredients ?*

Hypposerus. Sir, I shall give you in a word a sufficient reason for this demand ; to wit, if the ingredients which I do put into any medicine be to be molten upon the fire, as Gums, Pitch, Tarre, Rosin, and the like ; if I should put in my Turpentine together at once with the Residue before it could be sufficiently molten or boiled, the Turpentine (being a drug so subtile) would consume it self into vapour, and by that meanes leave the medicine unperfect, and that is the cause why I doe put in my Turpentine evermore a little before I take it from the fire.

S E C T. 4. C.

Hyppophilus.

IN what cases do you Cauterize, and what be its virtues ?

Hypposerus. Cauterization or giving of fire is of two natures, viz. Actual, and Potentiall : your Cautey Actual is made by hot burning instruments, with which you seare and burn those places which be requisite for the perfecting of the Cure you have in hand, which cannot be peradventure otherwise wel cured, but by giving of the fire : as in case of great impostumations, stanching of

Cautery actu
all.

blood in wounds, or in fearing of *veines, sinewes,* or the like: or else in case of dismembring, if other means be not at hand, whereby to stay the flux of blood without danger of bleeding to death, and so likewise in very many cases of this nature, wherein I do advise all men that are not very perfect in giving the fire, that they do not practice upon Horses of price, but first upon Jades, and low-prized Horses, to the end they may the better come to know how to carry their hand, and to understand themselves in this Art the better: as when they are to use the lighter, and when the heavier hand; as also that they do make their circles round, and their lines straight and even, and not crooked or waving. For this actual fire is a thing most necessary for them that doe truly know and understand the true use and vertue thereof, and therefore it ought to be very carefully, judiciously, and moderately applyed, and never but upon good and very considerate grounds: which in so doing, you shall find it to be a most soveraigne remedy to hinder and stay all manner of corruption whereunto any member may be inclined, provided that in the handling of your instrument, you touch not *Muscles, Arteries, Sinewes, Ligaments, Cords,* or the like, for so you may utterly lame where you would set upright, and destroy where you would cure, excepting only in cases needfull. For by applying this *actual fire,* you shall joine and conglutinate parts and members severed, drie up superfluous moisture, and sinke members swelled: you shall besides bring forth all evill and putrifactionous matter congealed and gathered into Knors, as Wens, Biles, Pustils, Exulcerations, and the like: you shall also asswage old griefes, and make perfect all such parts of the body as bee any way corrupted:

corrupted: neither shall you need feare the increase of any evill *humours*, by reason that the *skin* being severed by meanes of the hot iron, it doth ripen and digest all manner of putrification and matrative stuffe, whereby it venteth and passeth away much more easily, healing and quallifying all grieffe and paine, causing the *member*, which before was subject to festring and to gangrene, to become the sounder, and by much the stronger, so as nothing of disadvantage will be remaining, but the *scar* only where the iron passed, and the worst that can be made thereof, will be but a little *eye-fore*. But then you must have a very great regard unto your Instruments that they be made according to the nature and qualitie of the place and *member* which is to be seared; for one fashion will not serve in all causes: for as the places which are to be *cauterized* are commonly different in shape and proportion, so also ought the shapes and fashions of your Instruments to be made accordingly. You are also to have a speciall care to the heating of your Instruments, which ought to be done with a right good judgement; for as they must not be too cold, so ought they not to be too hot, for by that means you may easily inflame the *cauterized* places too much: Again in giving the fire great care must be had to the bearing of the hand, for therein consisteth very great cunning, and as I have before admonished you to be carefull that you touch not any *sinew* or *ligament*, so no fire is to be given to the dislocation or fraction of any bone. And as touching the *mettle* wherof your instruments are to be made: some prefer *gold*, *silver*, and *brasse*, or *copper* before *steale* or *iron*: but I will not controule any mans knowledge confessing mine owne to be the least; onely thus much

I may averre of that little I have (through Gods permission) that having made triall of them all, yet I have ever in all my practice found *iron* and *steele* to bee the verie best, and most certane to worke with, of all the other *mettals*, and my reason is, because *steele* or *iron* will retain its once received heat longer than any other *mettle*, whereby I cannot bee so much deceived in my worke; for *gold*, *silver*, and *brasse*, as they bee sooner made hot than *iron* or *steele*, so are they as soone cold: now *steele* and *iron* *mettals* are much more substantiall and harder of nature than the other *mettals* bee, and therefore as they are somewhat longer before they bee hot, so they retaine their heat much longer, which during the time of their agitation, workes more surely: againe, a man cannot tell when those other *mettals* are hot enough, as also when they be too hot, if you put never so little water to them whereby to allay their overmuch heat, they suddenly turn and become so cold as not to bee able to make them worke at all; the contrary whereof you shall finde to be in the nature of *iron* and *steele*. And let this suffice for *cautery* *actuall*. Now I will in a word handle *cautery* *Potentiall*, which as the *cautery* *actuall* burneth the *flesh* by the hot instrument; even so doth *cautery* *potentiall* burne the *flesh* by medicine, of which there are three sorts or degrees, namely by *corasive*, by *caustick*, or by *putrification*. *Corasive* is when that is applyed to the wound wherein is dead or proud *flesh* to corrode or eate it away, by which meanes the wound is prepared and made the more fit for Emplaisters, Waters, or Unguents which do carnifie and make good *flesh*, by which meanes the wound which before was foule, is now become cleane, healed up, and made.

Cautery potentiall.

I.
Corasive.

made sound, and these corroding things are commonly Precipitates, Sublimatum, Arsnick, Refalgar, Leads white and red, Verdigrease, Alome, Coperas white and greene, Vitreall, Saudaraclia Chryfocollo, Origanum, Mercury, Aconitum, Capitellum, Romane Vitriall, Shavings of Oxe or Harts horne, red Corall, Spunge of the Sea somewhat burned, Unguentum Apofolorum, Unguentum Ægyptiacum, Unguentum Caracum, Magiftra, Sal-niter, Cantharides, Apium, Aqua-fortis, Siclamine, Melanacardium, and many more, which I am enforced to leave out partly for want of memory, and partly for want of time; all which do burne, eate, and corrode the *flesh*, putting the poore *beast* to micle paine. A *Cauftick* is a greater burner, for that being once put to the *skin*, will in short time make a wound where none was before, for therewith we do use to make issues, and where it is set to the *flesh* or *skin*, it maketh its way in, whereby we may in shorter space administer our *Emplastrum*, for *Caufticks* are stronger and more violent than either *Putrifactives* or *Coraſives*; for whereas *Coraſives* do worke only upon *skin* broken, and to corrode and eat out dead, proud, spungy, and naughtie *flesh*: and *Putrifactives* do ripen, mollifie, and prepare the wound for the *Cauftick*; so *Caufticks* doe break *skin* & *flesh* & all; & therefore it is more violent, and burneth worse then any of the two former. Now your *Putrifactives* are such medicines as wee doe commonly apply to Swellings, which wee doe make for the most part of medicines compounded; as Poulteſſes, roasted Sorrell, white Lilly rootes, and the like, for such things are drawers and ripeners, causing swellings which be hard and fleshy, to become soft and putrifactive, and

to prepare Sorances for the *Causticks*, whose nature is to breake and open, what before the *Putrifactive* had ripened, which otherwise must have beene done by *Cautery Actuell* or by incision. And this I do hold sufficient to be handled upon this subject; howsoever much more, and manie other particulars may bee delivered, yet in this consisteth the substance of all, for by reason I aime at brevitic, I refer you to Master *Blunderwiles Offices*, and to Master *Markhams Master piece*, who have intreated here of verie accurately.

S E C T. 5. C.

Hypophylus.

VV *hat good Charge have you to bee applyed to the Feet, wherewith to stop them, when the Horse is either Surbated or in danger of Foundring?*

Hypposerius. This commeth commonly to yong *Horses*, which are sorely ridden before their *Hoofes* and *Feet* bee hardned, as also sometimes when *Horses* upon hard riding and long travell are ill shod; this doth not onely cause them to bee *Surbated*, but also hazardeth their *Foundring*; which so soone as you do perceive, the first thing you do, is, to cause his *Feet* be clean pickt, that no *Gravell* bee remaining betwixt the *Web* of the *Shoe* and the *Sole*, then wash the *Feet* with water and salt, and about an houre after let his feete be thoroughly well stopped with the charge prescribed you in Chapter the tenth, *Sett.* the sixteenth of this Booke; and hee will bee well in short time.

Charge for
Surbating.

S E C T.

S E C T. 6. C.

Hypophilus.

VV *What is the best way to Cleanse and Purge a Horse from all filth, at his first taking up from grasse?*

Hyposerm. This I have shewed you in the seventh Chapter of this Booke; but yet I will once again reiterate it unto you in few words. First therefore, he having been had into the Stable, the next day, if it be a hot Sunshiny day, let his Keeper take him out of the Stable into a place convenient, and there let him handsomly trim him, (a thing which everie *Groome* and *Keeper* knoweth well enough how to do;) then let him take ordinarie soft washing Sope, and annoint his *Head* all over therewith, taking a great care that none of the Sope or suds get into his *Eyes* or *Eares*, then wash him with warme water, and so purge and wash all manner of filth from his *Head* and everie part thereof; that done, first wipe all his *Head*, *Eares*, *Eyes*, and *Face*, with a warme linnen cloath; and then wipe and rub him drie with woollen cloathes: then Sope his whole body all over *Capapee*, leaving no part thereof free, especially his *Mane* and *Tayle*, then wash him very clean with Buck-lee, with a wisp or woollen cloath, and when you have sufficiently cleansed him, let him be wiped, rubbed, and made drie, as before you have done his *Head*, and when hee is thoroughly drie, let him bee led into the Stable and so cloathed up with a clean thin soft cloath, and shod up at your pleasure. And by this kinde of *Purging*, *trimming*,

Cleanse a
Horse.

ming, and cleansing of a *Hoofe*, I have in three or foure hours space so altered a *Horse*, as that his owner hath not on the sudden known him.

SECT. 7. C.

Hypophylus.

I Have known *Horses* troubled with sundry sorts of foule or fore heeles, all which carry the name of *Scratches* in generall, some whereof have *Clifts* crosse, and overthwart, some *Clifts* with *Cracks*, and some long *Clifts*, &c. What do you say to these *Maladies*?

Hypposerus. I say Sir, that every of these sorts are very foule Sorances, yet soone cured, if the *Ferrier* bee so well skilled as to take up the *Veines*, before he apply his Medicines and remedies. The *Maladies* doe come by *Surfets* taken by over-heats, by washing his *Horse* when he commeth home hot, by naughtie meat, or by corrupt blood, the *Peccant Humours* falling downwards and settling in those parts where the sorances are, wherby they prove most troublesome to the creature, and no lesse noisome to the beholders; for the heeles be very raw, and do run with loathsome water and matter which doth stinke very offensively. The signes need no description. The Cure is, first to take up the *Thigh-veines*, whereby to stop and hinder the falling down of these bad humours which do feed them; then clip or shave away the haire close from about the sores, then wash the places with broken Beere and Butter warme, and drie them againe, which done, apply this Plaister to the place grieved.

Clifts and
Cracks in the
Heeles.

Take

Take Sheeps sewet, or Deeres it wet, which is much better, and being molten upon the fire, let it coole till you may hold your finger therein; then put to it so much Rie-bran, or for want thereof Wheat-bran, as will bring it to a Salve, lay it to the place Plaster-wise upon Hards or Tow, and bind a clean linnen cloath over the Plaster to keep it on, and so let it remain foure or five daies without meddling with it, by which time the Sores will be throughly purged, and the scurfe will easily come off; then take old Bores greafe well rotted, and melt it upon the fire, and when it is so cold as was the Sheeps, or Deers sewet, put to it the yolks of Egges so much as will suffice, and a little Verdegrease in fine powder: incorporate all these well together, bringing them to an Unguent, with which annoint the Sores every day once, until they be thorowly and perfectly whole.

* * * *Another.*

Take Oile de-Bay foure ounces, Verdegrease, and Litarge of Gold both in fine powder, of each two drams, make all these into an Unguent, and annoint the sores therewith morning and evening till they be whole. In every of these Cures, let your Horse come into no water. * * *

* * * *Another.*

Take Soot, five ounces, Verdigrease in fine powder, three ounces, Orpin, one ounce, beate all these together into fine powder, and then adde thereto as much common honey as of all the residue; boyle all these together well, putting into it as it boileth quick-lime, as much as will suffice, keeping it alwaies stirring till it be well boiled, and is become thick: with this Ointment annoint the Sores twice every day, untill they be sufficiently cured. * * *

* * * *Another.*

Take hot wood ashes and quick-lime, and with common honey and white wine, make it into one body to a perfect Unguent, and heerwith anoynt the Sores; and if this malady have not been long upon the Horse, this oyntment will certainly cure him; but if he be old and have run long upon him, then give him the fire, and dresse the Burning with the oyntment prescribed you in the former Cure. *Another.*

Take a round iron, and give the fire towards the extremities or ends of the *chops*, and annoint them every day as before, and assure your selfe the *clists*, *chops*, and *rists*, will not increate, but diminish, and so in short time he wilbe whole and sound. * * This is speciall good.

S E C T. 8. c.

Hyppophilus.

I would gladly know (Hypposerus) something of Clisters, and their true natures.

Hypposerus. As touching *clisters*, there bee sundry kinds of *Purgations*, and therefore to the end you shall the better understand them and their proper vertues, I will first anatomize unto you the severall degrees of *Purgations*: and by reason I have beene much, and that for a long time versed in this subject, I am not ashamed to discover unto you from whence I had my first grounds and principles: for every man (as the Proverbe is) must have a beginning: to wit, he must be a *scholar*, before he can be a *Master*: for as *Seneca* sayth very well, *It is great temerity in any man to take upon him to bee a Master, who did never know what it was to have beene a Scholar.* My first rudiments therefore I received from Mr. *Blunderville*, and

and after somewhat I attayned unto by the help of Mr. *Markham*, both very well travelled in this Art; the rest I atchieved partly in my *Travels*, and partly from my particular *practice* and *experience*. Now Mr. *Markham* followeth Mr. *Blundevile* in many things *verbatim*, in the rest in substance, wherin Mr. *Markham* doth more largely dilate and deliver himselfe, making thereby oftentimes many things more cleare and apparant, yet they both assent in what they say; *viz.* that *Purgation* is defined by the learned *Physitians* to bee the *emptying* and voiding of superfluous *humours*, which do cumber, pester, and disturb the *body* with their peccant condition: affirming that such ill *humours* doe breed much bad nutriment, which the Learned do call *Cacochymia*, which when it will not be corrected or amended, either by fair means, or by the help of nature, then must it be compelled, forced, and driven away by *Purgation*, *Vomit*, *Clister*, or *Suppository*. And whereas Master *Blundevile* saith, that Horses are not used to be purged by *Vomit* as men be; I in conference with him once asked him the reason thereof; hee answered mee, for that the necke of the Horse was of that length, as not to be able to purge by *Vomit*, which for the present I tooke for satisfaction; I then imagining the thing not to be knowne, untill such time as I travelling into remote parts, where I had frequent commerce with famous *Marishalls* and *Ferriers*, I at length fastned upon one eminent for his faculty, who upon occasion offered, used to administer *Vomit* to Horses, as frequently as hee did eyther *Purgation* or *Clister*: which thing when I well observed, I demanded if a Horse could *Vomit*, and to what purpose he did administer in that kinde: he answered mee that a Horse could

Purgation de-
fined.

vomit, and that he oft times administred for the same end, and thereupon both gave me his Receipt, and did administer in my presence, and made me an eye-witness to the working, not in one Horse alone, but in sundry others. But now leaving this to its proper place, I come to affoile your demand as touching *Clysters*, their natures and vertues. *Clysters secundum vulgus* are called *Glisters*, but the more learned assume the name *Clyster*, borrowed from the Latine word *Clyster*, from whence the French hath it *Clystere*. Now whereas all other kindes of Physick is received in at the *mouth*, *Clysters* and *Suppositories* are administred *per Anum*, whose natures for the most part are to *purge* the *Guts*, and to cause the Horse to void, (and to throw forth of his *belly* such *humours* as doe offend him in matter of his health,) to allay the sharpnesse of bad *humours*, to cleanse ulcers, to asswage the griefes and paines in the *belly* caused by winde or otherwise, and so likewise in many other cases. Now *Clysters* are not all of one and the same nature, neither are they all *laxatives* (as many doe imagine) or do serve to one and the same end: for some must be made to give ease, some are restringent and doe binde, some do loosen and *purge*, some are to cleanse *ulcers*, old and long running sores, and some to prepare the *body* the better to receive its *Physicke*, whereby it may the better worke, which otherwise cannot be administred without much perill to the life of the sicke creature. So that a *Clyster* is (I say) commonly given for a *Preparative* or beginning to *purgation*. And a *Clyster* by cleansing the *guts*, refresheth the *vitall parts*, and prepareth the way before. Wherefore I do admonish every *Ferrier*, that when at any time they are to administer

Physick

Physick to a Horse, whether *Purgative* or otherwise, if the Horse be not at the time soluble in *body* that after *blood-letting* the next day he give a *Clyster*, and then may he be the bolder to administer what he shall think most requisite: lest otherwise by giving medicine, without further preparation, he stir and provoke the *peccant humours*, which by reason they cannot finde present way forth, being hindred by oppilations in the *guts*, through costivenesse and ventositie, and other impediments doe attempt to make their passage by a contrary way, which cannot be done, but with great hazard to the life of the poore beast.

Hypophilus. *But of what ingredients doe you make your Clysters, Hypoferus?*

Hypoferus. We doe usually make our *Clysters* of *Decoctions*, of *Drugs*, of *Oyles*, and sometimes we adde *Salt*.

Hypophilus. *what is a Decoction?*

A decoction
what it is.

Hypoferus. A decoction is a broth made of certaine herbs, as Mallows, Marsh-Mallows, Pelletory, Camomile, and somtimes of white Lilly roots, and other such like things, which we do boile in water to a third part, and sometimes we use instead of hearbes and water, to take the fat of beefe broath, or the broath of a Sheepes head, Milk, Whay, and some such kind of liquor.

Hypophilus. *what quantity of Broath or Decoction do you usually put in, whereof to make your Clyster?*

Hypoferus. That we doe administer according to the age, strength, greatnesse, and corpulencie of the Horse; for if hee bee a Horse of a strong and able *body*, of large growth, and stature, fat and lusty, we use to put into his *Clyster* of the *decoction* three pintes, but if hee bee of a small growth, weake, sicke, feeble, or leane, then wee

do put in a quart of the same at most : of Oile wee use to put in halfe a pinte, of salt two or three drammes at most, and sometimes we put in verjuice, sometimes honny, as we shall find cause : *Drugs* we use, as Sene, Cassia, Agaricke, Anniseeds, oyle of Dill, oyle of Camomile, oyle of Violets, Sugar-Candy, &c.

Hypophilus. *what quantity of Drugs is needfull for one Clyster ?*

Hypoferus. You ought not to exceed the quantity of three ounces in one *Clyster* at most, neyther must you exceed of butter foure ounces, and you must bee very carefull your *Clyster* bee not administred more than bloud warme.

Hypophilus. *what time is fit for a Horse to keepe or retayne his Clyster ?*

Hypoferus. When you give it him, let him be somewhat empty, but before he doe receive it, let him be raked, and then having administred it, let him keep it at least halfe an houre, to the end it may work in his belly, and so doe him the more good, and to cause him the better to keepe the same ; let his Keeper (so soon as the Horse hath received it) hold his tayle close to his tuell, for halfe an houres space, or more, for the longer hee keepeth it, the more effectuall it will be unto him ; the best instrument wherein to give it to a Horse, is a *Clyster-pipe* made of purpose, which ought to be 12 inches in the shanke, which must also be put home, and when the *Clyster* is assumed, let the giver draw away the pipe by degrees, and not all at once.

Hypophilus. *I pray set me downe some good Receipts of Clysters.*

Hypoferus. That shall I, Sir, most willingly: the first
Clyster

Clyster that I ever gave, was to a small Nag of a Gentlemans, which being very costive in his body, and refusing his meat, did droop, languish, and pine away; insomuch as the owner fearing his Horses life, repayred unto me for counsell; when I had well considered the nature of his infirmity, together with its symptomes, I held it most requisite to administer a *Clyster*, which I did; and it was this: *viz.* Take the fat of beefe broth, one pinte and a halfe, of good English honey halfe a pinte, adding thereto of white salt two drammes, mixe all these well, and so administer it bloud warm *Clyster-wise*, and so soon as he hath taken it, clap his *tayle* close to his *tuell*, by the space of halfe an houre together at least, and if then it doe not worke, as I am confident it will, then let one take his back, and ride him up and downe a reasonable round trot sometimes; (but not so as to cause him to sweat) for halfe an houre more, and set him up warme cloathed and littered, and so let him stand upon his trench foure or five houres; during which time he will *purge* kindly; then unbit him, and give him sweet hay, and an houre after he hath eaten, give him white water, nor let him drinke any cold water in a day or two after. And this you shall finde to bee the best remedy for this malady. * *

I.
Clift. r.

This I have administred *sape & sepius*, and have done great good therewith: for the nature of this *Clyster* is, to open and loosen the *Body*, to bring away with it all offensive *Humours*, to remove Obstructions ingendred in the *body* by means of excessive heat; it clear seth the *Guts*, and slicketh away all slimy substance which is residing in the *Guts*.

Hypophylus. *Why but Hypposerus I observe a contradiction*

distinction in you, as touching the quantity of your Decoction; for whereas you did before affirme that you use to put into your Clysters at the most but three pints, and at the least but a quart; you say that you did administer to this Horse, but a pint and halfe onely, which is under quantity of what you did before prescribe?

Hypposeru. Sir, in answer hereunto you must understand that in cases of this nature, *Physick* ought with judgement to be administred, and the reason why I put into the Clyster of this broath so little, was, for that the Horse was grown verie weak, poor, and low of his flesh, and in good years, and was besides a very small *Nag*, fetched out of *Scotland* from the mountains of *Galway* or *Galwin*, and therefore if I should have made his Clyster so strong, and have added so great a quantitie of Decoction to him, as I might peradventure have put to a Clyster for a great, large, fat, healthy, or corpulent Horse, I might have repented it; and therefore I made it as I told you, wherby it wrought most kindly, and did him that good which I hoped, and desired: But passing from this now, let us proceed to intreat yet farther of Clysters, & of their severall kindes. *Another.*

2. Take Pellitory two handfulls, or for want thereof
 Clyster Laxa- Melelote two handfulls, or if that may not be had, then
 tve. Camomile two handfulls, but Pellitory is the best if it
 may be had; boile it to a Decoction, and then adde to it
 of Sallet-Oile, and of Verjuice of the Crab, of each halfe
 a pinte, of Honey foure ounces, of Cassia two ounces,
 mix all these well together, and so apply it bloud-warm
 Clyster-wise. * * This we do call a Clyster Laxative, for
 this will open the body and guts of the Horse very well, it
 will take from him all noxious and offensive humours; it
 will

will carry away all spongy matter: it will allay the biliousness and sharpness of humours; it will cleanse old Ulcers; it will refresh and comfort the *Vitall parts*, &c. But if you do finde that by giving too great a quantitie, your *Horse* purgeth and scowreth longer and more violently then you would have had him to have done, or for feare it should stir up in him upon the sudden more bad humours than you may easily know how to allay, then give him this *Chyster*, viz. Take the aforesaid *Decoction* one pint, adding thereto as much of Cowes milke, (as it commeth warme from her) and put also thereto the yolkes of three new layed Egges, well beaten and well mixed with the said liquor: and so give it your *Horse* bloud warme. This is called a *Chyster Restrington*, for this is only to be applied to a *Horse* that is very *laxative*, or that doth emptie himselfe too much, which is occasioned oft times through overmuch debilitie, and want of strength, or when nature is very much offended: you may applie this so oft as need shall require. * *

Another.

Take Mallows three handfulls, Marsh Mallow roots cleansed and bruised, and Violet leaves, of each two handfulls, Flax seed three spoonfulls, so many of the cloves of white Lilly rootes as you may easily hold in your hand: boile all these in faire water from a gallon to a wine quart, then straine it, and put thereto of Sene one ounce, which must bee infused or steeped in the liquor three houres standing upon the hot embers; then put thereto of Sallet Oile halfe a pint, and being bloud warme, administer it *Chyster-wise*, causing him to keep it at least halfe an houre or longer if you may: and the best time to give this is three or foure daies before the

3.
Clyster Re-
stringer.

4.
Clyster for a
fat horse.

Full and change of the Moone; howsoever it may be given to very good profit (as occasion may proffer it self) at any other time. * * This *Clyster* is to be given to a Ketty or fat Horse, which otherwise cannot bee kept cleane, for it purgeth *glu* abundantly, and it is also principally to be given to a Horse that is newly taken from grasse. *Another.*

5.
A Clyster for
Melancholly.

Take of Whey a quart, of Anniseeds in fine powder, two penniworth, of the leaves of Mallows one handfull, boile these till the Mallows be soft, then straine it, then put to it of sweet Butter foure ounces, which when the butter is molten, administer it bloud warme. * * This purgeth melancholy, it causeth a good appetite which before was wanting, it refresheth the *spirits* dulled, and occasioneth good digestion if the Horse be kept warme, and well tended. * * *Another.*

6.
Clyster in case
of desperate
sicknesse.

Take of the Oile of Dill, of the Oile of Camomile, of the Oile of Violets, of Cassia, of each halfe an ounce, and of brown sugar candie in powder three ounces, then take of Mallow-leaves halfe a handfull: boile the Mallows first to a decoction in faire water, then straine it, and put to the broath all the forenamed ingredients, administer this bloud warme *Clyster-wise*. This is a most soveraigne *Clyster* to bee given in case of desperate sicknesse; it helpeth all Feavers; it is good against the Pestilence, and all languishing diseases, most excellent against Surfers either by Provender or otherwise, and it will occasion great strength in short time, if it be rightly made, and carefully given. * * *Another.*

7.
Clyster for the
Pestilence.

Take the pulpe of Colloquintida, halfe an ounce, (I meane the seeds and skin taken away) of Dragantium three quarters of an ounce, of Centuary and of Wormwood,

wood, of each halfe a handfull, of Castoreum a quarter of an ounce, boile all these in three quarts of water to a quart; then straine it, and dissolve into the broath of Gerologundinum three ounces, and of white salt three drams, of Sallet Oyle halfe a pinte, and bloud-warm administer it *Clyster-wise*. * *

This I have often proved, and doe finde it to be most excellent for the Pestilence, and to helpe all Feavers.

Another.

Take the decoction of Mallows, and put to it either of fresh Butter foure ounces, or of Sallet Oyle halfe a pinte, and give it him *Clyster-wise*. * * * This is the gentlest *Clyster* of any before prescribed; for it is both a *Lenitive*, and a great cooler of the *body*, and doth infinitely ease paine: It is the best thing that can be given to a Horse that is taken, or against Convulsions or Cramps, and most singular against Costivenesse proceeding from any sicknes or surfet by Provender, foundring in the body, &c. *Another.*

Take salt water or new made Brine two pintes, dissolve therein a pretty quantity of Sope, & so bloud-warm administer it *Clyster-wise*. This I never did experience, howsoever I have beene oft perswaded by many able Ferriers, who have averred it to be the most excellent that may be had for the Collick, or any sicknesse or gripings in the *guts* or *belly*. And let this suffice for *Clysters*: onely by way of advice I counsell you that before you administer any *Clyster* you first rake him; that you put in the Pipe (being first annointed with sweet Butter or Oyle Olive) gently and by degrees, and that you also draw it forth very treatably; that you make him keep it at least halfe an hour; that you doe administer it but

8.

Clyster; Lenitive.

9.

Clyster for the Collick.

bloud warm at most; that you squeeze and press between your hands the bladder strongly; and lastly, that you let him not drink any cold water in a day or two after, but let it be either a sweet Mash, or else white water.

S E C T. 9. C.

Hyppophilus.

What is good to be applied to a Horse that is cloyed, prickt, or hath other hurt in the hoofe?

Hypposerus. You must first with your Butter, drawing iron, or paring knife, lay the wound bare as may be; then

Cloyed.

Take wax, Hogs greafe, and Turpentine, of each one ounce, Verdigreate two ounces, boile these upon a gentle fire, your waxe and Hogs greafe being first put in and molten, then put in your Turpentine, and lastly your Verdigreate in fine powder, & being indifferently warm, dip tow or hurds into the Ointment, and so lay it to the Sore, then stop and splent it up, and dresse him twice a day, and this will make him whole and sound in short time. * * But of this more in its due place.

S E C T. 10. C.

Hyppophilus.

What say you to a Horse whose Cods and Stones are swelled?

Cods swelled.

Hypposerus. This infirmitie proceedeth from sundry causes, as sometimes by being bitten with a Dog, or with another Horse, or by being stung with some venomous or evil creature. The French do call it *Enflure de Ceullon's*.

Coillon's: It commeth also by meanes of some evill humours and corrupt blood which do fall down to the *Cods*, sometimes after sicknesse, and sometimes after ranknesse of blood and seed, for want of a *Mare*. If it come of ranknesse of seed or of blood, then let him have a *Mare*, and cover her two or three daies together, and half an hour after, ride him into the water above the *cods* or *stones* against the stream, and he will do well. * * But if this disease come by other causes, then

Take the Lees of Claret Wine, and Comen-seed, made into fine powder, and a little Wheat or Beane flowre; boile these together to an Unguent, & so warm as he may wel endure it, annoint the *cods* therewith, which done, draw forth his *yard*, and wash it, and his *sheath*, also with white wine vineger; and three or four hours after, ride him into the water above the *cods*, and let him also stand in the water some short time, and sometimes ride him against the streame: doe this every day till the swelling be asswaged. * * This is a very good Cure.

Another: Take the roots of wild Cucumbers, and white salt, so much as will suffice, boile these in faire water to an Ointment, and annoint the *cods* therewith warme: and then apply this Ointment.

Take Goats grease, or for default thereof, Deers fetwet, the white of an Egge, and Sallet Oile: boile these over a gentle fire, and herewith annoint the *cods*, but this must bee applyed after hee hath beene ridden into the water and drie againe: doe this every day once till he be well. * * This I have often tried, and have found it to be right good. *Another*.

First, annoynt and bathe the *cods* in the juyce

of Hemlock, and when it is dried, then

Take Pigeons dung, and new Milke, and boile it till it be as thick like to a Poultesse, and therewith annoint the *cods* every day once. *Another.*

First let him *bloud* in both the *spur* or *flank-veins*; then take Oile of Roses and vineger, of each a pinte, and of Bolearmoniack in fine powder two ounces: make all these into one body, and being luke-warm annoint the *cods* therewith, and the next day ride him into the water up to the *cods* against the streame; then bring him into the stable, and when hee is through drie, annoint him again: thus continuing to doe, till he be well. But if the *cods* be swoln by means of any hurt, bite, or stroke, then apply to them this following charge:

A charge for
swelled *Cods*.

Take Bolearmoniack in powder, vineger, and the whites of Egges as much as will suffice, well beaten, and wrought together, and annoint him therewith daily till it be abated, and if it impostumate, where you find it to be soft, open it either with a hot iron, or with your incision knife, if it breake not of it selfe, and so heale it up with the ointment taught you in *lib. 2. cap. 10. Sect. 4.* and it will soon be whole. * * This is very soveraigne.

SECT. II. C.

Hypophylus.

Collick.

VV *Hat say you to the Collick?*
Hypoferus. It is Sir, a disease which commeth of winde, and therefore we generally call it the *wind collick*; the *French* call this disease the *Tranchaisons*; it causeth great gripings, and extreame paine in the *belly* of the Horse, so as hee will oft times lie

lie down and tumble, he will also strike at his belly with his hinder feete, and stampe with his fore-feete; and the paine will bee so great as to cause him to forsake his meate: these signes I have often observed in Horses perplexed with this malady; and albeit I have sundry Receipts for it, and all or the most of them by me tried and approved good, yet one of Master *Blundeviles* and Master *Markhams*, I hold inferiour to none of mine, for I have often tried it; and this is it:

Take a quart of Muscadine, or of sweete Sacke, of Cloves, Pepper, Cinamon, of each halfe an ounce, Sugar two ounces, make all these into fine Powder, and give it him bloud warme: then annoint his flanks with Oile de Bay; (but I often use to annoint them with the Ointment of Acopum, I finding it to bee much better) then bridle him up, and trot him out a good round trot, or gallop him softly sometimes the space of an houre untill he do dung, but if he will not, then rake him, or else put an Onion pilled and jagged into his fundament: then for three or four daies, let his drink be either sweet Mashs or white water, and keepe him warme, and he will do well againe. * * * Another. Keep him fasting over night, and in the morning give him this drinke.

Take of white Wine a quart, Fennugrick foure ounces, Bay-berries, and Pepper, of each four ounces, Grains and Ginger of each one ounce, Water-Cresses two handfuls, Sage one handfull, Sengrene one pound, Mints a handfull, stamp the hearbs, and pound the spices, and put them into the Wine, and let it boile a little, then straine it, and put to it of life Honey two spoonfuls, and so give it him bloud warme. * * * This I have also found to be very good: notwithstanding if he be a stoned horse, the

the best cure for him is to have a *Mare*, especially if he be so troubled with the *collick*, so as that he cannot pisse; besides it helpeth and preventeth sundry sorts of sicknesses and diseases, and strengthneth nature. * * * *Another.*

Take of white Wine one pinte, and three or foure Cantharides; and make them into very fine powder, and give this to the Horse (well brewed in wine) bloud-warme. This I never tryed, for that these flies being a strong *corasive*, have deterred me, howsoever I have been often invited thereunto by many good *Ferriers*, who have averred unto me, that they have often used it, and have found it to be right good. *Another.*

Take Cloves, Pepper, Cinamon, of each one ounce; all made into fine powder, and well mixed, then put it into a quart of Muskadine; and let it boile a while; then take it off, and put to it of Honey one spoonfull; give it him bloud-warme: which done, cloath him up, and litter him, and so let him stand upon his trench foure houres; then give him meat, and an hour after a sweet Mash, or white water. This was taught me by a *Noble Knight*, who said he had often used it. But if your Horse hath the *collick* and *stone*, then

Take of white Wine one pinte, of Burr-seeds eight ounces, made into fine powder, of Parsley-seede two ounces, in powder also, of Ifope, unset Leekes, and Water-Cresses, of each halfe a handfull, of blacke Sope halfe an ounce; stampe all the Hearbes in a mortar, and straine them with the Wine; then put to that Liquor, your Burre and Parsley seed, and so give it him bloud-warme; this will breake the stone, and bring it from him with much ease, and cure his *Collick*.

Collick. * * This I have often administred.

S E C T. 12. C.

Hypophilus.

What Disease is that which is called the Colt-Evill?

Hypoferus. It is a disease in the *yard*, *sheath*, and *cods* of a *Horse* or *Gelding*, and it commeth to *Horses* by means of heat and ranknesse of *seed*; and to a *Gelding*, by weaknesse and coldnesse of *seed*; to the *Horse* through too great abundance of *seede*, which causeth a stopping in the *pipe* or *conduct* of the *yard*, and to a *Gelding* for want of heat and strength to send it forth, whereby the *yard* and *sheath* swelleth very much. The best way to cure a *Horse* is to give him a *Mare*, whereby he sendeth forth his *seed* freely, and then two or three houres after swim him, or else ride him up to the *flankes* to and fro a prettie while against the streame. This disease is knowne by the swelling of the *yard* and *sheath*; I have cured many *Horses* and *Geldings* with this ensuing Receipt. Firrst swim him, but specially against the stream four or five daies together, then apply this *Plaster*:

Take Beane-meale, and Mallowes, of each one handfull, Hogs grease halfe a pound, chop the Mallows small, then put to the Hogs grease, and so boile it with a pinte of white Wine, and when it is boiled, put it into a cloath, and wrap his *cods* therein; and so order it as that it may gather like a purse, and make it fast so, as it may neither fall off, nor hurt him: dresse him herewith every day till he bee well. * * I have had great experience of this Receipt: but if you bee desirous to

have variety, then looke over Master *Blunde-vile* and Master *Markham*, who are well stored.

S E C T. 13. C.

Hypophylus.

What is best to be given for a Cold?

Cold.

Hypoferus. There are so many and so good, as that I am to seeke almost how to begin, they be of so many, and sundry sorts of them, for some are for colds newly taken, some for old colds, some for colds that bringeth the *Glanders*, &c. Wherefore for colds newly taken at first, you must understand (Sir) that a cold newly taken (a thing not to be prevented, by reason it oft times commeth by meanes and wayes unknown) you must observe first, that if your Horse bee propense to many bad humours, whereof some Horses are more than other, you must first then labour to expel them by purging his head, then search betwixt his jaws, and if there you do find any small kernels, then be you assured he hath a new-taken cold, but if he have great kernels, then was not the cold so lately taken as you might have imagined; also if hee do ratte in the head, it is a signe his cold is newly taken, or if he do void any thin matter forth of his nose or eyes, or if he hold his head into the manger; or if when hee drinketh, the water commeth forth of his nostrils, or that he cougheth oft, and sometimes perhaps cheweth mattrative stufte betwixt his teeth, &c. These and many others be certain signes of a Pose, Catarre, and newly taken cold, wherein is no danger if it be taken in time, otherwise it will come to a worse matter; I will now give you sundry good Receipts, most of which I have often

ten tried and found to be right good. First, I hold moderate exercise, and seasonable ayering to be marvellous good, without further applying of medicines; but if you finde that he is much stopped in the *head*, then

Take a small quantitie of fresh or sweet Butter, and of Brimstone made into fine powder; worke them together till they be one entire *body* and of a deep yellow gold colour, then take two long Goose-wing feathers, and annoint them herewith to the very quills on either side; which done, rowle them in more of the powder of Brimstone, and so put them up into either *nostrill* one, and at the butt end of the quills put a strong packthread, which must be fastned over his *pole*, like to the headstall of a Bridle: and then leap his back, and moderately up and downe an houre or longer, and this will proveke him to snort and snuffle forth of his *nose* and *head* much of the congealed filth which is in his head, then tie him to the Rack for an houre after, and this will purge his *head* very clean: then draw forth the feathers and hee will do well, keeping him warme, and giving him Marshes or white water every day for foure or five daies after. This Receipt was taught me for more than thirty years since by a famous *Marishall of France*, which since I found in Master *Markhams Master piece*, but I hold it one of the best things can be prescribed for this Malady.

* * * Another very short, but as good.

* Take of Time one handfull, boile it in a quart of strong Ale, til it come to a pinte, then straine it, and adde thereunto of ordinary Treacle two spoonfulls, and give it him bloud warme. * * * Another.

An excellent drinke to be given to a Horse for a new-taken cold, provided he be young, that is, not above 5. years old.

Take of French Barly halfe a pound, put it into a posnet, and put thereto of faire water one quart, and set it upon the fire, and let it boile a little, then take it off, and draine the water from the Barly, and cast away the water, then adde the second time the like quantitie of water, and boile it as much as you did the first time, and then draine it from the water, and cast away the water againe, then adde once againe the like quantitie of a quart of water, as you did twice before, and boile that also so long a time as you did the two former waters, drain this also from the Barly, but cast it not away, but keep it, and then adde to the water of Anniseeds and Licoris, of each halfe an ounce, make them into very fine powder, and searce them, and put the said powder into the boiled water, and adde to it of white sugar: andy four ounces, then set it upon the fire in a cleane skillett, and so boile it up untill a third part bee consumed, then take it off and straine it, and give it your Horie bloud-warme; drench him thus three mornings together, and it will ripen his cold and cause it to come away. This is very good. * * * *Another.*

Take of white wine vineger the best and strongest, five spoonfulls, and put to it of Oile de Bay one spoonfull, warme it upon the fire, stirring it well; this must be made and given in the morning: but when you doe administer it, you must first put your drenching horne into faire water that is good and hot, to keepe the Medicine from sticking to the horne, then taking it forth out of the hot water, before the horne can be cold, and whilest it is yet moist with the water, put the one halfe of your medicine into the same, and so as speedily as may bee, convey it into one of his nostrils, and after

after the other moitie into his other *nostrill*; this done, ride him for halfe an hour moderately, then set him up, and cloath and litlet him warme, and let him stand upon the trench three or four houres before you give him any meat, and after doe as is accustomed to bee done to sick Horses in *Physick*. * * This I do approve to be equivalent to either of the two former. *Another.*

Take water and salt so much as wil suffice, brew them well together, it then being made blood warme, give it him, and doe after as is usuall * * This for a new taken cold I have often used, and I doe finde it to bee singular good to be given to a young Horse. *Another.*

Take of Oile de-Bay, of Anniseeds, and of Licoris, of each one halfe penny worth, and of brown sugar-candy a penny worth, make all these into fine powder, and being well mixed, sew it up into a fine linnen rag, and so fasten it unto the Bit or Snaffle of the Horse, and so ride a journey, and travell him, and in short space he will be cured, if it be a new-taken cold onely. * * This I have also proved, and I doe finde it good, for it will cure both cold and cough if it be rightly applied, to wit, with riding and exercise. *Another.*

Take of white wine one pinte, Sallet Oile a quarter of a pinte, Rubarb and Alloes, and Saffron, of each two drams, Nutmeg, Sene, Agarick, Bay-berries, Duke or Dutch powder, and of Cordial powder, of each halfe an ounce: mixe all these together, and then adde to it of Honey foure ounces, warme them well in a Pipkin, and give it him to drinke blood warme, but let him stand upon the trench at least three houres before, and three houres after, neither let him for all that day eate any Oates, but in its stead, let him have Wheat-bran, and

let his drinke be that day either a warme Mash, or white water, and no cold water, but this white water for foure or five daies after, and put into his Provender for some time Fennugricke made into grosse powder. * * This is a most soveraigne drinke to be given for a cold. But if you doe find that his *head* is very much oppressed with a *Pese* or *Catar*, then give him this drinke twice a day, *viz.* Take Fennugrick one ounce, and boile it into a good quantitie of water till it burst, then mix with the decoction thereof wheat meale so much as will suffice, and give it him to drink. *Another.*

Take a quart of the best Ale, and warme it upon the fire, and put into it so much Tobacco made into fine Powder, as you can take up upon a shilling at twice, and as much dried Rosemary in fine powder as you may take up upon a shilling at once; give him this to drinke bloud warme in a morning fasting. This drinke is called *Potio-Necotiana*, But I did never make triall thereof, for that I once saw it given by a *Ferrier* to a sicke Horse, which so wrought with him, as that with all his *Lentives* and *Cordials* the *Ferrier* had much labour to save the life of the poore Horse; this potion was so violent, which notwithstanding drove the Horse into a most dangerous *Calentura*. But the next is better.

Take a Hens egge, and make a hole in the top thereof, no bigger than that you may get forth the white and yolke, then take Tarre and sweet Butter, of each like much, as much as will suffice, incorporate these well together into one body, and so convey it into the egge shell, and give it your Horse three or foure mornings together, and either journey him gently, or else ride him three or foure houres after it; which done, bring him into the
Stable

Stable, and cloath him up warme and litter him well, and let him be well rubbed, and so keep him upon the trench two houres after, and then give him Hay, and an houre after give him either a warme Mash, or white water; and this will helpe a cold newly taken. * * This will not make him sick, for I have often made triall of it. Another as good as this.

Take the long white mosse that groweth upon an old dry Parke pale, one handfull, chop it small, and put it into a pottle of good Ale or Beere, till one halfe bee consumed; then take it off, and straine and presse it hard, and put into the liquor of Anniseeds and Licoris, of each half a spoonfull, and a piece of sweet Butter, and so give it him three mornings together fasting, and it will cure him. * * Another if he hath taken a cold or poze in the *head*.

Take a quart of Muskadine or sweet Sack, of Nutmegs, Pepper, Cominseed, Graines, Bay-berries, of each three drams, all made into fine powder: boile these a waume or two, then take it off, and put into it a piece of sweet Butter, and give it your Horse three mornings together bloud warme; let him all those three daies be kept warme, neither let him drinke any cold water, but either a sweet Mash, or white water, yea and that three or foure daies after; and during these three daies, let him fast three hours after the Receipt of his said medicine. Also three daies after when you perceive the cold to begin to breake from him, and to rot, cause him to sneeze, by blowing into either *nostrils*, either the powder of Tobacco, or of Pepper, or of Elebore. * * Another which will cure a longer taken cold, yea though it be accompanied with a drie cough and shortnesse of breath,

breath, or purfivenesse, which I had of Master *Markham*, and I have often made triall thereof, and it hath done cures which have beene held impossible to have been effected.

Take of the conserve of Elecampane three quarters of an ounce, and dissolve it in a pinte and a halfe of sweet Sack, and so give it your Horse with a horn in a morning fasting, and ride him gently a little after: and thus doe sundry times untill you doe finde the infirmity to decrease.

Hyppophilus. But *Hypposerus*, this Conserve of Elecampane I do suppose is hard to come by, for surely every Courtey Apothecary hath it not; how then may a man make this Confection you so much commend?

Hypposerus. Sir, this Conserve I make my selfe, and I will give you the receipt hercof. You must understand that there be two kinds thereof, the one is called particularly a *Preserve*, and the other an absolute *Conserve*. The first is *Simple*, the other *Compound*, both very soveraigne for this Infirmitie, but the *Conserve* is evermore to be esteemed the better, and I doe counsell you never to be without either of them; for they will keep the whole yeare through, if they be reserved close stopped. Wherefore as touching the first, which is the *Simple*, you must preserve it like as you do all other green rootes, and so keep them in a Gally pot or Glasse in a good quantitie of its owne Sirop, till you have occasion to use the same; and when you are to use it, let it bee beaten well in a Morter together with its Sirop and refined Sugar made first into very fine powder. Now your *Compound* or *Conserve* is thus made: First, let your rootes of Elecampane be neatly Candied, and made very drie and hard,
and

and get the best and youngest Rootes can be had, which must be kept also in a Gally pot or glasse close stopped, in a drie and warme place where they may not give againe; and when you would use them, take so much as will suffice, and beate it in a Morter with the Sirop of Colts foote, and the powder of refined Sugar, still working it till you have brought it to bee a perfect *Conserve*, and so given to your Horse in good sweet Sack or Muscadine. The first of these two which is the *Simple*, is of most excellent use, for it helpeth any ordinary cold or stopping, it comforteth the *Lungs*, enlargeth his *winde*, purgeth the *Head* from all filthy matter, and dissolveth many other obstructions, as well in the *Body* and *Head*. But the *Compound* or *Conserve* worketh better effects in the *Body* of the *Horse*, especially if the malady be old and dangerous, or if there be any taint, in the *Lungs*, *Liver*, or inward parts: This *Conserve* in time, by frequent use thereof will cure all drie Coughs which are held to bee incurable, it helpeth the heaving of the *Belly* and *Flanks*, it causeth the *Horse* to take his *winde* kindly and temperately, and freeth him of his drie Cough, which before did greatly annoy him; but if you have not these *Conserve*s, take this other Receipt little inferiour to the former for these Maladies.

Take of the Sirop of Colts-foot one ounce, of Elecampane roots dried, Anniseeds and Licoris, of each halfe an ounce, all made into fine powder, browne Sugar candy powdred one ounce, which must bee divided into two parts, then take sweet Butter so much as will suffice, and so make this into three Pills good and stiffe; which done, role them in the other moitie of your powdred Sugar Candy, and so give them your *Horse* fasting,

then ride him gently for halfe an houre, and after set him up warme, and let him fast three houres after, causing him to be well rubbed: Let him drinke no cold water, unlesse it bee with exercise, and let his Hay bee sprinkled with water, and his Oates wet in strong Ale, or else with Beere. * * Another very good.

Take the cankerous Mosse of an old Pale, or of the limbes of an old Oake two handfulls, chop and shred it small, and boile it in a pottle of new Milke, and with it a roote of Elecampane, let these boile together till halfe bee consumed, then straine it, and presse the Mosse and Roote very well; which done, put to it of sweete Butter the quantity of a Duck-Egge, and so give it him in a morning fasting blood warme, and ride him moderately an houre after; then set him up, cloath him and litter him warme, and order him as is accustomed with *Horses in Physick*: Let him have this drinke three mornings together, and it will cure both his Cold and Cough wet or dry, or his Poze if hee have it. But if you finde your *Horse* to bee stopped in the *Head*, and that he voydeth filth, and stinking matter out from his *Nose*, then shall you every morning administer this fume.

Take of *Auripigmentum* and of Colts-foote made into powder, of each two drams, then with Venice Turpentine worke them into a stiffe paste, and make them into small Cakes the bredth of a sixpence, and dry them a little, and then put fire into a Chafing-dish with coales, and so put one of these Cakes upon the coales, covered with a Tunnell, and so fume him, and this not onely during his *Physick*, but at other times after, and let his drinke bee either sweete Mathes or white water. * * Another, If your *Horse* hath a new taken cold, then give

give him his Caudle, which I have often used, and doe finde it to be very good.

Take the Yolkes of foure new layd Egges, and beate them well together, and dissolve them with a quart of good Ale, then take three good Nutmegs with a little Anniseeds and Licoris, made all into fine powder, and as much Pepper in fine powder as you can take up upon a sixpence; put these into the Ale, with a piece of sweet Butter, so much as will suffice, and two spoonefulls of ordinary Treacle, and of browne Sugar Candy foure ounces, warme all these upon the fire till the Treacle and Butter bee molten, then give it him bloud warm, foure or five mornings together; and this is an infallible cure. * * Another very good.

Take a pottle of sweet Wort, three heads of Garlick pilled, or ordinary Honey halfe a pound, boile these till one moiety bee consumed, and give it your *Horse* three mornings together: Then for three mornings together after, give him these Pills. Take Box leaves and Harts-tongue, of each so much as will suffice, stampe them well together, and with sweet Butter make it into Pills; and so every morning give him three of these Pills. * * But if hee hath a cold which breaketh and runneth from him, then must you bee carefull to keepe his *Head* and *Pole* warme, by putting on a double Hood, and every Morning fasting, ride him with two long Goose-feathers put up into either *Nostrill*, well dipped before hand in Oyle de Bay, and with a strong Packthread from the ends of the quills fastned over his *head* like a Headstall of a Bridle, so as the feathers may not get forth, and fasten also to his Bit or Snaffle one Roote or two of *Populodium*; having beene all night before laine steeped

in the Oyle of Spike, and every time you ride him appoint the Bit thus before hand prepared with the said Oyle, and when hee commeth home, put upon his Pole his double hood, and rub him against the haire all over, especially his Neck and Pole, (for friction in this case is most soveraigne) then whilst he is yet warme, perfume his Nose with Frankinsence, Storax, and Benjamin, of each like much; doe this nine dayes together, and let his drinke bee white water: For all Rhumes having had time to worke their malice will become dangerous, yea and many times curelesse. * * Now if your Horse have taken an extreame cold; then

Take Cloves, Nutmegges, Ginger, Galls, or the fruit of the Oake and Cardimums, of each like quantity so much as will suffice, and of Fennell-seedes more then any one of the other Ingredients, make them into fine powder, and searce them, then put two Spoonefulls of this powder to a quart of Sack or Muscadine, and strain these into two penny-worth of English Saffron, and the yolkes of two new laid Egges well beaten together, give this to your Horse blood warme fasting, and let him have none other drinke then white water for three or foure dayes after, and let his Hay bee sprinkled with water, and every day at noone give him the blades of Reed, or the leaves of Sallowes to eat out of your hand, for they bee very good for him, and cooling for his body; doe this divers mornings together, and it will not onely cleanse his Cold, but also open his Pipes, and set his winde at liberty. But if your Horse have an inward cold, which lyeth lurking in his Lungs and Stomaek, then give him this Medicine.

Take Oile de Bay and good Tarre, of each the quantity.

titie of three Wallnuts, halfe as much Honey, brown-Sugar-candy in fine powder halfe an ounce, mixe these with a quantitie of powdred Brimstone so much as will suffice, and sew them into a fine linnen cloath, and tie it to his Bit or Snaffle, and so ride or journey him moderately till all bee dissolved into his *body*, then bring him into the Stable, and cloath and litter him warme, and 3 hours after give him Hay, and after a warm mash; use him thus three mornings together and longer, if you shall see cause. * * *Another.*

Take bloud from him, if you have ground for the same, otherwise not; then instead of giving him Oates, you shall give him bran boyled in water after this manner, *viz.* Set a Kettle over the fire almost ful of water, and when it beginneth to boile, put in your bran, and let it boile a full quarter of an houre at least, then take it off, and let it stand till it be almost cold, and about foure or five a clock in the morning, give him this bran so hot as he can eate; then for his drinke, give him the same water, and at night give him Oates and white water, and let him bee covered and littered warme; if it be in Summer, let not the Stable be too hot, for that will take away his stomack, and make him faint, and sweat too much; and at night give him the quantity of what you can put into an Egge-shell among his Oats of this powder following, to which you must keep him for eight dayes together, or longer, if you shall see cause. You must understand that the boyled Branne, is that which drieth up all his grosse and corrupt *humours*, which was the cause of his cold. Now the powder is this: *viz.* Take of Comin-seed, Fenugricke, Sileris-Montani (*alias* Sisileos) Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linseed,

seed, of each two ounces, Quick Brimstone fixe ounces, make all these into fine powder, and let them bee well mixed: this must be given with his Oats, as is before insculcated; but he must first be watered, and then presently let him be well rubbed, *body, necke, pole, legges, breast and belly*, and clothed and littered warm, and an houre before you give him his Oats, put into his Racke a little sweet wheat straw, and so (I say) let him eat thereof the space of one houre or better, and then give him his Oats mixed with this powder, which having eaten, give him Hay at your pleasure; and thus doing, in short time you shall perceive his Cold to bee quite gone, and the sooner if hee shall bee moderately aiered an houre after Sun rising, and an houre before Sun-set, if the Sun doe shine. Now if this Cold bring with it a violent Cough, as is often seen, then give him the aforesaid Wheat-bran boyled, together with the said powder with his Oates, but then not above three or foure daies, for that the said powder disperfeth the corrupt and grosse *humours* that are in the *body*, which doe occasion the said cough, and when you doe perceive that he hath purged sufficiently, keepe him notwithstanding to his white water, but an houre before you doe water him;

Take a sticke of the bignesse of your thumb or better, of well nigh a foot long, and wrap a linnen clout about it foure or five times, first dipped in Oile de-Bay, and put it into his *mouth*, and with some piece of leather thong, or other small cord fasten it to either end of the stick, and so fasten it over his *eaes* like the Headstall of a Bridle, like as Smiths use to doe when they burne a Horse for the Lampas, and let him drink with this stick
in

in his mouth; which done, let him stand with it thus in his mouth an hour after at the least, to the end hee may lick and suck up the said Oyle, and when hee is to eate his Oates, put among them this other powder following, *Viz.*

Take Fennell-seede foure ounces, Fennugrick two ounces, Cardimums one ounce, pound these grossly, otherwise hee will blow them away in eating his Oates, and with his Oates put every night of this powder one spoonfull, and keepe him warme, and so use him as before is prescribed. * * *Another.*

Take Ivy-berries and dry them, and make them into powder, and so give it to your Horse in Ale or Beere.

This I never tried, and this is onely for a Cough. *Another for a Cough.* Take of salt one pint, of Sallet Oyle halfe a pint, Oyle of Anniseeds one ounce, brown Sugar Candy, in powder three ounces, give this with your horn to your Horse three mornings together, and it will rid him of his Cough, and heale any putrifaction in his *Lungs*, or any other inward parts whatsoever. This also I never tried, but it was highly commended to mee. *Another Receipt for a Cough*, which I have found to be very good.

Take two new laid Egges, and open the crownes, and get forth some of the white, and then put into these Egges so much of the powder of Brimstone as you can take up upon a shilling into either Egge; give him this every morning for some time, or till you see the cough to go from him. *Another.*

Take three new laid Egges, and put them into a pint pot, then put so much of the best and strongest white Wine Vineger into the pot as will very well cover the

Egs,

Egges, and let them lie in the Vineger 24 houres at the least, then beate the Vineger and Egges together shells and all, and so give it your Horfe cold, and then ride or walke him an honre, and against his comming in, have his drinke in readinesse, and give it him, *Viz.*

Take Ilope, Anniseeds, Licoris, Graines, Long Pepper, Gentiana, Elecampane dried, of each three drams, make all the Spices into fine powder, and stampe the Ilope well, and so put all into good Sack one pint, and of good Ale also one pint, and of Honey one spoonfull, and so boile it, and give it your Horfe bloud-warme, and set him up, and cloath him, and litter him warme, causing him to fast three houres after it, and give him no cold water, but sweet Mashs or white water; and this will cure him, for it is an approved good Receipt.
* * Another very good.

* Take Wheat Meale, Anniseeds, Licoris, Polipodium of the Oake dried, Elecampane dried; make all these into powder, and mix them well: Take two spoonfulls of this powder, with a head of Garlick piled and bruized, mix all these well together, and with your Wheat Meale and Honey as much as will suffice, make pills thereof to the bignesse of a Walnut, and give your Horfe every morning three or foure of these pills, and so soone as he hath taken them, give him two new laid Egges with their shels. * * Another.

Take of life Honey three spoonfulls, of the best and whitest refined loafe Sugar one spoonfull and a halfe, made into fine powder, dried Elecampane Root made also into fine powder one spoonfull, and of Ambergreece two graines, mix all these very well together, and put it into an Egge-shell, and give him heereof at night late,

late, and in the morning fasting, and so let him fast for three houres after, and be the cough never so violent, it will both stay and cure the same * * This is right good, for I have had very good proof thereof. *Another.*

Take Benjamin and Brimstone made into very fine powder, of each halfe an ounce, give this your Horse with one pinte of Muskadine, putting into it two new laid Egges shels and all, broken and well beaten together, let it be given three mornings together. This was commended unto me for a speciall good Receipt, but I never did make triall thereof. *Another.*

Take Nettle-seeds, Anniseeds, Reyfins of the Sunne stoned, Elecampane in fine powder, of each halfe an ounce, make all the spices and seeds into very fine powder, and cut the Reyfins very small, and so boile all these in Muskadine or Sack a quart, with three spoonfuls of life Honey, then straine it, and give it him three mornings together bloud-warme. This I never proved. *Another.*

Take of Rue one handfull, chop or stampe it very small, and put to it a penny worth of Anniseeds in very fine powder, make it up in Pills with sweet Butter, and so give it your Horse. * * This I have found to be most soveraigne for a Horse that hath a cold whether newly or formerly taken, either wet or drie cough; it is also most excellent for a Horse that hath been over-ridden, or any way wronged by labour. Now if his Cough bee so violent as that it may endanger his *winde*; then,

Take Calamint, Gentiana, Cominseed, Licoris, Elecampane, of each two drams, make all these into fine powder, and confect them with life Honey and Butter mingled together and molten; and when it is cold,

make it up into Pills; then rowle them in the powder of Anniseeds, and give him of these Pills three or foure every morning, for two or three mornings together fasting, and after keep him warme, and let his drinke be Mashes or white water. * * But if he hath a Cough of the *lungs*, give him these Pills. Take the Roots of Malloes newly gathered, Elecampane Rootes newly also gathered, of each one handfull, slice them thin, and boile them in faire water with Barly two handfulls, till the roots be soft, then straine forth the liquor, and put into it a penny dish of sweet Butter, of life Honey three spoonfulls, and as much Beane meale as will make all into a paste; then make it into Pills, and rowle them up in the powder of Anniseeds, and give him three or foure of them every morning fasting for three or foure mornings together, keep him temperately warme, and during the time he taketh these Pills, let his drinke be either sweet Mashes or white water, and every day about mid day, give him boiled Barly or Brewers grains. * * Another for a Horse that hath his *wind broken*.

Take the leaves of Mullet, *alias* Mullen, *alias* Horse-Lungwort, and drie them, and make them into fine powder, and then make them up in Balls or Pills with ordinary Honey so much as will suffice: let these Pills bee made of the bignesse of an Egge, and give him of them three at a time, fourteen or fifteen daies together, or longer if you shall see cause, and let him not drinke any cold water, during the time, and for a while after the giving of his Pills, and let his exercise bee very moderate, and his Hay sprinkled with water, and his Oates wet with good Ale or Beere, and in short time he will be well and sound againe. * * This is a most approved

proved good Receipt, with which I have done Cures held impossible to have been effected. *Another.*

Take Comin halfe an ounce, Anniseeds and Licoris, of each two ounces, dried rootes of Elecampane three ounces, make them into fine powder, and boile them in a pottle of Ale or Beere to a quart, then straine it, and give the liquor to your Horfe in a morning fasting blood warme, and ride him moderately upon it two or three houres, then set him up warme, and use him *ut supra*. This I never tried, but he that gave it me did highly commend the same unto me. Thus have I given you many Receipts for a cold, and such diseases which are thereof dependant, whereof many are to my knowledge right good, and by my selfe experimented, with which I have done cures which have beene held very strange, and beyond expectation.

Hypophilus. Truly Hypposerus, as touching these Maladies, something there is in them, wherein I doe earnestly desire to be yet better informed; and first I would gladly know what be the diversities of the diseases which doe proceed from Colds; and how wee may come to know one malady from another.

Hypposerus. Sir, in answer hereunto you must understand, that from a cold taken doth issue many infirmities, if the said cold be not speedily prevented; as namely, first Coughs, as well wet as drie, Catars, Murs, Rhumes, Poze, Ratlings in the head, Kernels, and inflammations under the *Chanck*, with Bunches, Knots, Pustils, &c. It causeth also Hidebound, Feavers, Head-aches, Frenzy, Sleeping evill, weeping Eyes, Canker in the Nose, Strangles, Quinsy, to have Gourded or swolne legs: It will cause the *kayre* to stare, it will in time cause the

mourning of the *Chine* (if there be such a disease) shortness of breath, purpiveness, purtiffick, broken winde, (also if there bee such a disease) Prelifed, broken and rotten lungs, glanders incurable, if it be not in time prevented, griefe and paine in the *breast*, Anticor, it will also cause the evill habit of the *stomack*, dropfie, loathing of meat, foundring both in the *body* and *feet*, tyrednesse, putrifaction and inflamations in the *bloud*; it will also cause many diseases and inflamations in the *liver*, together with the siccitie and ariditie thereof, obstructions, opilations, costiveness, and stoppings both in the *body* and *pores*, a consumption in the *liver*, the overflowing of the *gall*, the unnaturall working of the *spleene*, the *Yellows*, *Stavers*, the *Collick* and gripings, *belly bound*, *laxe* and *bloody-flux*. All these and many more diseases and maladies do depend upon this one only infirmity we call the *cold*, and therefore how needfull a thing it is for a man who is the true lover of his *Horse*, to bee careful what in him lieth both to keepe his *Horse* from cold taking, as also to know how to cure the same so soone as it shall appeare, in performance whereof no small diligence and art is required.

S E C T. 14. C. 5

Hypophilus.

You make question whether or not there be such a disease which is so commonly called the Mourning of the *Chine*, why is there not such a disease?

Hypoferus. No truly, there is no such disease, for that which is called the mourning of the *Chine*, is none other thing than a plain and ranke Glanders, which very

ry few of our English *Ferriers* doe know how to cure, which hath its first source and origen from a cold which being let run long, commeth to bee a *Glanders*, which in time doth waste the *liver* of the *Horse*, whereby hee dieth; for if for your better understanding you shall bee pleased to open *Horses* which doe die of this disease, you shall evermore finde the *chine* and *pith* of the *Horse* to bee sound and whole, but the *liver* perished, and his *lungs* putrified, by reason whereof the *Horse* long before his death casteth forth of his *nose* much corrupt and stinking matter and filth; wherefore this mallady cannot in reason bee stiled the *mourning of the chine*, but meerely the *Glanders*; and for remedy thereof you shall have sundry excellent Receipts when wee shall come to handle this disease, and therefore till then I forbear to speake any more thereof.

Hypophilus. You question also another disease called a broken wind, why this is so generall a malady, as that no man but giveth it that name, what do you call it?

Hyposernus. Sir, as touching this infirmity, I say there is none such, for you must understand that this disease so vulgarly called a *broken wind*, is truly a shortnesse of breath, or attaint or defect in the *minde*, Pursivenesse, the *Asmat* or *Purtisick*, as *Arrists* do call it. Three causes there be of this infirmity, two wherof proceed from a cold formerly taken, and the third from another cause, as shall presently be demonstrated. The first is an exulceration of the *lungs*, which doth begin from a cold; the second by clinging and growing together of the *lights*, whose origen came also of cold; and the third is a dislocation of the *lungs*, and this last commeth by

meanes of some violent or sudden act or motion of the body, or by some fall whereby the *lungs* were become dislocated, displaced, or turned in the *body* of the *Horse*, every of which doe occasion *shortnesse of breath*, by reason the *lungs* have not power sufficient (being the bellowes of the body) to open, shut, and play at pleasure; and this is the cause why the *Horse* heaveth at the *ribs* and *flankes*, fetcheth his breath short and hot at the *nose*, wheefeth, and oft times reeleth when he is put to little that doth straine his *winde*, and therefore so long as he is kept in the *Stable* at drie and hard meats, he heaveth more than when he is at grasse, for if you doe wash his Provender in Ale or Beere, and sprinkle his Hay with water, you shall perceive him to heave the lesse: but when he runneth at grasse, he heaveth so little, as hardly to be seen, and the reason is, for that the *Horse* hath naturally a very moist body, the cold which hee hath taken doth so condense and make thicke those *humours* which before were thin, which doe (whilest they were *tenues*) passe most easily through the pores, but now they are become thick, viscous, and slimy, stopping the pores in such sort as hardly to be able to *breath*, but with great labour and no lesse paine, which doth provoke him to heave and lift, by reason that the *lungs* & *pores*, and *pipes* are so stopped and opprest, as not to be able to performe their function and naturall office, for which nature hath created them, and besides those stoppings do constrain him to cough and labour so extremely, as to endanger oft times the breaking of a *veine*, from whence ensue many more inconveniences then this one: neverthelesse you may have means to help his *winde*, but to recover him perfect and sound againe, I dare

dare not absolutely promise you, and if you be solicitous to understand more of this subject, to save both your owne labour and mine, if you will be pleased to peruse Master *Blundevile* and Master *Markham*, they are able to give you ample satisfaction.

S E C T. 15. C.

Hypophylus.

What meanes have you to helpe a Consump-
tion?

Hypoferus. Wee have two kindes of
Consumptions, the first is called the drye malady, the o-
ther the consumption of the *flesh*: as touching the first,
which commonly commeth at the first of a cold taken,
then it exulcerateth the *lungs*, which in the beginning
sendeth forth thin matter from the *nose*, but after when
it is grown more tough and viscos, it runneth no more,
but causeth a maceration and leanness through the
whole *body*, whereby he droopeth and pineth away, and
albeit he eateth and drinketh, yet it is without appe-
tite, his meat doing him but little good. The signes to
know it are these; his *belly* will bee gaunt, and he will
be Hide-bound, his *flesh* will consume almost to *skinn*
and *bones*, if you strike him on the *belly*, it will sound
hollow, his *haire* will stare, neither will he cast it in due
season, when other Horses which bee found will doe,
he will cough hollow and faintly: the Horse that is
troubled with this disease, well may he be kept for some
time alive, but long he cannot be, for the malady is in-
curable, if it be too long let runne, and therefore I leave
him to Dogs and Crowes in his languishing plight. The
other

Dry Malady.

other *consumption* is that of the *flesh*, which also beginneth of a cold formerly taken, which for want of remedy in time, occasioneth a generall dislike and maceration throughout the whole body: it commeth from immoderate labour or travell by violent heate and cold taken upon it: it commeth also by riding him into the water after a great heat given, and then set up presently negligently; as once it happened to a young *Nag* of good mettell and spirit, and of very great hope, the owner of which *Nag* delivered him to an *Ambler* to pace, who whilest hee had him in agitation, hearing Hounds abroad made in to them, who rode him hard all day to the death of the Hare; then comming home hot and all in a sweate, neare to the *Ambler*'s house was a River with a Water-Mill, where he set him up to the skirts of the Saddle, and then brought him into the Stable where was neither cloath, litter, or any other thing to keepe him warm, or wherwith to rub him, at which time he tooke so desperate a cold as never after to bee cured: that in short time after, he brought him to the *Gentleman* that did owne him, when upon his comming home the *Nag* drooped, forsooke his meat, and became very sick; the *Gentleman* desired mee to endeavour the best might for his recovery, for that he loved the *Nag* well. Ignorant of the cause of his Malady, went as I thought according to Art, I tooke *bloud* from sundry *veines*, I gave him a *Suppository*, and after certaine *Clysters*, which I assured me were most needfull for him; all that I did administer wrought very kindly and well, but yet nothing could provoke in him an appetite, or bee the meanes of any amendment, I then sayed him with frictions, and Cordials, but all was cast away,

Consumption

ayring

ayring or ought else would prevaile ; then I perswaded the *Gentleman* to turne him to grasse, it being in the middle of *May*, and a very seasonable time, for I found him to bee inwardly found, hee ranne at grasse about a moneth, but still grew weaker, and every day more meager then other, and at length hee grew to bee so much enfeebled by continuall languishing as that being downe, hee was not able to rise, but with helpe, in fine, shortly after the *Nagge* died ; then for my better experience I would needes have him opened, which being done ; a sounder *body* in a Horse could not bee scene, but I discovered the cause of the disease and death of this *Nagge* in his *skinne*, for it being taken from him, you might most evidently see the *Fat* which did lie next unto his *belly, brisket, ribs, and sides*, to bee so caked and hard, as that it, not being dissolved, the *Nagge* could never after enjoy himselfe, which caused him to wast and dwindle of his *flesh*, and languishing die, which so soone as I espied, I presently told the *Gentleman*, the owner of the *Nagge*, that the *Ambler* had given him that Infirmity (the *Nagge* being then very fat) and after in his heat put him into the water, which the owner examining found to bee most true, as well from the report of honest neighbours who lived adjacent to the *Ambler*, as (after some small pressure) from the ingenuous confession of the very *Ambler* himselfe. And this I thinke fit to bring you for an instance, to the end you may bee the more carefull in avoiding the like inconvenience, and bee the better able to judge of a Malady of this nature. But now as touching the best cure for a *Consumption* of the *flesh* (albeit there bee many) yet I can recommend but onely this one, which both Master

Blundevile, and Master *Markham* have recorded, which is this, *Viz.*

Consumption
of the flesh.

Take a Sheepshead with the wooll on, cleave it, wash it very cleane, and boile it in a gallon of faire water, untill the flesh come from the bones, then straine the liquor from the flesh, and put into the broath of refined loafe-Sugar halfe a pound, of Cinamon, conserve of Roses, conserve of Barberries, conserve of Cherries, of each three ounces, and give your Horse of this broath a quart, every morning fasting bloud warme, use this till foure or more Sheepsheads bee spent, and after every of these drinckes let him bee walked abroad, (if the weather bee warme and not windy) otherwise walke him in some barne, or warme place, and let him fast two or three houres after, and let him not drinke any cold water in fiftene daies after at the least; but let his drinke bee either sweet Mash, or white water, and for his Diet let that bee what himselfe best liketh, and that given by little at once and often; and by this meanes hee may recover both *flesh* and strength againe in reasonable time. * * Nevertheless when hee hath gotten *flesh*, depart with him so soone as may bee, lest upon any hard travell hee happen to relaps, as is most probable hee may. With this Receipt I have recovered three Horses, whereof one was a Horse of a high price.

Hypophylus. But tell mee I pray you, were it amisse (for this disease) to take bloud from him before you drench him?

Hypposerme. Yea, that it were Sir very much amisse, for so to doe, were certaine death; for in cases of Consumption you must take no bloud at all, but rather labour to cherish the bloud hee hath, for his debility and feebleness will bee such, as that hee consuming so much in

in his *flesh*, you must rather endeavour to procure his strength then any way to hinder the same, which the losse of *bloud* may most easily doe. Neither must you be too busie in administering unto him *Purges*, but *Cordials*, as *Diapente*, *Diatefferon*, *Duke powder*, *Cordiall powder*, and such like restoratives, also by giving him good meat, as good strengthening bread and heartning, well made and of purpose for him, if hee will eate bread, somerimes boyled Barley, and Oates, also boyled Beans, and such like hearty meat, as will restore him, and to give him sometimes about midday a quart of strong Ale or Beere, is very good, and will greatly comfort him. And thus keeping him warme, feeding him, and ordering him well, you may in time recover him again.
* * * And this is the best Counsell I can give you for this Infirmitie.

SECT. 16. C.

Hypophylus.

Now what say you to a Convulsion? How doe you cure that?

Hypoferus. A *Crampe* and *Convulsion* is one and the same Malady, which is a violent contracting or drawing together of *Sinewes* and *Veines*, and *Mu kles*, as well through the whole *Body*, as in any one member of the same; yet doth it not alwayes apprehend or seize the whole *body*, but takes one member or other, as, sometimes it laicth hold upon the *Eye*, sometimes upon the *Tongue*, the *Jawes*, *Lips*, *Legges*, &c. which albeit it cometh by severall meanes, yet principally it comes either through cold in the *body*, or else for want of *bloud*, or lastly

Convulsion.

lastly by overmuch *purging*. The signes to know this disease are most easie, for that *Horse* that is therewith troubled, will have that member (for the time the fit is upon it) so stiffe, that a man with the utmost of his strength is not able to stir the same, by reason that the *Sinewes* and *Muskles* will bee so much contracted as not possibly to bring the limb to its pristine state, but onely by rubbing and chafing, the limb or member with warme cloathes, and after the fit is over, it were very requisite to sweat him in the Stable in his cloaths, for two or three houres together, and if the malady bee in the lower parts, as in the *Legs*, then let that member which is taken bee wisped up with thumb-bands of Hay made wet first, and after when the member is thus wisped, to cast thereon cold water, and after this his sweating, let his whole *body* (but especially the member taken) bee annointed with the oyntment of *Acopum* before mentioned in the second booke *cap. 14. Sect. 1. A.* and to give him some of it inwardly with sweet Sack, or Muscadine: and thus have I recovered sundry *Horses* perplexed with this disease, giving him two or three drinks after of *Diapente* and then to keep him warme, and to continue him for some time with sweet mashes or white water, but when you come to give him cold water againe, let it bee with exercise and aydings after Sun rising, and before Sunne set, the Sunne shining, and when there is no winde, or other cold nipping weather. But if you have not of this *Acopum* in a readinesse, then apply this *bath* or Ointment to the grieved place or member, *viz.*

Take Pinpernell a good armefull, Primrose leaves, Camomile, Crow-foot, Mallowes, Fennell, Rosemary,

each six handfals, and fine upland Hay, cut and made about Midfomer, when the strength and heart of grasse is at the best, a good quantity, put all these into a Lead or Chalderon, and fill up the Chalderon with fair water, and so let it steep eight and forty hours, then boile it untill the hearbs be soft, and *bathe* the grieved *member* therewith foure daies together, morning and evening warmed, which done, apply some of these hearbs to the places or limbes grieved, and keepe them on with a thumb-band of Hay, wet in the said decoction, and every day about noone annoint the said visited *member* with Petroleum, and Nervall, and Oyle of Spike, mixed together, and keep him warme, give him good meat and mashes or white water, not only during the time of his cure, but a good time after, and let his ayings be temperate, and his exercise moderate, and take heed of washing him after labour, for that probably was the cause of his *Convulsion*. * * *Another*.

Take strong white Wine vineger, and Patch-grease, *alias* Peece-grease, of each like much, melt them upon a gentle fire, then with wheat flowre make it into a Poulteffe, and apply it to the grieved *member* good and warme, renewing it morning and evening, but before you doe administer this charge (by holding a barre of iron, or a chafing dish of coales neere) let him be annointed with Petroleum, Nervall, and Patch-grease, and Oyle of Spike, of each like much) very well, and after binde on the charge all over the grieved place, dresse him thus morning and evening, and give him moderate exercise and ayings, and let him have mashes and white water to drink, and keep him warm. This is very good. * * *Another*.

First rake him, then give him the Clyster prescribed in booke 2. chap. 11. Sect. 8. Clyster 4. then let two men (on either side of the horse one) rub him well with soft cloaths all his *body* and *limbs* over, especially the diseased *limb*, then cloath him up warm, and let him stand upon the trench foure or five hours, to the end the Clyster may worke the more kindly, after give him meate and white water, and so feed him for that day. But I must tell you, that so soone as you have given him this Clyster, and before his friction, give him this drinke whereby to cleanse his *body*, viz.

Take of white wine one pinte, Aloes halfe an ounce, Agarick halfe an ounce, all beaten very small, and infused in the Wine, putting thereto of the purest clarified Hogs greafe one spoonfull, or for want thereof (and which is much better) of sweet butter six ounces, and give him this bloud-warme. The next day prepare in a readinesse this Unguent.

Take of strong Ale two quarts, and of blacke Sope two pound, boile them together till they looke blacke like Tarre, and herewith annoint, rub, and chafe him all over that the Unguent may sink in: that done, cloath him up, and stufte him warme that he may sweat well, but stufte *head*, *neck*, and *breast* well, let him sweat thus two houres, then coole him by degrees, taking now a little from him, then a little, till he be brought to a good temper againe, then keep him so, and about one of the clock at afternoone, give him a warme mash, or white water, and then some Hay, and an houre after that Provender. Let not this drinke bee given him above once during his whole Cure, but his *Clysters*, *Smeats*, and *Frictions*, till hee bee well; yet the *Clysters* not every day

day neither, and let his drinke bee white water, where-
 in Mallowes have been boiled, unlesse sometimes you
 give him wherewith to comfort him a sweete Mash,
 but if hee will not drinke his white water boiled with
 Mallowes, then let him have it without, and let his food
 bee that which is sweet and very good. This did I ne-
 ver trie, but two severall *Ferriers* who lived more then
 100 miles distant the one from the other, gave mee this
 Receipt *Verbatim*, without scarce altring one word, and
 they both protested unto mee they have cured sundry
Horses which have been forely perplexed with this Di-
 sease.

Hypophylus. *What meane you by moderate and tempe-
 rate aiering of a Horse?*

Hypoferus. I doe meane by moderate aiering, that hee Aiering,
 bee not forth in aiering too long, and by temperate
 aiering, that a sick *Horse* if there bee cause why hee
 should bee aiered, it bee not done too late in the Eve-
 ning, nor too early in the Morning, for that such kind of
 aierings will take too much from a *Horse* that is feeble
 or sick, but in such cases, let him bee walked to his aier-
 ings in a warme Evening, an hour before sunne-set at
 least, and in a Morning an hour after the sunne is up,
 especially if the winde bee not too high, or blow too
 cold, and that the sunne shine warme: For by aiering
 before sunne-rising, and after sunne-set (like as is to be
 used with running and hunting *Horses*) will make a fat
 strong *Horse* both so poore and leane, as not to have a
 Crow of *flesh* on his back, as the Proverbe is, and so
 feeble as not to bee able to arise being laied, and there-
 fore give not such kinde of aierings to a *Horse* that is in-
 firme; but those which I doe tearme the temperate
 aierings,

airings, will greatly comfort the spirits of your *Horse*, give him a very good appetite to his meate, and increase his *flesh* and good liking, whereas the late airings will bee (as I said before) very noxious to sick, diseased, or leane *Horses*.

S E C T. 17. C.

Hypophylus.

How doe you helpe a *Horse* that groweth costive or bel-ly-bound?

Hypoferus. The nature of this disease is such, as that the *Horse* that is therewith troubled, cannot discharge himselfe but with great paine and trouble, his ordure coming from him both very dry and hard. *Horses* that are kept too much to hard, dry, and hot meates, are most incident to this malady; sometimes it commeth by eating too much Provender, especially Beanes, Pease, Tares, or Wheat, which albeit these Graines bee more hearty then any other, yet they siccate and dry up the moisture, because they beget more heat and costivenesse in the body, then other Graines doe, yea and winde too, and bad humours causing obstructions; and sometimes this costivenesse commeth to a *Horse* by reason hee hath been kept to too spare a diet, as is usually seen in *Horses* in diet; for this hot and dry food doth suck up (like to a sponge) the *flegmatick* moisture of the body, giving way thereby that *choller* is become the more predominant, so that the meate hee eateth cannot bee so well digested. This is a disease very perilous, and the origine of many maladies; and it is easily knowne by its symptomes. And you may cure him

him after this manner, *Viz.*

Take the decoction of Mallowes one quart, Sallet Oyle halfe a pint, or fresh Butter halfe a pound, *Benedicte laxative*, one ounce, give him this bloud-warme clister-wife, and then clap his *taile* to his *tuell*, and so cause him to keep it halfe an houre at least, being walcked up and down, then set him up warme, and it will worke, whereby hee will empty himselfe, and in due time give him a sweet mash, and after Hay, and so keep him to mashcs or white water two or three daies, but withall faile not to rake him before you administer your Clyster. * * This is a most excellent Receipt which you shall finde in *lib. 2. cap. 6. Sect. 7. Clyster i. C. * ** There be many other good *Suppositories*, and *Clysters*, which I have already and will hereafter set you down, which be very soveraign for this malady.

Collivence
or belly bound.

S E C T. 18. C.

Hyppophilus.

W *What disease is that wee call the Crowne-scab?*

Hypposerus. This sorance is a scab or crust which groweth upon the cronet or top of the *hoofe*, next unto the *hayre*; it is a filthy stinking and cankerous disease, and not onely troublesome, but painfull to the beast, and it commeth commonly in the winter, whilst the Horse is in the Stable, like as doth the *Scratches*, and it is ingendred first by reason the *Horse* from a *colic* till he came to be handled, was for the most part kept in moist, wet, and cold grounds; for no Horses are inclinable unto this disease, but those that are bred up

Crowne scab,

in such like grounds. The signes to know this malady is, that the *hayre* will stare about the *coronet*, and become thin and brisly. The way to cure the same is, First to wash and bath the place well so farre as the Scab or sorance goeth, which is commonly round about the *coronet*, then shave or clip away the *haire* close, then

Take Turpentine, tryed Hogs greafe, and Honey, of each like much, a little of the powder of Bolearmoniack, the yolks of two Egges, with as much wheat flowre as will thicken it by working it to a Salve, and apply this plaister-wise, with a linnen cloath to the sorance, renewing it every day once till it be whole, but let him not come into any wet during his cure. * * This is a very good one. *Another.*

Take old chamber-ly, and set it upon the fire, and as the scum ariseth, take it off, then put to it of white salt as much as will suffice, and as the scum ariseth the second time, take it away; with this liquor wash and bath the sorance three or foure times a day till it be whole. * * Another very good which I have often used.

Take soft Sope, tryed Hogs greafe, of each halfe a pound, Bolearmoniack in fine powder so much as will suffice, Turpentine foure ounces, make all these into one body, and so plaister-wise apply it to the place, binding it on with a clout that it come not off, renewing it daily till it doe leave running, then wash and bathe it in Vineger warmed, till the sorance bee cleane dried up. * *

S E C T.

SECT. 19. C.

Hyppophylus.

How doe you take away a Curbe?

Hypposerus. This is a swelling a little beneath the *Elbow* of the *Hough* upon the great *Sinen* behind, and above the top of the *horne*, which caused the Horse to halt, especially when he beginneth to bee hot, for by rest it paineth him the lesse: it commeth either by a strain, or by carrying some heavy burthen, or else he taketh it hereditarily from his *Sire* or *Dam*. The signes to know it is, by the long swelling in the place before mentioned. The cure is,

First, shave away the haire, then with an Inele or Curb.
Fillering bind the *Hough* streight above the joint, then with a small sticke beat, rub, and chafe the *Curb*, like as you use to doe in the cure of the *Splent*, then with a *Elcane* or *Knife* pierce the skin through in two or three places, and so with your *Thumb* thrust forth, and crush out the corrupt bloud, and after convey so deepe as you can get into every hole the bignesse of two barley cornes of *Arsnick*, and so having bound up the place, let it so remaine by the space of foure and twenty houres, then open the place and annoint it every day once with molten *Butter*, till it bee whole. * *

Another.

Take *Wine Lees* one pint, a porrenger full of wheat-flowre, of *Comin* in fine powder halfe an ounce, mixe all these well together, and being made warme upon the fire, charge the place therewith, renewing it every day once, by the space of three or foure daies together,

and when you doe perceive the swelling to bee almost gone, then draw it with your hot Iron, and charge the burning with Pitch and Rosin molten together, which must be applyed warme, to the end, the charge may stick on the better, and then presently clap on Flockes, and let it so rest till of it selfe it fall away, and let him come in no wet or water by the space of twelve or foureteene daies after, and hee will bee perfectly cured.

* * *Another.*

Take a Bar of Iron, heat it red hot, and hold it neare to the place till it become warm, then with your Fleam prick six or seven holes through the *Skinne*, and annoint the Sorance with Nervell, then take of Salt a Spoonfull, and of Verdegrease a penny weight in fine powder, with the white of an Egge, let these be well incorporated together, then take a little Flax or Hurds, and wet it in this medicine, and bind it to the place, renewing it every day once, and in short time it wilbe perfectly cured.

* * All these Receipts I have used, and I have found them to be right good.



CHAP. VII.

SECT. I. D.

Hyppophilus.

W *Ell now that wee have made an end of this Chapter, let us proceed to another: Tell mee I pray you, how may a Dangerous Sicknesse come to a Horse?*

Hypposerus. Sir, that which you call *Dangerous*

vous Sicknesse is of divers natures proceeding, from sundry causes, having every one its distinct symptoms, and therefore do require severall remedies; wherefore that you may the better know how and when any sicknesse commeth, observe I pray but these foure principles following, and you shall never erre. *viz.*

Dangerous
sicknesse how
it commeth.

First, that all sicknesse commeth either by heats in over violent exercise, as when the Horse (*v. g.*) hath his grease molten, the *heart* overcharged, the *vitall blood* forced from the inward parts, and the large *Pores* and *Orifices* of the *heart* so obstructed, and stopped, that the *spirits* cannot returne back to their proper places, so as the *Organs* of the *body* cannot rejoyce, but by this means the *body* must of necessity languish, founder and mortifie.

1.

Secondly, dangerous sicknesse commeth also by colds, as by indiscreet, or negligent keeping, as well before as after long and violent exercise, and then is the *head* perplexed, the *eyes* dulled, and pained, the rootes of the *tongue* inflamed and swelled, the *lungs* with rhumes tickled and offended, occasioning siron, and laborious coughing, and the *Nostrils* often distilling and powring forth filthy and corrupt matter.

2.

Thirdly, dangerous sicknesse commeth also by surfeit of food, either by eating too much, or too little of what is good, or also of that which is not wholesome, so as the *stomack* killeth, or at least debilitateth the *Stomacke*, oppresseth the *Heart*, and sendeth up those evill fumes into the *Head*, by which are ingendred the *Stavers*, *Frenzies*, and other mortall diseases; the second putrifies the *blood*, and converts all its nutriment into corruption, from whence proceeds the *Yellowes*, *Farcin*, *Feavers*, *Mainges*, and other such like pestilent, le-

3.

prou and loathsome diseases, which suffocating the heart, and clogging the Stomacke, dilates and spreads it selfe universally over the whole body, leaving no member free, and confoundeth every faculty, and member thereof.

Fourthly and lastly, dangerous sicknesse come also by accident, as when a Horse (v. g.) receiveth some deep or perilous wound or hurt, either in his body, or elsewhere in some vitall or dangerous part, by means whereof nature is so far offended, as that incontinently a generall sicknesse seizeth upon the Horse, which (not in opportune time prevented) death suddenly ensueth; and these infirmities are called by the more expert Ferriers, *Accidentall Feavers*: for if you bee pleased to observe well, you shall finde the Horse sometimes trembling, sometimes sweating, sometimes cold, sometimes burning, but never in good temper. And thus much briefly of these foure points or grounds, which be the occasion of most dangerous sicknesses *Accidentall*.

Hypophilus, what means hath a man to know the signes, whereby to distinguish these severall sicknesses the one from the other?

Hypoferus. Very easily Sir, for if sicknesse do proceed from the first of these four principles, to wit, from heats, then are the signes these, viz. The heavinesse of his countenance, swelling of his limbs, especially of his hinder legs, scowring and loosenesse of his body, in the beginning of sickness short, and hot breath, a loathing and forsaking of meat, &c.

If from the second, viz. cold, then the signes are, a dejected countenance, dulnesse or sleepinesse of the eyes, Puffils or hard Knots under the Chaule, yea and many times

Dangerous
sickness how
to know.

times inflamed Kernels and swellings so high as to the very roots of the *eares*, a rotten or moist inward hollow cough, he many times chewing betwixt his teeth, some loose, filthy, and flegmatick matter, immediately after his coughing, which in some cases is not an evill signe, by reason that thereby the cold rotterth and goeth away; whereas on the contrary side for a *Horse* to cough cleare and drie, doth demonstrate a drie cough, which hath long time lurked in his *body*, sorely festring and tormenting him inwardly, which is very difficile to cure, but at length discovers it selfe by reason of the *creatures* languishing and generall falling away of his *flesh*; for his *belly* will be shrunk up, and when he drinketh much of the same, water will issue forth of his *nose*, his *eyes* will be either watry, or matterative, and run continually through paine which he hath in his *head*, procured by meanes of his cold, and his *haire* will bee rough and staring, &c.

From the third, to wit, from surfet by meat, either naturall or unnaturall; the signes be these, a dulnesse of the *head*, *eyes*, and *countenance*, yea and that in such a violent manner, so as the *Horse* will bee hardly able to lift up his *head* from the manger, a dull and dead *eye*, and sunk into his *head*, his *eares* prickt upright, and the tops of them cold, as also his upper *lips* and his *sheath*, his pace reeling and staggering, and (if the disease bee far gone) he will bee of a frantick and mad comportment, as by biting and gnawing the Rack and Manger, or whomsoever shall come within his reach, and sometimes by biting of himselfe, and by beating his *head* against the wall and floore, and other such frantick postures and passions: but if the malady bee not yet gotten into the *braine*, or
doe

doe not occupy that place; but that it hath settled it selfe more intrinsically in the *body* or *heart*, then you shall perceiue by the whites of the *eyes*, the *lips* and *tongue*, this Disease to bee the plaine *Yellowes*, and if the Disease bee farre gone, then will the *Yellowes* be dispersed all over the whole *skinne*, and the *Horse* sweat in the morning when first you come to him, as if he had bene sorely ridden, or had an *Ardick Feaver*, and have a desire rather to bee lying then to stand, and when hee standeth, it will bee with his *fore-legges* stradling the one from the other, and hee will also have a looseness or scowring, especially if the *Horse* hath taken his surfeit by eating too many *Oates*, or other *Provender*, and by drinking suddenly after, which you shal the better know, because the *Horse* will in his *Ordure* void some of his *Oates* or other *Graine* whole, as not being digested, by reason that the cold water so suddainely taken, upon his over-hasty eating (not being all chewed) will coole his *stomack*, and make him to swell; besides the *Horse* will have a generall loathing and forsaking of his meat, which is likewise the common symptome of every kinde of surfeit, and almost every degree of sickness.

4.

The fourth and last ground or principle is, that if his infirmity and sickness doe proceede from *accidental* meanes, then are the signes, a perplexed and troubled *body*, sometimes sweating at the roots of his *eares*, in the *flankes*, and behinde the *shoulders*, against the *heart*, sometimes hee will bee taken with a trembling all his *body* over, and sometimes with a glowing and burning in his *vitall parts*, as in the *temples* of his *head*, against his *heart*, on the inside of his *fore-legges*, next to the *body*, and on the

the inside of the *hinder-legges*, also his mouth will bee dry and hot, his *tongue* will bee subject to bee enflamed and furred; *in fine*, hee will have a loathing and averfion from meat; but onely that hee must eate, and a great draught and thirst, and a great longing to drinke cold water, and when hee hath drunke what him liketh, yet will hee neverthelesse desire to keepe his mouth continually in the water. Many other signes there bee, whereby a man who is any thing at all skillfull and cautelous, may by observing, discover when his *Horse* falleth into any infirmity and sicknesse, as when you do perceive that his countenance and postures do alter from their usuall customes, then bee you well assured, your *Horse* doth alter and decay in his health. Also you must observe his feeding, and how hee doth eate, as whether with a good *appetite*, or with a weake *stomack*, the first being good, the second unkindly and unhealthy, as also how hee doth discharge or empty himselfe, and how his *urine* and the colour of his *dung* or *ordure* doe alter, which if his *dung* or *excrements* bee pale, and full of grains, then is it good, but if blackish and cusky (according as I have before in its due place handled) then bee you confident, hee hath much heat and drienesse in his *body*, by which meanes probably ensueth great and dangerous sicknesse; very many other signes of sicknesse there are, as the not casting or shedding of his haire, in its due and proper season, *hide-bound*, *costivenes*, *laxativenes*, the clinging up of his *belly* to the *flankes*, continuall dislike, drowfinesse, dulnesse and heavinesse, when hee hath wanted due ordering and feeding, &c. all which symptoms are so well knowne to every man, as that they need not bee handled further in this place.

Hypophylus. But now *Hypoferus*, since you have thus farre discoursed, what are the causes and signes of dangerous sicknesse, I would gladly you would shew mee how I may either prevent sicknesse before it commeth, or cure the same at first appearance?

I.

Dangerous
sicknesse how
to prevent.

Hypoferus. Sir, in this case two things are principally and diligently to be considered. The first is to prevent sicknesse before it shall approach, whereby it shall not offend at all, and the second is, to take it at the first appearance, and so to prevent and hinder it, whereby to prevent the danger thereof. As touching the first, the best way will be three or foure daies before you put forth your *Horse* to grasse, to take blood from him, and the next day to give him the drinke of *Diapente*, halfe an ounce, and a pinte and a halfe of sweet Sack, which you shall finde mentioned in *lib. 2. Sect. sequent.* and so by degrees to abate his cloths if hee have had any, and it is also very good that when you doe take blood from him, you doe receive it in a *bason* or *bowle*, and therewith annoint his *back*, *loines*, *fillets*, *breast*, and all such like places about him with the same blood, for it is most wholesome, and doth comfort the *body* very much, cleanseth the *skinn*, and begetteth a generall rejoycing throughout all the *vital parts* of the *Horse*. But if you have no intent to put him forth to grasse, and yet would prevent inward sicknesse, then faile not (when you have best meanes) to give him rest, take no blood from him at all, (unless you may justly suspect his blood not to be very good) but give him onely a drinke of *Diapente* or *Diateseron*, for either of these are the greatest and best refiners and purifiers of the blood of any thing can be administred, and doe cause the *Horse* to avoid all yellow

low cholericke matter, and all evill indigested humours, which may any way putrifie, inflame, or corrupt the blood. And observe moreover, that in administering of these drinks, if Sack or Muscadine be not at hand to be had, that then in the place of a pint and a half of either of these (which is the proportion I limit to a Horse of a strong, able, and corpulent body, but to a small or weak Horse one pinte) you doe take of good Ale or Beere, one quart, and the same quantitie of *Diapente* or *Diatefferon* formerly prescribed: and if the Ale or Beere be made warme upon the fire, it will be the better. And thus much as touching the first point, to wit, the prevention of sicknesse before it come; that it may not offend your Horse at all. Now I come to the second point, viz.

To take sicknesse at its first appearance, whereby to send it packing before it hath taken deepe roote in the body of the Horse, so that it shall never come to danger of life or limb, then thus in a few words. You must bee very cautelous and vigilant in observing your Horse well, and to prie into him so narrowly, as to discover the least symprome of sicknesse, that may bee able to peepe out its head, which so soon as you shall descric, then presently (if need shall require) let him bleed, and three severall mornings together, give him the drinke of *Diapente*, and let him be kept warm, well rubbed, and have Mashes or white water during that time, and some daies after, which will bee a very good meanes for him to remain in perfect health, strength, and good estate of body; But if this *Diapente* or *Diatefferon* bee not to bee had on a sudden, then

Take Selendine halfe a handfull, as well the roots as

2.

Dangerous
Sicknesse how
to cure.

the leaves, well washed and picked, Wormewood and Rue of each halfe a handfull, boile all these in strong Ale or Beere, from a pottle to a quart, and then strain it wel, & put into the liquor of sweet Butter half a pound, and of ordinary Treacle two spoonfuls, and so give it him bloud warme. * * And this is most effectuell to the ends before recited.

S E C T. 2. D:

Hypophylus.

You speak very much of Diapente, giving it very great commendations, I pray how doe you make the same? *Hypoferm.* The Receipt of Diapente doth merit many more *Encomiums* than I am able to give it, for that it is so precious and soveraigne a Powder for *Horses*, and it is compounded of five severall simples, if it bee rightly made. It is (I say) the most soveraigne thing which can be given to a *Horse* by way of drench, wherby to cure him of very many inward diseases. It is good against all infectious maladies, as Feavers of what nature soever, all sorts of Pestilences, or contagious colds, Coughs, wet or drie, Glanders, Surteits, inflammations in the *bloud* or *liver*, Frenzies, Yellowes, it purifieth, refresheth, and purgeth the *bloud* from all infection and corruption, it easeth the overflowing of the *gall*, and the working of the *spleene*, and in a word, it cureth whatsoever diseases the *body* of the *Horse* may bee inwardly inclined unto; and it is thus made, *viz.*

Take Aristolochia-Rotunda, Gentiana, Baccalani, Myrrha, Eboraci, of each like much, let these bee first pounded severally and finely searced, and after weigh-

ed, so as the quantities may bee just and even, not any one lesse, or more than another, and after so well mixed as may be possibly, and so put into a Gally pot pressed as hard as may be done, and after so close stopped, as that no aire can get into it; and thus you must make it, & reserve it for your use. This must be administred to a *Horse* in *Muskadine*, if you drench him for a cold or *Glanders*. If for other maladies, then in sweet *Sack*, and the quantitie must bee a pinte and a halfe: but if *Sacke* or *Muskadine* be not to be had, then give it in strong *Ale* or *Beere*, and the quantitie of this powder of *Diapente* must bee two or three spoonefulls, unlesse to a small, sicke, or feeble *Horse*, then the lesse quantitie, according as in your own judgement and reason you shall thinke to be most requisite. * * And thus is this so excellent powder of *Diapente* made, and such are its vertues.

S E C T. 3. D.

Hypophylus.

How doe you make also your *Diatefferon*?

Hypoferus. This confession I have heard some call *Horse-Mithridate*, and some *Horse-Treacle*, by reason of the inward vertue thereof, whereby to expell all poysonous and contagious annoiances, and to drive them and all manner of sicknesse from the *heart*. And thus it is made, viz.

Take first of the powder of *Diapente* two ounces, and put it into a cleane stone *Morter*, that is not over-great, and put thereto of life or clarified *Hony* the like quantity, let the *morter* be made hot against the fire; before

you doe put in your powder or honey, and then with a pestell of wood worke it, till it come to a very *Treacle*, which when you shall finde to bee sufficiently comminuted, then take it forth, and put it into a cleane gally-pot or glasse, and so keepe it very close stopped for your use, and when you have occasion to make use of it,

Take of this *Confection* halfe an ounce, and dissolve it in Muskadine or sweete Sack a pint and a halfe, and so give it your *Horse* blood-warme, and as occasion is preferred, adde to it of *London Treacle* one ounce. * * This *Diatefferon* is a *Confection* so soveraigne, being as I said before, an *Antidote* against all infectious diseases, it is a present cure for all sorts of Feavers, or any other desperate or dangerous sicknesse, taking first blood from the *Horse* if there be cause.

S E C T. 4. D.

Hypophylus.

IS there nothing good besides these in case of desperate and dangerous sicknesse, supposing that neither *Diapente* or *Diatefferon* can be had?

Hypoferus. Yea Sir, if neither of these may be gotten, and that you are fearfull of the life of your *Horse*, then do I counsell you thus.

Desperate and dangerous sicknesse.

Take of the best *Tarre* two ounces, of *Honey* one ounce, black *Sope* two drams, and bay-Salt a handfull, incorporate all these well together, then fill two eggshells, the crownes onely being broken, so as you may get forth the meat, and fill them up againe with this medicine, and put them downe his throat, and walke or

or ride him gently up and downe a quarter of an houre
or more warme cloathed, that done, set him up warm,
and litter him well, and let his drinke bee either Ma-
shes or white water for foure or five daies after, but let
him fast three houres after his medicine, and let his Hay
and Provender bee sweete and good. * * This I have
often experimented.

SECT. 5. D.

Hypophylus.

I Should thinke Hypposerus, that for change, Bread were
good to bee given sometimes to a Horse; I pray what is
your opinion thereof?

Hypposerus. If you meane such ordinary *Horse-bread*,
which our common Bakers used to make for *Horses*,
(which is now long since out of date and use) I say it
cannot bee good for a *Horse*, by reason it was ill made,
and the Materialls whereof it was compounded, nour-
ish very little, nay it hurterth a *Horse* much more then
it can doe him good, for it breedeth evill *humours*, and
worfe *bloud* in his *body*, it being made of bran and chi-
sell for the most part with a little course Rye-meale, to
make it stick together, and so made up and kneaded
with cold water, and after the outside of the Loaves or
Roules are rowled in ground or rather bruised pease,
which can in no case bee good or wholesome. But if
you have a desire to give your *Horse* bread, whereby hee
may the better endure labour, either in his travell or
long journies, or in Tilting, Hunting, or otherwise, then
if you please to give him this bread which I doe heere
prescribe you, it will give him strength of *body*, bee very
much

much helpfull to his *wisde*, keepe him from fainting in his labour and exercise, be it never so sore.

Horse-bread.

1.

Take Wheat meale, Oate meale, and Beanes, all ground very small, of each one peck, Anniseedes foure ounces, Gentiana, and Fenugrick, of each one ounce, Licoris two ounces, let all these bee finely powdred and searced, and adde the whites and yolkes of twenty new laid Egges, well beaten together, and put to the other ingredients, and so much strong Ale as will knead it up, then make your Loaves like to *Horse-bread*, but not too thick, and let them bee well baked, but not burned; let not this bread bee given to your *Horse* too new, and when you are do give it to him, let it be five or six mornings together without any Provender; and thus you shall have him well *winded*, lusty, strong, hardy, and healthy, whereby to bee able to hold out and retaine his mettle to the last. Also when hee is to bee used or employed.

2.

Take a thin linnen cloath, and put therein of white Sugar Candy one ounce, and as much powder of Anniseeds, sew up this to the Bit or Snaffle in a fine linnen cloath, when you are to take his back, first dipped in White or Claret Wine, and so let him bee exercised, or travelled with this in his *mouth*; this giveth moisture to his *mouth* and *stomack*, it expelleth inward heat, and faintnesse from his *body* and *heart*, and causeth him to forget his labour and travell, for it doth revive his *vital spirits*. * * Another kinde of bread I will give you not much unlike the former, but somewhat better and a greater cooler,

Take Wheat meale one peck, Rie meale, Beanes, and Oate meale, both ground very small, of each halfe

a peck, Anniseeds, Licoris, of each one ounce, and white Sugar Candy foure ounces, all in fine powder, the yolkes and whites of twenty Egges well beaten, and so much white Wine as will knead it into a paste, make this into great loaves, bake them well, and after they bee two or three dayes old, let him eate of this bread, but chip away the outside. * *

Hypophylus. *What is the reason you chuse of these grains, meale rather then flower, wherewith you doe make your bread?*

Hypoferus. Sir, I preferre Meale farre before Flower, by reason Flower is much more hot and binding, and therefore the courser the bread is, the better it is for the Horse, and the more wholesome; and the reason why I doe put Rie into my latter bread, is, because Rie is a loosener, and a cooler, and therefore it will make him the more soluble.

SECT. 6. D.

Hypophilus.

What is good to dissolve and mollifie Tumors and hard swellings in the Legges, or other parts and members of the Horse?

Hypoferus. Tumors and swellings sometimes comes by heats gotten with over hard riding, whereby the creature being over much heat, the greafe falleth down, and setting in the Legges and other parts, doe grow drie and hard, this breedeth Splents, Spavens, Curbes, Ring-bones, and the like sorances, which in truth are none other things then proper Tumors; besides it doth occasi- on other Knots and Swellings, which are to bee cured after this maner, *Viz.*

Dissolve Tu-
mors.

Take of the roots of Mallows, or of Holliocks of each two ounces, of Linseed, and of Fenugrick, of each six ounces, of the fat or grease of Hennes or Capons, or for want thereof, of Neatsfoot Oile, a wine quart, of Wax six ounces, steep the rootes and seeds being bruised, in a pottle of white Wine, when it is scalding hot, for three daies and three nights, and the fourth day boile them in the same liquor, and adde thereto when you begin to fet it upon the fire, your grease and waxe, putting also thereunto of Rosin three ounces, then let all these boile together a good while, and at the taking it from the fire, put thereinto of Venice Turpentine two ounces, and so stir them together, and thus it is made fitting for your use, which being well reserved, will dissolve all hard swellings and *Tumours*, the Sorances being daily annointed therewith. * * This I have by much practice found to be very good. *Another.*

Take white Lilly roots, Hemlock, Mallows, Bears foote, Scabeous, Cuccoe-pits, of each one handfull, chop them small, and infuse them for twelve dayes together in white-wine, and Sallet Oile, of each one pint, then take wax foure ounces, and Beane-flowre, twelve spoonfulls, and so boile it, and after strain it, and bring it to an Unguent, and therewith annoint the *Tumors* and swelled parts, which being done, apply this Plaister to the places. *Another.*

Take Darnell and red Docks, of each two handfulls, bruise them, and then boile them in Wine, and Sallet Oile, of each one pint, and Beane Flowre foure Spoonfulls, and put thereto of Asses or Oxes dung, so much as will suffice, when it is boiled to a Poulteffe, apply it *Plaister-wise* and use this every day once till it be well. * * This

* * This is also very good. *Another.*

Take Linseed and pound it in a Morter, and of Fenu-grick in powder, of each foure ounces, Pitch and Rosin of each three ounces, Damask Rose leaves dried, two ounces, Pitch of *Greece* six ounces, boile all these together, and when you are ready to take it from the fire, adde thereto of Turpentine two ounces, Hony six ounces, and Sallet Oile so much as will suffice, and thus applying this Salve Plaister wise to the place, it will mollifie any hard substance. * * This I have often tryed, and have found it to be very good.

S E C T. 7. D.

Hypophilus.

But Hypposerus, is there any Cure for a sick Horse, whose infirmity is so desperate, and he so far spent, as to be generally judged to be almost at the point of death?

Hypposerus. Truly Sir, both my Master and my selfe have done such cures upon *Horses* which have beene so desperately sick as you speake of; insomuch as the beholders have pronounced sentence of death upon them, and the owners would have been well content to have been satisfied, and well appayed with their skins and shooes, and I will shew you what our cure is.

First open the neck vein, and let him bleed well, then two hours after his bleeding,

Take of *Diatefferon* half an ounce, and give it him bloud warme in Muskadine a pinte, or Sack, for want therof, or else if they bee not on the sudden to be gotten, then take good Ale or Beere, with the said quantitie of *Diatefferon*, then having given it, walke him halfe an

Desperate
sicknesse.

houre (if hee bee able) in the warme Sunne, or if there
 bee not Sunne-shine, then in some warme Stable; or
 Barne, then set him up warme cloathed, and littered,
 and let him bee rubbed all over, as *Head, Pole, Neck,* and
Legges, and especially twixt the *Eares,* for that greatly
 easeth the paine in the *Head,* by reason it dissolveth and
 disperseth the *humours*; at noone unbridle him, and of-
 fer him a little sweet Hay, sprinkled with water, which
 if hee shall refuse to eat, (as 'tis likely hee will) then
 offer him so much bread as the quantity of a penny
 loafe, and let him eat it all if hee will, but if hee doe
 refuse to eat thereof also, then give him one gallon of
 the strongest Ale-wort you can get of the first runnings
 so soone as it is mashed, but let it not bee over hot, and
 before barme bee put unto it, give him this I say bloud-
 warme, but if that cannot bee gotten, then provide him
 in a readinesse against the same houre, a sweet Mash,
 which when hee hath taken, fume his head with
 Olibanum, Storax, and Benjamin, and then let him bee
 rubbed againe as before, and see him warme kept as is
 usuall for sick *Horses* in *Physick*, and thus doe for three
 dayes together in all points (*bloud-letting* excepted) for
 that must bee once onely (unlesse extraordinary cause
 doe require the same) and assure your selfe your *Horse*
 will mend dayly, and recover his health and strength in
 short time, and at three daies end, give him no more
 Mashes, but in their stead, let him have white water
 onely: If by meanes of this sicknesse hee hath any
 Pustills or inflammations risen under his *chaule*, then clip
 away the *haire*, and apply such things thereunto, as may
 ripen them and bring them to a head; and after break
 them with Shoemakers wax, or other such like good
 things,

things, and so let them run and heale at pleasure. Also if you doe finde your *Horse* to be costive by meanes of his sicknesse, as commonly *Horses* will be after Physick, then first rake him, and finding his dung to be hot, dry, and hard, give him the Suppository of a candle, shewed you in *cap. 18. Sect. 27. Suppos. 1.* of this second Booke. And this is the best *Suppository* can be given him in a case of this nature. * * But if contrariwise you finde him to have a strong and violent lax, or scowring upon him, whereby he purgeth overmuch, and so continueth, then be you assured, that he hath something in his *body* wherewith nature is offended, which you must labour to remove, and for remedy thereof,

Take of new milke one quart, and put to it of Beane flowre two spoonfulls, and as much of the powder of Bolearmoniack searced, boile these untill the milke thicken, and so bloud warme give it your *Horse*, and in a morning or two fasting with a horne, and it will stay his loosnesse. * * But if this doe not, then shall you

Take of red Wine one pinte, or Tinto, the like quantity, and put into it of Bursa-Pastoris, one handfull, and of Tanners Barke in fine powder, halfe a handfull, the outside being first taken way, then boile it till the herb do begin to be soft, then straine it, and put thereto of Cinamon powdred two spoonfulls, and so give it him, bloud warme one or two mornings, and this will infallibly stay his flux: and if you cannot get *Diapente* or *Diatesseron*, then give him this drinke.

Take of *Dragon-water* one pinte, *London-Treacle* one ounce, warme it till the Treacle bee dissolved, and so give it him bloud warme; give him this drinke three mornings

mornings together, and for his drinke otherwise, let him have sweet Mashes three mornings onely, and after till he be well recovered, let him have no cold water by any meanes, but onely white water, and through Gods assistance he will be soone restored to his former health.

* * These things I have often practised to good purpose.

S E C T. 8. D.

Hypophilus.

What is to be done to a Horse that droopeth, pineth, or languisheth?

Hyposferus. This disease commeth by cold taken, or by some unnaturall surfeit, by reason of over-hard riding, or by being washed after an extreme heate; the signes to know it, is, hee will feed, but with no appetite, neither will the meat hee eateth, digest well with him; for, give him Oates and you shall find many of them come forth whole in his ordure, besides, hee will be lanke in the belly and flankes, and his flesh will fall away. The cure for such a malady, is first to

Drooping.

Take blood from him as well in the neck as *spurre-veins*, for that the blood is most corrupt and naught, the next rake him, and administer unto him the *Clister* prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap. 6.* and *Sett. 7. Clift. 2. C.* the next day after hee hath taken his *Clister*, give him this drinke.

Take of new milke warmed as much as will suffice, the yolkes of three new laid Egges, of Pepper, made into very fine powder, a halfe penny-worth of Anniseeds, Myrra, Bay-berries, Turmarick powdred also, of each half a dram, of ordinary Treacle one penny-worth and a little Saffron powdred, pound all the simples that are

are to bee pounded, every one by it selfe, and mix them well with the residue, and them infuse in the milke a whole night, and the next morning give it to the *Horse* bloud warme, and after order him as you are accustomed to doe to sick *Horses* in *Physick*, but let him have this drinke five mornings together, and keepe him to Mash-es or white water, and if during that time you doe not finde his appetite to come unto him better then before, then let him rest foure daies, and at foure daies end give him this drinke, viz.

Take Bay-berries, Juniper-berries, Aristoloch. rot. Ivory, Myrra, of each two ounces, make all these into fine powder, and searce them, and let them bee well mixed, boile of this powder two spoonfulls in strong Ale one quart, or Muscadine or Sack one pint, which is much better, adding thereto when you take it from the fire, so much Pepper finely beaten, as will lie on a six pence, and so much grated Ginger as will lie upon a shilling, and so bloud warme administer it to your *Horse*, then so soone as hee hath taken this drinke, trot him gently a mile or two upon faire ground, and then set him up warme, and cause him to sweate in the Stable an houre, but not too violently, and after coole him discreetly, and by degrees, and give him this drinke and sweats three times, to wit, every other day, and after the taking of these three dringes, Take of burnt Sack one pint, and put to it of Arment two good lumps made first into fine powder, and give it your *Horse* two mornings, that is to say, having given it once, let him rest, and then give it him for the second drinke foure dayes after. * * * And thus have I cured fundry *Horses* of this infirmity.

S E C T. 9. D.

Hyppophylus.

VV *What cure have you for a Drop sic ?*
Hypposerus. This disease hath an apparant ground more then conjecturall, for it never commeth to be known by any symptomes, but onely when the *Horse* falleth into dislike, and loseth the true and perfect colour of his haire and skin, and when hee loseth his *spirit, mettle, strength, cheerfulness, and stomach*, and therefore we see it commeth principally for want of good nourishment and digesture, which passeth into melancholly, it proceeding either from the *spleens*, or from the *liver*, or both, the *blood* being corrupted, and converted into a thinne and watry substance, and sometimes it commeth of over much rest, for want of moderate exercise, which I doe judge to bee the more probable. Some *Ferriers* doe affirme that there bee three kindes of this disease, but I could never observe more then one onely, which hath its origen either of *melancholly blood, water, or winde*, but chiefly of water, by reason that the *belly and legges* of a *Horse* will swell, and that a *watry humour* runnes betwixt the *skinne* and the *flesh*, and if you lay your finger hard upon the swoln places, when you shall take it away, there will bee in the place a pit for a small time after. The signes to know it are, that he will be swelled both *body and legs*, he will be also short-breathed, lose his *stomack*, have in his *body* a continuall drought, but yet when he commeth to drinke, hee will not drinke much, but pudder long with his *nose* in the water, hee will bee as if hee had a
 generall

generall consumption over all his *body*, and in time hee will pine and fall away to the very *bones*, and his *flankes* and *buttocks* will be drie, and his *haire* will shed and pill off with every rubbing, &c. The cure is, first let him *Dropic.*
blood, to take away the cold, thin watrish or wheyish *blood*, that better may come in its place, then cover him warme; and give him a sweat in the Stable, but if he will not be brought to sweat in the Stable (as many times it so falleth out) then exercise him abroad till hee sweat, and bring him into the Stable againe, and cloath and litter him warme, and let him be well rubbed, and give him Sallow leaves, or the leaves of the Elme tree Greene, Rie blades, Sedge, or grasse, to keep his *body* open, and when you doe give him Hay, let it be sprinkled with water; then give him this drinke:

Take of Ale one gallon, set it upon the fire, and scum off the froth, as it riseth, then put into it of Wormewood, and of Rue the tender tops and leaves without stalkes carefully picked, of each a handfull, and so boyle the Ale to a quart, then take it off, and straine it well, and dissolve into it of the best *London* Treacle three ounces, and put also into it of long-Pepper and Graines both made into fine Powder, of each one ounce, then brew all these well together till it be but blood-warme, and so give it him to drinke, then bathe and annoint the legs that be swelled with Traine-Oyle twice a day, till the swelling goe away; and give him Mashies or White water, and feed him with such meat as he wil best eate, changing his diet dayly, and give it him by little at once, and after some small time thus spent with him, if the weather bee seasonable, tūrne him to grasse, and hee shall doe well and become
 N n sound,

found againe. * * This is all the Dropſie I doe know, howſoever many *Ferriers* do talke much of another kind which they doe call the *Feltrick*, which is not truly a Dropſie, but a diſeaſe diſtinct from the Dropſie, unto which young *Horſes* are inclinable, that from *Foles* and *Colts* are bred in Fennes, Moores, Marſhes, moiſt and wet grounds, and Commons, by meanes whereof they will ſwell exceedingly under the *belly*, and ſo ſoone as they do come to be handled and backed, whereby they may bee provoked to ſweat, they will preſently have inflammations under the *Chaule*, run at *nose*, fall into an incurable Glanders, and in a word become inwardly rotten, the cure is,

Feltrick.

Fiſt with your ſleame ſtrike him in ſundry places under the *belly*, where the ſwelling is moſt ranke, and ſo let the corrupt *bloud* and filth iſſue forth, by the ſpace of an houre or two, then wipe the places cleane and drie, and then

Take of Buck-lie made very ſtrong with chamber-lie, and the Aſhes of Aſhen wood, and diſſolve into the lie of Unguentum Populeon, and Dialthea, of each one ounce, or as much as will ſuffice, according to the Lie you have, and being made good and hot, waſh, bathe, and annoint the ſwelling therewith morning and evening till the ſwelling bee quite gone, and after every dressing, trot him up and downe by the ſpace of a quarter of an houre, which will be a very good meanes to cauſe the *humour* to diſſolve, and ſo to depart the ſooner and the better; and for two or three daies, give him faſting a quart of good Ale, and of *Diapente* two ſpoonfulls, which muſt be immediately before his trotting forth, after his dressing, and ſo ſet him up warme, and

and give him white water. * * And thus have I cured many Horses of the Felvrick.

SECT. 10. D.

Hyppophylus.

What is good to take dead flesh out of a Sore?

Hypposferus. Wee use sundry sorts of corrosives wherewith to cleanse foule

wounds, and to eat any dead, proud, and naughty flesh out of sores, to the end they may heale and carnifie the better and more kindly : but yet omitting all sorts of powders and other corrosives to corrode and eat away dead flesh, I will teach you a most precious Unguent, which will take off any dead, proud, spongy, or bad flesh, in the foot or any other part of the body, be the wound never so deep or ulcerated, and it will not only take away all proud, dead, and naughty flesh, but it wil also cleanse, and heale up the same very soundly in short space : And this Unguent is thus made and compounded.

Take of common Hony two ounces, Roach-alum, Ver-
degrease and Vineger, of each one ounce, sublimat two
drams, let all be made into fine powder, and boile it a
few waumes, keeping it still stirring, and then take it
from the fire, and keep it in a gally pot, stopped for your
use. Apply this Unguent upon lint or fine hurds, to the
Sorance once a day, and it cureth speedily, and soundly,
but then observe that every day before you dresse the
sore, you cleanse, wash, and inject into the wound the
water taught you in the next *SECT.* which I wil shew you
for a Puncture or deepe wound. * * And this is an ap-
proved cure, and beyond all peradventur.

S E C T. II. D.

Hyppophilus.

Well shew me then what is good for a Puncture or deep wound?

Hypposerus. If it bee in the foot, or any other part of the body, if you can come well unto it, or if it bee an Impostumation unbroken, scald it first with the medicine of red Tarre, Hogs grease, bay Salt, and green Copporas, described in *lib. 2. cap. 16. Sect. 10.* for the *Poll-evil*, then wash the wound with this water.

Deep wounds.

Take red Sage, Plantane, Ribwort, Yarrow, Bramble-leaves, Rosemary, Ilope, and Honey-suckle-leaves, of each one halfe a handfull, boile them in white wine one pinte, and as much of Smiths, or coletrough-water, then adde thereunto in the boiling, of common Honey one spoonfull, and as much Alum as a Walnut, and a bright black piece of Sea-cole, the bignesse of an Egge unbroken, then let this boile till the one moitie be consumed, then strain it hard, and wash the Sorance therewith, and if the wound be deepe, inject of this water with a siring or squirt every day: when you dresse him, and by thus doing you shall cleanse the wound, take away all dead and bad flesh, and heale up the wound, both soundly and speedily. * * This is a most approved Receipt.

S E C T. 12. D.

Hyppophilus.

What is best to be applyed to a desperate Straine?

Hypposerus. If it be so desperate an old Straine as

as that it be held incurable, if it lieth in the *Shoulder*, or other hidden and fleshy part of the *body*, or that the *Horse* have a *Fistula*, *Poll-evil* or other inflammation, or swelling, then use but this one Medicine, and it will cure the same. *viz.*

Take a large earthen vessel, or crock, of one, two, or three gallons or more, and fill it almost to the top with *Asmart* and *Brookelime*, of each like much, and mix them well, then fill it up to the top with old chamber-^{Deferate}lie as ^{straine} can be gotten, so that all the hearbs be quite covered and more, then stop it close with a board or some such like thing, and so keep it for your use, for it never can be too old; now when you have occasion to use this Medicine for any grieffe aforesaid, then take an earthen Pipkin, and put thereinto aswell of the liquor, as of the hearbes so much as shall suffice, for your present use, and boile it well upon the fire. Then if it bee for a straine in the *Shoulder*, you shall take an old boote, and cut off the foote, so as you may draw it over the *Horse* foote and bring it up above the *knee*, almost to the *Elbow* of the *Shoulder*, keeping the neather part of the boote as close and straight to the legge as may bee, but the upper part which is to cover the *Shoulder* must bee wide and spacious; then into this boote thrust all this mixture, so hot as the *Horse* can suffer it, and lay it fast and close about the *Shoulder*, especially before and behind; then drawing up the upper part of the boote, so fasten it to the *Mane*, and about his *Neck*, as that it may not by any meanes slip downe, but keep constant and firme; and thus you must apply this Medicine to the place, till the grieffe depart; this is the most violent of all medicines, and fit for no creature but a *Horse* to endure,

endure, yet in short time it will bring forth whatsoever evill matter lieth in the joints; and if you have occasion to apply this to a *Fistula*, *Poll-evill*, or any *Imposthumation*, or swelling, then may you spare the boote, and only lay on the medicine in manner of a *Pultus*, and it will be sufficient. * * This is a very approved Receipt.

S E C T. 13. D.

Hypophylus.

What meanes have you to dissolve Grease or Glut in a fat or ketty Horse, after a strong athe or violent exercise?

Hyposferus. For a thing of this nature, I have seen this scowring administred, viz.

Dissolve
grease.

Take of sweet Sack one quart, and set it upon the fire, either in a Basin, or open Skillet, and when it is scalding hot, put into it of Rosin one ounce, made into very fine powder, then by degrees, a little after a little, convey it into the Sacke, continually stirring it as you put it in, for feare of clotting, and when the Sack and it is very well incorporate, take it from the fire, and put into it of Saller Oile halfe a pinte, and so stir them well together, and as it cooleth, put also into it of browne Sugar-candy, made into fine Powder one ounce, and when it is onely bloud warme, give it to your Horse, so soone as hee commeth from his exercise, and then being set up, let him be well rubbed, and cloathed warme and well littered, and let him fast three houres after it, and let the *Groome* remain continually with him during these three houres, till you doe give him meate, yea and an hour after, neither let your Horse all that time stand still

still long, nor sleep, but be kept stirring, and moving, for that the medicine will by that meanes worke the more kindly, and when you shall give this or any other scowring, bee you sure that neither the same day, nor the next, you give him any cold water, but either a sweet mash or white water. This scowring I once did see made, and given by a *Jocky*, to a strong, lusty, able hunting *Horse*, which hee had in agitation for a hunting match, but it wrought so violently, and made him so extream sick for more then twenty foure houres after the taking thereof, as that I never durst be so hardy, as to put the same in ure; nevertheless the *Creature* did very well recover againe, and won his match.

S E C T. 14. D.

Hypophylus.

How may a man come to know what are the diseases of the *Liver*?

Hyposerus. Assuredly Sir, the diseases of the *Liver* are many, but yet the true and certaine grounds, how to discover them is beyond every *Ferriers* skill to compassse; nevertheless, that there be many, and those severall and distinct Infirmities in the *Liver*, no man needs make doubt: for if the *Liver* bee either too hot, or too drie, too moist, or too cold, may easily be diseased, which must needs occurre to the *Horse*, either by intemperate riding or labour, or by evill food, or by meanes of evill and corrupt *humours*, which doe gather to the place, or by the overflowing of the *Gall*, or when *Choler* is predominate, it being chiefly ingendred through heat, like as cold begetteth *Flegme*, which causeth the
sicknes

sicknesse and indisposition of the *Liver*, together with its paine and anguish, whence proceed inflammations, and Impostumations, Itoppings, obstructions, knobs, yea and very pernicious Ulcers, every of which doe cause the generall Consumption and disease thereof. If the disease of the *Liver* do proceed from any hot cause, it is more easie to be discovered, then if it came from any cold cause, for that it doth discover it selfe by these apparant signes, *viz.* He will be loane and fall away of his *flesh*, he will loath his meat, and that which he eateth doth him little or no good, for want of ready digestion, his *ordure* will be very offensive, his thirst great, and hee will be very much subject to a loosnesse: whereas on the other side, if the disease ariseth from any cold cause, you cannot discern it by any of these signes, for that he will be in very good liking and state of *body*, eate his meat with a good appetite, his *excrements* will have no evill favour when he dischargeth himselfe, hee will drinke orderly and temperately, neither will he be loose or costive; wherefore if it come of any cold cause, wee must then endeavour to finde out its symptomes. Now if a *Horse* bee diseased in his *Liver*, the infirmity must (I say) proceed from an inflammation and impostumation, or from an ulcer. If it come from a cold cause, it cannot be an inflammation, nor an impostumation, for that these two do both come from a hot cause, as all the learned do know full well, and therefore of necessity it must be an *ulcer*, which proceedeth from a cold cause, and the signes to know it is, continuall coldnesse of his *body*, his *haire* will stare, and hee will bee subject to great feeblenesse, faintnesse and debility of *body*, and the reason is, for that the ulcerated matter doth diffuse throughout the

the whole *body* its evill vapours, which corrupteth and very much offendeth the *heart* in such wise, whereby to occasion and hasten the death of the poore beast: if in time the malady be not discovered, and skilfully and by Art cured. I have intreated sufficiently upon this subject, to wit, of the nature of this infirmity, and the signes how to know the same. And therefore I think it time we do go to the Cure.

So soon as you have discovered this disease: first let him *bloud* on both sides the *neck* the first day, and the next day let him *bloud* in both the *spur-veines*, then give him this drink, *viz.*

Disease of the
Liver.

Take Ilope, Cows-lip-leaves, Liver-wort, Lung-wort, *dius* Molin or Molet-leaves, Harts-tongue, of each a handfull, then take Gentiana, Aristolochia rotunda, Fenugrick, Enulacampana dried, and long Pepper, of each like much, so as when they be pounded and scarced, you may have of each a spoonfull; chop the hearbes, and then mingle them with this powder, and put to it of life Honey one spoonfull, then boyle all these ingredients in a quart of strong Ale, untill a moiety be consumed, and straine it well, and so give it him *bloud* warm, and keep him warm, and having made him fast three or foure houres after this drinke, give him Barly boiled, but if he shall refuse to eate therof, by reason the drink hath made him drie and thirsty, then give him a warm Mash, and after the boyled Barly againe; but let him not have this drink, but the day after he hath been let *bloud* in the *spur veines*, give him this drink three times, but let him alwaies rest 3 daies betwixt every drench, and give him white water for fifteen daies after his last drink, and let him every day be well rubbed, and this will

will cure him. * * I have often made triall of this cure, and I have found it to be very good, and it is also singular for the *lungs*; but if you doe suspect the *liver* to be wasted, then give him this drinke. *viz.*

Take of strong wort, either of Ale or Beere, and give it him to drinke in a morning, having fasted all night from meat and drinke, and three houres after he hath drunke his Wort, give him Oats baked in the Oyen, and doe this for three or foure dayes together or longer, as you shall see cause, and he will be found againe. * * But if you do suspect his *liver* not to be very sound, then

Take a good root or two of Polipodium of the Oake, made very cleane, and of Liverwort, *alias* Mullet one handfull, cut them very small, then take of Rubarb scraped or grated into fine powder, six penny weight, and three or foure daies in a month give it him in his poynder early in the morning two or three houres before he drinketh, and let his drinke be white water during his cure, and once in six months make triall of his *bloud* by opening a *veine*, whether it be pure or corrupt, so as you take it from him accordingly, that is, the greater quantity if the same be had, and the lesse if it be good, and administer help as cause shall require it. * * This is al-
so a most soveraign Receipt.

S E C T. 15. P.

Hippophilus.

You have formerly delivered me many good Receipts for colds, but yet would I gladly have something which should be good for a Horse that runneth at the Nose.

Hippofenus. Very well Sir, I will therefore give you that which shall be very good, and which I have often proved.

proved. First then if you shall finde your Horse to have taken a cold, and therewith he runneth at the Nose, whereby he may be in danger of a Glanders, let him bleed at the neck-veine well, then

Take of Asserfida, the quantity of a hazle nut, and dissolve it in a Saucer full of white wine vinegar, then take Lint or fine Hurds, and dip it into the medicine, and so stop it into the eares of the Horse, and with a needle and thread stich up his eares, so as the medicine get not forth: the next day, take the dry mosse which groweth upon an old pale of a Parke, or other pale, or upon the limbs of an old Oake, one handfull or better, chop it small, and boile it in a pottle of new milke, together with a green roote of Elecampane cut into thin and small slices, and so let it boile till halfe the milke be consumed, then strain it and presse it thoroughly, and before it be cold, put into the milke a good piece of sweet Butter, and of ordinary Treacle so much as will suffice, and so give it him bloud warme. * * This is also good for the head-ach, Frenzy, Stavers, Pose, Cold, Cough, wet or drie, shortnesse of breath, rotten lungs, Glanders, mourning of the Chinc, Lax, loosenesse, Bloody-flux, or the like diseases.

SECT. 16. D.

Hyppophilus.

What may a man apply to a Horse to cause him to draw up his Yard?

Hypposerus. This is a Disease which commeth of weaknesse in the back, or kidneys, either through over-riding, or some leap or strain, or by means of a cold; and sometimes it commeth by a terrible stripe given

given him upon the *loynes* against the *kidneys*, or upon the *yard* it selfe, or by wearinesse or tyrednesse; the signes to know it, is by the unseemly hanging of the *member*, and the cure is thus:

First wash and bath all the *yard* and *sheath* with white Wine made warme, and after that annoint it with Oile of *Roses*, and life hony mingled together, and so put up the *yard* into the *sheath*, and with a soft bouldster of *Cannvas*, keep it from falling down, and dresse him thus every day once till he be well, and let his *back* and *fillets* be kept warme, and annointed with *Acopum*, or if you have not *Acopum*, then apply this charge unto his *back* and *fillets*.

Take *Bolearmoniack*, the whites of *Egges*, *Wheat* meale, *Sanguis Draconis*, *Venice Turpentine*, and strong white Wine vineger, of each of these as much as will suffice, mix them well, and charge his *back* therewith, his *sheath* and his *stones*, and he shall be well. *Another.*

Take the *Ashes* of *Athen-wood*, the whitest, finest, and best burned, and searce them, one pound, or red-clay dried, and made into fine powder, halfe a pound, *Bolearmoniack* halfe an ounce powdred, boile all these in as much *Verjuice* of the *Crab*, as will make it liquid like pap, and with it, annoint his *Yard*, *Sheath*, and *Stones*, morning and evening, and he shall be presently cured.

** This is speciall good.

S E C T. 17. D.

Hypophylus.

What is good to draw a thorn, stub, iron, splinter, nail, or what else out of the flesh of the Horse?

Hypofervus

Hyposerm. If the stub, thorne, or whatsoever else it be, that is gotten into the *flesh* be so deepe that you cannot come to it to pluck it forth with your fingers or pliers, then lay to the place a good quantity of black Sope, and so let it lie all night, and in the morning it will make it so appeare, so as you may come to take hold of it with your Instrument; but if it be gotten into the *flesh* so deepe, as that the Sope cannot doe it, then must you open the *flesh* by the way of incision, so deepe till you may come to take hold thereof with your Instrument, and so pluck it forth, which done, heale up the wound with the Ointment taught you in *lib. 2. cap. 10. Sect. 4. G.* and so heale it up, but be certaine that you do heale it from the bottome, lest it break out again. * * * This is the most certaine way for this cure that I doe know.

Draw a thorn.

SECT. 18. D.

Hypophylus.

What good drink is to be given, whereby to preserve the Lungs?

Hyposerm. If you have no great occasion to fear your horses lungs, then you may administer to him in his Provender only such powders as you shal find prescribed you already in *lib. 2. cap. 2. Sect. 43.* but if you have just cause to suspect that his lungs, may be rotter, fretized, or broken, then to heale or make them sound againe, or at least to give him great ease, for you may know it by these signes, *viz.* his flanks will beat when he cougheth, which he will often do, but principally when you give him riding or exercise, and the slower they beat, the older and more dangerous the disease is; he

he will also draw his *winde* short, he will groane oft, but most in lving downe, and rising up, and be very fearfull and toth to cough. The cure is,

Take Tartar made of white Wine Lees, which you may have of the *Apothecaries*, or if you please you may make it your selfe. (For it is none other thing then the thickest of the Lees of white Wine well dried and made into powder.) Take (I say) of this one ounce and a halfe, of Ilope and of Colts foot, of each halfe a handfull, of Hore-hound one handfull, of Elecampane in fine powder, Anniseeds, and Licoris, of each one ounce, of browne Sugar-candy foure ounces, boile all these together in good Ale one quart, and when it is halfe-boiled, put into it of Ilop water, and of Colts-foot water, both twice distilled, to take off their crudities, of each one pint, and so boile all againe together, and then straine it, and give it your *Horse* bloud warme. * * If your *Horse* have been exercised, being foule, or having been in diet, then he hath been over-much used to Clusters, Drinkes, Rakings, Purgations, Sweats, Vomits, and the like; give him this drinke then, and you shall finde it to be most soveraigne for him, and the cleaner he is within, the better is its operation, and will worke more kindly in his *body*; and at what times you are to Tilt, Hunt, Travell, or exercise him, give him but one pint of this drinke in the morning fasting before his going forth, for it will so helpe his *breath*; whereby (through moderate exercise) he will be much the better able to go through with his worke, then otherwise he could have done. * * And this drinke I have often proved. Also if you do find him to be either diseased, or sick in his *lungs*, or that they be any way tretized, then give him this drinke.

Take of tryed Hogs greafe two ounces, and of *Diapente* three spoonfuls, put these into a quart of water, wherein Barly hath been boiled till it burst, and warme it in the fire till the Hogs greafe bee dissolved, and so bloud warme give it your sick Horie, and three houres after give him of the Barley warme to eate, and either sweet mashes or white water to drinke. * * This was taught me by an *Italian* Rider in *Paris*, and I have often made use thereof, and have found it to be speciall good, howbeit for the time it wil cause him to be very sick, but have no fear, for it is right good for this Malady. *Another.*

Take Muskadine or sweet Sack one pint, life-Honey three spoonfuls, Myrrh, Saffron, Cascia, and Cinamon, of each like much, make all these into fine powder, and mix two spoonfuls of this powder with your Muskadine and Honey, and give it him warme with a Horne, give him this drinke fifteen daies together, continuing to give him mashes and white water, and this is a most certain Cure. * * But if you do find that his Lungs be rotten and impostumated, then

Take of the juice of Purflaine halfe a pinte, and mixe therewith of the Oile of Roses so much as will suffice, and put thereto a little *Tragantum* steeped before in Goats, Ewes or Cowes milke, and give him thereof to drinke seven mornings together: but this drinke will but onely ripen and breake the Impostume, which you shall know to bee done, by his exceeding stinking breath, then shall you give him in fine powder Cassia three ounces; and seven Raisins of the Sun stoned, boile these in Muskadine one pinte, and bloud warme give it him, and it will heale up his Lungs againe. * * This is very good.

SECT. 19. D.

Hypophilus.

Is there nothing to be given to a Horse, wherewith to prevent diseases all the whole yeare?

Hypoferus. As touching the prevention of all diseases, I have spoken before, I thinke, sufficiently, but yet I will teach you one thing, (for that you are desirous to learne, and learning is no burthen) which may be worthy your notice, for I will keep no secret from you; sithence it is my Masters pleasure, I should dilate the utmost of my skill and Art.

First, therefore the spring of the yeare comming on, a time when new bloud beginneth to come, and that ere long grasse will be able to take heart, whereby the better to give nutriment to a Horse; the first day of *April* open a *veine* in the *Neck*, to see the better how the *bloud* is: if good, take the less, if bad then the more: then from that day untill the first of *May*, give him this which I shall prescribe you, and let him have it every day without faile, morning and evening during the whole month of *April*, from the first day to the last, which is before his turning out to grasse, or soyling, which should be about the middle of *May*, and let him have the same all so all the whole month of *October* (like as you must do in *April* after you have taken him from grasse, about *Bartholomewtide*,) and doe as you before have been taught in all points. That which I prescribe is this.

Take a Bushell of old Rie, sweet and cleane, well purged, or sifted, from dust, stones, lome, feathers, cobwebs, or any such like filth, and put it into a clean iron pot; dry,

dry and without water, I meane such an iron pot, in which usually flesh meat is boiled, for such a like vessell, is best for this our purpose, it taketh least harme, and is much more wholesome then Brasse, Copper, or any other mettall: Set this pot thus drie, and without water over the fire, and put into it your Bushell of Rie (for a lesse quantitie you cannot well have) and as it be- ginneth to wax hot, keepe the Rie with continuall stir- ring, even from the bottome, without any intermission, untill you have so parched the Rie, that it becommeth black and hard, which to be so, will aske good heate, and no lesse labour to stirre it up and downe in the pot; when you doe finde that the Rie is sufficiently parched, which you shall know by its blacknesse, drynesse and hardnesse, take it from the fire, and put it into some o- ther cleane and drie vessell, which so soone as it is cold, let the vessell be kept close stopped, and so kept for your use. Now when you are to use of this Rie, take two or three good handfulls of it, and let it be beaten to fine powder and given to your Horse mingled with his Provender, at every watring, morning and evening, or other times when you usually give him Oates; do this these two entire moneths of *April* and *October*, for that all men doe hold, that in these two moneths the *blood* turneth and altereth, as we alter his diet from hard and drie meat, to grasse; and so likewise from grasse to drie meat; for this Rie thus parched and ordered, doth refine the *Bloud*, coole the *Liver*, and purgeth the *Spleene*, so as the whole structure of the *Body* is thereby the better eased and freed, from all such bad and unna- turall *Humours*, which would otherwise make the *body* inclinable to sundrie Maladies and Diseases, which this

Rie preventeth, and therefore if you be willing to keepe your *Horse* sound, and free from Diseases, order him in these two moneths according as I have prescribed you, and you shall be secure. * * This I have oft made use of, and it is good.

SECT. 20. D.

Hypophylus.

HAVE you any comfortable drinke to administer to a *Horse* that is very sick?

Hyposerus. I have heeretofore shewed you divers, but yet I will give you one more.

Drinke comfortable.

Take of good white Wine one pint, of white Sugar-Candy, and of Cinamon, of each one ounce, of Cloves halfe an ounce, Saffron three drams, of Sugar refined three ounces, make all these into fine powder, then take Mithridate two ounces, Honey of Roses foure ounces, mixe all these well together, and put it to the Wine, and make it bloud warme over the fire, and so give it him, and now and then as he standeth upon the trench, let him chew upon the end of a Bulls pizell, some *Arman*, let him be cloathed and littered warme, and remaine fasting upon the trench three houres, and after give him a sweet Mash, or white Water, and after order him as is usuall for a sick *Horse*. * * This is one of the best preservative drinckes that I know, and I have had great prooffe thereof.

SECT.

SECT. 21. D.

Hyppophilus.

What remedy have you for a dislocated joint?
Hypposerus. Let it be first put into its
 right place, then in the binding up apply
 this plaister.

Take Wheat Bran, and Hogs greafe, of each as much Dislocated joint.
 as will suffice, make them into one body, and make
 thereof a plaister of Hurds, and so apply it to the place,
 and after binde and swathe it up, and the joint and mem-
 ber will be well again having rest.

SECT. 22. D.

Hyppophylus.

What disease is that is called Tranchaifons?
Hypposerus. This tearm we have from
 the French, which is onely a paine or gri-
 ping in the belly, caused partly of winde, and partly of
 cold, and est soones of both, and our English tearm is, the
 Chollick, which is a most grievous paine, ingendring ma-
 ny infirmities, as I have before declared in its due place:
 notwithstanding because you have given me the French
 tearme, I will give you two or three French Receipts for
 the same disease, albeit I never did experiment any of
 them, yet I doe hold them to be good.

Take of Arquequamis one ounce, make it into juice,
 and put to it of white wine one pinte, and so give it to
 the Horse, which done, annoint his *privy members* with
 this Unguent, Take of Garlick unpilled, as much as will
 Justice,

Disease of
 Tranchaifons
 or the Chollick

suffice, and stamp it well, and mix with it of Sallet Oile as much as will suffice, and so bring it to an Unguent, and therewith annoint the *yard, sheath, and coles*, and it will both give him ease, and cause him to stale suddenly, by which means he will amend. *Another.*

Take Cinque-foile halfe a handfull or Pantaphillon, beat and stamp it well, and moisten it with warme water, and so give it him to drink. *Another.*

Take of the powder of Siliris Montani, D'quare, and of Comin, of each an ounce, and put them into white wine one pinte, and so give it him, then so soone as he hath taken this drink, trot him out for halfe an hour, a good round trot, especially up the hill, and after bring him into the Stable, and cloath and litter him warme. *Another.*

Take of Fenugrick, and of Comin, of each one ounce, make them into fine powder, and with white Wine a pint, give it him bloud warm, & trot him out as before.

S E C T. 23. D.

Hyppophylus.

Ave you no way to dry sores?

H *Hypposeru.* Yea Sir, and I will give you some Receipts for that purpose. Take egge shels and burn them almost black: take also the upper leather of old shoes, and burne them to a cole: take also a Charcole, quick-lime, and greene Coperas, burned in a well nealed earthen pot, untill it be red: take of each of these a like quantity, and beate them together to fine powder, and strew this powder upon the sore or galled place, and every time you dresse the sore herewith, wash

wash it well with strong vinegar or chamber-lie warmed. * * But if it be an old ulcer, or cankerous sore, then take Mastick, Frankincense, Cloves, Greene Coperas, Brimstone, of each like much, Myrrh double as much as anie of the former ingredients, beat all these by themselves to fine powder, and mixe them well, then take of this Powder and burne it upon a chafing-dish and coles, but be carefull it flame not, then as the smoake or fume thereof ariseth, take of fine lint a good handfull or two, and hold it over the said smoake or steame, so as it may receive all the said steame into the said lint, then when it is throughly well perfumed, put the lint into a box, pot, or glasse, and be sure to stop it up so close, as that none the least aire can possibly come into it (for the least aire will deprive the lint of its vertue) and so keepe it for your use; and when you have occasion to make use thereof, first wash the sore with new made chamber-lie warme, either as it commeth from the man, or else warmed upon the fire, then drie the sore againe, and lastly lay some of this lint to the sore, and so make it up, and do this twice every day, and you shal find it to be a speedy & perfect cure * * But if you would dry up the scratches in the *heelles* of your *horse*:

Take then chamber-lie which is old made, or stale, and rock or roch-Allum as much as will suffice, boile them together, and reserve it thus well boiled in a glasse, or other cleane vessell well stopped, then take of greene Nettles the strongest, most angry and keene, two handfulls, and lay them thin upon some plate, or other broad thing, and so dry them either before the fire, or in an Oven, after household bread is drawne, then make it into powder very fine, this done, take of Pepper,

Lint where-
with to heale
ulcers or old
sores.

and

and make it also into very fine powder, being finely searced, so as it may be of like quantitie, with the powder of Nettles, and so mix them well together, then keepe this powder in a drie glasse, close stopped, and when you may have occasion to use this powder, first wash the sore with the said liquor of Allom and Chamber-lie made bloud warme, and so having purged, cleansed, and dried the sorance well with a clean linnen cloth, strew and lay on your powder, and thus doe after travel or exercise every day once during the time of his rest, and this will cure him throughly. * * This cure I have often practised.

S E C T. 24. D.

Hypophylus.

What disease is that which is called the Arraistes, and how is it cured?

Hypposerum. This is also a French Epitheton

which we call the Rats tails being a kind of scratches, of this disease I have spoken before in the letter A, and therefore I wil now leave entreating further thereof.

C H A P. VIII.

S E C T. I. E.

Hypophilus.

What is to be given to a Horse that hath eaten a Taint?

What is a Taint? Hypposerum. A Taint is a kind of red worm which many Ferriers will say can doe a Horse

Arraistes or
Rats tails.

no harme, but they are much mistaken, for I have knowne *Horses* to die with eating it; but if he have eaten a *Taint*, the signes will be, that he will be sick, and forsake his meat, and he will swell in all his *body*, also his *eyes* will so swell that you would thinke they would fall out of his *head*, he will draw in and out his *breath* very short, and his *tongue* and mouth will be very dry and hot, and peradventure blistred, but he will be easily cured, for so soone as you shall perceive him to forsake his meat, and that he doth begin to swell, then be you confident that he hath eaten some unwholesome thing, for this inconvenience seldome cometh to any *Horse* but at grasse onely. The cure is,

Take of the urine of *man* as it commeth warme from *him*, one pint, and of bay-salt one handfull, stirre these well together, and give it him with a horne, and after walke him up and downe halfe an houre, and he is cured. * * This I have sundry times tried, and it is a certain cure.

SECT. 2. E.

Hypophylus.

VV *What cure have you for a Horse that hath eaten a Feather?*

Hypoferus. This may be gotten aswell in the stable, as abroad at grasse; in the stable through the negligence of the *Keeper* or *Groome*, in not dusting, shaking, or picking, and searching his Hay and Provender well, and by not looking narrowly, that no Feathers be among his Hay, Oates, or Provender, when he giveth him his meate, either in the Rack or Manger, hee may

may also get a Feather at grasse, as hee feedeth in a Meadow, or Pasture, where Swans, Geese, Ducks, Turkeys or other Poultry or Fowles doe ly and feed: they in the Summer season, mowting, and miewing their Feathers, whereby the Horse graising and feeding in those places, may easily and unawares eat a Feather, which being taken into the *wesand*, will stick fast there, which will so suffocate him, as that it will provoke him to cough so vehemently, as if his *Heart* would breake, for it will stick so fast in his *Throat* or *wesand*, as that hee can neither swallow it down into his *Body*, nor cast it up at his *Mouth*. The cure is.

Eat a feather.

Put the cord of your Drenching Staffe into his teeth, and hold his *head* up on high, then take of Verjuice of the crab one pint, and two new laid Eggs, and beat them together, shells and all, with the Verjuice, and so give it him with a Horne, and so soon as he hath swallowed the same, give him a few small branches of Savine, and this will carry away the feather into his *stomack*.
* * This I have very oftentimes done, and made him well againe.

SECT. 3. E.

Hypophylus.

But then what Cure have you for a Horse that hath eaten a Spider, which I take to bee much more perillous to the life of the Horse?

Hypposerus. The signes to know this is like to that of the *Taint*, but onely that he will swell much more, and this may befall him rather in Winter then in Summer: for which give him this drinke.

Take

Take Urine of a Man newly made one quart, of Rue, Buc a Spider.
 Bitrony, Scabious, Pimpernell, Dragons, of each a like
 much, but in such a quantity, as in the whole, all will
 amount but only to one handfull, chop these hearbs to-
 gether small, and let them boile together in the Urine
 a little, adding thereto of Bay-salt, and Sallet-oyle of
 each one spoonfull, and so give it him blood warme.

** Now if it be in Winter,

Take of Urine one quart, Arement one lump, *Aristo-
 lochia rotanda*, Mithridate, of each one dram, English
 Saffron, one scruple, Sallet-oyle one spoonfull, Bezar-
 stone three grains, let these be set on the fire and given
 him blood warm, if it be in Summer, turn him to grasse,
 and if need be rake him, and then convey into his Tuell
 a ball of fresh Butter. But if it be in Winter, let him
 be also raked, and give him of the blades of greene Rie,
 to a good quantity, and for his Provender, let it be for
 two or three meales, of scalded bran and Hempseed,
 and let his drinke for three or foure dayes be white wa-
 ter. ** These are all approved medicines.

S E C T. 4. E.

Hypophilus.

What is good for a blow on the Eye, whereby as
 well to save the Eye, as to assuage the swelling
 thereof?

Hypposerum. This needs no study aswell to find out the
 means how it commeth, as the signes how to know it,
 for both are apparant enough, there only remaineth to
 treat of the Cure.

Shave off the haire from off and about the place
 Iwel-

Eye a Stroke.

swelled, having first well bathed it in warm water, then Take the tenderest tops of Wormewood, Pellitory, and Branca-Ursina, of each halfe a handfull, chop the herbes very small, and then beat them to an Ointment with old Bores grease so much as will suffice, then put to it of life Honey and Wheate-flowre, of each one Spoonfull, and of Lynseed-Oile three Spoonfulls, boile these over the fire very well, keeping it with continuall stirring, and when it is sufficiently well boiled, straine it into a Gally Pot, and keepe it stopped, and as occasion is offered, annoint the place swelled heerwith. * *

S E C T. 5. E.

Hypophilus.

VV *That remedy is to bee had for the Eye that is charged with a Filme, Pin and web, or with Dragons, &c.*

Hypophiscus. These diseases in the Eye, doe come sometimes by meanes of some paine in the head, which causeth a Rheume to fall into the Eyes, and sometimes by meanes of Rheumes themselves, which causing the Eyes to water, doe ingender these diseases, and sometimes againe it is occasioned by meanes of a strip, or hay-dust, or some hame which may bee gotten into the Eye. I need not deliver you the signes whereby to know them, they are visible to the sight. The cure therefore is thus.

Eye Filme,
Pin and Web
Dragons.

Take Camfire or Sol-*Armoniacum*, or for want of either of these, white Sugar-Candy: any of these three being made into very fine powder, and blowne into the Eye three times a day, are most soveraigne to cure these diseases

diseases in the *Eyes* of a *Horse*, but *Sol. Armoniacum* is the very best of them all. * * But if a *Filme* or *Pearl*, without a *Pin* and *Web*, doe grow in the *Eye*, then, take up both the two weeping *veines* first, which are under the *Eyes*, and then give a *Cauterize* to either place, viz. w^open the *skin* all along to the very *Eyes*, and put in to each of them, a quill cut in the middle, then oftentimes cleanse them, and comfort the places *Cauterized* or *roweled* with *Unguentum Populeum*, and wash the *Eyes* every day three times with *Eye* bright water, mingled with the juice of *Smallage*, and about fifteen dayes after, take away the quills, and after wash the *Eyes* with cold *Fountain-water*.
Another. But if it be a *Pin* and *Web*, then

Take *Cuttle bone*, *Tartar*, *Salt-Gemme*, of each like *Pin* and *Web*.
much, make them all into pure fine powder, and with a quill blow of this fine powder well mixed, into his *Eye* two or three times a day or oftener. * * This have I tried and have found it to be speciall good. But if it be a *Pearl*, that the *Horse* hath in his *Eye*, then

Take the angriest tops of red *Nettles*, and stampe *Pearle* or *Filme*.
them well, and put them into a fine cleane linnen Rag, then dip the *Nettles* as they be in the Rag, into *Beere*, but yet very slightly, and so wring forth the juice of the said *Nettles*, into some cleane thing, which done, put to it a little *Salt* so much as will suffice, made first into fine powder, and when the *Salt* is dissolved, convey one drop of the medicine into the grieved *Eye*, morning and evening, and this will take away the *Pearle*, and the *Eye* will become as cleare as the other. * *
This I have often tryed, and found it to doe rare cures in this kinde. Now for a *Pin* and *Web*, any of these ensuing will cure it.

Take the sword of a Gammon of Bacon and dry it, and make it into powder, and blow thereof into the grieved Eye. * * This is good. *Another.*

Take the juice of ground-Ivie, *alias* Ale-hoofe, Sclendine, life-hony, and womans milke, of each of these so much as will suffice, mix all these well, and put it into the Eye of the Horse. * * *Another.*

Take the powder of the bottome of a Brasse pot, the outtermoſt black being first taken off, and the next powder let it be blowne into the Eye of the Horse, and it will helpe him. *Another.*

Take the powder of burnt Allume, or of a black flint, or the powder of Ginger, either of these made into fine powder and blowne into the Eye of the Horse, will helpe a Pin and web. *Another.*

Take salt Arment, and make it into very fine powder, and put thereto of life-hony and fresh butter, of each so much as will suffice, incorporate all these well together, and so convey of this medicine into the Eye of the Horse, and this will cure a Pin and web. * * But if there be a *Haw* in the Eye, this every *Smith* can take away; nevertheſſe whereas all other *Ferriers*, that ever I saw worke upon this diſeaſe, doe use to take it away from the out-side of the Eye, I doe take it away from that part which lieth next of all to the eye, and I doe finde my way to be much better, and a safer way, as well whereby to preserve the sight of the eye, as also the wash, and so ſoone as I have cut out the *Haw*, I doe use to wash the eye with white Wine, and the juice of Sclendine mingled together, of each a like much, for this healeth the ſorance, and keepeth the eye from rankling. Now I have oft times ſeen the *French Marſhalls* take up the

the *wash* of the eye, with a Spanish needle, threaded with a double browne threed, and to pluck forth the Haw so farre as he well can, then with a paire of sizers to clip off the Haw so close as he can: But I cannot commend this maner of curing the Haw, for by that means he cutteth away the *wash* of the eye, which indeed is the beauty of the eye, whereby the *Horse* becommeth *bleare-eyed*, which is in him a very great eye-fore, he being thereby very much disfigured. * * But if your *Horse* have gotten a *canker* in his eye, then

Take Ale-hoofe (which is indeed your true ground-Eye a Canker. Ivy) and stamp it well in a mortar, and if it be very dry, then moisten it with a little white Rose-water, or the water of Eye-bright distilled, as much as will suffice, and so straine it into a cleane glasse, and therewith wash, bath, annoint, and taint the sorance therewith, and in short time it will cure it. * * This is very good to cure a Canker, a Pin and Web, *bloud shorten eyes*, or any such grieffe in or about the eyes; and I have often made use of this medicine. Another much better.

Take of stone Coperas (a thing knowne to few, and therefore very hard to get) but in the stead thereof you may use ordinary white Coperas, make it into fine powder, as much as will suffice, (for I must leave the quantity to your owne discretion) and put it into a small Pipkin, and put thereto so much very faire, cleare running, or Well-water, as will fill up the Pipkin to the very top, then set the Pipkin upon a few coales, and cause the water to boile, but so treatibly, as it may but only simmer, and as the scum doth arise, take it away with a feather, continuing so to doe, till the scum doe leave to arise any more, and when you have sufficiently well

wel boiled it, take it off, and let it stand til it be through cold, then poure away the clear from the bottom, which must be cast away, and the clear kept in a glasse vial, very close stopped and bound up for your use, which being thus carefully kept, the water will remaine in its perfection long, yea a whole yeare together or longer. This water cureth almost all diseases in the eyes, as Films, Pearls, weeping eyes, Pin and Web, Dragons, Cataracts, dimnesse of sight, Blindnesse, Rheumatick, watry, stroake, blow or stripe of or in the eye, and so consequently in many other cases of the like nature. * *

And of this water I have had great experience. *Another.* Take Sal-Armoniack, Lapis Tulia prepared, Sagina, called in Latine *Panicum-Iudicum*, and of Ginger, of each halfe an ounce, and of white Sugar-candy two ounces, powder all these and searse them, and being well mixed, put this powder into a clean and dry box very close stopped, and so keepe it that no ayre come to it for your use, and when you have occasion to use of this powder, take a little thereof, and mix with it of the juice of ground-Ivy, *alias* Ale-hoof, as much as will suffice, and so twice a day convey therof into his eye with a feather, till it be thoroughly whole. * * This is a principall good receipt; I will give you another speciall good Receipt which will cure all manner of sore eyes.

Take the leaves and roots of Vervine, ordinary hony, and Roman Vitrioll, of each like much; beat, bruise, and mix these together, and put it into a stillitory glasse, and distill it by Balnea-Maria, with a gentle fire, and the water you take into your Receptacle, put into a viall glasse, and keepe it very close stopped, that no ayre get into it, and when you are to use of the same water, poure

poure of it a little into a silver spoone, and mix with it of the fat of a Hen or Capon, a smal quantity, and therewith anoint the fore eye twice a day, and it will cure the same perfectly. * * I will give you another Receipt which will take the filme from off the eye albeit there be a very great and thick skin grown.

Take the gall of a Hare, and life Honey, of each like much, put them together into a spoone, and hold the spoone over the fire, till the medicine be bloud warme, and with a feather convey part of this medicine into the eye of the Horse, and thus dresse him morning and evening, and in short time it will take it quite away, so as the eye will become as bright and cleare againe as ever it was before. * * This Receipt I doe hold no whit inferiour to any of the former, for I have often made use thereof. But if your Horse have gotten a stripe in the eye, then let him bleed in the neck, and in the weeping vein, on the same side where the stripe is, then

Take white Rose-water, and the white of a new laid egge, beat them very well together, then wash and bath the eye well therewith, and lay round about it with your splatter this charge restrigent.

Take Mastick, Bolearmoniack, Sanguis Draconis, Eye a charge. the white of a new laid egge, and white wine vinegar of the strongest, beat first the hard simples to very fine powder, and then searse them, and they must be beaten severally, then mix them all together with the white of the egge, and the vinegar so well wrought, as that the medicine come to a thick Ointment, and with this charge the sorance round about the eye; and this will keep off the humour, and when that you finde that the eye doth begin to amend, then wash and bathe the eye twice

twice or thrice a day, or oftener, with cold Fountain or Well water, so fresh as it is taken or drawne out of the Well or Fountain, and if after you shall perceiue that there doth grow a *filme*, or *skin* over the eye, then take it away by blowing, or putting the powder of Camphire, or Sol-Armoniacum, or white Sugar-Candy in fine powder, according as I have before prescribed you. * * This is a most soveraign Receipt. Also if your *Horse* in his eye have gotten a stripe,

Take of fresh butter wherein never came salt, the quantity of a Walnut, & put it into his *ear* on that side where the stripe is, and it will help him. *Another.*

Take Lentels or gray Pease, and champ or chew them in your *mouth*, & then whilst they be in your *mouth*, blow and breath into your *horses eye*, but not any of the Pease by any means; do this every day often, and a little after wash the fore eye with cold Fountaine water till it be whole. * * But yet I will teach you another Receipt which will take off a Pin and Web, Film, Thicknesse, or any other foulnesse which may be in the eye whatsoever, wherof I have had great experience, and have done many rare cures in this kinde, *viz.*

Take the shels of seven or eight eggs, cleanse them from all manner of inward slime, and dry them well within, then lay those shels, between two new Tyles, or old, so they be made very cleane and free from Morter, and then lay them in the glowing embers, and cover them all over, and on every side with burning hot embers, and so let them ly a good space, untill the moist substance be quite taken from them, then take them up, and beate the shels to very fine powder, and searse the powder, then with a Goose quill blow of this powder

Powder into your *Horses eye*, doe this twice every day, and it is a certaine cure. * * But if you doe finde the eye to be fed with any Rhumatick *humour*, or that it be inflamed, or that it hath gotten a bruise, stripe, or the like, then

Take of the purest and whitest refined loafe Sugar, one spoonfull and a halfe, let it be made into fine Powder and searfed, or else of the best white Sugar-Candy (which is much better) the like quantity, let it be finely powdred and searfed, and mixe with it so much May or sweet Butter (wherein never came Salt) as a Walnut, and adde also to it so much of the former powder of Egge-shels as of Sugar-Candy, make these into one body, and bring it to a salve, and put thereof into the *horses eye* morning, evening, and noon, and this will make the eye to be cleare, sound, and whole againe. * * This Unguent doth purge, cleanse, coole, and comfort the *eye* of the *horse*, and helpeth greatly his *sight*; make use of this, for it is very good. But if the *eyes* be inflamed, which you may easily know by the red strakes which will be in them, then

Take Thuris Masculi, the marrow of a Lamb, Saffron, Cuttlebone, of each one ounce, of the oyle of Roses one ounce, & the whites of ten new laid Egges, beat and incorporate all these very well together, and then with a feather put some of this medicine into his *eyes* once every day. * * This receipt is very good, for I have had great triall thereof. Another.

Take of white Starch made of Wheate, Frankincense, life-honey, of each as much as will suffice, make all these into one body, and with a feather apply it to the grieved *eye*. Another.

If the inflammation be great, let him *blond* in both the *temple-veines*, and in the *weeping veines*, and then wash his eyes with *womans milke* and *life-honey* mingled together. * * Another for a wart or spongy excretion growing neere to the eye of the *horse*, which commonly doth proceed from a condensed flegme that descendeth to the eye, which in time will cause the eye either to consume, or to grow little, if it be not prevented, which must be done thus.

Eye a Wart.

Take Roch-Allum and burn it, and then adde unto it so much white Coperas unburnt, grinde them together to very fine powder, then lay a little of this Powder just upon the top of the wart, but take heed none get into the eye, for it is a strong corrasive, and will corrode; let the Wart be thus dressed once every day, and in a short time it will consume and eate it quite away never to come more. * * But as touching Lunatick eyes, this word Lunaticke is derived from the *Latine* word *Luna*, which signifieth the *Moon*, and the reason why this disease takes its denomination from thence, is, for that at certaine times of the *Moone* he will see well, and at other times a little, but then at other times no whit at all; and therefore this disease is called *lunatick*, and this kind of blindness we do hold to be the very worst of all other, but when he doth see you may know it by the colour of his eyes, for then they will be dimme and yellowish, but when he seeth nothing, then will they look fiery and red. This disease commeth sometimes naturally, taking it hereditarily, either from the *Stallion* his *Sire*, or from the *Mare* his *Damme*, by whom he was begotten and foled: it commeth also sometimes by means of evil *humours*

Lunaticke eyes.

humours which descending from the *head* make their residence in and about the *eyes*, and these naughty *humours* are occasioned by the means of intemperate riding, drawing, or other laborious exercise, in which the poore *creature* hath been put to doe more then nature was able to performe; wherefore by one of these waies the malady commeth; the cure is thus:

Take Pitch, Rosin, and Mastick, of each like much, melt them together, and having beforehand provided in a readinesse two round plaisters of Leather, the breadth of a 20 shilling piece of Gold, lay and spread the medicine hot upon these two plaisters, and so hot as the *horse* can suffer them, apply them to his *temples*, causing them to stick fast to the *skinne*, and let them there remaine, untill they shall fall off of themselves, then rowell him on the face just under his *eyes* with a very small *French Rowell* the breadth of a three pence at the most, and let it be turned every day one, the space of 12 or 15 daies, then take forth the *Rowell*, and heale up the *orifice* with the green oyntment prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap. 10. sect. 4. G.* and this will undoubtedly very much help his *sight*. ** Another.

Shave away the *haire* the breadth of a shilling on either side of the *head* upon the *temple veines*, and after apply to the place this charge.

Take Taca-Mahaca, and lay it upon those places which were shaven, and clap upon them flocks of the same colour, then make incision and put in two *French Rowels*, as is shewed in the cure going before, to bring down the peccant *humours*, and let the *eyes* be washed twice every day with the medicine before taught you, made of ground-Ivy, Honey, Selendine, and wo-

mans milke. * * This is very good for this disease, and this I can boldly commend unto you to be a very good medicine, for I have often used it. Now as touching *sores eyes* which must be cured by medicine, you must understand that the *eye* is the most delicate part of any one *member* in all the whole *body*, it is the *Torch* or *Candle* which doth give light to the whole *body*, it is the guide which doth usher the *body*, and to carry it from danger, so as it shall not at any time either stumble upon rocks or blocks, or fall into any precipice; wherefore great regard ought to be had how you doe at any time tamper or meddle with this so choice a *member*, lest instead of endeavouring to cure one *sores eye*, you put out both, a thing often seen and known, and therefore the medicines which you apply to the *eyes* ought evermore to be new made, yea in a manner every day, for that when once they begin to grow stale, they become sharpe and asper, perplexing the poore beast, much more then otherwise; neither are they so wholsome, nor so powerfull whereby to perform their office for which they were made and compounded. If you have a *horse* which is but weake of sight, the lesse *bloud* you take from him the better it will be for the continuance of his sight, for by taking much *bloud* from a *horse* weakly sighted, will on a sudden cause him to become *stone blinde*, like as by experience I have often known and observed. But now to conclude this Paragraph, because I have not yet handled one part appertaining to a *sores eye*, viz. for an *eye* which by an *unluckie stroke* or *stripe* is broken and beaten out of the head of the *horse*. I will give you one onely receipt, which can never be paralleled: to wit,
Take

Take Allum, and first burn it in a fire-pan, and after when it is burned so, put it upon the hot coales, and let it burn there till all the moysture be quite consumed, that it becommeth as light as a feather, and as white as snow, and so brittle as that it will break with every touch, unlesse it be very carefully handled, when it is so brittle as that it will runne to ashes with very small pressure, and that the taste of Allum remaineth little in the said Allum, then is it sufficiently burned, then take of this powder as much as will suffice, and mixe it with Life-honey, and stir them well together, as that you doe bring it to an Unguent; put of this every day morning and evening into his eye with a feather, & so hold your hand upon the eye a pretty while, that the medicine cannot suddenly get forth, and by thus doing in few daies it will be thoroughly cured, though the eye be utterly lost.

Eye broken.

SECT. 6. E.

Hippoph. **VV**hat is good to take away a bony excretion, or a fleshy?

Hippof. This malady of a bony excretion commeth most commonly by the means of causticks and burning corrosives, which be laid to wounds that are neere to the bone, as when the wound is either in the legge, or about the pasternes, for that the flesh being extreamly burned and mortified by such causticks & corrosives, it doth cause an excretion to grow upon the bone, which by the unskilfulnes of the Ferrier the wound is healed up, but the excretion doth remain still upon the bone, which becommeth an eye-sore, unlesse it be afterwards taken off, which occasioneth a new cure, and over and above it enforceth oft times the horse to halt: some-

sometimes again an *excretion* commeth by the *horse* being galled with a lock or fetters, having been long continued upon the same *foot*, without changing or removing in time convenient. But howsoever it commeth, the cure is,

Excretions.

Take Elecampane root newly gathered, and cleanse it from its earth, and wrap it up in a brown paper, then wet the paper, and so heale it in the hot embers, and so rost it as you would doe a Warden, when it is throughly well roasted, that it be like pap, so hot as your *horse* can suffer it (for it must not scald him) after you have a stick, (like as you doe a splent) rubbed, knocked, and chafed the *excretion*, binde this roasted root close unto the place, and so let it remaine on 24 houres before you doe remove it, and in two or three times thus dressing it, the *excretion* will rot and consume to nothing, and this will also take away a splent.

* * This is very good. Another.

Take the oyle of Origanum, and every morning and evening, or oftner, take a little upon the brawne of your thumbe, and rub the place, and it will there-with in time consume, and quite take it away. * * And this will also take away a splent.

SECT. 7. E.

Hippof. **W**hat will cure an *Impostume* in the eares of a Horse?

Hippof. This disease proceeds from sundry causes, as by means of some blow with some staffe or other such like thing, which he receiveth about the eares or poll, or else by means of some hurt he may get, by being

ing wrung or galled with a new or hard hempen halter, specially if a knot be neere or upon the place; sometimes it comes also of a cold taken in the *head*, and sometimes againe by means of bad and peccant humours, which residing in *head*, doe make its passage by the *eares*; it is easily known by its much burning, glowing, and swelling, and by the *horses* unwillingnesse to be touched and handled about that place; if it be an impostumation, then thus it must be cured.

Take Linseed and make it into fine powder, and Wheat-flower, of each halfe a pinte, ordinary Honey one pint, tried Hogs-grease one pound, mixe all these well, and warm them upon a fire, keeping them continually stirring: then take of this Oyntment and spread it upon a linnen cloath, or upon a plaister of leather, the bredth of the swelling onely, and apply it warme to the place, and renew it once every foure and twenty houres, till it either doe breake or be so ripe, as that it may be opened, which must be done downwards, that the corruption may easily issue away, then heale it up with this Salve.

*Eares impa-
stimated.*

Take Mel-Rosarum, Sallet-oyle, and ordinary Turpentine, of each two ounces, incorporate them well together, and make for the *horse* a biggen, or night-cap to keepe on the medicine, taint the fore to the bottome dipped in this Oyntment, and apply also a plaister of the said stufte upon the fore, renewing it every day till it be whole and sound: * * But if the Impostumation be broken of its own accord before you doe perceiue it, then

Take oyle of Roses, Venice Turpentine, and common Honey, of each like much, mixe them well together

together, & so making it bloud-warm upon a few embers or coales, dip some black Wooll in the medicine, and so stop up that *ear* therewith which is grieved, renewing it once a day till it be whole. * * But if the *eaes* be onely inflamed, then stop of this aforesaid medicine into them, and it will both ease him, and take away the inflammation. * * Another.

Take of Pepper made into fine Powder dist. tried Hogges-grease one spoonfull, the juyce of Rue one handfull, the strongest white Wine-vinegar two spoonfull, beate all these very well together, and if the Swelling, Impostumation, or Inflammation, be either in the *Eares, Face, Head* or *Throat* of the *Horse*, if you take either black Wooll, fine Lint, Flax or Hurds, and dip it into this medicine, and so stop both his *Eares* therewith, and then stitch them up, that it get not forth, renewing it once in two daies, till the swelling be clean gone, your *horse* will be certainly cured * *. But if the grieve be in any other part of the *body*, then with this Unguent you shall annoynt the grieved or swoln place once or twice a day till it depart. * * But if the swelling be neere or about the *Cods* or privy parts, then

First Bathe the place wel with cold water, and after being made dry againe with a cloath, annoynt it with the said Oyntment every day once or twice, and you shall finde it to be a present cure * *. This also cureth the *Ulcer* and *Canker* in the *Nose*, and it is a sure Cure for the *Vives* * *. I have often cured all these maladies with this Receipt.



CHAP. IX.

SECT. I. F.

HIPOPHYLUS.



What cure have you for the Farcin?

Hyppos. Of all the diseases whereunto *Horses* are inclinable, this of the *Farcin* is the most loathsome, most stinking, and the most filthy, wherefore for the same I shall set you down many cures, but first I intend to discourse somewhat of its Nature, and how it comes to a *Horse*; This disease we here in *England* doe for the most part call the *Farcy*, and (*Secundum vulgus*) it is called the *Fashions*, for so Master *Markham* doth stile it; But Master *Blundevile*, the *Italians*, and the *French*, doe give it the name of *Farcin*, to which denomination I doe the rather incline, by reason we take the said name from the *Italians*, and the *French*, for that truly I doe finde that to be the proper name of the said Infirmity, derived from the word *Farcina*, which is a disease most infectious, poysonous, and dangerous, being never so little let alone, or negle&ed. It is a kind of creeping *Ulcer*, beginning with hard knots, and *Pustils*, and after dilating and spreading it selfe

into branches (like a Vine or Ivy) doth not cease from running, untill such time as it hath visited every part and member of the *Body*, for *Quasi Cancer serpi*, it commonly beginning either in a veine, or neere to some *Master-veine*, which feedeth and nourisheth the disease, that is the cause of its diffusion. It is ingendred sometimes of corrupt *blood*, which heats and surfets have occasioned in the *Body*; sometimes by hurts and wounds received, as also by some Canke-rous and poysonous thing, as rusty Spurre, Snaffles, Bits, or the like; it is also taken from another *horse*, which is false into the same disease, also by hewing one *legge* against another, and being smitten with some staffe, whereon are hard knots, and sundry such like means and waies; it comes also to a *Horse* by surfets given him, which finding no other way of avoydance, layes hold of this disease, whereby the *blood*, being overmuch heat, his greafe molten, and his taking a sudden cold, which is most frequent after great heats, then growing in the *body*, and especially in the *blood*, such obstructions, corruptions, and putrefaction, not having any means to vent it selfe, or to avoyde, or evacuate, but by this way onely, by growing into knots, Puffils, Ulcers, or the like, which be so contagious and infectious, so as if but any other *horse* doe but gnaw or lick with his teeth or tongue, upon the place infected, he will be assuredly within a short time after himselfe infected also; and when once a *horse* is stricken or infected with this leprous malady, if he be not presently and skilfully cured, it is as infallible death to him, as if he had either his throat cut, or his *braines* beate out with a *Butchers Axe*; where-

wherefore if in this case your *horse* be visited with this
 sinistrus disease, I could wish you would carefully
 observe two things: the first is, that so soon as you
 doe perceiue this malady to appeare upon him, that
 you presently sequester him from his fellows, into
 some other Stable or stall by himselfe alone, for feare
 he might infect them, for that it is catching; And se-
 condly, to be very diligent in omitting no tyme or
 opportunity, in getting him administred unto for his
 Cure. The signes of this disease are so plaine and fa-
 miliar, as that it needeth no description. I will passe
 to the cure. To the end therefore you may goe the
 more securely to worke, whereby you may make it
 an able and perfect cure, especially if you doe finde
 the Pustils to be malevolent, and greatly inflamed,
 then the first day let him *bloud* in or neere to that *Ma-
 ster vein*, which doth most feed and nourish the *Farcin*,
 then so soon as you have well *bloudied* him, give him
 this purge, *viz.*

Take of Aloes, made into fine powder, one ounce,
 and a quantity of London Triacle, so much as will
 suffice, and of life Hony so much as will suffice, mixe
 these well together, and give it him in a morning
 fasting, and six houres after give him white water,
 neither needeth this *bloudying* him, or purgation, any
 way hinder him from being dressed for his disease,
 for that *bloud-letting* doth but onely hinder it from
 running any further for that time, and the Purge sen-
 deth the disease from the *heart*, to the end it may no
 way annoy that place, wherefore for the perfecting
 of the cure,

Take of oyle de-Bay two ounces, of Euforbium
 made

made into fine powder one ounce, incorporate both these well together, that they may become but one body, then search for the first origen, or spring where the first knots did begin, and so continue searching till you finde out the last, clip away the *hayre* from off and about all these knots, and annoynt them very well with this oyntment once every three daies; and after you have thus dressed him three times, if you doe not finde the *Farcins* to be killed, and that the knots doe not dry up, then bathe the place three daies together with the stale or urine of a Cow or Oxe, and with the herbe called *Lions foot*, in Latine *Leontipodium*, both boyled together, and this will cure him. * *. This medicine I never made use of but once onely, and it cured the *horse* unto which I did administer the same. * *. Another.

Take nine leaves of pot-herbe called *Beetes*, of the smallest but soundest leaves, and nine graines of Bay-salt, beate these very well together to salve, and in a morning before Sun-rising put this medicine in to both his *Eares* by equall portions, and put into them after it a little wooll, to keep in the medicine, and so stich up his *Eares*, and let him stand so with meate and white water 24 houres at the least, then take forth the wooll and stiffe, and he is cured. * *. With this receipt I have cured sundry *horses*. Another. If your *Horse* have a *Farcin* in any of the foure quarters of his *body*, let him bleed well in the *neck veine* fasting, then

Take of Arsenick two ounces, and put it into a piece of new cloth, and binde it up with a piece of new Pack-thred, and fasten it unto the *wayne* of the *Horse*,

Horse, this is to be thus administred, if the *Farcin* be onely in the fore-parts; but if the disease be as well in the hinder-parts as in the fore-parts, then hang also the like quantity of *Arsenick*, made up in a cloth like as was the former, and hang that also upon his *taile*, and the more you ride, work, or travell, and exercise him, the better it will be for his disease, to qualifie and ride the same; and the more spare his dyet be, the sooner he is cured, provided you keep him warm in the *Stable*, and for some time you must give him white water. This cure I did never try, but it was taught me by great *Marisball of Paris*, one who had the repute of a very honest man, and a most skilfull *Ferricr*, who protested unto me that he had perfectly cured many *Horses* with this receipt. Another.

Take white Bran prepared, like as you shall finde prescribed you, *lib. 2. cap. 2. sect. 4. F.* how to make fat a *Horse*, and give it him a day before he is to be dressed, and let him eat it so hot as well he may: continue him to this dyet three mornings together, then let him bleed well in the *necke veine*, but give him no Hay that day he *bleedeth*, but sweet Wheat-straw onely, neither let him either eate or drink in four houres after, and then let his drink be white water. And two daies after his *bleeding*, you shall begin to give him again his Wheat-bran prepared as before, which shall continue for six daies together, during which time you shall give him every evening with his Oats, this powder and these roots following, *viz.*

Take of *Comin*, of *Linseed*, of *Fenugrick*, *Sileris-Montani*, of each two ounces, quick *Brimstone* foure ounces, let all these be powdred, and mixe them well

well, and give it at one time with his Oats, so much as you may put into an egge-shell, the meat being first taken out; let him be thus used daily by the space of six daies. Those daies being ended,

Take the root of Salericke, the root of Tassus-Barbatus, the root of Valerion, and the root of Lappazon, of each like much, chop them all very small, as hearbs to the pot, which being thus well mixed, give them to the *Horse* without Oates if he will eate them, if not, then otherwise in Pils; and when you give him the roots, doe not give him the aforesaid powder, and so continue him with these roots six daies together, which six daies ended, cause him to be *blondied* again on the other side of the *necke*, but then let him not *bleed* so much as before, and order him as before after the first *bleeding*: nor shall you give him either powder or roots, but let him be still kept warm, and have his ordinary allowance of meat, as well of Hay, as of Oats, and then for six daies after, every evening after he hath drunk white water, give him one evening of this powder with his Oates, and the next evening of these roots, and if you finde not the *Farcin* to dry up to your mind, continue then this powder, and these roots for six daies more, and those daies being past, give him good Hay and good Oats, and not any longer the powder, or the roots: and thus following these directions punctually, your *Horse* shall be perfectly cured, and be brought into good state and health again, neither shall the relicks of the *Farcin* remain in any part of his body; and if there be any knots remaining, they shall breake, purge, cleanse, heale, and dry up, the main

main cause being taken and purged away. Of this my selfe had never triall, by reason that many of the ingredients were not easily to be had. Another.

Take black Elebore, and adde to the hearb some of its juyce, put unto it old Boares-grease, and boyle it untill the juyce be quite boyled into it, whereby to bring it to a perfect unguent, with which you shall annoynt and rub the knots, or buttons of the *Farcin*; but before you doe apply this unguent, let the *haire* be shaven or clipped away from and about the knots. * * With this receipt I have cured onely one *Horse*. Another:

Take five or six handfulls of four-leaved Plantane, with the roots, of Bay-salt one handfull, and so much Comin as you may well take up, with your thumb and two fingers, beat the Comin to fine powder, and then stamp the Plantane and Salt well together with the Comin, and after they be well incorporate, let it steepe and infuse 24 houres, then straine and wring it hard, and give the liquor thereof to your *Horse* in a morning fasting, but you must take *blond* from him the day before, and he must stand upon the *Trench* six houres before you give him the said drinke, and you must also put into his *ears* the juyce of Rue, and then stitch up his *ears*, and so let him remain 24 houres; but if the malady shall continue (which I think it will not doe) then must you let him *blond* again, and give him the aforesaid drink. This I never tryed, but he that taught me this, did assure me that there is no kind of *Farcin*, but this receipt will cure. Another:

Take first the hearb *Moly*, it groweth in marish grounds, *Moli* or *Aqua planti-que*.

grounds, you must take 10, 11, 12, or 13. of the roots (or according to the strength, greatnesse or corpulency of your *Horse*) let your roots be in the number, or quantity. Take also of White-wine one pint, then take of bay Salt one handfull (which was never used) and put it into the White-wine, then take of white Wine-vinegar half a pint more or lesse, but first note, you must take the roots of the said *Moly*, and let it be gathered a day before you are to use it; you must onely take the roots thereof, (and cast away the residue) for that they are most usefull, and after you have so done, take these great roots and wash them clean, so as no filth doe remaine upon them, then take the said roots and bruisse them, and steep them in the Wine with the Salt and Vinegar, in an earthen Pipkin, and stop it close that no ayre get into it, and let it infuse so a whole night, then about seven or eight of the clock in the morning, strain it, and give it him to drinke, and after he hath taken it cover him up warm, and let him be walked foure houres; but above all things, you must not give him any Oats in foure daies after, but instead of Oats give him Wheat-bran prepared, and let his drinke be white water; neither must you suffer him to goe forth of the Stable in three or four daies after at the soonest; and then after that you may ride or work him at your pleasure; neither must this drinke be administered warm, but cold. * * This is a known certaine cure among the *Marishals* in *France*, but by reason I could never finde the herb *Moly* growing in *England*, I could never come to practise the cure here; nevertheless I will give you the description of this said hearb *Moly*, and

and how it groweth together with its true Effigies:



It groweth (as I said before) in marish and wet grounds.

Bbb

grounds, it resembleth the hearb called Scolopendion, or Sorrell, onely the leafe is bigger and broader, the flower is like to the white Violet, but lesse, about the bignesse of a purple wild Violet, and it is as white as milke, it smelleth strong like Garlick; its root is little and round, which is most soveraigne to heale the overtures of the *matrix*, being beaten with the oyntment of Ireos, applied as a Pessure or Plaster; *Homer* saith that the god *Mercury* was the first Inventor and finder out of this Plant, and the gods for the excellency thereof, named it *Moly*: see *Theophrastus*, *Paracelsus*, and *Dioscorides*.

Albeit that all these receipts be very good for the *Farcin*, yet are not all *Horses* cured with one and the same medicine; and most certaine it is, that the most infallible way to cure the *Farcin*, is to give him the fire: in the practice not onely of this cure, but of many others also, which are to be administred inwardly, it is greatly behoofesfull that the *Ferrier* be mindfull to observe the strength, age, quality, and ability of the *Horse* to which he is to administer, and accordingly to mixe and apply his Ingredients. Another.

First let him *bloud* on both sides the *necke* and *spurveines*, and let him *bleed* a good quantity, then take *Hemlocke*, *Cinque-foyle*, or *Five-leaved-grasse*, and *Rue*, of each like much; stamp them and strain them, and put the juyce thereof into his eares, and then stitch them up 24 houres, and it is a certain cure.
* * For with this I have cured sundry *Horses*. Another.

First, let him bleed well at the neck-veins, then take
Tri-

Trifora-Magna, and Aloes Platice, of each two ounces, and as much Barly-bran; mixe all these, and dissolve it in an oyle-olive one pinte, and put thereto of white Wine one pinte, and then divide it into two parts or moities, and so give it two mornings together to your *Horse* fasting with a Horn, that is to say, either morning the one moyty: this done, take as much blacke Sope as a Walnut, halfe as much Arsenick in fine Powder, and work them into one *body* to a salve, then with the point of a knife slit or open all the hard knots or pustils, and so put into every of them the quantity of two Barley-torns of this Salve, which will eat forth the cores, and kill the poysonous *humours*, then where you see the wounds, and places red & faire, heale them up by annointing them with fresh Butter molten and made hot, and then strew upon them the Powder of Bolcarmonack. * * * This is a most approved good Receipt, and by my self often practised. Another.

Take the juyce of Rue, and of Aqua-vitæ, of each one spoonfull and a halfe, beat them well together, and by equall portions convey it into both his *eyes*, then stich them up for 24 houres space, and he is infallibly cured. * * * This is an excellent cure, and by me often used. Another.

First wash all the places that be raw or swelled, with Chamberly, or white Wine-Vinegar warmed, then take of Salt one handfull, of white Wine-Vinegar one pottle, of Allum dissolved in the Vinegar one ounce, of Verde-grease and green Copperas, both made into fine powder, of each one pound; melt all these upon the fire, and every day wash the

fores, and places swelled therewith warm, twice a day, morning and evening. This I never did experience, but it was commended unto me by a worthy Knight, who averred unto me that he had cured therewith very many *Horses* of the *Farcin*. He also said that he had cured some with this Receipt following, *viz.*

Take Tarre, Tallow, and Horse-dung, of each so much as will suffice, incorporate all these upon the fire, and annoynt him therewith hot. Another.

Take Hempseed one pound, and bruise it well, then take Rue and Salt, of each one handfull, of the leaves of Mallows two handfulls, boyle all these in fair water, two quarts, unto a moyty, then straine it, and give it your *Horse* bloud-warm, give him of this two mornings, but not two mornings together, but let him stay one morning betwixt, then take a good quantity of Chamberly and Hemlock so much as will suffice, and boyle them well, and wash the fores till they be quite whole, and dried up. * *. This is a very good receipt. Another.

Take the hearb with the root called *Digitalis*, in English *Sope-glove*, alias *Fox-glove*, a good quantity, binde it up into a fine linnen ragge, and if the *Farcin* be in the forepart, of the *Horse*, hang it upon the *maine*, but if in the hinder part, then hang it upon the *taile*, and this will cure him. This I never did experience; But now I will give you for a close, the best and most certaine cure for this disease, that I ever yet knew: and with which I have perfected more rare cures of this nature, then of all the residue before inculcated. And thus it is. Another.

Take

Take of Rue, the leaves and tender tops onely, without any the least stalks, a good handfull, first chop them small, and then stamp them in a Morter to a very oyntment, when they are so well pownded, put thereunto of the purest white tryed Hogs-grease one spoonfull, and so work them together to a perfect salve, or unguent; that done, stop into either *eare* this whole quantity by equall portions, and put a little wooll upon the Medicine, to cause it to keepe in the better, and so stitch up his *eares*, and let him remaine in the Stable foure and twenty houres at the least, and then unstitch his *eares*, & take forth the wooll, and either put him forth to grasse, or else if he be to be wrought, work him, for the more his labour is, & the more spare his diet is, the sooner he is cured.

* * * This I commend to you for the best and most certaine cure that I could ever meet with; for with this Receipt onely, I assure you on my credit, I have cured more then 100 *Horses*, many of which were by other *Ferriers* holden for incurable, and sentenced to be food for *Hounds*. The *French* doe also call the disease, *Mal de ver*.

SECT. 2. F.

Hippoph. I Have heard of another kind of Farcin, called the water-Farcin?

Hippof. Truly Sir, in answer to this, I by observation of this disease doe finde, that there is but onely one kind, albeit I will not deny, but that some one may be more malignant then another, according to the constitution of the *Horse* who is visited there-
with *Wet Farcins*.

with, by reason that *cholera* may be in that *Horse* more predominant then in another *horse*, of any of the other *humors*, for then it commeth forth more dry; but if the *horse* be naturally Rheumatick, then may it appeare more watry and moyst, and so of the residue; but still it is but one and the same infirmity, for more sorts I could never finde. But touching this watry *Farcin*, as you are pleased to term the same, the *French* giveth this name, viz. *la Louppe*, which is in *English* the *Woulfe*, and they gave me the reason why they do so call it, to wit, because it festreth the flesh, eating and corroding therein inwardly, and it beginneth most commonly in the feet, rather then in any other member of the *horse*. And for this disease a famous *French Marisball* of *Paris* gave me this ensuing cure, but I never yet made tryall thereof, viz.

First wash the place, and shave away the hayre, and search the place well with your finger, and let forth the corruption, but be sure you search it to the very bottome.

Take then *Horse-dung*, or *Goose-dung*, *Wine*, *Salt*, and *Vinegar*, of each so much as will suffice, and make thereof a *Salve*, and so *Playster-wise* apply it to the sorance, binding it on, and the third day open it, and dresse it up again as before, and doe this every third day till it be whole; but be sure you doe every time you dresse him, examine the very bottome. This he assured me to be a very perfect cure.

SECT.

SECT. 3. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat is the disease called the Flankes, and how is it cured?

Hippof. This is when a horse hath gotten a wrinch, crick, stroke, or other grieſe in his back, which is called of the French Ferriers, *Flankes*; the cure is this.

First shave away the hayre from the place grieved, *Flankes.* then lay on this charge.

Take Bol-Armonack, Cumfry, *alias* Consolid-Major, Galbanum, Sol-Armoniack, Sanguis Draconis, his own bloud, Burgundy-Pitch, Mastick, Olibanum, of each like much, so much as will suffice; stamp and beat all these together, with Wheat-meale, Vinegar, and the whites of Egges, so much as will suffice, and so make it into a charge, and therewith charge the place grieved, then clap upon the top all along the *chine* and *back* of the Horse, a sheepe-skinne, coming hot from the sheepe, and change it every day, and at three or foure daies end he will be well, but let the charge lie upon the place untill such time as it doe fall away it selfe, and keep him warm.

SECT. 4. F.

Hippoph. **H**ow may a man bring in few daies his Horse to be fat, or at least in good liking supposing him to be sound?

Hippof. Sir, over-much riding and exercise will bring the fattest Horse that ever trode upon the Earth to become poore, bare, and leane, and so will too early

Fat Horse.

early, and too late aydings, bad dyet, evill keeping, lingring after *Mares*, and spending upon them, lingring after grasse, and the like: But if your *Horse* be poore, bare, lean, and feeble, so that his stomach be good to meat, I will give you a receipt, which (if you doe duly observe my rules, justly as I shall deliver them) you shall get him up into *flesh* in twelve or fourteen daies.

Bran prepared.

First therefore take *bloud* from him, if you doe finde it grosse, or Flegmatick, for otherwise he cannot possibly mend; then instead of Oats in the morning, you shall give him Wheat-bran, prepared after this manner. Set over the fire a clean Kettle, and fill it almost full with faire water, and so soon as it boyleth put in your Wheat-bran, and so let it boyle a quarter of an houre at the least; then take it off, and let it stand to coole, and about foure or five in the morning give him of this bran so hot as he can eate it, then for his drink give him of the same water, and at night give him Oates and white water, and let him be kept covered & littered warm; but if it be Summer, let not the Stable be too hot, but temperate, and at night give him with his Oates also the quantity of what you may convey into an Egge-shell of this Powder following, with which you must continue him the space of eight daies, or according as you shall see cause. You must understand that this branne thus prepared is the onely thing which drieth up his naughty, grosse, and corrupt *humours*, and doth the better prepare the body to assume lust, courage, strength and flesh, together with the help of the powder, which is this.

Take

Take of Commin, Fenugrick, Sileris-Montani, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linseed, of each two ounces, Quick-Brimstone six ounces, make all these into powder, of this powder give him every night the quantity of an Egge-shell full, with his Oates, as I have before prescribed, but he must be first watered with white water, which so soon as he hath drunk let his whole *body* be rubbed, then cloathed, and littered, which being done, then give him a small sheafe of Wheat-straw, sweet, good, and well threshed into his Racke, and let him eat thereof by the space of an hour; which done, give him Oates mixed with his powder, which when he hath eaten, give him Hay at your pleasure, remembring to keep him warm, but so as with moderation; and let him be also well rubbed, especially against the hayre, and by this doing you shall soon perceive him to mend exceedingly, but you must put also into his Oates, together with its former powder of Nettle-seed two handfuls every time, for that is the thing which principally will cause him to battle: It will also greatly availe to his amendment, if he be ayred every morning and evening an hour after Sunne-rising, and an hour before Sunne-set, if the weather be warm, and the Sunne doe shine. * * And this I doe assure you is the most exquisite course can be taken, whereby to set up a lean *Horse*, and to make a poor *Horse* fat in little time, and with small charge.

Ccc

SECT.

SECT. 5. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat help have you for the falling of the Fundament?

Hippof. This malady commeth to a Horse sometimes by cold, sometimes through weaknesse and meere poverty, and sometimes by means of a laxativenesse and flux of *blond*, when straining to expell, the Horse is not able, and by that means the *fundament* commeth out, the cure is,

Take white Salt made into very fine powder, strew a little upon the gut, then take a piece of Lard, and first having boyled Mallow-leaves till they be soft, take of these leaves and beat them well with the Lard, and when it is sufficiently beaten make it up like to a *suppository*, and apply it to the place every day once, till it be whole. * * This I have often tried.

Falling of
the fundam-
ment.

SECT. 6. F.

Hippoph. **I** should be very glad to know what you can say of Feavers.

Hippof. Sir, as touching *feavers* in *Horses*, I say that they be as subject to them, as man is, as also that these Feavers are of severall natures, which cannot be denied, which may most easily be distinguished and known, if you please diligently to observe. A feaver commeth many times, either by intemperate riding or travell, or else through bad and unwholsome dyet: and all *Feavers* for the most part have their source from these effects, if you adde thereunto evill ayre.

SECT.

SECT. 7. F.

Hippoph. **W**H^H Hippoferus, how doe you define a Feaver?

Hippof. I define it thus. A *Feaver* is an unnaturall *Feaver* and intemperate heat which beginneth at the heart, *defined.* dilateth it selfe through all the arteries and veines of the whole body of the *Horse*, hindring all his naturall motions: howsoever some *Ferriers* are pleased to make them more sorts, then I will question their *physicall* and learned distinctions, for I could never conclude them but in a few, as *quotidian, tertian, quartan,* and *pestilent*, and yet all these be of one nature, albeit some more malignant then others be, onely a *Hectique feaver* is of a different nature from the former, and so also a *pestilent feaver* may be. Now as touching *feavers* which come in the Spring, Summer, Autumn, or Winter, I cannot see why they should be *feavers* different in nature from these other, for there are not any of these, but may come to a *Horse* in any of these seasons.

SECT. 8. F.

Hippoph. **F**rom whence do *Feavers* proceed?

Hippof. First, Sir you must understand that *Feavers* are of two sorts, that is to say, Ordinary and Accidentall, the ordinary *Feavers* are those that come of surfeits, over-riding, and labour, unwholsome meat, as moyst, raw, mouldy, and musty bread, corne, provender and hay, of what nature,

fort or condition soever; but your Feavers *accidental* come of some terrible stroke or deepe wound, bringing therewith insufferable paine, dolour, and griefto the poore beast; again, your *ordinary* Feavers come oft times by the extream violent scorching of the Sunne, but most commonly in the *canicular* daies, as when your *horse* is abroad at grassie, where is either want of water, or having such as is neither good or wholsome, or else where is want of housing, shelter to goe into, or shady trees to be under, and such kind of *Agues* doe prove for the most part either *Hedick* or *pestilent Feavers*, for by that means his *blood* becommeth inflamed, whereby the *humour of choller* is predominate. Now Sir, if you be pleased to observe strictly and carefully, you shall also finde that Feavers doe come many times also from a quite contrary cause; as from cold taken upon hard riding, or great labour, and by having at such times cold water given him to drink, or by washing or walking, having sweat much, or by being out too late in the grip or gutting in of the evening, or upon day-breaking, especially neere or among fenny, moorish, or marish grounds, by reason that naughty vapours doe arise from such kind of places. *Feavers* also doe accrew to *Horses* when upon hard riding, and great toyle, you give your Horse cold water drawn out of a Well, which being much colder then either River or Pond water, doth more chill the Horse inwardly, whereby he is much more distempered, causing him to quake, and to shake exceedingly after his drinke, which occasioneth crudities, and an evill habit in the stomach, which doth beget and ingenders an

Ague

Ague or Feaver, wherefore after sweating and great labour, I do advise you that whatsoever is given him, be first set over the fire to take away the chilnesse, whereby your Horse may take the lesse dammage, for that Feavers taken of this nature, doe commonly prove pestilent Feavers, whose nature is to infect all his fellowes which are in the same stable or roome with him, if he be not either speedily removed from his consorts, or else suddenly cured; and the reason hereof is most evident, for that when as a Horse hath been all the whole day travelled (especially in the Winter) and brought into the stable all hot and sweating, when in short time after his *blood* and *pores* begin to be settled, and to return to his heart again, and to his intrals, then if you give him cold water, you may instantly perceive him to fall into a formall quivering and shaking for a time, which being once passed over, you shall see him most palpably assume a most extreame and violent burning, and peradventure after falls into a most desperate sweating, whereby is most easie to be found in him a general distemperature throughout his whole body, together with a formall and dangerous Feaver, wherefore if the Ferrier be not the more expert, it may stick closer unto him, and remain longer by him then a bushell of Oats will doe. But a Feaver which doth proceed either from the corruptiō of the *blood*, or from the contagion of the *ayre*, (according as I have before intimated) that I say is most frequent, albeit not so wel known to all *Ferriers*, and I am able to affirm thus much of these kind of *feavers* out of mine own long experience, that they are of that extreame violence, and so malignant, and their poyson of that infinite

infinite force, as that if through their own violence they be not able of themselves to bring the creature visited therewith to his end; yet will these convert their malice into other mortall maladies and diseases, which will in time prove as noxious, to wit, into the Yellowes, Stavers, Glanders, Dropsie, Consumption, Farcin, &c. unto which a pestilent Feaver is evermore the precursor: insomuch as if the Ferrier be not very skilful and cautelous in observing and knowing the true *symptomes* of these kind of diseases, he may easily instead of labouring to effect a Cure, through his misprision, miscarry therein.

SECT. 9. F.

Hippoph. **V V** *What be the true symptomes or signes whereby to know a Feaver?*

Feaver how
to know.

Hyppos. If you doe observe him well, you shall perceive him so soon as he beginneth to be *feaverish*, and when the fit first commeth upon him, to hang or hold down his *head*, and if at first comming it beginneth with a cold fit, then will he quake and tremble, and when his cold fit is over, then will he glow and burn throughout his whole body, his *breath* will be very hot, and he will fetch his winde thick, and his *nostrils* will be very open, and his *flanks* will beat thick; he will forsake his meat, and reele oft times as he goeth, his *eyes* will be swelled, they will water, and be matterative, he will fall away and consume in his *flesh*, his *stones* will hang low, he will desire and offer oft to lie down, and yet being laid he will rise suddenly again, he will have great desire to drink, neither will

will he drink much, and yet you would think that all the water in the Thames would not be sufficient to quench his thirst, for he will covet evermore to keep his mouth in the water, albeit he will drink very little, and his sleep will goe from him. And these are the best, most certaine, and apparent *symptomes* that I doe know of a Feaver.

SECT. IO. F.

Hippoph. **V** *What are the best cures for these ordinary Fevers?*

Feaver
Ordinary.

Hippof. If the Feaver be *quotidian* and daily, then take the yolkes of three new laid Egges, and beat them well with seven spoonfulls of the best Aqua vitæ, and put unto it of ordinary Treacle, a spoonfull, and so making it bloud-warme over a few hot embers, give it him, and then take his back and ride him untill he doe begin to sweate, and then bring him into the stable, and cloath, wispe, and litter him warm, so as he may sweate an houre in the stable, but then coole him by degrees, and let him fast three houres after, but let him *bloud* before you drench him, in the neck and mouth, and give him white water or Mashcs. This drink would be given him one houre before the fit commeth. * * This is very good. Another.

Take white Wine one pinte, of Aloes one ounce, made into fine powder, of Agaricke halfe an ounce, Anniseeds and Licoris, of each one dram in fine powder, and adde thereto of life-Honey one spoonfull, let all these be made warm upon the fire, and so give him

him bloud-warm : then take his back , and ride him into a good sweat, and set him up, cloath him , litter him, and stop well his body, head, and breast, and let him sweat so two houres, then by degrees coole him, and when he is cold let him be well rubbed and cloathed up again warm, but not to sweat any more, and let him stand upon the Trench three houres after his sweating, then unbit him , and wash his tongue and mouth, with Alume, Vinegar, Sage, and water boyled together, that done give him a little Wheat-straw to eate, and an houre after a gallon of sweet, dry, and clean Oats, well dressed and sifted, but lay not all at once before him, but three or foure handfuls at a time continuing thus to feed him, till he hath eaten up his whole gallon, and at night give him a sweet Mash. And the next morning let him bleed at the neck and mouth, the quantity of a quart and lesse, if the bloud be good, but if you doe finde the bloud to be black, thick, hot, inflamed, yellowish, frothy, or otherwise evill coloured, take then from him two quarts, after keep him warm, and let him purge, and for four or five daies after give him either warm Marshes, or white water. * * This I have likewise known to be very good. Another.

First let him bloud in the Neck and Mouth, then. Take Germander, Sallet-oyle, and life-Honey, of each four ounces, of Gumme, Draganet, dry red-Roses, of each one ounce ; put these pounded and chopped very small into good Ale a quart, and warm it, and so give it him, then ride him till he sweat, and order him as in the former cure. Of this I did never make tryall. Another.

Take

Take of the tops of Time one handfull, boyle these in a quart of Beer, untill the Time doe begin to waxe tender, and soft, then strain it, and put to it, of brown Sugar-Candy, in powder two pennyworth, Anniseeds in fine powder one pennyworth, and two pennyworth of ordinary Triacle, when all these are well dissolved over the fire give it your *horse* bloud-warm, but you must remember that you doe let him bloud before you doe give him this drink, in the *neck* and *mouth*. * * This I have often tried and found it right good. * Another.

Take of strong Ale one quart, and of Wormwood halfe a handfull, long Pepper, Graynes, and the powder of dried Rue, of each one ounce, London Triacle two ounces, boyle them to a third part, then take it off, and strain it, that done put into it of brown Sugar-candy in powder, halfe an ounce, and so give it him bloud-warm. * * This at twice giving will certainly cure his Feaver. Another.

Take Stone-Crop, of the juyce thereof four spoonfull, put this juyce into strong Ale one quart, and so give it your Horse, then let him be walked, (if the wind be not too cold and sharpe) an houre, then set him up, & cover him so as he may sweat an hour, then coole him by degrees, and let him drinke no cold water by any means, and let his Provender be good, old, dry and well sifted Oats, but against the fit cometh (whether the Feaver be *Quotidian*, *Tertian*, or *Quartan*) let him be kept fasting, for the longer he is fasting, and more empty upon his sicke daies, the sooner will his Feaver leave him. * * This is a well approved Receipt, and let this suffice for ordinary

Feavers, provided that when his fits be gone from him, and that he appeareth more lightsome and well, it will be very good and wholsome for him if you cause him to be had abroad, and walked warm covered, and so ayred in due time, in the warm Sunne, and that will greatly comfort him, and revive his spirits.

SECT. II. F.

Hippoph. **V** *What say you now to the Feaver Hectique?*

Hippof. I say Sir, it is a most dangerous and mortall Feaver, and so malignant, as that if a skilfull Ferrier be not with him in time, it is certain death, and first it beginneth with a consumption in the flesh; it proceedeth of a hot humour ingendred first in the stomach, which too much Physick hath occasioned, and by taking away of too much bloud from him in his youth without necessity, wherefore it is a thing most perillous to take bloud from young Horses upon very slight cause, and not to be over ready with Physick, but only in case of great necessity. The signs to know this Feaver from any other, are to look into his mouth, and to draw forth his tongue, & you shal finde both his mouth and tongue raw, and marvellous hot, and having little appetite to meat, his flesh will consume and waste, and seem loose, if you strike him with your hand upon the buttocks, the flesh thereof will quiver and quake, and he will be continually subject to quaking and shaking all his whole body over: besides he will be very much inclined to sweat as he

standeth in the stable. The cure is. First to make this lotion for his mouth.

Take of running water or Well-water two quarts, and put thereto of Sage, of Yarrow, of Ribwort, of Plantane, of Bramble-leaves, and of Hony-suckle-leaves, of each one handfull, with common Hony one spoonfull, boyle all these to the consumption of one moyty, and a little before you take it from the fire put to it the quantity of a wal-nut of Allum, and two spoonfuls of Vinegar; when that is dissolved take it off and draine the water from the hearbs, or else sleightly straine it, which water you shall keepe for your use, and when you would wash his mouth therewith, fasten to a stick a ragge, and so wash his mouth and tongue twice or thrice a day, and this will make his mouth well again; or else if you doe wash his mouth with the Syrrup of Mulberies, it is very wholsome and good. * *. After give him this drinke.

Take of Aloes one ounce powdred, of Garlick half *Feaver*
 an ounce, Anniseeds and Licoris of each halfe an *Hollique:*
 ounce, make first your Aloes, Anniseeds, and Licoris into fine powder, and after bruisse your Garlicke a little, putting thereto of brown Sugar-Candy three ounces, in powder, and adde thereto of white Wine one pint; warm this, and so give it your Horse, then let him be ridden a little, and so set him up warm, and let him be set upon the Trench three houres before, and three houres after, and then either give him sweet Hay or green Corn, or the leaves of Sallowes, and towards night give him a sweet Mash, and give him this drink every other day, for three mornings,

continuing him with Mashcs or white Water, and let his Oates be very well sifted, and in short time, he will doe well again. * *. With this receipt I have cured sundry Horses, but then forget not to wash his mouth daily with the aforesaid lotion. But if in all these severall Feavers you doe finde him either to be coltive, or very hot in his body, then you may doe well to administer that Clyster prescribed you in *lib. 2. chap. 6. sect. 2. Clyster 2. letter C.*

S E C T. 12. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat say you now to Fever Pestilent?
 Hippof. It is a disease most contagious, for it is so malignant, as that it will infect so many Horses as be in the stable where he standeth, and it proceedeth from one of these two causes, *wiz.* either from an infectious ayre, or from the corruption of the bloud, inflamed by meanes of intemperate riding, and exercise. The signes are these, the Horse will hang down his head in the Manger, as if he slept, his eyes will water very much, and Inflammations will arise at the roots of the eares, as if he had the Vives.

Fever
 pestilent.

The best cure I ever knew was this, with which I have cured many Horses visited with a pestilent Fever; first let him bleed well in the Neck-veine, reserving the bloud in a clean bason, which when it is cold will be very bad, and il-coloured, then wash his mouth with the lotion specified in the precedent Section. Secondly apply to the Temples this Playster.

Take of Camamile, of Goats-milke, of the juyce of Sage, of Sallet-oyle, of white Wine-vinegar of each
 foure

four spoonfull, of Red-rose-leaves dried one handfull, which must be either of a Red-rose-cake, or otherwise Red-rose-leaves dried; beat them all in a Morter till they become one body, & so thick as that you may spread it playster-wise, upon a linnen cloath, then strew upon the Playster two or three Nutmegs made into fine powder, then make it good and hot, putting the backside of the Playster into a Pewter-dish, over a Chafing-dish and coales, and so administer it warme to the Horse; for his drinke, let it be such water wherein have been boyled Violet-leaves, Mallows, and Sorrell, but if the fit doe hold him violently, then.

Take of London-Triacle three ounces, and dissolve it in Muskadine one pint, and squeeze into it the juyce of two or three good Lemons, and so administer it with a horne: and this will presently put the fit from him, for the present. The nature of this Fever is so malignant, and so contagiously hot, as that it will furre the mouth exceedingly, and cause ulcers and sores to breed in the mouth and throat: wherefore you shall doe the more carefully, if every day you doe look into his mouth, and if you can perceive it to be furred, and clammy, then faile you not to wash his mouth and tongue, either with the Syrrup of Mulberies, or the lotion water taught you in the precedent Section; and if through his great heat you doe finde your Horses body to be costive, then shall you administer this Clister.

Take of new Milke, and of Sallet-oyle, of each halfe a pinte, and of the decoction of Mallows, and of Violets of each one pinte, adding thereto of Seneg
one.

one ounce, and of Century halfe an ounce, administer this Clister blood-warm, and by thus ordering your Horse, you will infallibly cure him of his *feaver pestilent*; for I my selfe have cured many, and I never failed in any one. * * Provided you doe give him during the time of his physick, continually morning and evening, either sweet Mashes, or white water, and be also dieted and ordered as is fitting for a Horse that is in physick.

SECT. 13. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat Disease is that which of some is called the Flying-Worm?

Ver volant.

Hippof. This malady is the same which the French *Marishals* doe call *ver volant*, which we in *England* doe call a *Tetter* or *Ring-worm*, and by reason it runneth up and down the body upon the skinne, it is called by the name of the *Flying-worm*. It commeth by a heat in the blood, whereby is ingendred a billious, sharpe or hot humour which breedeth to a *Tetter* or *Ring-worm*, but most commonly it seizeth the rump of the Horse, running down all along the joynts, till it get into the taylor, where I have known it to remaine so long, untill such time as it came to be a *Canker*: but yet sometimes again, it will seize some fleshy part of the body of a Horse, and so torment him through its continuall itching, as that the Horse will (with frequent rubbing himselfe against posts, pales, trees, and walls, &c. as also with his teeth (if he can come to the place) bring away the hayre, yea the skinne and flesh also. And this disease many ignorant Ferriers have

have taken to be nought else but the louse of a Hog, which to kill or destroy, they onely apply a little sope; but I have often known it to prove another thing, *viz.* a formall *Ring-worm* or *Tetter*. It is easily known by the falling away of the hayre, by reason of the Horses continuall scrubbing when it is in the fleshy part; but if it get into the joynt betwixt the top of the rumpe and the tayle, then you shall know it by a kind of scab, which you may with your finger feele, and if you scrape or picke it away, then will issue forth by little and little a kind of thin water, which being let long to runne, will in time runne down into his tayle, from joynt to joynt, and there become a *Canker*, as I said before; wherefore to prevent this inconvenience, if the *Tetter* be in the joynt, then

Take of Precipitat two drams, and put it into a small Viall-glasse, with faire water, much more then will cover the powder, keeping it close stopped, and with this water wash the place every day once, and it will infallibly cure it. And alwaies so soon as you have dressed the sorance with this water, and stopped it up again close, then shake it together, and so let it remain untill its next dressing, which ought to be twice a day. But if the *Tetter* or *Ring-worm* be in any fleshy part, it is killed by bathing the sorance in the juyce of Sothern-wood, Maudlin, and Rue, of each like much, stamped together and strained, and so let the place be washed and bathed therewith every day once or twice, till it be whole.* * I have thus cured many *Tetters*.

Flyingworms
or *Tetter*.

SECT. 14. F.

Hippoph. **V** **V** *Hat is good to keep a Horse that he be not tormented with Flies?*

Hyppos. These *Flies* are a vermine which are more bold then welcome to a Horse, for what by their buzzing, their biting, and stinging, they doe infinitely annoy and afflict the poore beast, causing him many times to falter in his travell, and lose his pace, and most commonly through his nodding and other evil postures and gestures, provoked by these *Flies*, they cause him so to fret, as to lose his rain and comely carriage of his body, whereby he hath much been undervalued; besides in his travell these *Flies* do so cause him to fret and fume, that he both overtoyleth himself in his way, causing him to sweat so much, as that he losing his mettle, hath many times thereby inflamed his bloud, and brought upon himselfe sickness, together with a distemperature throughout his whole body. So likewise being at grasse, at what time the *Flye* is too busie, they doe provoke him to runne, and to scope about, by which means he being many times very full, it causeth crudities and raw digestions to arise in his stomach, which breedeth surfeits, or other maladies; wherefore for prevention thereof,

Take the leaves of Gourdes, Punnions, or wilde, or garden Cucumbers, stamp them, and strain them, and with the juyce thereof wash your Horse all over, and the *Flies* will not come nigh him. * * * Of this I have made often triall. Another.

Take an Apple of Colliquintida, and slice or shred it

it into small pieces, and boyle it in Oyle de Bay, and so annoynt your Horſe therewith, and the Flyes will not approach him. * * This is alſo good. Another.

Take Mallowes, ſtamp and ſtrain them, and with the juyce thereof waſh your Horſe, and it will keep away the Flies. * * This is an approved good thing alſo. Another.

Take Verdegreaſe made into very fine powder, and boyle it in Vinegar, and waſh him therewith, being carefull that none get into his eyes or eares. * * This is the beſt, and will laſt longeſt.

SECT. 15. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to mollifie the foot of a Horſe?

Hippof. If your Horſe hath been foundred, and that after being cured, his ſoles and hoofes do waxe dry and hard, they be either ſhrunk, or in perill of ſhrinking, then firſt take off his ſhooes, and let him be pared ſomewhat cloſe, but not too neere; which done, with Bee-waxe molten annoynt the ſoles with the ſaid molten Waxe, with a Goole-feather, and ſo ſet on his ſhooes againe, then three daies after.

Take tryed Hogs-greaſe and Tarre, of each foure ounces, of fat Pitch, and of Turpentine, of each two ounces, melt and mixe all theſe together, and firſt ſtop his feet therewith, and after annoynt the coffin of the hoofes good and thick with the ſame receipt. And this is the beſt mollifier can be had in a cure of this nature. * * I have often uſed it.

Feet to mollifie.

SECT. 16. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat remedy have you for the Fig in the foot of a Horse?

Hippes. This disease is so called by reason of that naughty flesh which groweth upon the frush or heele, which is in likenesse and shape of a Fig, from whence this malady and sorance taketh its denomination; and the French also give it the very same Epitheton, viz. *la Figne*, which signifieth a *Fig*. It commeth by means of some hurt which the Horse hath formerly received in his foot (which was not well healed) by some naile, stub, thorn, bone or stone, and oft times by some over-reach, upon the heele or frush. It is apparent to the eye, and therefore needs no other Remonstrance. The cure is,

Figge in the foot.

Cut away the hoofe, so as there may be a convenient space betwixt the sole and the hoofe, to the end the *Fig* may the more easily be cured, then put to the sorance a piece of sponge which you must binde close upon the *Fig*, which will eat it off to the very roote, then heale up the sore with the green Oyntment taught you in *lib. 2. chap. 10. sect. 4. G.* * * This I have found good. Another.

Cut away the *Fig* close, either with your Incision-knife, or else burn it off with a hot Iron (which is the better way) and so lay unto it for two daies after tried Hogs-grease to take away the fire.

Take then the tops of the most angry young Nettles you can finde, pound them very small, and so lay them upon a linnen cloath just the bignesse of the

Figs

Fig, then take the powder of Verdegreece, and strew it upon the chopped Nettles (which must be done before you lay it to the sorance) and so binde it upon the sorance, renewing it every day once, till the hoofe have recovered the sore. * * This I doe know to be a most certaine cure, for it never did faile me.

SECT. 17. F.

Hippoph. **B**Ut now what say you to a Fistula? how doe you cure that?

Hippof. A *Fistula* is a hollow Ulcer which maketh its way crooked, proceeding oft times from naughty and malignant humours; sometimes it is ingendred from some wound which hath not been well healed; sometimes it commeth by means of a stripe, which having been strongly laid on, that it hath bruised the flesh to the bone, whereby it hath putrified inwardly, and either brake forth of it selfe, or was opened by the Ferrier; and thus it commeth to be a *Fistula*; sometimes it commeth by a wrench, or pinch with a Collar in drawing, or by being wrung by the tree of a bad Saddle; and sometimes it gendreth of its own accord by the means of peccant and bilious humours, which hath long lyen lurking in the body of the Horse. The signes how to know it are so manifest, as that it needeth not an *Eccc*. The way how to cure it, is to search to the bottom either with a probe of lead, or else with some other thing which will bend and yeeld which way soever the concavity of the sorance leadeth it: and when you have found the bottome thereof, let it be opened downwards, if it may possibly

bly be done, to the end the corruption may the better issue from the place; then taint for two or three daies with tried Hogs-grease, thereby to cause the hole to be the wider, and then inject this water following:

Fistula.

Take of Sublimate, and of Precipitat, of each so much as will lie upon a three pence, of Alum, and of white Coperas, of each three ounces, burn all these in an earthen pot, but first rub the bottom with a little Oyle, that it may not burn there; this done, burn them altogether, then take of faire cleare water, two quarts, boyle this water first by it selfe, and scum it in the boyling, then take it from the fire, and put in as much of this powder as will lie upon a shilling at twice, and thus it is made. But if you be desirous to make this water of more strength and efficacy, take then fair water, & Coltrough or Smiths water, of each like much, and of white Wine-vinegar a third part, and with the ashes of Ashen-wood, make lye of them, with the water and Vinegar, and so make your water with this powder and lye, and the former ingredients, according as before is taught you. Inject this water with a Syringe into the sorance, and in short time it will both kill the Fistula, and heale it up. * * This is a most approved and infallible cure. Another.

Take of the best Honey one pint, of Verdigreecce one ounce, make it into fine powder, and so boyle them together upon soft fire three quarters of an houre; that done, straine it into a Gally-pot, and so keepe it for your use. * * This is a most precious unguent wherewith to taint a Fistula or poll-evill, for it

it goeth down to the bottom, it eateth away all dead and evill flesh, whereby to cause that the carnifying flesh may heale the better. * * This I have often tried. I have also another Ægyptiacum, which I make thus.

Take Honey one pinte, white Wine-vinegar halfe a pinte, Allum three ounces, and Verdigreece finely powdred, one ounce and halfe, boyle all these together till it be thick; this is a good Ægyptiacum. But if you desire to make it yet stronger, then put to these Ingredients of Mercury sublimate in fine powder one ounce, and of Arsnick three scruples powdred also, and so boyle them with the former Ingredients. This last will kill any Fistula or old ulcer whatsoever being dressed therewith: but the other which is made onely of Vinegar, Allum, and Verdigreece, may be applied to a Fistula in the mouth, without prejudice to the Horse. * * Of both these I have made often triall.

SECT. 18. F.

Hippoph. **H**ave you not some good water beside, wherewith to wash a Fistula or old sore?

Hippes. I can give you a most excellent water, which is this.

Take white Wine-vinegar four pints, of Camphire *Fistula* and of Mercury-Precipitate, of each halfe an ounce, *water.* green Treacle three ounces, red Sage, Yarrow, and Rib-wort, of each one handfull, of Honey, and of Hogs-grease, of each halfe a pound, boyle all these together untill the one halfe be consumed, and then straine it, and so wash and cleanse the wound with the

the liquor.* * This is speciall good. Another no whit inferiour to the former.

Take of Coltrough-water, four quarts, first boyle it by it selfe a good while, and scumme it so long as any scumme doth arise, then straine it through a fine cloth into a clean pot, and throw away the grounds, which will be black and naught, then wash the Post-net clean wherein it was boyled, and put in your water again. Then take of white Coperas, of Allum and of Verdegreece, of each one pound, beat them all into fine Powder, and put them into the water, and boyle them all together, and when it is boyled as much as will suffice, which will soon be done, let it stand to settle awhile, then poure the cleare into a glasse, being first cold enough, and so keep it for your use. But the powder which remaineth in the bottome, you may dry and keepe in a box by it selfe, for it will heale and dry up any sore or Ulcer. This water being injected with a syringe of Wood or Pewter will cure any *fistula* whatsoever, if it may come to the bottome thereof. * * Of this water I have had great experience. But you must understand that these severall Waters will onely kill the cankerous humour of the *Fistula*, and therefore after the malice thereof is quelled, you must heale up the sorance with the greene Oyntment prescribed you in *lib. 2. chap. 10. sect. 4. G.* or else with some carnifying Salve or Unguent. Another.

Search the depth thereof with your Probe, as before is taught you, but be certain you finde the bottome, then if the bottom be where you may boldly make incision, doe it, and that so wide as that you may

may thrust in your finger to feele whether any bone or gristle be perished, or whether there be any spungy, loose, dead, or proud flesh therein, which must first be gotten forth either by incision, or by corrosive; then take of common Hony foure ounces, and of Verdigreese one ounce, made into fine powder; boyle these together, keeping it alwaies boyling, and stirring it till it look red, then with a taint of Hurds taint it to the bottome, and make it so fast that it get not forth, and renew the taint every day once, till it have done mattering, making the taint every day shorter then other, and sprinkle upon it a little slaked Lime. But if you cannot come to taint it to the bottome of the *fistula*, then take strong Lye, Honey, Roch-Allum, white Mercury, of each as much as will suffice, and boyle them together, and inject it to the very bottome of the *fistula*, and it will kill it. * * But if the *fistula* be in the head, then

Take the juyce of Houfeleeke, and dip a locke of black Wooll into it, and put the same into his eares, and so stitch them up, renewing it every day till it be whole. This cure hath been highly recommended unto me, but I never had opporunity to make prooffe thereof. Another.

Take Roman Viterall, Roch-Allum, and Rose-water, of each two ounces, boyle all these on a quicke fire, till they come to be as hard as a stone, then beat it to fine powder, and when you dresse the sore, make a taint, which being dipped in Unguentum Ægyptiacum, rowle it then in this powder, and so convey the end of your taint down to the very bottome of the *fistula*. This is the best way also to cure a *poll-evil*, and

and this powder being laid upon an old sore, will both heale and dry it up. * *. This I only made twice proof of; the first time to a *fistula*, and the second time to *poll·evil*, both which cures I perfected. But now you would gladly know how to ripen and breake a *fistula*, wherefore

Take Brook-lime, Mallowes, Assinart, of each like much, boyle them in old Chamberlye, till the hearbs be very soft, and apply these hearbes to the swelling, neither doe you renew it in two or three daies, and then it will both ripen and breake any impostume. * * This I have often used, and found very good. And let this suffice for this malady.

SECT. 19. F.

Hippoph. **N**ow let us come to the Feet, how doe you cure the Fetlock being hurt?

Fetlock hurt

Hippof. If this sorance commeth by any wound, by the biting of a Dogge, or by being cast in a Halter, then the best way to cure the same is,

Take unslaked Lime, and the yelke of an Egge, of each like much, beat them together to a salve or unguent, then mixe therewith the juyce of one head of Garlick, and a little foot, and with this annoint the sore till it be almost whole, then to *skinne* the same.

Take Sallet-oyle, and oyle of Roses, of each one ounce, of Turpentine three ounces, and of new wax one ounce, melt them all together, and adde to it a fourth part of the powder, Verdegrease, and herewith annoynting the sore, in few daies it will heale it, and *skinne* it up very soundly. * *. This is a very well appro-

approved Receipt. But if your Horse have gotten a fore foot by means of any cannell-nayle, or bruise, by treading upon a stone, which after rankleth inwardly, or by other accident; then first raise the skinne with your Cornet, and lay upon the sorance, Wheat-flower and Bores-grease well incorporate together, and dresse him therewith twice a day, for two daies together, and at the second daies end,

Take the powder of Quick-lime, Sope, and Tallow, and mixe them well together, and for three daies *Froathy or weeping hoof.* or more apply it to the place; dressing it also twice a day, then wash the wound with hot Vinegar, and put upon it Caprinell, till it be whole. This I never tried. But if the hoofe doe weep, or froath by sending forth thinne, watry, or froathy stuffe; then open the top thereof with your Cornet, so as the wound may become hollow round about the extremities thereof, so far forth as that you may come to the Master-veine to break it in sunder; which done, let it bleed at pleasure what it will, and when the veine hath stanch'd, fill up the wound with Salt finely powdred, then take Hurds, and steepe them in Vinegar, and so stop the wound therewith, and bind thereto a cloath to keep the same from falling away, and it will cure it. * *
But if the sole be loose, and in danger to fall away, draw it round twixt the sole and the hoofe with your drawing Iron, and so take out the sole quite, and then suffer his foot to bleed well, then apply to it this plaister.

Take the whites of Egges, and beat them a little, and so laying them upon Hurds, apply it to the foot, and bind it on, that it fall not off, and let it remain on

so by the space of two daies, which ended open it, and wash the foot with strong Vinegar warmed, and then fill the sole with the powder of Salt and Tartar mixed together, and so binde it up with Hurds steeped in strong Vinegar, and thus dresse it till it be whole. These two Receipts were taught me by a famous Ferrier of *Paris* in *France*, but I never had occasion to make use of it, howbeit I esteem them to be very good. But if your Horse be foundred in the feet, and that he hath not been foundred above four daies, then with this ensuing Receipt you may easily set him upright, and make him sound again in four daies more. The Cure is this.

*Foundring
in the feet.*

First, let him blood in the Neck, Breast, and Spur-veines, and take from him of blood two quarts, which you must receive in a Bason, or other clean Vessel, with which make this Charge as followeth.

Take the blood, and put into it eight new laid Egges, shels and all, beat them well with the blood, put to it of Bole-armonacke in fine powder halfe a pound, strong white Wine-Vinegar one pint, Sanguis Draconis three ounces, in fine powder, make this up with Wheat-meale good and thicke, so much as will suffice, with this charge his Backe, Reines, Breast, Thighes, Fetlocks, and Soles, and spread two cloathes Plaister-wise, good and thick, and apply them to the Coffin of his Hoofes, and bind the fore-legges above the knees good and streight, with broad Filleting, or Listes, then ride him two houres upon a hard way, which if it be paved or pitched is the better, his feet having been pared reasonable neer before hand, and when you doe bring him into the stable, let his feet be stopped with this Charge.

Take

Take Rie, or Wheat-branne, Oxe or Cow-dung, Sheepes-suet, Turpentine (which must be put in last) let your Sheepes-suet be of the fat of the loyne of Mutton, and minced very small; melt and beat all these upon the fire, and mixe them very well in the heating, and then put in your branne to make it into a stiffe paste, all which being through hot, then last of all put in your Turpentine, and so incorporate all very well together, with this stop your Horse, who being thus three or foure daies charged and stopped, ridden, and kept warm, and not suffered to drinke cold water, but either Mashes, or White water, he will be found in foure or six daies. * * This is a most excellent Receipt, for with it I have recovered many foundred Horses. If it be a dry foundring, especially with too long standing in the Stable, then first pare him somewhat neere, and let him bleed well in the Toe-veines, then.

Take Eggs and rost them blew hard, raked up in the hot embers, and together with the powder of Comin stop his feet therewith so hot as they may be taken out of the embers, and put over the sole a piece of leather, with splents close, to keep the Egges that they come not forth.

Take then a great Onyon, pill and stampe it, and let it infuse or steepe foure and twenty houres together before, in the strongest white Wine-vinegar you can get, so much as will suffice, so that it may be in a readinesse against you have stopped your Horse, which must be given him to drinke with a horne fasting, and after let him be warm covered, littered, let him stand upon the Trench three houres, and after

that you may give him meat, and white water. * * *
 This is a most approved good cure. If your Horse
 have been long foundred, as a moneth or better, to
 make a perfect cure, and to set him up sound again, it
 is needfull the soles of his feet be taken out, by which
 meanes new and better will come in their roome,
 wherefore when you do intend to take them off, have
 in a readinesse these things, viz.

Foundred
long.

Take the tender tops of Ifope three handfulls,
 pound them to a mash in a Morter, wherewith to
 stanch his bleeding, then have also further in a readi-
 nesse this receipt.

Take Snayles in the shels, and breake the shels so
 much as will suffice, and take forth the Snayles, and
 reserve them, then take Bay-salt one handfull, and of
 the tendrest tops of the angriest red-Nettles you can
 finde, two or three good handfulls, beat them with
 your Snayles and Salt in a Morter to a very Salve,
 then take out the sole, then presently stanch the blee-
 ding with your Ifope, and so soon as the foot leaveth
 bleeding, apply to the foot your other Medicine; of
 Snayles, Salt, and Nettles, and so bind up the foot
 with cloathes, and so let it remaine foure and twenty
 houres, then open it, and heale up the sorance with
 your greene Oyntment taught you in *lib. 2. chap. 10.*
sect. 4. and within two daies you shall see a new sole
 comming. * * * This is right good.

Foundred in
the feet and
body.

But if he be foundred both in feet and body at
 once, and the same time, as falleth out oft times,
 through indiscreet and immoderate riding, by a most
 violent heat given him, whereby the bloud is be-
 come inflamed, and his greafe molten: then first rake
 him,

him, and give him the Clister prescribed you in *lib. 2. chap. 11. sect. 8. G. Clister 8.* and the next day let him blood in the neck-veine to a good quantity, referring the blood, and keeping it from clotting, by continuall stirring till it be cold; reserve I say of this blood halfe a pint, by it selfe, to put into his drinke, and the residue keepe wherewith to make a charge; Now for his drink, let it be thus made.

Take of good Sack one pint, of the blood you saved for his drink halfe a pint, of London Triacle, and of Diapente, of each one spoonfull, and of mans ordure, warm as it commeth from him, the quantity of a wall-nut, brew and mix all these well together, and give it him to drinke bloodwarm. This drinke thus given, Charge him with this Charge.

Take the residue of the blood you kept, and put unto it twelve new laid Egges with their shels, and beat them together, then put thereunto of Bolearmoniack in powder four ounces, Vinegar half a pint, Sanguis Draconis in powder three ounces, and with Wheat-meale thicken it to a convenient Charge. Charge his Backe, Breast, Loynes, Legs, and Feet herewith, both above and beneath the knees, laying it on against the hayre. This done, then

Take unflaked Lime, and Orpiment, of each like much, q.s. and dissolve them in running water, and let it stand two good houres, and after it is thus prepared, take as much Matrossetum as will bring it to a thick substance, which being made good and hot, annoynt the coffins of his hooves therewith, especially about the cronets, and stop also the soles of his feet with the same medicine, and if you let him blood in the

the Toe-veines well, it will be the better, and he will be the sooner, better, and sounder cured. * * This way I have cured two Horses foundred in the body and feet, never having applied it but unto those two onely. But if your Horse be hoof-bound, then

Take Turpentine and sheeps-suet, of each halfe a pound, Waxe a little, as much as will suffice, Sallet-oyle halfe a pint; boyle all these together, but put in your Turpentine last, and as these boyle, keepe them with continuall stirring, and herewith annoynt his loofes once a day well, or once in two daies, and he will doe well. * * But if it be but an ordinary heat in the feet newly taken, then

*Hoofe
bounden.*

Take Wheat bran and Hogs greafe, and make them to a Poultesse, and apply it as well to the coffins, as the soles, and he will be well againe. These two latter receipts a worthy Knight taught me, but as yet I never made use, but of the former, which I have found to be very good.

SECT. 20. F.

Hippoph. **B**ut yet Hipposerus, you have not shewed me how this malady commeth.

Hippof. That was but forgotten Sir, I will now therefore doe it. A foundring in the feet commeth evermore after great and over violent labour, whereby the whole body is become distempered, the peccant and malignant humours stirred, the bloud inflamed, and the greafe molten, which falling down into his feet, there setleth, and in a short time after, to wit, in 24 houres the poor creature is hardly able to stand, or

or if he doe, it is after a very feeble manner, holding his foure feet together, so as you may easily with your hand throw him to the ground; besides he will stand trembling, quaking, and shaking, as if he had a shaking ague, nor would he stand at all, unlesse he be enforced, for the soles and coffins of his feet will be so sore, his joynts and sinews so stiffe and benumbed, that he cannot stand but with very much anguish and paine: wherefore if he may have his minde, he would alwaies be lying, and his whole body will be distempered, and so much abound with heat, as rather to desire cold water, rather then meat, which if it be given him, then will he quake and quiver anew, and be in such pangs for the time, as that you would think he would assuredly die. This disease commeth also to a Horse by being watered when he is very fat, and ridden till he doe sweat, causing him to take sudden cold therewith: also after a great heat taken, to be set up without exercise upon the cold Planks, without litter, or to be washed, or walked after great labour, the Horse being very hot and ketty, (for this infirmity falleth most commonly upon fat Horses, but very seldom upon lean) also to water your Horse in shallow places, or waters where the water ascends not higher then his *pasternes* by which means through the sudden coldnesse of the water at his feet, causeth the molten grease descending unto the feet, to cake and congeale, which is the prime ground of this malady. And this not onely my selfe, but all the most perite Ferriers doe with an unanimous assent acknowledge. And therefore I doe admonish you and every man, who is a Horses friend,

First,

1 First, to be very carefull not to exercise his Horse too soon after his taking up from grasse.

2 Secondly, whilst he is very fat, that he do not over-travaile, over-labour, or over-toyle him.

3 Thirdly, that having travelled hard, and to prevent his foundring, let him be more gently ridden an hour before he commeth to his lodging, to the end he may be coole, and the more free from danger.

4 Fourthly, if one hour before you get to your lodging, you ride him into some River, or other watring place up to the belly, (but not deeper) then water him by degrees, still betwixt every draught, stirring and removing him a little, it would not be amisse; but then so soon as you be come forth of the water, it were very good you did continue him in the same pace, going neither faster or slower, (like as I have before inculcated) it will be the better also, and your Horse out of danger of foundring.

5 Fifthly, forbear evermore (especially if your Horse be heated) to water him in any shallow place.

6 Sixthly, beside his being warme set up with litter enough, let him have store of rubbing, as well of his legs as body, for it is a most wholesome thing, it dissolveth molten grease very much, and it doth dissipate and send away bad humours.

7 Lastly, picking and stopping of his feet in time of journeying, and after is very good and profitable. And thus have I shewed by what means this malady commeth to the Horse, howsoever many other waies there are, which I have touched, by reason they are so vulgarly knowne to every man, and therefore your selfe cannot be ignorant of them.

SECT. 21. F.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you helpe the foundring in the body?

Hippof. This commeth oft times by eating too much Provender whilst the Horse is yet very hot, suddenly given him after great labour, whereby his meat not being well digested, (from whence) doth occasion crudities, raw digestion, and the evill habit in and about the stomach, whereby many ill humours are ingendred, which will soon be diffused throughout the whole body, by which means the very vigor and strength of the Horse becommeth to be much decayed, and in a manner quite lost, enfeebling every joynt and member in such wise, as to lose almost the use of going, and being once laid not able to rise again without help; nor can he either dung or stale, but with mickle paine. Foundring in the body commeth also some times, when by travelling and the Horse very hot, you suffer him then to drinke his fill of cold water, and after doe not give him exercise enough, which might warme the same in his belly; wherefore it is most certain that the greafe being molten, and the bloud inflamed, the humours being stirred and dissolved, will presently resort to its center, which if they once settle in the body, it must be in and about the heart, if not, they then must downe lower; to wit, either to the legges or feet, and there residing, ingender these and such like maladies, whereof we have entreated; wherefore by eating and drinking out of its due season, begetteth an evill habit

habit of the stomach, so as if oftentimes present cure be not had, the Horse becommeth desperately sicke, which sicknesse will mathematically usher in his death. Now the signes whereby to know when a Horse is foundred in his body be these: the hayre will stare, and he will be very chill, he will shiver and shake after cold water, & whilst he is in drinking the water some of it will issue out of his nose, and after two or three daies his legges will swell, especially his hinder legges, and after a while they will begin to pill, he will begin to have a dry cough at first, but after it will be more moyst, and then his eyes will water, and his nose runne with white flegmaticke stufte, and he will forsake his meat, and his head will so much pain him, as that he will not be able to hold it out of the manger, and seem as if he were alwayes sleeping, &c.

SECT. 22. F.

Hippoph. **F**rom whence proceedeth this word Foundring?

Hippof. From the French word *Fundus*, which is melting, which word we many times use in our Language, and therefore when through extreame toyle and labour of riding or other exercise, the grease is dissolved, and falls to running, we say then that the Horses grease is molten, and that he is foundred; for whereas the French calleth foundring in the body *Morsundu*, it is none other thing with us then plaine foundring, or a surfeit given in the body of a Horse. As for the cure, the best way is, and most agreeable to Art, to purge him, but not in that violent manner, as we

we use in case of other diseases, but first to rake him, then to administer to him this Clister.

Take of Mallows three handfuls, and boyle them in faire water two quarts to one quart, then straine it and put to it of fresh sweet Butter six ounces, and of Sallet-oyle halfe a pint, and so administer it to him Clisterwise bloud-warm; that done, walk him up and downe in the warm Sunne, or in some warm house, untill he doe begin to empty himselfe, then keep him fasting three or four hours, keeping him warm, & to a stomack for three or foure daies, but let him have but that one Clister onely, and let all his Hay be sprinkled with water, and let his drinke be either sweet Mashes or white Water, which when he hath drunke, give him the Malt or Bran to eate, and let his Provender be very little for fourteene daies after, especially if his disease came through glut of Provender: Nevertheless the day after his Clister, give him this cordiall drinke.

Take of Muskadine one quart, of Sugar two ounces, of Life-honey four ounces, of Cinamon halfe an ounce, Licoris and Anniseeds, of each one spoonfull; all these made into fine powder, put them into the Muskadine, and warme them on the fire till they be dissolved, and then give it him bloud-warme, then walke him in the Sunne or warm house an houre, then set him upon the Trench warme cloathed and littered, and so let him stand three houres fasting, unlesse sometimes you put a little Armen into his mouth, then give him Hay sprinkled with Water, and after an houre a sweet Mash, or white Water, and then a few Oates well sifted and dusted, and this by a little

at once, remembring to take bloud from the neck-veine, the same morning you give him this drinke, and that a little before he taketh it, and pricke him also in the mouth, and the next day after this drinke, perfume his head with Storax, Benjamin, and Frankincense, and so order him according as you in your discretion shall think to be most meet, onely remember to ayre him every day abroad if there be no wind, (for wind is hurtfull to him) and thus doing you may recover him, and make him a sound Horse againe. * *
This is singular good. Another.

First give him this Clister, take the flowers of Melelote, Anniseeds and Licoris, Linseeds, Silleris-Montani, of each halfe an ounce, Polipodium of the Oake two ounces and a halfe, Agnus-Castus one handfull, the Hearb Mercury, Mallowes, Pellitory of the Well, Branca-ursina of each three handfuls, make a decoction of all these, letting it boyle to a quart, then put to it of red Waxe one ounce and a halfe, of Cassia newly drawn, three ounces, of Diaseennicon, two ounces of Benedicte, one ounce of Oyle of Nuts, as much as will suffice, and of all these make your Clister according to Art, which you shall give to your Horse so soon as you doe suppose or suspect him to droope, and after this Clister hath done working, give him the drink prescribed in *lib. 2. chap. 9. sect. 10. F.* which is very proper and good, provided you doe administer it as soon as you doe perceive your horse to be foundred in the body, and withall adding to the drinke the juyce of three great Onyons well beaten and strained into white Wine, and that he be dressed, ayered, ridden, and ordered as is fitting and usuall for Horses

Horses in physick. * * Of this I have made triall, and doe finde it to be good. Another.

Take a head of Garlicke, of Pepper, of Ginger, and of Graines, of each two pennyworth; make all these into fine powder, and put them into strong Ale one quart, and so give it him to drink bloud-warm: give him this drink two or three mornings, and order him as is before prescribed. And when you doe finde that he hath gotten strength, let him bloud in the necke and spur-veines. * * This is very good. All cordiall drinks are good for this infirmity.

S E C T. 23. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat is your best cure for a false Quarter?

Hippof. A false Quarter is a very evill forance, it is a rift, crack, or chink, which is most commonly upon the inside of the hoofe, yet sometimes (though rarely) it happeneth upon the out-side, it is occasioned sometimes by evill shooing, by evill paring, and sometimes by gravelling, or a prick with a nayle or stub: neverthelesse which way soever it commeth it will cause the Horse to halt, and watrish bloud will many times issue out of the rift or chinke; the signes are needlesse to recite, they be so manifest: the onely way to cure this malady and forance is, first to take off the shooe, and to cut away so much of the on that side where the grieve is, as that the shooe being immediately set on again, the chinke may be wholly uncovered, then open the chinke to the quicke with your drawing-yrone, and then fill up the rift with a rowle of hurds being dipped in this unguent. False quarter.

Take

Take Turpentine, Waxe, and Sheepes-suet, of each like much, melt them together, and your rowle of hurds being dipped therein, stop the rift therewith, renewing it once a day till it be whole, and thus the rift or chinke being with this oyntment closed in the top, draw the place betwixt the hoofe and the hayre with a hot yron overthwart that place, which will cause the hoofe to grow, and shoot all whole downwards, and when your Horse goeth upright and found againe, let him not be ridden with any other shooe untill the hoofe be throughout hardned, neither let him be ridden upon any hard ground, till his hoofe is become very found and perfect. * * Another.

For a false Quarter, and to cause the hoofe to grow: First prepare a flat piece of Wood, making it an inch broad at the least, and so slender as that it will bend like a hoope, which must be also so long, as that it may come wel-nigh twice about the cronet of the hoofe: then when you are to bring it about the hoofe have in a readinesse a piece of filleting, which must be long enough, which you must cut into two pieces, then having brought the hoop about the cronet with one piece of the filleting, binde fast the top of the hoope, which fastning must be behinde against the heele, and bound very straight and hard, and then the filletting so bound must be twisted three or foure times, and so brought about upon the hoop, and the ends made fast before upon the hoop: then take the other piece of filletting, & sew it upon the top of the first filletting, which you bound about the hoofe, and then let it be sewed as well upon the one side of
the

the hooſe as the other, ſo faſt ſewed on, as that it cannot get off. Now you muſt underſtand that before you doe binde the foot of the Horſe with the woodden hoop and ſilletting, you muſt prepare the ſorance of the ſaid falſe quarter, by drawing the place with your drawing-yrone, ſo cloſe and neere, till you come almoſt to the very quicke, and then will iſſue out a kind of ſweaty or deawy moyſture, which you ſhall perceive, then is it time to binde on the hoop and ſilletting, according as I have before preſcribed you, but yet before you doe any thing at all unto the foot or falſe quarter, have your ſalve in a readineſſe which is to be applied to the chinks of the falſe quarter, *viz.*

Take of the roots of Lingua-Bovis, green, and newly gathered, of the roots of Conſolida-Major, and the root of Mallowes, all newly gathered, of each halfe a pound, theſe muſt be waſhed and ſcraped very clean, and cut into ſmall pieces; let theſe roots be boyled in Aligant two quarts, untill the Wine be boyled quite away, and that the roots become very ſoft, then pound them very well, and ſtraine them through a fine ſearfer, and that it may ſtraine the better, reſerve a little of the Wine as it boyleth, wherewith to moyſten it in the ſtraining.

Take then of Venice-Turpentine, of new Waxe, and of Burgundy Pitch, of each halfe a pound, of black Pitch foure ounces, of the oldeſt oyle Olive one quart, put theſe things with the former Ingredients into a clean Kettle or Poſnet, but yet after this manner, *viz.*

Fiſt the roots, then all the other things by themſelves,

selves, the one after the other, the Turpentine onely excepted, which must be put in when all the other ingredients be molten; you must let all these boyle untill all the Wine be consumed, and the ingredients be very well incorporate, & then put in the Turpentine, and then when it hath boyled one wame or two, take it from the fire, and keep it with continuall stirring, till it be cold, and so keepe it in some clean vessel for your use; you must also adde unto these things (which I had almost forgotten) of Frankincense four ounces made into fine powder.

This salve is to soften and mollifie the hoofe, whereby to make it to grow; having thus prepared your salve, before you bind the hoofe with the hoop, and filletting as before is shewed, annoynt and rub very well, where the hoop and filletting is to be placed, with the salve, and then bind on the hoop with the said filletting, that done take hurds and rowle it up into a rowle, the full length of the chinke of the quarter, and having first annoynted the hurds very well with the salve, lay it upon the chink of the fallie quarter, and so bind the hoofe up with the two long pieces of the aforesaid Filletting, which were sewed unto the other piece of the aforesaid Filletting, which bound and made fast the hoop: and let him not be dressed but once every three daies, untying all, as well the hoop as filletting; Continue him to this kind of dressing, fifteene or twenty daies, or otherwise according as your discretion shall think to be requisite.

Now when you shall finde that the salve hath brought up the hoofe, and that now you know not how

how to harden it, and make it solid and sound, to make an able cure thereof, apply this ensuing salve.

Take of the strongest white Wine Vinegar one quart, Diers-gals, of green Coperas both bruised, of each four ounces; boyle these in the Vinegar to the consumption of a moyty, then strain it, and put unto it of old Sallet-oyle one pint, and so boyle it again, untill the Vinegar be all consumed, which you shall know by stirring it with a little stick, & drawing the stick forth let it drop into the fire, and if that which droppeth from the sticke into the fire, doe not crackle, then let it boyle yet longer, for then it is not enough, but when it is sufficiently boyled by dropping in a little of the medicine, it will burn without crackling, then take lyurgy of Gold, and lyurgy of Silver, of each halfe a pound, make them into very fine powder and searse them. Take then the Skillet from the fire, and let the medicine stand till it be almost cold, then mixe well the lyurgys and put them in, for if they should be put in whilst the liquor is hot, they would fly forth of the Skillet againe: then set the Skillet upon the coales againe, and so let it boyle upon a gentle fire, otherwise you shall not be able to keepe in the medicine, and so boyle it up, keeping it continually stirring untill it become to be of a deeper or darke gray, and doe cleave unto the thing with which it is stirred, and that it doth rope like unto glew, then adde unto it of new Bee-waxe three ounces, which must be first molten by it selfe, and then put also into the medicine of soot made into very fine powder, and which is made of wood, and also of white lead in powder, of each three ounces, these I say being made into very

fine powder, must be put into the medicine, after it is taken from the fire, and by continuall stirring made halfe cold, and so set upon the fire againe, and kept by continuall stirring **untill** it be thoroughly incorporate, and thus it is made; and when it doth begin to be so cold, as that it may be handled, then make it up into Rowles, and so keepe it for your use. And when you are to use the salve, take away the hoope Filletting and all, and all annoynt the hoofe with the salve, and so binde upon the hoofe a linnen cloath to cause that the medicine may remaine on, and let him be annoynted therewith, every day once till the hoofe be so hard as that he may be able to travell. * * This receipt I doe hold to be the most soveraigne of any that ever was yet knowne, which was taught me by a French man, who was so carefull to give me ample instructions therein, as that he bound on the hoop and Fillettings (which are the most difficult parts of the Cure) in my presence, for he was very desirous to have me fully instructed therein.

SECT. 24. F.

Hippoph. **V V** *What disease is that which is called the Flankes?*

Hippof. This disease called the Flankes is different from the former, neither have we no proper name for it, unlesse we will name the same the *Plurisie*, for the Epithete we have from the French, who stile the same *Mal-de-Flankes*, it is when your horse is troubled with overmuch abundance of bloud, whereby he either ingendreth a Mainge, or else falleth dangerously sick

sick thereby, who by reason he hath been oft-times let blood before, his body now will look for it, whereof he missing, falleth either into very dangerous, or no lesse loathsome Maladies; the cure is,

First take blood from both sides the neck, and three daies after in both the Spur-veynes, in the mouth, and in the Temple-veines; then give him a drink of Diapente and sweet Sack, and he will doe well. * * This is very good.

Flankes or malde flankes.

SECT. 25. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat good Charge have you wherewith to stop the Feet?

Hippof. I thinke I have sufficiently shewed you already, notwithstanding for the residue, I doe remit you to its proper place, when and where I will give you store of good Receipts, and therefore I leave it for the present.

SECT. 26. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to stay a Flux.

Hippof. This commeth of cold taken, sometimes by reason nature is offended with some cholericke humour proceeding from the Liver or Gall, into the Guts. it commeth estsoones, when a Horse drinketh too much, presently after the eating a great quantity of Provender, for by that means the water comming to the Provender, causeth the Provender to swell, whereby crudities are bred in the stomach, and so conveyed down to the Guts, which

occasioneth his Flux, also it cometh by travelling too soon after Provender, it not being well digested before: and it will come also to a Horse by drinking cold water when he is very hot, and after (the water not being presently warmed in his belly) is the cause of a Lax or Flux. It will also come by eating of a Feather, Hen-dung; Spider, some venomous worm, or other troublesome creature; and therefore my counsell is, not to stop a flux too hastily, unlesse you doe finde that your Horse doe purge too too violently, and then be you well assured, that nature is not a little offended, for it will bring him in short time to great weaknesse, and debility of body; give him therefore first the Clyster Laxative, which you have taught you in *lib. 2. chap. 6. sect. 8. Clyster 21. letter C.* and that will carry away from him all that may any way offend him, and a day after give him this drink.

Flux.

Beane-flower, and Bole-Armoniack powdred, of each three ounces, mix them with red Wine or Tinte one quart, give it him bloud-warme, and after keepe him warme in the stable, and let him have Hay and Oats, by a little at a time, and that often, and either sweet Mash or white Water. * *. This is very good. Another.

Take of red Wine one quart, and Bay-salt one handfull, and brew them well together; and with a horne give it him, and this will stay his scowring. * *. This is also an approved Cure. Another.

Take of Wood-ashes finely searsed, and of Bole-Armoniack made into very fine Powder, of each like much, put them into the Water that he is to drink, & let him drink thereof morning and evening, and this will

will stay his Flux. * *. But if it be a violent scowring, proceeding from the eating of a Feather, or some other naughty thing, so as this will not stay it, then

Take the intrals of a Pullet, or great Chicken, all but the Gizard, and mixe with them of Spicknard one ounce, and make him swallow it, and this will infallibly stay his scowring, yea if it be a bloody Flux, * *. This is speciall good.

SECT. 27. F.

Hippoph. **VV**hat good receipt have you to mundifie, cleanse, and heale soule and old sores?

Hippof. I had thought Sir, you would not have fallen upon this till it had come to its proper place, when and where we should have the particular matters of Sores by themselves, together with their cures: but sithence you are pleased to touch them in this place, I will give you one Receipt which cannot easily be paralleld.

Take of green Coperas, and of Salt-Peter, of each halfe a pound, bay Salt, and Salt-Gemma, of each three ounces, Arsenick one ounce; put all these finely powdred into a stillitory glasse, the pot or bottome thereof well nealed, and put also thereunto of the strongest white Wine-Vinegar one pint, set the pot on the fire, and put on the head, closing it with Cute of Hermes, and being thus placed in the Furnace, make under it a strong fire, by the space of five or six houres, and with your Receptory take the first water that commeth, for that is the very strongest and best,

*Soule and
old sores to
mundifie.*

and.

and after an houre the fire will be out of the water, then stop up the glasse very close, and so keepe the water for your use. The next water is also good, but not so strong as the first, but reserve it also by it selfe, as you doe the first. And when you are to wash any sores therewith, be very carefull that you lay none of this water upon either sinewes or veines, for that it will burn them in sunder; but where Ulcers and fouler old sores be in the fleshy parts, this Water will worke wonders if wounds be washed with it, and you carefull in the application thereof. * * Of this I have had great experience. Another I have taught me by an expert Marishall of France, but by reason of the extream violence thereof I never durst use it, which is called the spirit of Tinne, which will also mundifie all sorts of old sores, and the French Marishalls doe use it much. And this is the Receipt, viz.

Spirit of
Tinne.

Take Mercury one ounce, and put into an old cleane Pewter pottinger, and fill up the pottinger with Plantane water, and with your finger stirre the Mercury about the pottinger till it be quite dissolved, and then the water will become white, then let it stand an houre in the pottinger, then poure forth the water into a clean Glasse-viall, and then you shall see in the bottome of your pottinger, the Tinne runne liquid like unto Quicksilver, or like as if it were melted, for that is your spirit of Tinne, and thus is it made.

SECT.

SECT. 28. F.

Hippoph. **V** **V** *What is to be administred to a horse that forsaketh his meat?*

Hippof. There be many causes that may make a Horse to forsake his meat, and yet not be sick at all, and so also by occasion of sicknesse that either coming upon him, or else which hath already seized him. And first a Horse may forsake his meat, and forbear to eat for some time, no whit sicke, as when he shall linger after Mares, or after grasse being weary of dry meat: againe, he may forbear his meat, and yet not be sick, by means of some accident or inconvenience bred in him, or befallne unto him, as by having the Lamps, Barbs, Giggs, Blisters, Bloody-rifts, tongue-hurt, pain in the teeth, or some such like infirmity in or about his mouth, these may be causes that may induce him to forbear to eate, and yet the creature not sick, but otherwise healthy and hungry, & fain would feed, but either cannot or dare not. Also a Horse may forsake his meat, being through the inconsideratenesse of his keeper cloyed, whereby he doth loathe his meat; sometimes through over-ayering morning and evening, sometimes againe by suffering him to eate being very hot after great sweating, upon immoderate riding and toyle, or after water or washing, being also very hot. These and many more may be the causes why a Horse may forsake his meat, and yet not be sick. And he may also forsake his meat by reason of sicknesse ensuing, as upon Colds, Rheumes, and Catarres newly taken, and beginning to be felt upon

upon him : so also he may forsake his meat, by reason of sicknesse which hath already seized him, as in cases of Glanders, Feavers, Morfounding, Consumption, Dropfie, and the like, whereby it is made most apparent that he feedeth not because he is already sicke. As touching the first point, if you doe perceive him to forsake his meat, and that you cannot easily finde the reason thereof, then the first thing you doe, search his mouth, lips, and tongue, and if you finde any thing there amisse, let it be presently amended, but if you cannot finde any thing amisse, then examine his Keeper, and if you may perceive that it came through his default or negligence, either by the cloying him with Provender, or otherwise, according as I have heretofore touched, then give him a few branches of Savin, and let him be ayred abroad, keeping him upon the Trench fasting to procure him a stomacke, and then feed him by degrees, and that by a little at once, so he will fall to his meat againe with good appetite, feed heartily, and doe well againe. * * But if you doe finde that his forsaking of meat commeth by means of any sicknesse which hath already seized him, then give him this drink, viz.

For saking
meat.

Take of white Wine one quart, Polipodium of Oake, a red Colewort-leave, Hore-hound, Mints, sherry Holly, Juniper-berries, Ginger, Parsley-seeds, Fennell-seeds, of each three ounces, beat into fine powder what is to be powdred, and chop and stamp the hearbs small, and so put all into the Wine, and boyle them a pretty while, then straine it, and give it your Horse bloud-warm, then leap his back, and trot him softly upon faire ground an houre, but not to sweat

sweat by any means, then so soon as he commeth into the stable cloath and litter him warme, and wash his mouth with Water and Salt, and set him upon the Trench, and put over his nostrils a fine linnen ragge steeped in sowre leaven, infused first in the best and strongest white Wine-gar, and the juyce of Sorrell, & let him stand so three houres at the least, then unbit him, and bring him meat, but by little at once, for feare of cloying his weake stomacke, neither let him have any Masshes, or cold water, but white water onely, untill such time as he hath found his stomacke again. * * This I have often made triall of, and have found it to be right good. Another.

Take Rue and Pepper, of each like much, stampe them together to a thick Salve, then take a good lump thereof, and put it up a good way into his mouth, and let him champ and chew it a good while, and so soon as you doe suffer him to open his mouth, he will put it out, and fall to feeding heartily. * * This is not inferior to the former. Another.

Take the leaves of Briony, and give him them to eate, and it will bring him to a good stomack suddenly. This was taught me by a very good Ferrier, who avowed it to me to be speciall good, but I never made triall thereof.

SECT. 29. F.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you cure a running Frush?
 Hippof. This is a naughty forance, which I have heard rurall Smiths to call the Frog, by reason that it breedeth in that spongy part of the
 heele,

heeles, which they call the Frog. This forance comes sometimes when the Smith inconsiderately as he pareth that part, doth goe to the quick, whereby it bleedeth, which after becommeth sore, & commeth to the running Frush, for that the Horse being travelled, whilst it is raw, and so the gravell getting into it, doth cause the place to rankle and impostumate, and it will come in short time to be a running sore, which will so stinke, as not well to be endured: sometimes again it commeth by reason of evill humours which doe fall down into the legges, and makes its way out at the Frush, it being the softest and tendrest part of all the foot. And sometimes it commeth by a bruise which the Horse may easily take by treading upon some stone, which inwardly corrupting, putrifieth, and so is ingendred a running Frush. The signes to know it is, the Horse will goe lame, either upon hard or durty waies, whereby the gravell doth get in, and fret and paine him at the quicke; and you shall perceive that when he resteth, the Frush will weepe, sending forth watery stufte from the Frush. The way to cure it is,

Frush running.

Take stale Chamberlye, and boyle it with a good quantity of Allum, and keepe it in a Glasse close stopped. Then take of red Nettles two handfuls, the strongest & keeneest, dry them that they may be made into fine powder, then look what quantity of this powder you have, adde also unto it the like quantity of Pepper, made also into very fine powder, and mixe them very well together, and keepe it either in some dry bladder, or boxe for your use also; and when you have occasion to use this water and powder for this forance

forance, first take off the shooe, and open the Frush, so that you may come unto the very bottome, then wash the forance very clean and well with this water made warm, then put on the shooe againe, but first let it be hollowed, that it hurt not the Frush, and let the heeles of the shoe be wide enough, then the forance being thus clean washed and purged from all gravell and mattorative stuffe, and the shooe set on as afore-said, fill the wound full with this powder, and stop it with Hurds, and splent it that the Hurds may keepe in the powder, and that nothing get to the fore, and thus wash and renew the powder to the place griev'd every day once, and in a weeke or little more it will be perfectly sound and whole againe, provided you suffer not any dung to come to the grief, and that he tread not in any wet during the time of the Cure, neither should he goe forth of the Stable. * * * And thus have I cured many *Horses* of this malady. Another.

Take of Soot and Bay-salt, of each one handfull, and pound them very well together, (having opened and washed the forance, as before is shewed) and put unto your Soot and Salt the whites of three new laid Egges, and so temper and beat all well together, till you bring it to one entire body, then dip some hurds therein, and so stop not onely the place it selfe, being opened and made raw, but all the sole besides, and so stop up the Frush, splenting it in such sort whereby the medicine may be kept in; and thus let him be dressed once a day, and ordered as before is premonished, and he soon will be whole and sound. * * * This I have often proved, and cured many forances of this nature.

SECT. 30. F.

Hippoph. **V** *What is best to cure a Fret?*

V *Hippo.* This disease you call the *Fret*, is onely the gripings and paine in the belly, which commeth of sundry causes. The French doe call it *Tranchaisons*, which doe signifie gripings, it is the plain Chollicke, caused of winde, sometimes of bilious and sharpe humours, which descending from the stomack, goe downe into the guts and there torment him; and sometimes it commeth by reason of Worms, Bots, or Truncheons, which doe ingender in the stomacke or guts of the *Horse*, which doe feed and gnaw upon the panch and guts, putting him to mickle pain and perplexity. The signes are, he will forsake his meat, lie down oft, and tumble, and when he standeth he will eftsoones strike at his belly with his hinder legs, he will also stamp with his fore-feet, and turn his head towards his belly, and look upon it, and he will many times sweat at the flanks, and seldom anywhere else; and if the malady be of wind, then shall you perceive his belly to swell, especially towards the flanks: the cure is,

Fret.

Take of good Ale two quarts, of Fenugricke foure ounces, of Bay-bërries seven ounces, of long Pepper foure ounces, of Ginger one ounce, Water-Cresses two handfuls, Sage and Nettles, of each one handfull, beate to powder the Spices, and chop the Hearbs small, and boyle them in the Ale till one moyty be consumed, then strain it, and so give it him bloud-warm, and then cover and litter him warm, and let him

him stand upon the Trench six houres after. But yet so soon as he hath his drinke, rope up all his legges to the body, not suffering him to lie downe, and cover him so as that he may sweat for one houre onely, and then coole him by degrees, and let his drink be either sweet Mashes or white water, and he being thus ordered two or three daies he will be well. * * This I have often used. Another.

Take the intrals of a great Chicken, casting away the gizzard, rowle them up in Bay-salt and the powder of Brimstone, and so give it him down his throat, then presently let him be gently ridden, or walked, till he doth dung, and at night give him a Mash or white water, and he is cured. This is also very good. But if you have cause to suspect that he hath the Bots, then rake him, and in his raking search for Bots, which if you doe finde any sticking upon the great gut, plucke them all (or so many as you can finde) away, whereby you may be confident that the Bots is cause of his griefe, wherefore apply such remedies and medicines which I have formerly prescribed you for Bots, Truncheons, and Wormes in *lib. 2. cap. 5. sect. 15.* where you shall finde such Receipts as will cure him. * * But if you doe perceive this griefe of his commeth of winde, then make use of such receipts which you shall finde by me before inculcated for the Collicke, in *lib. 2. cap. 6. sect. 11. lit. C.* where be very good remedies for this malady.

SECT.



CHAP. X.

SECT. I. G.

HIPPOPHYLUS.



What is best to be done to cure a galled backe?
Hippof. There be so many waies which doth occasion it, as that it would be an endlesse labour to deliver every particular thereof. But because you doe motion the *galled backe* onely, I will first speake something thereof. A *galled backe* commeth commonly either with the Saddle, the Pannell, Pack-Saddle or Male-pillion, which through evill stopping, or defect of stopping, may very easly gall the *Horse*; so also may the fault be in the tree, which may be so badly made, so as that let the Sadler be never so sufficient, skilfull, or carefull, yet shall it both gall and hurt him; so also may the tree of the Saddle be either broken or crackt, if it at any time happen, be you then confident that it can never be so amended or repaired, but that doe what you can it shall hurt the backe of the *Horse*, and these be the most frequent and ordinary waies whereby to gall the backe of your *Horse*, howbeit I passe over Male-pillions, Cloake-bags, Port-mantues, Trusses, and the like. The signes to know a galled back are easie, for either the backe will be

be apparently swelled, or the hayre fretted off, the skinne either broken or raw, or the back either inflamed or impostumated, every of which is easly to be determined by the eye; or if his *backe* be wrung with the Saddle, and yet not come to be visible to the eye, yet may you come to the knowledge thereof, if taking off the Saddle, stroking your hand all along the back, you shall perceive him either to shake his head, or to winch with his tayle, to rouze or shake, to stamp or strike with his feet, to offer to bite, or the like, whereby you may come to know it, and very easly to finde out the place grieved. Now if the backe be swelled, and before it be impostumated, so soon as you shall take off the Saddle, and finde the same, clap upon the swelling a little of his wet litter, and so set on the Saddle againe, and let him remaine with his Saddle on all night, and in the morning the swelling will be abated, and the place it selfe become whole and sound again. Now if the haire be but galled off, so that it doth not impostumate, annoynt the place but with a little Butter and Salt melted together, and in twice dressing the place will be whole; but if the *back* be so galled, as that it is become raw, then the cure is thus, *viz.*

Take three parts of sheepes-dung newly made, and *Galled backe.* one part of Rye, or Wheat-flower, and dry the flower, and then mixe it well with the sheepes-dung, kneading it as into paste, and making it into the fashion of a Cake, and after bake it a little, and apply the powder thereof warme unto the place. * * This will heale him very well. But I may very well spare the labour in reciting any more receipts for this matter, considering

ring I have sufficiently already handled them in *lib. 2. chap. 5. sect. 1. letter B.*

SECT. 2. F.

Hippoph. **V V** *Hat say you to a Galde that cometh by the Shackell?*

Hippof. This kind of Gallings being so frequent, as to be known to every one, both the manner how it cometh, and in the signes how to know them, needeth not much discusion, neverthelesse I will give you an experiment or two of mine own, and so leave it to its more proper place.

Galled with the shackle.

Take new Milke three quarts, Plantane one handfull, boyle these together till one part of the Milke be consumed, then take of Allum six ounces, and of white Sugar-candy one ounce, beat them both to fine powder, & so put it to the Milk, and adde also unto it of white Wine-Vinegar six spoonfuls, then boyle it a little till there doe come upon the top a tough curd, then straine it, and keep the Whay, casting away the curd, and with this Whay first made warm, bathe and wash the fore, the haire being first clipped close away; and having thus washed the sorance, and wiped it dry, then apply your greene oyntment mentioned in the fourth *sect.* of this Chapter; but in case where the Galde is not broken, yet likely to breake, there you shall onely apply the medicine taught you in *lib. 2. chap. 16. sect. 10. L.* for the *Poll-evill.* * *. This Whay is also good to cure the bloody Rifts, Bladders, Canker in the mouth, Barbs, Pappes, and all Feavers and Maladies in the *month.* Another.

A Whay.

Take

Take Life-hony seven spoonfuls, and Verde-grease halfe an ounce, and boyle them till the honey be halfe consumed, and that it become red, then put it into some clean pot, and annoynt the sorance therewith, made warme twice every day, and when you have thus annoynted it, cast upon the place Hurds cut very short, to keep on the Oyntment, and this will in short time heale it up very sound. * * This is most soveraigne for any *shackle-galde*, which commeth either by *locke, cord, or shackle*; but if your *Horse* be desperately galled in any part of his body, as by the *girt*, or otherwise, then

Take of Verjuyce of the Crab two quarts, of green Copperas two pennyworth, and boyle them together to one pint and a halfe: and wash the sorance therewith very well, and after fill up the hole (if any be) with the powder of Red-leade, and so let it remaine three daies untoucht, then wash it as before, and fill it with your red Oyntment again, and thus in two or three times dressing it will heale up, be the *galling* never so dangerous. * * This I have often used.

SECT. 3. G.

Hippoph. **W**hat is best to be done to a Horse that is Gravelled?

Hippof. This malady commeth when a Horse in his travell hath gotten *gravell* betwixt the *sole* and the *hoofe* which setleth at the quicke, and there fretteth and festreth, you shall soone know it by his halting, and complaining upon the same foot, which so soon as you doe perceive, take up the *foot* and you shall

Gravelling.

feele it warmer in that place, then in any other part of the *foote*, and if you make tryall with your Pinfors, you shall perceiue him to shrink, and to yield when you nip him against that place : Take off the shooe and with your drawing iron draw the place, till you come unto the quick, picke forth all the *gravell*, and crush forth the matter and blood cleane, then wash the fore cleane with your Copperas water, taught you in the next ensuing *Paragraph*, then poure upon the fore sheeps-Tallow, and Bay-salt molten together, of each so much as will suffice, and let it be poured into the wound scalding hot, then stop up the hole with hurds, and set on the shooe againe, and at two or three times dressing it will be whole, but till he be through well doe not travell him, neither let his *foote* come into any wet. * *. This is a certaine cure. Another.

Search and draw the place as before, and get forth all the *gravell*, then stop the place with Hogs-grease, and Turpentine molten together, pouring it into the wound scalding hot, and stop it up with hurds, and tack on the shooe, and keepe his *foote* from wet, and he will soone be whole; This is also very good. Another.

Be you certaine that you have gotten forth all the *gravell* and corruption, then.

Take Virgin-waxe one ounce, Rosin, and Deeres suet, of each two ounces, Bores-grease halfe an ounce, and of Sea-greene, *alias* House-leeke, one head, incorporate all these together in a Morter, then melt them over a gentle fire, and so apply it hot to the sorance, and stop it up with hurds and tack on the shooe, and in few dressings it will cure it, * *. This is a speci-
all good cure.

SECT. 4. G.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you make your green Oyntment, you doe so much commend?

Hippof. Sir, this Vnguent which I doe so much commend unto you, is the most rare, and soveraigne thing that I ever yet saw, or knew, for the cure of any sores, whether old or greene, *Vlcers, Fistulas, Poll evils*, or what else, for where this oyntment commeth; no proud or dead *flesh* will grow, no *fles* will adventure neere the place where this oyntment is laid, and for a *Horse* or *Mare-Filly* that is cut, gelt, or spla, annoynt but the place, and they will neither swell or fester, whereby the creature is the further off from danger, for this Vnguent doth not only heale soundly and well, but speedily also; provided you lay nothing upon the wound or sorance, where the oyntment is administered, as neither hurds, lint, plaisters, or the like, unlessse you may have occasion to Taint a wound which is extraordinary deepe, neither that for any long time, or too often, and besides the seldomer the wound is dressed, as once a day, or once in two dayes, it will heale the better and faster, especially if it be brought into good forwardness of healing. And together with this Vnguent, you may doe well to wash the sorance, with the water I call the *Copperas* water, which by reason it is alwayes first to be used, I will set it downe first, and the *Greene*-oyntment shall assume the second place.

Take faire water two quarts, and put it into a clean *Copperas* Postnet, and put thereto of greene *Copperas* halfe a *water.* pound

pound, and of salt one hand-full, and of ordinary Honey one spoonfull, and a branch or two of Rosemary, boyle all these till one halfe of the water be consumed, and a little before you take it from the fire, put to it the quantity of a Doves egge of Alume, then take it from the fire, and when it is cold put the water into a glasse, and stop it up close, and keepe it for your use; and when you are to dresse any sore, first wash it clean with this water, and if the wound be deepe, inject it with a seringe.* *. This water of it selfe will cure any reasonable sore, or wound (but the greene oyntment being applyed after it is washed) will heale any old *Vlcer*, or *Fisula* whatsoever, if they come to the bottome of them, and for greene wounds, they have not their fellow; the *Greene-oyntment* is thus made.

Green Oyntment.

Take a cleane Skillet or Postnet, and first put into it of Rosin the quantity of a wall-nut, which being molten, put to it the like quantity of wax, and when that is also molten, put to them of tryed-Hogs-grease halfe a pound, and so soone as that is molten, put into the rest of common *Englisk* Honey one spoonfull, when all these are molten and well stirred together, then put in of ordinary Turpentine halfe a pound, and so soone as it is dissolved, take it from the fire, and put into the Skillet of Verdegrease made into very fine powder one ounce, and so stirre it well all together, but be carefull it runne not over, for that the Verdegrease will cause it to arise, then set it againe upon the fire, till it doe beginne a little to simper, then take it off, for if you suffer it to boyle it will turne red, and lose its vertue of healing, and become a corrasive, then straine it through a cloth into some earthen Pot, or Pipken

Pipken, and keepe it for your use, laying something upon the mouth of the vessell, that dust get not into it, and if it be not strained, then the grounds in the bottome will corrasive a sore, and not heale it. * * * This is the most soveraigne Oyntment that I could ever know, for with it I have done so many great cures, as have made me admired by *Ferriers* themselves, who have courted me not a little for this Receipt, yea they have profered me ten pounds to teach it them; This cleanseth a wound, be it never so foule; or infected with dead, proud, spungy or naughty *flesh*, it carnifieth, and healeth abundantly, and with all so foundly, and firmly, as that it doth never more break forth, it draweth forth thornes, splinters, nayles, and all such things in the *flesh*, and in a word it cureth all sorts of sores and wounds.

SECT. 5. G.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to be administr'd to a Horse whose greafe is molten?

Hippof. As touching this infirmity I have sufficiently shewed you before how it commeth, the signes how to know it, and how to cure the same, and therefore I may now forbear to spend any more time in the declaration thereof, only I will give you one singular Receipt more, and this it is.

First, take *bloud* from the *neck-veine*, to a reasonable *Greafe molten* good proportion, to the end all his inflamed *bloud* may be let forth, then give him to eate eyther branne prepared as you are shewed in *lib. 2. chap. 9. sect. 4. F.* or dry branne whether he will eate best, but if he will eate

eate neither, and that he doth empty himselfe over much, then give him the Clyster Restringent prescribed you in *lib. 2. chap. 6. sect. 8. Clyster 3. letter C.* or else if you please, you may give him the 8. Clyster in the same *sect.* either of these two so often as neede shall require you may give. And if his appetite be not good, give him Arman prescribed you in *lib. 2. chap. 2. sect. 2. letter A.* and two dayes after let him *bloud* in both the *Flank-veines*, and if you cannot easily finde them, then in the *spurre-veines*, and the next day after that give him to drinke, two quarts of water warmed, and put into it of white-Wine-Vineger one pint, for this will very much refresh his *body*, and then the next day give him this drinke.

Take of Tisan three pints, of loose Sugar finely powdered three ounces, of Cordiall powder one ounce, of life honey foure ounces, give him this to drink bloud warme. In maladies of this nature you must forbear to administer such drugs as be hot, for by such meanes more *horses* dye then doe recover and live: for such kinde of drinke as this is being wholly cordiall, are best for this infirmity. * * This cure I doe assure you I have often administred, and have done very much good, and made many great and desperate cures therewith.

SECT. 6. G.

Hippoph. **W**ell, now let us come to the Glanders?
 Hippof. Withall my heart, Sir. As touching this disease which we doe call the Glanders, it is of all others the worst, noysome, and most infectious,

ous, infomuch as that *Horse* that hath it, if he be not removed and separated from his fellowes, will infect so many as shall be with him in the same Stable and room. To finde out the depth, root, and true nature of this disease, I have greatly laboured, as also how to cure the same. I have also had much conference with many the most famous and exquisite *Marshalls* and *Ferriers* abroad, and I have seene very much of their practise therein, so also have I very serious discourses with a number of our best *Ferriers* and *Smiths* at home, but I finde not one in twenty can speake truely to any purpose of the nature of this disease, and therefore I doe not wonder that they cannot cure a disease whereof they are so much to seek. Neverthelesse what I do understand of this disease, I will ingenuously deliver unto you. The *Glanders* is an infirmity which proceedeth first of cold taken, which being neglected, will in time come to be the *Glanders*; you shall first perceive it by the inflamed kernels and knots which may be felt under the *chaule* of the *horse*, and as they doe grow in bignesse, so doe the *Glanders* grow and increase within the body of the *Horse*, which first beginning with a thinne Rheume, ascendeth up to the head, and setleth neer to the brain, and so venteth it selfe at the nose, which yet may be easily cured, as I have before inculcated, where I entreated of Colds, afterwards it growes thicker, and then it is worse to cure, but yet faisable enough, in longer time it commeth yet to a thicker substance, and its colour is yellowish, much like unto Butter, and then it is more hard to cure, but yet curable, albeit that now it is come to be a perfect *Glanders*: but when it commeth

meth to be of a viscusous, and of a tough and slimy substance, and of a green colour, and to stink terribly, and that it hath now run some moneths, or peradventure halfe a yeere or better, as also having some small specks of a reddish color in it, then is it not every *Ferriers* work or Art to cure the same, for in a case of this nature the ablest *Ferrier* may receive the foyle, and the *Horse* die under his hands and cure, as I have often by experience been an eye-witnesse, albeit there hath beene no defect in the *Ferrier*, either in Art, industry, care or diligence. I doe therefore averre that I would not have any man (be he never so expert an Artift) to promise to himselfe the cure of every *Horse* he shall take in hand, by the reason that the *Glanders* it selfe is the thing he must cure, but in taking upon him to cure that malady, he must before he can have perfected his cure, cure him also of many other diseases, which the *Glanders* will bring along with it, as (*v.g.*) the consumption of the flesh and lungs, griefes and aches in the head and braine, inflammations under the *chaule*, diseases in the liver, purfivenesse, hide-bound, dropse, swelled legges, and many other infirmities too prolix to repeat, all which (I say) are inherent to the *Glanders*, and its origine, that it is of cold past all peradventure, howsoever it sometimes commeth of Surfets, sometimes of Morfounding, sometimes by infection, all which (the last only excepted) taketh its first source from cold, and when it runneth (as before I said) greenish with reddish specks, accompanied also with an offensive or stinking breath, then are his lungs ulcerated, by meanes whereof the cure is the more desperate and difficile. I doe therefore advise all *Ferriers*

riers my brethren, who shall at any time take upon them this cure, that they doe first prepare the body of the *Horse* with such preparatives and Physicke, as are meet to expell his peccant humours, which must be also very carefully administred, yea and that according to the strength and ability of the *Horse*: for the *Horse* cannot choose but be feeble and weake, having of a long time before visited with a sicknesse of this nature, yea peradventure a whole yeare or two before together, during which time he hath continually wasted and languished, wherefore he cannot be strong, but a very weake *Horse*, and therefore his physicke must be very gentle, yet such also which may have operation whereby to worke, otherwise physick is but cast away. The signes how to know this disease need no further description, and therefore I will proceed to the cure, for the which I will deliver you many receipts, some whereof I have well experienced, to which I will give my particular marke, like as I have formerly done. And I doe the rather insert the more receipts, because (as I have before remembred) that receipt which will not cure one, will cure another.

The first therefore that is to be done in this case, is, to *Glanders.*
 prepare his body by giving him for four or five dayes together, in stead of his Oates and Provender, wheat Bran prepared, like as I have before shewed you in the cases of sicke *Horses*, especially in *lib. 2. cap. 9. sect. 4. F.* to qualife and dry up his moyst and bad humours abounding in him, then let him bloud in the neck, and the next day rake him, and give him this Clister. Make a decoction of Mallowes one pinte and a halfe, and put unto it of fresh Butter, fou re ounces, and of Sallet

Sallet oyle a quarter of a pinte, and administer it bloud warme, and then with a strappe of leather tye it to his tayle, and then fasten the other end of the said strap to his Sursingle, so straight, that his tayle must be close to his tuell, that he cannot purge till it be loosened, then mount his back, and let him be gently ridden, sometimes a foot pace, and sometimes an easier trot for halfe an houre, then set him up warme clothed and littered, and let him stand upon the Trench three houres, during which time he will purge kindly, then give him white water and Hay, and at night a few Oats, for he must be kept to a spare dyet. The next day annoynt two long Goose-feathers with the powder of Brimstone and fresh Butter, being first well wrought together, till it be brought to the colour of gold, put them into either nostrill, and fasten them to his headstall, as is before taught you, and so ride him an houre or two, for this will purge his head, and cause him to send forth matttractive stuffe which abideth in his head and lungs, then bring him in and take them forth, and an houre after give him Hay and white water, and Bran prepared, which also he should have given him before his riding abroad. The next day give him his Clister againe, and so let him rest for that day, but ordered in all things as before. The next day give him his Goose feathers againe, annoynted as before, and ordered in the like manner as you did before, and all this is, but to prepare him for his after drinke, but remember to keepe him alwaies warme, and let him be evermore fasting and empty, when he is to have any kind of Physicke administered unto him, and let him be ayered morning and evening, if the

the sunne shine, or that it be otherwise warm and calm weather. And having thus begun with him, three dayes after give him this drink.

Take of Aqua vitæ halfe a pinte, and of white wine one pinte, Aristolochia-Rotunda, Agarick, Gentian, Bay-berries, Myrrha, Ivory, Aloes, of each three drams, make all these into fine powder each one by it selfe, then mixe them very well, and put them into a clean Posnet with the Wine, and Aqua vitæ, and so warm it upon the fire, then being well brewed, give it him bloud warm. This drinke must be given thrice, to wit, every third day, and he made to fast three houres after, and after ordered as is accustomed with *horses* in Physicke, during which time, and some time after, let him drink no cold water, but most commonly white water, which once or twice in a weeke may be changed into a sweet Mash, and let him eate the Bran and Malt, and dyet and feed him so, as that he may be kept to a stomacke, but be carefull you neither cloy, nor pine him. Instead of the Oats which you should give him, let them sometimes be changed into bread if he will eat it: and sometimes you may give him instead of Oats, some Wheat either in the eares, which is best, or else Wheat threshed and cleared ready for the Mill. * * * Truely with this cure as I have set it you downe, I have recovered many *horses*. But you must understand that this malady as it hath runne along upon the *horse*, before it come to that height, as to be so ranke a *Glanders*, to be termed the mourning of the *chine*, so will it aske a long time to cure, and therefore you must not thinke that it can be cured with this one only course of Physick, but you must see him

him rest a few dayes, whereby he may the better gather strength, and then to him again and again, but take no more bloud from him, and as you doe perceive him to gather flesh, and get strength, so let his exercise be increased, but withall, so as not to overlabour him, or to cause him to sweat violently, nor yet straine his winde too much. Another:

If you doe finde that together with his *Clanders*, he hath the Strangles, that is that he be oppressed with inflammations under the *chaule*, clip away the haire from about the place, and clap a piece of sheeps-skin newly killed over all the place, which must be daily renewed, and you must keepe warme, not onely the place, but his Poll also; then,

Take Basilicon, old Bores-grease and Dialthea, of each foure ounces, and of Oyle de Bay one ounce, beat all these very well together, then annoynt the place enflamed, once every day at the least, and then put to the sheeps-skinne, and so keepe it on till it be ripe enough, then open it, and put into the orifice a taint of Basilicon for three or four daies, then heale up the wound with taints of *Ægyptiacum*, prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap. 4. sect. 4. lit. A.* and during the time of his cure, give him Wheat-bran, as well dry as prepared, and for his drinke, let it be white Water, unlesse sometimes a Mash; keep him warm, and after five or six daies ride him abroad with the Goose feather in his nose, annoynted as is before advised you, and if he doe runne at nose very much, then take a sticke, and wrap a fine linnen rag about it, annoynt it very well with blacke sope, and put it into his nostrils a good way, but not so as to cause him to bleed, and doe

doe this three or foure times a day : or else

Take the seed of Pordo accenta, and bruise it, made up in sweet Butter, so much of the seed as you may take up betwixt your thumb and two fingers at a time. * * This is very good. Another.

Take the oyntment of the Oyle de Bay, and unguentum Agrippa, of each like much rub the inflammation places every night with this unguent wel mixed, then apply unto the place a piece of a sheeps-skinne with the wooll on : but this medicine is much better in Winter then in Summer, by reason that this unguent of it selfe is very hot ; wherefore in the Summer season, instead of such hot unguents, take two ounces of those that be cooler, with three roots of white Lillies roasted or boyled, or Rie-leaven six ounces, of old Hogs-grease as much as will suffice, and of the tender tops of Ilope halfe an ounce ; mixe all these together, and make thereof an unguent, with which rub and annoynt the place well, and after apply it to the place plaisterwise ; this done, cover the place with a piece of sheeps-skinne the wooll being on, and continue to doe this till it be ripe and ready to be opened, blow also into his nose of Euforbium, and blacke Elebore pulverized, of each like much, to the bignesse of a halle-nut of either, then put into each nostrill a long Goose-feather, first dipped in oyle de Bay, which powder and oyle will cause him to cast forth much of his *Glanders*, and of his bad humours which doe feed them. * * This medicine if it be rightly applied, will cure him. Another.

If your horse together with his *Glanders* be troubled with inflamed kernels under his chaule, then give him this drink.

Take

Take of Elecampane dried, Anni-seeds, Fennell-seeds, Commen, Pepper, Grains, Licoris, of each three drams, all pulverized, and adde thereto two heads of Garlick pilled and bruised; boyle all these in strong Ale two quarts, to a moyty, then straine it, and set it over the fire again, and put unto this liquor the quantity of a Tennis-ball of tried Hogs-grease, and let it remaine no longer over the fire but untill the Hogs-grease be molten, and so administer it bloud-warme with a horne; this done, leap his backe, and trot him gently a mile upon faire ground, and so home againe, then set him up warme cloethed and littered, causing him to sweat in his clothes two houres, then by little and little flake his clothes, cooling him by degrees, till you have brought him to his former coolnesse, and as he doth begin to leave off sweating, let him be well rubbed till he be dry, then two houres after this give him a sweet Mash, and use this drinke and sweating fundry times, every second day for a weeke. The next week

Take Wheatmeale, Horehound, Anniseeds and Licoris made into very fine powder, of each as much as will suffice, make a paste thereof with ordinary Hony and Sallet-oyle, of each as much as will suffice, then every morning make three Pils the bignesse of a great Wal-nut a piece, and give them to the horse three mornings together, keep him all this time warme, and let his drinke be white Water, and his manger-meat be either Wheat-brau prepared, or dried Bran, but if he have kernels under his chaule, then either ripen them, as you were taught before, or else burn them with the flame of a Candle, and open the skin with an
 ods T incision.

incision-knife, and then put into the orifice the root of a red Dock, giving it a slit or two, and it will draw his cold quite away from under his chaule. But first you must understand that the drink last before mentioned, ought to be applyed before you apply any other medicines, and my counsell is withall, that you doe purge him before you give him this drinke, or any other medicines, for purging doth the better prepare the body of the *Horse*, whereby to cause his physick, of what nature soever, to work more kindly. * * This Receipt I have often tried, and have perfected very great cures therewith. Another very sovereign after your *Horse* hath taken the drink next above prescribed.

Take Gumma-Guiacum, Amber, Corall, of each halfe an ounce, make all these into very fine powder, and infuse it into red Wine, one quart, with a good quantity of Cinamon Arkanet powdred, and give it to your *Horse* two mornings together bloudwarm, and so order him as is usuall with other drinks. * * This is also very good. Another.

First, give him this drink following, but first purge him two daies before; take of Tanners Owes new made, wherein never came hides, one pint, of Sallet-oyle four spoonful, two heads of Galick, pilled and bruised, Featherfew and Selandine, of each one handfull chopped very small, Anniseeds and Licoris, and Bay-berries, all finely pulverized, of each one spoonfull; boyle all these a little and so give it your *Horse* bloud-warm twice a weeke fasting, and he being thus four times drenched, will be perfectly cured. This I never tried, but I have been assured by able *Ferriers* that

that it will cure the Glanders be it never so old.
Another.

Take strong Ale one quart, Tarre a quarter of a pint, two heads of Garlick, pilled and bruised, and give it your *Horse* fasting, warm once in four daies, till he be thoroughly cured. This I never tried. Another.

Take of the newest and strongest *Tanners* Owes one pint, Venice Turpentine washed one ounce, Bay-berries in fine powder one spoonfull, Saffron powdered one pennyworth, *Aristolochia rotunda* one ounce, *Guaiacum* two ounces, both in fine powder, incorporate all these upon the fire till the Turpentine be dissolved; then give it your *Horse* bloud-warme two mornings in a week, resting three daies still betwixt till he be cured, which will be in foure or five times giving.
Another.

Make Pils of Venice Turpentine with paste of Barley-flowre, and give them to your *Horse*, and they will cure him. Another.

Take baked Barley-flower two parts, the dust of Oaken-barke, and Bay-berries in fine powder of each one part, make a paste thereof with new *Tanners* Owes, and so make them into Pils, with the powder of Cinamon three parts, and Saffron one pennyworth, and so give them to your *Horse*. Another for the *Glanders* and consumption of the *Lungs*, which must be given after you have made triall of the drinke before prescribed, which beginneth thus; take Elecampane, Anni-seeds, Fennel-seeds, &c. and finding that your *Horse* is not therewith cured, give him these Pils following.

Take Barley-flower baked in an Oven, Cumfrey-roots,

roots, Bursa-Pastoris, Bramble-leaves, or the red and unripe Berries growing upon Brambles, which we doe commonly call Black-berries; these unripe berries are much better then the Bramble-leaves, of each one handfull, of Alkenet one dramme, boyle all but the Barley-flower in *Tanners* Owe newly made, so much as will suffice, and when it is throughly boyled strain the liquor from the other simples, reserving onely the liquor, and so make a paste thereof with your Barley-flower, adding thereto of the dust of Oaken-barke one handfull or two, then make this paste up into Pills the bignesse of a good Wall-nut, give him foure of these at a time, rowled up in the powder of Cinamon two parts, and one part in the powder of Saffron, and use this till he be well, not administering these Pills every day, but every two or three daies, till you doe finde him well. * * This I doe recommend unto you for a speciall good Receipt, for that herewith I have effected many great cures in this kind, but then withall let his drinke be white Water, and sometimes a sweet Mash, as in all other cures for this infirmity, and withall put into his white Water Bramble-leaves, and Knotgrasse bruised, and be you very carefull that he take no cold, but be kept warm during his cure, and ayre him morning and evening in the warme Sunne, if there be no Wind, and every time you lead him forth to be ayred, at his going forth of the Stable spirt into his nostrils the juyce of wilde Dayisie roots, mingled with the strongest white Wine-Vinegar, which will purge his head exceedingly, and cause the *Glanders* to runne forth abundantly. Another being an excellent Pill for the *Glanders*, which I have often

used, and that to great good purpose.

Take Venice-Turpentine washed halfe a dram, incorporate it with the powder of Brimstone, Alkenet, and Oake-barke dust, of each like much, so much as will suffice, to waake up into Pills, give him every morning two of these Pills, fasting as bigge as a good wallnut every one, till he be well. * *. Another which is a very good drinke, wherewith to dissolve the *Glanders* and cold, after other drinckes have rotted and ripened them.

Take of Muscadine one quart, of Figges cut and sliced small, a quarter of a pound, life hony one spoonefull, Saffaron pulverized one penny-worth, Ginger and Elecampane of each one dramme, in powder, Pepper in fine powder so much as will lye upon a sixpence, fresh or sweet Butter the quantity of an Egge, boyle all these together a pretty while, then strain it, and bloud warme administer it, only adding to the drinke the yolkes of two new-layed Egges well beaten into the said drinke, and after walke or ride him moderately a little space, and then set him up warme, and order him as in other Physicall drinckes. * *. This I have often tryed, and do approve it for speciall good: for this openeth the pipes, causing him to void much filth, and it begetteth a good stomacke to meate. Another most excellent.

First before you doe administer any drinckes or medicines, give him this purge.

Take of the best and strongest white Wine-Vineger one pint, and put it into a pot, and put to it two new-laid Egges, and so let them steep in the said Vineger foure and twenty houres at least, and then give them

them to the *Horse* foure mornings together, and so soon as he hath taken them let him be ridden a while gently and then set up warme, and set upon the Trench till one or two of the clocke, then give him white water, and sometimes a sweete Mash, and let his Provender be moistened with Ale or Beere, and his Hay sprinkled with water, and this will cause him to purge and scowre from him much Flegme and filth: three or foure dayes after you have purged him thus, give him the drinke prescribed you before, which beginneth thus, *viz.* (take of *Tanners Owes* new made wherein never came Hides, one pint, of Sallet oyle foure spoonefuls, two heads of Garlick, &c.) which being administred as is in the said cure prescribed, and he ordered as is convenient for *Horses* in Physick will assuredly cure him. This I never made use of, but it was recommended unto me for a speciall good one. Another.

Give him the last mentioned purge of *Egges* steeped in Vineger, and keep him to it foure or five mornings together, then for foure dayes together after, give him a new-laid-Egge shell and all, with as much Powder of Brimstone as will lie upon a shilling, then for six mornings after, give him every morning a Pill of washed Venice-Turpentine, made up with the powder of the roote of Alkenet, and let every of these Pills be of the bignesse of a good wall-nut, let him take this Medicine evermore in the morning fasting, and fast after it till noone, and after order him as in other Physicall drinckes: and withall you must know that untill such time as he be perfectly cured he must not be put to any hard labour either by riding

ding or otherwise, for that will rend a new, and break open againe, the *Vlcer* being newly healed, which as yet be but greene and tender * * *. And this is a very good receipt. Another for a *Glanders* or any cold newly taken.

Take the long *Mosse* growing upon the lymbes of old *Timber-oakes*, but not that which groweth upon the maine *Body* or *Trunke* of the *Tree*, gather thereof a good quantity, dry it and make it into powder, and give it your *Horse* foure mornings together, in cleare new *Tanners Owes*, one pint, mixing with the said *Owes* and powder, old red-*Wine* one pint, let this drinke be given him with a horne *bloud-warme*, and for foure daies after cover and litter him warme, and set him upon the *Trench*, and let him there remaine fasting during those foure houres, and for the time he taketh this drinke, let his *Manger* meate be dry hard bread, well baked, and his *Racke* meate old dry *Hay*, but no *Oates*, and mixe with his bread some of this dried powder, being the *Mosse* of the *Oake*, together with *Featherfew*, *water-Germander*, and *Cordium*, all dried and made into powder, and let his drinke be fresh *Tanners Owes*, wherein came never *Leather* or *Hides*, and give it him with a horne, if otherwise he shall refuse to take it, but howsoever let him not drinke or take it but *bloud warme* only. This was taught me by a worthy *Knight*, who affirmed that he hath often used the same, and that he hath done very great cures therewith, but I having many other approved *Receipts*, did never make tryall thereof, nevertheless it seemeth probably good. Another which I have often used.

Take

Take six heads of Garlick, pill the cloves, and stampe them well, then put unto it of life hony six spoonefull, and of Wheate meale, so much as will suffice, to make it into a paste, making thereof Pills every one of the bignesse of a good Wall-nut, and so give him of these Pills three or foure at a time, and after them three new laid Egges, and after them cast into his mouth of Bay Salt one handfull, this must be given fasting and before he drink at six or seven a clock in the morning, then let him be ridden untill he doe begin to sweat, then bring him into the Stable and clothe him warm, and litter him and so let him sweat an houre, then coole him by degrees, and after he hath fasted six houres, give him meat, but no drinke untill six a clock in the evening, which let either be a sweet Mash or white water, and if need so require, let him have these Pills three mornings, resting every one day betwixt, and thus ordering him, he will be perfectly cured * *. This I have often proved, and have cured many *horses* of colds and *Glanders*. Another very good.

Take of Bay berries one ounce, of Licoris two drams, of brown Sugar-candy, Nutmegs, and Ginger, of each a penny worth, of Garlick a halfe penny worth, let all these be beaten and mixed, then take of Chamberlye that is foure dayes old, one quart, and boyle it by it selfe to a pinte, and put to it of sweet Butter a halfe penny worth, and with it the residue of the ingredients, and so give it him bloud warm, &c.

* * Another most soveraign receipt for the *Glanders*; and whereof I have had very great experience.

First cleere his head by pricking him in the mouth, and

and rub the place with salt whereby to cause it to bleed the more, then take two long feathers of a Goose wing, well annoynted with oyle de Bay, thrust it up and down his nostrils, which will open & purge his head, also perfume his head with the stalks of Garlick broken into small pieces, with a Tunnell, or with a thicke cloth cast over his head, the better to receive the smoake into his nostrils, and doe this morning and evening, keeping him to a spare dyet and moderate exercise, whereby the better to cleanse his head and stomacke, and to empty him, by which meanes the brain will be the better quieted. To perfume him also with Frankincense, Storax, and Benjamin, of each like much well mixed together, is very soveraign; but two or three dayes after, let him bloud in the necke, after this let him be walked abroad, or gently ridden, (if the horse be of sufficient strength) to get him breath, then administer unto him this drinke.

Take of Muskadine one pinte, of London Treacle an ounce and a halfe, sweet Butter three ounces, give him this bloud warme, take then tryed Hogs greafe, and rub and chafe him under the *chaule* very well therewith, and leave him annoynted thicke therewith, then make him this Poultesse.

Take of Mallowes two handfulls, of Worm-wood, Smalage and Rue, all small shred and stamped, of each one handfull, of Wheat Bran, and of tryed Hogs greafe, of each one quart; boyle all these together, continually stirring them untill the Hogs greafe be almost consumed, and binde it under his *chaule* so hot as he can well suffer the same, and keep his head (especially his poll) very warm, leaving onely ayre for
his

his mouth and nose, and light for his eyes. Then perfume him with Frankincense, and keepe him warme in the Stable, and so let him rest with this Poultesse foure and twenty houres. The next morning give him early of the best new Ale, one quart, with Anniseeds and Licoris, made together into very fine powder, one spoonfull, and a good piece of sweet Butter, give him this with a horn bloud warm, then put into either nostrill a long Goose feather well dipped in oyle de Bay and fresh Butter well mixed together, then remove the Poultesse, and if you doe finde that the kernels and inflammations too ripe, open them, & let forth the matter, and taint the orifice with Turpentine and Hogs grease molten together, then warm some of the Poultesse you left, but not so hot as before, and lay it to the place, and let it so remaine untill the next day, his head being still kept warm, let his manger meate be old cleane Oats, well sifted and moystened in new Ale and Muskadine, if he will eat them so, if not, then Ale alone, and let his Rack meat be Wheat Straw well threshed, and let his drinke be white water for ten dayes after, and then let him not have afterward any cold water, but with exercise, and let him sometimes in stead of white water, a sweet Mash, keeping him to a spare dyet, and let him be every day ayered, either by riding or walking, if he be able to be brought out of the Stable, but then evermore keep him warm after it, and let him either by exercise in moderate riding, or in his cloaths in the Stable, sweat a little every day once, and after let him be rubbed dry, neither let him sweat in his cloaths. Put also into his provender the roots of Elecampane,
white

white Lilies, and Polipodium of the Oake newly gathered, made cleane and chopped very small, to the quantity of two spoonfuls every time, and give him no Provender but when he is very hungry, and faile not to continue this course of Physicke and dyet by the space of ten or twelve daies together, and when these daies be ended, give him this purging drink.

*Glanders a
purging
drinke.*

Take of white Wine one quart, or where Wine may not easily be acquired, then the like quantity of good new Ale, Aloes an ounce and a halfe, made into fine powder, of Agaricke halfe an ounce, the powder of Elecampane two spoonfuls, of Life-honey three spoonfuls, brew all these well together, and give it him bloud-warm, and keepe him warm, six daies after let him bloud in the necke, and if the bloud be good, then take not above a quart at most from him, but if it be naught take then a pottle from him; after this order him both in feeding and exercise very moderately, and by this meanes you shall recover him, and bring him to his pristine health againe. * * * Another Receipt for the *Glanders*, very precious, which I have often tried.

Take Life-honey as much as will suffice, and mingle it with his Oates, rubbing the Oates and Honey together betwixt your hands, so as the Honey may be very well mixed with the Oates; let him eate his Oates thus mingled with the Honey untill such time as he be perfectly cured, which will be when you shall perceive him wholly to have left running at the nose. * * * I had this cure from one of the ablest Ferriers I ever knew in *England*, and I have cured many *Horses* therewith. Another.

Take

Take of Sallet-oyle, and white Wine Vinegar, of each three spoonfuls, beat them well together, and put it into one of his nostrils three mornings together, and so likewise convey into his other nostrill the like quantity of Oyle and Vinegar three mornings together, remembring that evermore when you doe administer this medicine, you doe presently put up into the same nostrill a long Goose-feather dipped first in Oyle de Bay, stirring the Feather up and down in his nostrill, which will cause him to sneeze and snuffe forth the viscous corruption which remaineth in his head. Keep him all the time warm, and let his drink be either sweet Mashes or white Water. * * Of this I have oft times made triall, and it is speciall good as well for *Glanders*, as for any cold, if the *horse* runne at the nose. Another right good.

Take of Diapente and clarified Honey, of each one ounce, and with good Sacke one pint, give it him bloudwarm, being first well brewed together, drench him herewith eight mornings together, and so soon as you have given him this drink, inject into his nostrils this Receipt following.

Take the powder of Aristolochia-rotunda, as much as will suffice, and mixe with it white or Claret Wine in such a proportion as may make it liquid, and inject or squirt it into his nose. * * Or else

Take the juyce of Selendine mingled with faire water, and inject that into his nose. * * Or else

Take Roch-Allum and Salt dissolved in white Wine, and inject that up into his nose. * * Either of all these are very good to cause to cast such naughty corruption forth of his nose and head, that doth

much oppresse him, which lotions are to be administered evermore after the aforesaid drink. * * Another also very good drink.

Take Tanners Owe new made, and new Milke, of each one pint, Sallet-oyle halfe a pint, one head of Garlick pilled and bruised, a little Turmerick in fine powder; boyle all these together as much as will suffice, then take it off and put in your Sallet-oyle, and so give it him bloud-warm; give him this drink three times in fifteen daies, that is to say, once every five daies, and every time you doe administer it unto him, convey halfe a hornfull into each nostrill, and let him stand upon the Trench three houres after, warme cloathed and littered, and then give him a sweet Mash, and such meat as is dry, sweet, and wholesome, but during the time of his cure let his drinke be white water. * * This is very good. Another very good.

Take of faire water two quarts, of Comin made into fine powder and searsed two ounces, and of the inward rinde of Elder six handfuls; boyle this to a moiety, then take it off, and when it is halfe cold strain it, and put into the liquor halfe a pinte of Sallet-oyle, and give him thereof at his mouth three hornfuls, and at either nostrill halfe a hornfull, then leap his backe, and ride him moderately till he be warme, so set him up warme cloathed and littered, and three or foure houres after give him a warme Maibe, but let him eate some Hay first. * * This I can averre to be very good both for *Glanders* and *cold*. Another.

Take Oyle-de-Bay, and sweet Butter, of each halfe a pound, Rosemary shred very well and small halfe a hand-

handfull, Garlicke one pound, beat the Garlicke unpilled in stone Morter, with a wooden Pestell very well, then put to it your Oyle, Butter, and Rosemary, and so make it into one body, then with Wheate-flower so much as will suffice, make it up into pills, and give him three or foure of these every day for ten daies together, and order him *ut supra*. Of this I did never make triall, but it was recommended unto me for a speciall good Receipt. Another.

Take Cloves, long Pepper, Browne-Sugar-Candy, and London-Triacle, of each two ounces, beate the Sugar-Candy and Spices to very fine powder, and put to them your Triacle, and after adde to these Ingredients, of good Sack or Muskadine one pint, and first warm it upon the fire, and when it is almost cold enough to be given him, put to it of Sallet-oyle three penny-worth, and so bloudwarm give it him, and in giving convey into either Nostrill halfe a hornfull of this drinke, and then order him *ut supra*. Another.

Take of new Milk one quart, warm from the Cow, two heads of Garlicke pilled and bruised, boyle these together, keeping them with continuall stirring, then take it off, and let it coole, and a little before it be cold enough to give him put to it of Life-honey two spoonfulls, and of Sallet-oyle halfe a pint, give it him bloudwarm, reserving for either nostrill halfe a hornfull, then order him *ut supra*. These latter cures I never made triall of, but I thinke them to be very good. Another.

Take Ifope, sweet Margerome, Lavander-Cotton, the roots and crops of Elecampane, of each one handfull,

full, chop and shred all these together very small, and boyle them in good Ale or Beere, so much as will suffice, then strain it, and when the liquor is almost cold breake into it two new laid Egges, and stirre it well together, and so give it him bloudwarne, give him this drink three times, that is every third day. This hath beene recommended unto me for a very good Receipt, whereby to cure not onely the *Glanders*, but the mourning of the *Chine*, but I never made use thereof.

But now sithence I am come almost to the end of my Receipts for this Infirmitie, I will give you two Receipts, the one for the *Glanders*, the other for the mourning of the *chine*, which are Master *Markhams*, which he stileth thus. Two most certaine and newly found out Medicines, which will without faile cure any *Glanders*, though our *Ferriers* hold it impossible. The cure. If your *Horse* his cold be come to the worst *Glanders*, which is a continuall running at the *nose*, and hath so runne by the space of divers moneths, so that the *Ferriers* can doe no good, then shall you take better then two handfuls of the white cankerous *Mosse* which groweth upon an old Oaken pale, and boyle it in Milke two quarts, till one part be almost consumed, then straine it and squeeze the *mosse* well, which done give it your *Horse* luke-warme to drinke. Then take two Geese-Feathers, and take sweet Butter, as a bigge Wall-nut, and with the powder of Brimstone, finely beaten and searfed, worke them together with your knife or splatter, till the Butter be brought to a high gold colour, then take two cleane feathers the longest in all the *Goose-wing*, and first at the *quilles* ends

ends with a needle fasten two long threds, then with your salve annoynt the feathers all over, which done in the dry powder of Brimstone, rowle them over and over, then putting the feathers ends formost, open the *Horse* Nostrils, and thrust them up into his head, then take the threds, which are at the quils ends, and fasten them on the top of the *Horses* head, which done ride him abroad for an houre or two, ayring him in this manner morning and evening, and when you bring him into the Stable, after he hath stood tyed up a pretty season, unty the threds and draw out the feathers, and wiping them very dry, lay them up, till you have next occasion to use them, and keep his *body* warme. This disease you must understand, commeth not suddainely, but growes out of long proceffe of time; so likewise the cure must not be expected to be done in a moment, but with much leisure: therefore you must continue your Medicine, as your leisure will serve, either every day, or at the least thrice a weeke, if it be for foure or five moneths together, and be sure it will in the end yield your desire.

Now the second and well assured, and certaine Medicine is to take Elecampane-roots, and boyle them in milke till they be soft, that you may bring them to pap, then with a horne give them to the *horse*, together with the milke luke-warme, being no more then will make the rootes liquid, then having annointed your Goose-feathers put them into his Nostrils, and ride him forth as before is shewed. The other receipt for the mourning of the *Chine*, he intituleth thus.

A most rare and approved Medicine, to cure any high running *Glanders*, called the mourning of the *Chine*,

Chine, held of all men incurable. This disease to my knowledg, there is not any Smith or *Ferrier* in this Kingdome can tell how to cure : for it comes not to the extreamity, till the *Horse* hath runne at the *Nose*, a yeare or more, and have at the roots of his *tongue* a hard lung gathered, which will not be dissolved. Now for mine own part it is well known, that I have cured many with this Medicine only.

Perfume.

Take of *Agri-pigmentum*, and of *Tussilaginis*, beaten into fine powder, of each foure drammes, then beating them with fine Turpentine bring them into a paffe, then make of it little cakes or troches, as broad as a groat, and dry them. This done lay about two or three of them on a Chafingdish of coales, and cover them with a Funnell, so that the sinoake may come out onely at the end thereof, and so without any losse ascend up into the *Horses* head through his nostrils, then ride the *Horse* till he begin to sweate ; this doe once every morning, before water, till the running be stopped, which will be in very short space, considering the greatnesse of this disease.

These be Master *Markhams* two great cures, which by reason he hath so great Encomions of their vertues, and also what great cures he hath wrought and perfected with them, I thinke it not amisse to insert them in this place. Thus I have delivered unto you a great number of Receipts for this one disease, many of which I have tried, and have found them very good, some I could never have meanes or occasion to prove, and therefore I must expect prompt opportunities, in the interim I doe remit them to my brethren to practise. But I will now conclude this Chapter,

ter, with one only Receipt more, which I doe esteeme my Master-piece for this Malady, having had much experience thereof, nor did it ever faile me upon often tryall made. This cure is called, The black drinke for the *Glanders*. The Cure. First prepare his *body* with branne prepared, and after with a Clyster, and your Goose-feathers, as before hath bin taught you. This done,

Take new made Chamberly, and of the best and strongest white-Wine-Vineger, of each halfe a pint, then take of Mustardseede, two or three spoonfuls, and make Mustard thereof with Vineger, and let it be very well ground, that done, put your Vineger and Chamberly to the Mustard, and so stirre them well together. Then take of Tarre and bay Salt, of each like much, so much as will suffice, incorporate them well together, and convey so much thereof, as three Egges-shels will hold, the meate first taken forth, and having first prepared these things, let the *Horse* be taken forth of the stable (being kept that night to a very spare dyet) and ride him first till he begin to sweate, then give him the three Egges-shels filled with the said Tarre and Salt, and so soone as he hath taken that, give him with a horne the fore-named drinke made of Chamberly, Vineger, and Mustard, all at the mouth, excepting only two small or halfe hornesfuls, which let be conveyed into his Nosrils, which so soone as he hath taken, let him be ridden againe, so much as before you did, then bring him into the Stable, cloath him up warme and litter him well, and so let him stand upon the Trench untill three or foure of the clocke, then unbit him and give him a warme

*The black
drink for the
glanders.*

Mass

Mash, and order him in all things as is usuall for *Horses* in Physick. Give him this Medicine or drinke every other or third day, three or foure times, and it is an infallible cure. * * This cure I gat from a Noble Knight, who had done many cures therewith, who was very precise in teaching it, and since I came to know thereof, I have perfected many great Cures therewith, upon *horses* farre spent with the *Glanders*, insomuch as if it be rightly and carefully administred it will cure the rankest *Glanders* that is. And with this Cure I conclude this Chapter.



CHAP. XI.

SECT. I. H.

Hippophylus.



*W*ell Hipposerus, sithence we have finished this Chapter, let us goe to the next; and tell me, what meanes have you to helpe the falling away of the hayre from the Mayn and Tayle of a Horse?

Hippof. Sir, this disease commeth sometimes by a heat which the *horse* hath taken, which hath ingendred a dry *Mainge* in the *mayne* and *tayle*, which is the occasion of the shedding of the *hayre* from those parts, and sometimes it commeth by a surfeit, causing evill *humours* to resort to those parts, which is the cause

cause of the falling away of the *hayre*, and I have also known a *horse* to shed the *hayre* both of *mayne* and *tayle* after he hath beene violently and dangerously visited with the *stavers*. The signes are evident. And the Cure is,

First take bloud from the *neck-veine* if it be onely in the *mayne*, but if in both *mayne* and *tayle*, and then after you have opened the *neck-veine*, and taken from thence a reasonable quantity of *bloud*, then slit the *skin* of the inward part of the *taile*, next to the *tuell* from the buttocks to the fourth *joynt*, and there with your *Cornet* you shall finde a hard gristle which the *French Marishals* doe call *Barivole*, raise it up with your *Cornet* and take it forth: that done, fill up the cleft with *Salt* finely beaten, and then with a hot iron steep it in *Buck-lye*; burne the *tayle* in sundry places, and then annoynt the places so burned with *Hogs grease* till it be whole. * * This cure I gat in *France* among the *Marishals* there, whom I saw cure sundry *horses* of this malady, and I my selfe have cured foure or five after the same method. If it be both in the *mayne* and *tayle*, and that you be fearefull to experiment this cure by reason you never saw the manner of it, then search both *mayne* and *tayle* well with your finger as afore-said, and annoynt the places with this unguent. Take *Quick-silver*, and tryed *Hogs grease* (the *Quicksilver* being first mortified with *salting-spittle*) incorporate them very well together till the *Hogs-grease* be of a perfect *Ash-colour*, & annoynt the sorance therewith every day once, holding a hot bar of iron neere, to cause the oyntment to sinke in, and in three or foure daies thus dressing him, he will be well. * * This

Haire from
the *Mayne*
and *Tayle*
falling away.

is a very good Receipt, and I have often used it.

SECT. 2. H.

Hippoph. **B**Ut then what is good to cause the hayre to grow again?

Hayre to grow.

Hippof. Take the dung of a Goat newly made, ordinary Honey, Allum, and the bloud of a Hog, the Allum being first made into fine powder: boyle all these together, and rub and annoynt the places therewith every day, and it will cause the hayre to come againe apace. * * This is speciall good.

Hippoph. What is good for the Head-ache?

Head-ache.

Hippof. First let him bloud in the *month*, and rub it with Salt to cause it to bleed the more, then take two long Feathers of a Goose-wing well annoynted in oyle de Bay, thrust them up and downe his *nostrils*, whereby to open and purge his *head*, and then perfume his *head* with the stalks of Garlicke broken into small pieces, as is before shewed, keeping him to a spare dyet, and moderate exercise, the better to cleanse his *head* and *stomack*, and to empty himselfe, by means whereof the *head* and *braine* will be the better quieted. It were very good also to perfume him with Frankincense, Storax, & Benjamin, grossly beaten and well mixed, of each like much as will suffice, but two or three daies after let him bloud, and give him white water for eight daies after, during which time you may do well to give him sometimes a sweet Mash * * This is very good.

SECT.

SECT. 3. H.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to helpe the heeles that be scabbed?

Hippof. You shall many times have small dry Scabs upon your *Horse heeles*, which will not be greatly noxious to him, and thereupon the best cure for his Keeper daily to annoynt them throughly with the oyntment made of elbow-grease. But if there be any running *humour* issuing from the *heelles* of the *horse*, Heeles scabbed. then let him stand every day morning and evening up to the belly in water till the Scabs doe contract, then make a convenient *Cantherize* neere to the *joynts*, as well crosse as thwartwise, then heale it up as you use to doe *kibed heeles*. * * This is very good.

SECT. 4. H.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good for heeles that be kibed?

Hippof. This disease the *French* doe call *Javarrs*, which is a kind of *Scratches*, and the cure is to *Cantherize* the middle of the swelling along, both Heeles kibed. long and crosse-wise; that done, take *Oxe-dung* reeking hot, mixe it upon the fire with *Sallet-oyle*, and apply it to the *forance*, once and no more, then doe afterwards as is prescribed you in the cure of a *Splent* in *lib. 2. cap. 18. sect. 17. s.* This I never tried.

SECT. 5. H.

Hippoph. **V**V *Hat cure have you for heeles that are troubled with the Mellet?*

Hippof. This forance we call the *mellet*, is a dry scab that groweth upon the heele, sometimes on the one, and sometimes on the other heele; sometimes it cometh of corrupt blood, sometimes of a blow given by the *toe* with the *hinder foot*, for the *mellet* growes commonly upon the *heele* of the *fore-foot*, and sometimes for want of good rubbing and dressing after travell; it will also have a dry chop without any moysture at all. The signes to know it is easie, to wit, it will soon be felt with your hand. To cure it I have before shewed you in section *prudenti*. But yet I will give you one receipt more for the same cure, whereof I have made often tryall, and it is very good.

Take of ordinary Honey halfe a pinte, blacke Sope a quarter of a pound, mixe these together, and put thereto four or five spoonfuls of Vinegar, and as much Allum finely beaten as a Hens egge unburned, and of Rye-flowre two spoonfuls, mixe and incorporate all these well together, and having first clipped or shaven away the *hayre*, apply this medicine playster-wise to the forance, just so farre as the forance goeth, and let it so remain five daies, and then take it away, and wash all the legge, foot and forance with powdred beefe-broth, and after rope up his legs with thumbbands of soft Hay wet, and he will be sound. But then you must understand that when at any time you doe dresse the forance, you doe not faile to take off the

the dry scab, or whatever crusty thing shall be upon or about the place, and by washing and cleansing the the sore, that you doe make it marvellous cleane.* * *
This is a very good Receipt.

SECT. 6. H.

Hippoph. **V** **V** *What is good to helpe a Horse that is Hide-bound?*

Hippof. This malady is when the *skin* of the horse doth cleave to the *flesh*, as you cannot with your hand pull up the *skin* from the *ribs*; sometimes it commeth through extreame poverty and maceration; and sometimes through the indiscretion of the Groome for want of good tending; sometimes of a surfet taken by over-riding, and violent heats given him, and then washed, or negligently suffered to stand long in the cold, or in the raine; and sometimes againe it commeth of corrupt *cholericke bloud* sicccating the *flesh*, which wanting its naturall course, causeth the *skin* to shrinke and cling together, and to cleave to the *bones* and *flesh*; it also maketh him sick, and to have a gaunt *belly* shrunke up to his *flankes*; and his *hayre* will stare, and his *legges* will swell: and by these signes you may know the disease it is so conspicuous. It causeth also siccity and aridity in the *liver* and *lungs*, causing great torment throughout all the whole *body*, and his *dung* will be very hard and dry, and of a naughty favour, for his *body* will be very costive, and if he have not help in reasonable time, if death it selfe ensue not, yet will at the last other desperate maladies attach him, whereof the least will be the *mainge*, which

which will not easily or suddenly be cured. The cure is to let him *bloud* either on both *sides* the *necke*, or on both the *spurre veines*, then cloth and litter him warm, and doe no more unto him that day, more then to give him good meat and white water, for cold water he must not drinke till he be throughly well againe. The next day give him this drinke.

Hidebound.

Take of white wine one pinte, of Sallet oyle one pound, of Venice Turpentine one ounce, of Methridate, of loafe Sugar, and of Cassia prepared, of each two ounces, of the milke of sweet Almonds halfe a pinte, and of Verjuyce of the Crab one penny worth, mixe all these well together, and warming it upon the fire, give it to the sicke *horse*, let him have this drinke six or seven mornings together, alwayes having a speciall care to the strength of the *Horse*, as well in this, as in all other your cures. * * This is a cure I have used very often, and have found it to be speciall good. Another singular good receipt. First, annoynt his body all over with *Acopum* and *Sacke* warmed together, or else with this *Bath*.

Take faire water, Mallowes, Smalage, Rosemary, and Bay leaves; boyle all these in the water till they shall become soft, and so *bath* his whole body therewith warm, and when you have dryed him againe, annoynt him with this unguent.

Take of Hogs greafe tryed one pound, Camomile, Mallowes, Grunfell, Smallage, of each one handfull, chop the hearbs very small, and boyle them with the Hogs greafe a good while with a soft fire, then straine it, and wring forth the oyle that commeth of the hearbs, and with this Vnguent annoynt his body all over,

ver, for it will both supple and loosen his *skin*: the next day give him this drinke.

Take of Muskadine and of strong Ale, of each one pinte, Grunsell, Rue, Smalage, Rosemary, and Betony, of each like much: all together amounting to a handfull. Then take Gum-Dragamant one ounce, two heads of Garlick pilled and bruised: let all these boyle in the Muskadine and Ale, to the consummation of one pint, then put to it of sweet Butter, a penny worth, and when it is molten, take it from the fire, and straine it very hard, and so give it him bloud warme. Let this drinke be divided into three parts, whereof give him one part the first morning, the other second parts, the second and third mornings following, for you must understand that when I said that this drinke must be boyled to the consummation of one pinte; my meaning is, that it must boyle till one part be consumed, and not otherwise; and in the interim you must keep your *Horse* very warm, and let his drink be either sweet Mashs or white water, and foure dayes after he hath beene thrice thus drenched, give him this other drinke. Take Anniseeds, Licoris, Fennel-seeds, Bay-berries, Elecampane dried, Fenugrick, Turmerick, of each like much, all made into very fine powder, and searsed; let two spoonfulls of this powder (being well mixed) be infused in good Ale one quart, with Sallet oyle two spoonfulls, give him this drinke foure mornings together, wherein you are to observe that the first time you are to administer this drinke to your *horse*, you are to put into the Ale two spoonfulls of this powder, and the other three mornings, but one spoonefull: keep him warm, and order

der him as is behoovefull for a sicke *Horse* that is in *physicke*, and he is certainly cured. * * This is a speciall good Receipt. Another :

Let him *bloud* in both the *flanke veines*, then take of good white Wine one quart, and put thereto of Sallet oyle, three ounces, of Comin one dram, Anniseeds and Licoris, of each two ounces, make all these into very fine powder, and searse them, and give it him *bloud warme*, then set him up, and let him be thoroughly rubbed against the *bayre*, and along the *backe* and *ribs*, and nape of the necke, halfe an houre together, then cover all his *backe* with a *sacke* made thoroughly well soaked in a tub of water, and when it hath drained a while, lay it upon him, and upon that, two housing clothes at the least, and gird them close unto him well wipfed, which will bring him into a sweat, which truly will be the prime cause whereby to restore him to his pristine sanity, but let him not sweat above one houre at most, and coole him by degrees, taking away the *Sacke* first, and keep him to sweet *Mashes* or white water during the time of his *physicke*, and longer; let him be thus drenched, sweated, and ordered, seven dayes together, and give him in stead of his *Oates*, *Barly* boyled, and dry *Beanes* bruised in a *Mill*, and good old sweet *Hay*, well shaken and dusted, and sometimes greene *Mault* from off the *floore*; and after eight dayes let him *bloud* in both the *breast veines*, but take not above a pinte of *bloud* from him in all, and that day you *bloudy* him, give him of good *Sacke* one pinte, and put to it of Sallet oyle a quarter of a pinte, and of *London Treacle* one ounce, warme this upon the fire, and brew them well together,

ther, and so administer it bloud warme, then leape his backe, and ride him till he sweate, then set him up warme clothed and littered, and at night give him a sweet Mash, putting into it the powder of Brimstone two Spoonfulls, and he will be well againe. * *. This is very good. Another:

Take Hogs grease two drams, and of the juyce of Dragon-wort one ounce, of Incense halfe a dram, of Sirrop of Roses three ounces, dissolve all these in Tison one pinte and a halfe, set it upon the fire till all be dissolved, and so give it him bloud warme, and exercise him moderately upon it till he doe begin to sweate, then set him up warme, and let him fast three houres after, and this will scowre from him all his infection, loosen his skin, and procure a good appetite to meat, provided you take *bloud* from him the day before, and (if as well in this receipt as in all the former) you doe give your *Horse* a *suppository* the day before you drench him, you will much better and sooner perfect your *cure*, especially if you finde him *constive*, otherwise a gentle *Clister* will not be amisse. * *
This is a well approved cure, and I have often used it.

S E C T. 7. H.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you cure a Horse that is Hip-shot?
Hippof. Sir, this commeth fundry waies, that is to say, either by a stroke with another *Horse*, or by a wrench, by which meanes the *bone* may be slipped out, and then it must be put in againe; or by a strain, which may cause him to halt, or by means
of

of some thorne which he may get by leaping or running among bushes, which must first be gotten out, otherwise the place will fester, and he goe lame. The cure is, first let him *bloud* in the *thigh-veine*, on that side whereon the griefe is, then charge him with this charge we call a *Honey-charge*, prescribed you in the next *section*, and so put upon the other *foot* a *Patton-shooe*, and let him not lie downe in ten daies (if that the *bone* have beene out) after bathe the place well with that bath which is already taught you in *lib. 2. cap. 5. lit. B.* and the Receipt beginneth thus (take *Smalage*, *Oxe-eye*, and *Sheeps-suet*, &c.) and put into the *Bath* some of the said *Honey-charge*, and if this doe not cure him (as it is most probable it will) then apply to the place this *Ceroene* (as the *French* doe term it) which is a *Searcloth* very hot, and this *Ceroene* is thus made.

Take of blacke Pitch halfe a pound, of Mastick two ounces, of Galbanum foure ounces, of fat Pitch and of Turpentine, of each halfe a pound; melt these in a pot together, and when it is halfe cold, charge the place up to the *hanch*, and so overthwart the *reines* of the *backe*, and if he be not cured at the end of eight or ten daies more with this *Ceroene*, or *Searcloth*, then take it off and apply to the place grieved this unguent.

Take of oyle de Bay, Althea, tryed Hogs-grease, of each halfe a pound; incorporate all these together to an unguent, and therewith annoint, rub, and chafe the place grieved, and he shall doe well. * * This is a very good Receipt, and I have made great use thereof.

SECT.

SECT. 3. H.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you make this Honey-Charge Hippo-
 poferus? *Good*

Hippof. I will fhew you Sir, Take of Wheat-meale
 two pound, and put a little Wine to it, as much as
 will fuffice, put it into a Kettle, as if you were to make
 a Poulteffe, and when it is well mixed adde to it of
 Bolearmoniack in fine powder, halfe a pound, of com-
 mon English Honey one pound, then fet it upon the *Honey charge*
 fire, and boyle it, keeping it continually ftirring, and
 put to it in the boyling of black pitch halfe a pound,
 ftill ftirring till it be boyled fo much as will fuffice, &
 when it is almost enough put to it of ordinary Tur-
 pentine halfe a pound, of oyle de Bay, Comin, Althea,
 Sanguis Draconis, Bay-berries, Fenugrick, and of Lin-
 feed-meale, of each two drams, boyle all thefe toge-
 ther again, ftill ftirring them till they be well incor-
 porate, and herewith charge the grieved *members* of
 the *horfe*. * * This is the very beft Charge that I doe
 know for ordinary griefes of this nature; but if you
 be to apply this to many *horfes*, then muft you double
 your Ingredients according to the number of your
horfes. This *charge* is fingular good for any flip or
 wrench in the fhoulder, hip, or other member, for all
 forts of scratches, and for ftiffneffe of *finews*, or for *fi-*
news hurt or any way offended, as alfo for a *hip-shot* or
dislocation, or for a *horfe* that is over-wearied with tra-
 vell, as alfo to draw away all bad *humours*, to affwage
 fwellings and tumours, and it will ferve in the place
 of a *white plaifter*. And this I have often tried.

SECT. 9. H.

Hippoph. **V**Vell now let us come to treat of the hoof; what have you good to mollifie the hoof, and to cause it to grow?

Hoofs to grow.

Hippof. I gave you a very good receipt in *lib. 2. cap. 6. sect. 3. lit. C.* but now I will give you more which shall be very good. Take of Elder leaves, and of Wal-wort, of each like much; stampe and straine them till you have gotten of the juyce one quart, or better, then take of Mutton or Deers suet clarified, three pound, Turpentine, Honey, and Sallet oyle, of each one pound: boyle these till all the juyce be consumed into the other ingredients; then when it is cold, reserve it, and when you have occasion to use it, annoynt the hoofe therewith. * * This is very pretious. Another as good to cause the hoofe to grow. You must observe this rule, viz. you must at what time you would have him shod, cause his hoofe to be pared well and even, and to open the heeles and frush wel, and so let him be shod up; which must be done when the Moone is three dayes in the increase after the change, by which meanes the hoofe will grow more in eight daies then (if he had beene pared and shod in any other time of the Moone) in fifteene dayes, both faster and better, then to supple the hoofe, and to cause it to grow the more, Take Goats grease, Turpentine, Sallet oyle, and new waxe, of each two ounces, melt them together, then whilst they be hot, adde to it of ordinary Honey three ounces, of Sanguis-Dragonis one dram, in fine powder: incorporate all these together, and

and bring them to an unguent, with which annoynt and rubbe the *hoofes* of the *horse* daily, which may well be done by using to each the quantity of a halfe nut of this oyntment, which will cause the *hoofe* to grow more in fifteene dayes, then without it in three moneths, and if you adde to the former ingredients, of the juyce of the hearbe called *Hepatica*, fixe ounces, and of the root called *Hofmaderigalis* two ounces, it will be much better. For if you doe finde that the aforesaid Unguent doe not make the *hoofe* to come away to your minde, then will this addition assuredly doe it. * * This is a very good receipt. Another:

Take Sallet oyle foure ounces, new Waxe and Turpentine, of each one ounce, Goats greafe three ounces, melt all these together, and being all molten, take it from the fire, and put into it of Horse-greafe, Agrippa, and of Morciaton, of each one ounce, beat and incorporate all these together with the other ingredients, till it be through cold; with this oyntment, rub and annoynt the *coffines* of the *hoofes* especially about the *cronet* at the *hayre*, every day once, and it will grow very much. * *. This is singular good. Another very good.

Take of Hogges-greafe three pound, of patch or peece-greafe two pound, Turpentine one pound, new Wax halfe a pound, and of Sallet-oyle one pound, melt, and mixe all these together, bringing it to an Oyntment, and herewith rub and annoynt the *Coffins* of the *horse*, especially about the *Cronets*, neere to the hayre. * *. But if your *horse* be prickt in shooing, or otherwise accidently hurt in or about the *sole*, draw forth the *Nayle* first, or whatsoever was
cause.

cause of his harme, then take a few of the longest hayres from his *Tayle*, and wrap them about the point of the said *Nayle*, and cast the said *Nayle* (thus wrapped up in the *Hayre*) into the fire, and he will goe sound, and upright againe: provided you doe not suffer any other *Nayle* to be driven in the place of the former. * *. This many have supposed to be a *Charme*, but I for my part doe not thinke it to be any such matter, I have often used the same, and have evermore found it to make a perfect Cure.

Now as touching hurts and bruises in the *fecte*, most certaine is it that a *horse* will many times have a *sore foote*, which will runne with water and matter about the *Frush* and *beele*, which many will ignorantly imagine to be a disease in the *Foote*, not knowing how it might come, when as it is nought else but a very bruise, gotten by treading upon a stone or stub, and I have cured many *horses* in this wise, *viz.* Take a wild or garden Colewort, and beat it with old Bores-grease to an Vnguent, and apply it unto the Sorance, then leape his *backe*, and ride him an easie Trot upon sward-ground, to the end the Medicine may the better enter into the *sore*, and thus dressing him once a day he will soone be well. * *. This is very good. But if your *horse* have a weeping *hoofe*, or small Clifts, which disease the *French* do cal *la Corne que Escume*, the *Coffin* which frotheth or wheeseth; Then the cure is; First to open the place with your *Drawing-iron* or *Cornet*, I meane the outward part thereof only, till you come unto the *Master-Veine*, which you must breake with your *Cornet* and suffer it to bleed so long as it will, then fill up the wound with the powder of Salt, and

H. ofe | weeping.

and hurds steeped in Vineger, and bind them so on that they fall not off, and thus by dressing it every day once, and in short time it will be well. This cure I never tryed my selfe, but I have beene present sundry times in *France*, where I have seene this cure fully perfected by *Marishalls* there.

But if the *hoofe* be loose, then : take Bettony, Rose-*Hoofe loose.*
mary, Rue, red-Mints, Tansie, Sotheron-wood, of each like much : bray all these hearbs with Tarre, so much as will suffice, and the powder of Bole-Armoniack, so much as will suffice, and apply it to the *hoofe*, till you finde that it be fast againe. * * This also is very good. Another. Take Tarre, Brimstone in fine powder, Wheate-branne, and the Vrine of a Man-child : boyle all these to a Pultis, and apply it hot to the *hoofe*, and this will fasten it. * * This is singular good. But if the Veine lye bare in the *sole* of the *Foote* causing the *horse* to halt, then to make the *hoofe* to grow over it, whereby it becommeth sound againe, make this Plaister, and apply it to the Sorance.

Take Stone Pitch, and Rosin, of each two ounces, *Hoofe burnt.*
Brimstone in fine powder one ounce ; melt all these together till they be well incorporate, then when you take it from the fire, adde thereto of Turpentine one ounce, and so stirre them all together, and as it cooleth, make it up into Rowles, and when you would use it, poure the same into the *Orifice* by the helpe of a red hot iron, and so all about the Sorance, then clap Hurds upon it, and over that a piece of Leather, cut and shaped for the purpose, and so splent it to keepe it fast on. Use thus to dresse him twice or thrice, and he will be cured. * * This is very good. But if the
foote.

foote have taken any harme by an over reach, stub, pricke, or gravell, then making the wound very cleane, and laying it bare.

Take Sope, and Salt of each like much, so much as will suffice, make them to an Vnguent, then first wash the Sore with Chamberly and Salt, or Beere and Salt, and dry it againe, with a linnen ragge, then binde on the Medicine, and let it so remaine foure and twenty houres; and doe thus if the wound be great three or foure dayes together: then having with this Medicine exhausted all the *Venome* (which it will soon do;) take of Traine-Oyle one spoonefull or two, and as much Ceruse that is, white lead in fine powder, and so worke them to a thicke salve; then apply that to the forance plaister-wise, till it be whole; which will not be long, for nothing doth dry up sooner, or is more kindly, or Naturall for the breeding of a new *hoofe* then this. Another most soveraigne for a *hoofe-bound*.

Hoofe bound.

First plucke off the Shooes, and shoe him up againe with *halfe Moone* or *lunet shooes*, then ease with your drawing Iron or Rape the quarters of the *hoofes* on both sides of the *Feete*, from the *Cronet*, downe to the end or bottome of the *hoofes*, so deepe till you perceive as it were a dew to come forth, and if you make two Rases it will be the better, and enlarge the *hoofes* the more, that done, annoynt the *hoofes* above next to the *hayre*, about the *Cronet* with this oyntment.

Take of Turpentine one pound, of Wax, and of Sheepes or Deeres Suet, of each halfe a pound, of Tarre, and of Sallet-oyle, of each halfe a pint; melt all but the Turpentine together, and when it is almost ready to be taken off from the fire, put in your Tur-

Turpentine, and so stirre it well together till it be cold. Let his *hoofes* be annoynted herewith once a day till you doe perceiue he mendeth, and then let him be ridden upon soft, moyst-swardy-ground, an houre or two every day once, for the space of a *Month*, and if he doe not goe well at the *Months* end, (as I am confident he will) then take off the *lunet shoes*, and pare his *Soles*, *Frushes*, and *beeles*, so thin, till you may see a dew to come forth, and the *blond* ready to start, then tacked on his whole *shoes*, and stoppe all his *Fecte* as well within as without, with this Charge.

Take of Cow or Oxe-dung, and of Wheate-branne, of each, so much as will suffice, of tryed Hogges-grease, and of the kidney of a Loyne of Mutton, of each one pound, of Turpentine, and Tarre, of each halfe a pound, melt all these together (the Turpentine excepted) which must be put in when it is almost ready to be taken from the fire, continually stirring it, to the end the ingredients may be better mixed. Let this *Charge* be layed on good and hot, renewing it every day once by the space of nine dayes, to the end the *sole* may arise: but if this will not doe it, then take out the *soles* cleane, and after you have stanchd the bleeding, with the tender tops of Hlope well stamped in a stone Morter, then apply the medicine of *Snayles*, Bay-Salt, and red Nettles shewed you in *lib. 2. chap. 9. sect. 18. F.* renewing it once a day for three dayes, and after you may heale up the *fecte*, and bring a new, and perfect *sole* with your greene Oyntment so often recommended unto you, in many other of my *Cures*; and thus you shall rectifie the *hoofes*, and make him sound, but then he

*Hoofe bound
a Charge.*

must be shod with *lavel*s againe, and turned forth to graffe. * *. But if he hath stood in the Stable with little exercise, whereby he may be in danger of a *dry foundring*.

Hoofe brittle. Take of Turpentine, of Sheeps suet, and of Waxe, of each one pound, of Sallet-Oyle one pint, of Tarre halfe a pinte; melt all these upon a soft fire, and stirre them in the melting untill they be all well incorporate, but put in your Turpentine last, which being well molten put it up in a cleane Vessell, and keepe it for your use, and herewith annoynt the *hoofes* of your *horse* daily, they having beene first washed very cleane, and wiped dry, and this will conserve his *hoofes* supple and moyst, keepe them coole, and make them very tough and sound. * *. This I have often used. But if the *hoofes* be somewhat straight, and yet the *horse* not *hoofe-bound*, then administer this Medicine to his *feete*.

Hoofe straight.

Take the fat of Bacon, the sword cut away halfe a pound, of white Sope three ounces, Balme one handfull, and five or sixe sprigges of the tender tops of Rue, chop, and stampe all these together very well in a Morter, and then fry them, and lay them to the *hoofes* reasonable hot, and keepe him from comming in any wet till he be well, and being thus dressed every day once, his *hoofes* will in short time be sound, well, and easy to him againe. * *. This Receipt is very good. But let us discourse of a *loose hoofe* yet a little more. Take of Tarre three spoonefuls, of Rosin three ounces, of Tansy, Rue, Mints, and Sotherenwood of each one handfull, pound all these very well, adding to it of sweet Butter halfe a pound, of Virgin Waxe

Hoofe loose.

Waxe halfe an ounce, and so try them all together till it come to be a thicke salve, and apply it Plaister-wise warme to the *hoofes*, seven or eight dayes together, and this will cure him, and fasten the *hoofes* againe. * *. This is very good. But if his *hoofe* be otherwise hurt, either by some other *horse* treading upon his *hoofe*, or by any other accident; then

Take an Egge, and Soot so much as will suffice, to be beaten with the said Egge til it be stiff like a salve; then adde to it of Sallet-oyle and Harts-horne made into powder, of each two or three spoonfuls, boyle this to a thicke salve, continually stirring it in the boyling, and apply it to the *hoofes* Plaister-wise, dayly dressing them till they be whole. This I never made tryall off, howbeit it was commended to me to be a speciall good Receipt. Another very good to make a brittle or pomized *hoofe* tough.

Take fresh Butter one pound, Waxe and Turpentine of each halfe a pound, melt first the Waxe, then put to it your Butter, and when that is molten put in your Turpentine, and so stirring them well together, reserve it to your use, and when you doe use it, apply it thus: Make a Buskin of leather, so as it may be buckled or tyed above or upon the *pasterne* joynt, and then lay on so much of the medicine as will cover the *hoofe* all over very thicke, and then put on the Buskin and fasten it to his *legge* or *pasterne*, and let him stand so night and day till you have occasion to ride or exercise him, dressing him thus once a day, and the longer you use this medicine, the better will be his *hoofe*. * *. I have often made tryall of this receipt, and I have found it to be very good. But if your *horse* hath

Hoofe troden upon or hurt.

Hoofe brittle to make tough.

Hoofe to growe

hath his *hoofe* broken, and that you have a desire it should grow, then

Take Garlicke pilled seven ounces, Rue three handfulls, Allum powdred and searsed seven ounces old Bores greafe two pound, beat all these together with Asses dung one handfull, and then boyle it, and so reserve it, and annoynt his *hoofes* therewith, and they will grow very fast. * * *. This is very good. If he be hurt by being cast in his *halter*, then

Halter cast.

Take of Waxe and Turpentine, of each one ounce, melt them together in a pot: take then of Verdegrease and Hogs-grease, of each one ounce, and incorporate them well together raw, *viz.* without boyling, the Verdigrease being first made into very fine powder, and put into another pot by it selfe: then when you have occasion to use it whereby to dresse a sore: take first of that you made of Turpentine and Waxe two parts, and then of that other which was not boyled made of Verdigrease and Hogs greafe a third part, and mixing them well together in the palme of your hand, annoynt the sorance therewith; thus doing every day once or twice, it will be whole, remember to clip away the *hayre* first from about the place. And this is a most excellent receipt. * * *. I have often proved it.

SECT. IO. H.

Hippoph. **W**hat may a man best apply to the Hough of a Horse that is swelled, as if he were in danger to breed a Bloud or Bogge-Spaven?

Hippof. This commeth sometimes to young *horses* when

when they be too hard ridden and journeyed in their youth, which is the cause they swell in that place, by reason the *bloud* falling downe there setleth, which if it be not speedily removed, will assuredly beget a *wet spaven*. The cure is, annoynt the place swoln foure or five dayes together with naturall Balsome, and after repressie the *humours* with this charge, having first given fire to the place lightly :

Take oyle of Roses two ounces, Bolearmoniack in powder one ounce, Wheat flower halfe an ounce, and the white of an Egge, beat and incorporate all these together, and after you have ended to annoynt the place swelled with Balsome : charge every day for foure or five dayes after, the place herewith, and he will be well. * * *. This is very good.

Horse swelled.

SECT. II. H.

Hippoph. **VV** *Hat is good to dry up humours?*
Hippof. This kinde of drying up of *humours*, is but onely to restraine them for working too much upon wounds, whereby the better to cure them. The way therefore is,

First bathe the sorance well with hot molten fresh Butter, and then strew upon it the powder of Rosin for a day or two; then take of the thickest Creame, and of Soot, of each as much as will suffice, and worke them to a thicke Paste, and so apply it to the sorance plaister-wise, and it will both dry up the *humour* which possesseth it, and heale up and skin the sore in a short space. * * *. This I have often used, and it is right good.

Humours to dry up.

SECT. 12. H.

Hippoph. **W**hat is best to cure the hurt in the Shoulder, or other member?

Hippof. There are many things good for a malady of this nature, and when I come to treat of Spraines, Sores, and Wounds, I shall deliver them unto you, and therefore I will now referre them to its proper place, onely I will give you one for the present.

Hurt shoul-
der.

Take oyle de Bay, Dialthea, fresh Butter, oyle of Turpentine, of each two ounces, boyle and mixe them well together, and when they be well incorporate, annoynt the place grieved therewith so hot as the horse can well suffer it without scalding, and let him be thus annoynted twice or thrice a day, and give the horse moderate exercise by walking him a foot-pace gently up and down. And this is a certaine and an approved remedy. This I never tryed, but a great Ferrier who is cryed up for famous, taught it me, and wished me to make use thereof.

SECT. 13. H.

Hippoph. **W**hat doe you hold good wherewith to cure old hurts?

Hurts old to
cure.

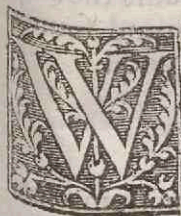
Hippof. The onely best way to cure and dry up old hurts and fores, is this: Take old shooes and burne them to coles, and then beate them to fine powder, then adde to it unslaked Lime and ordinary Honey, as much as will suffice, to bring it to a stiffe paste, which done, knead them all together unto a paste, and

and so make it into a Cake, and then lay it upon a fire-pan, and so let it be well baked; which done, make it into fine powder, and every day once put of this powder into the wound, and it will heale it up, nothing sooner. * * This I have often used, and it is very good, and herewith we doe conclude this Chapter.

CHAP. XII.

SECT. I. I.

Hippopherus.



What is good to helpe any imperfection in the Feet ?

Hippof. First pare the feet very thin, open the heels and make the shoes wide large, and hollow: if the imperfection come by foundring, then

Take a good quantity of Oxe or Cow dung, Tarre, and Hogs grease, of each halfe as much, and of Soot the like quantity, as of either Tarre or Hogs grease: boyle all these well together, and herewith stop the horse feet very hot, and continue thus to doe daily, and it will not onely take away any anguish, but also strengthen the hooves, and make them so perfect as that they will be able to endure labour; but when you travell your horse (for exercise is very good for him)

Imperfections in the feet.

him) let him be stopped herewith hot; but if cold, adde then thereto the whites of Egges as much as will suffice, for that will coole his *feet* very well, and it will comfort the *Frissh* very much; but if the *hoofe* be naturally brittle, and by foundring become dry and streightned, then to enlarge the same, and to make it the more tough, and to grow the better also; Take of Hogs greafe, Turpentine, and Masticke of each like much, and halfe so much Lard as of either of them: melt all these but the Turpentine on the fire, and when it is well dissolved take it off, and then put in your Turpentine, stirring it well till it be thoroughly incorporate; then keep it in a stone Pot by it selfe, and when it is through cold be sure to stop the Pot very close, and so reserve it for your use. With this Salve annoynt the *coffins* (but especially the *Cronets*) every day twice at the least, and it will cause the *hoofe* to grow very much, and become tough and sound.

* * * This I have often used, and it is very good.

SECT. 2. I.

Hippoph. **V**V *Hat is good to cure an Impostumation?*
Hippof. To ripen any swelling which doth impostumate, you shall know by the heat, for if you lay your hand thereon, it will be hot and burn; wherefore to prepare and make it ready to be opened,

Impostumation to ripen.

Take Mallow-roots, and white Lilly roots, of each like much; bruise them, and put to them Hogs greafe and Linseed meale, of each so much as will suffice, and boyle them till they be soft, and so plaisterwise apply it to the grieve * *

SECT.

SECT 3. I.

Hippoph. **VV** *What is good for any inward sicknesse in a Horse?*

Hippof. I have shewed you that sufficiently before in *lib. 2. cap. 3. sect. 6. A.* where I give you three excellent receipts together; nevertheless if you doe finde that your *horse* doe not thrive, but droop and impaire, I will here give you one receipt more which I doe know to be most singular, and will doe him much good, and whereof I have had very long and great good experience. First therefore if you doe see cause, take *bloud* from him, but not otherwise, and if he be subject to costivenesse, then administer unto him either a *Clister* or a *Suppository*, and the day following give him this drinke.

Take Aristolochia Rotunda, Bay berries, Gentiam, Anniseeds, Ginger, and of Trifora-Magna, of each one ounce: beat all the simples to very fine powder, and mixe them well together; then take of white Wine one quart, or of Sacke the like proportion, which is better, then put of this powder, and of your Trifora-Magna one spooneful, into the Wine. Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, and of Mithridate two drams, warme these upon the fire, and so administer it *bloud warme*, and let him be exercised as well before as after his drinke, but not so farre as to sweate by any meanes, neither let him drinke any cold water in foure or five dayes after, but either warme Mashes, or else white water.

* * * This is most soveraigne for any inward sicknesse, droopings, forsaking of meat, Feavers, Colds, Coughs, or the like.

SECT 3. I.

Hippoph. **Y**ou speake hereof administring a Suppository, but what Suppository were best to be given in a case of this nature?

Hippof. I will shew you Sir: if your Horse be so sicke whereby you feare to give him any strong medicine, and that he be costive withall, then give him this Suppository following.

Inward sick-
nesse a Sup-
pository.

Take of Honey fixe ounces, of Salt-niter, one ounce and a halfe, of Wheat flower and of Anniseeds in fine powder, of each, one ounce, boyle all these to a hard thickenesse, and then make it into Suppositories; and first annoynt your hand with Sallet oyle or sweet Butter, and the Suppository also which he is to take, and so convey it into his fundament a pretty way, and after tye his taylor betwixt his legges, as I have elsewhere shewed you: or else hold it close to his body with your hand, by the space of a quarter of an hour at the least, till it be thoroughly dissolved, and this will cause him to purge kindly, and it will very much coole and loosen his guts: then you may be the more bold to administer what Drinkes, Cordials, or other things which you may thinke most requisite for his recovery. * * *

SECT. 4. I.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to ripen inflammations, Pusils; and Kernels, which doe grow under the chaule of the Horse?

Hippof.

Hippof. This commeth to a *horse* that hath either Cold or Glanders, which must be dissolved, otherwise the *Horse* can never be cured : wherefore take Wheat Bran two handfuls, and so much Wine, Ale, *Inflammations.* or Beere, as one quart, with which to thicken it, put to it of Hogs greafe halfe a pound, boyle these together till the liquor be quite consumed, and so apply it to the place so hot as the *horse* may well suffer it, renewing it every day once, till it doe of it selfe breake, or be so soft to be opened, then let forth the corruption, and taint it with a taint of flaxe dipped in this Salve. Take of Turpentine and of Hogs greafe of each like much, and of Rosin and Waxe a much greater quantity; melt all these together, and with the said taynt dipped in this medicine, put it into the wound, renewing it every day once till it be whole.

* * * This is an approved receipt. But if it be an inflammation impostumating in any other part of the *body*, take then the grounds of a Beere-Barrell, foure quarts, of Smalage, Penny-royall, Winter-Savory, Cumfrey, Rue, and of the leaves and berries of the Missel-tow, of each two handfuls, chop all these very small, and put them to the said grounds, and put to it of Sheeps or Deere Suet tryed, one pound, and three or foure handfuls of Rye or Wheat Bran, so much indeed as will serve to boyle this to a *Poultresse*, and when it is boyled as much as will suffice, apply it to the place, and if the swelling be very much impostumated, it will breake it, or at the least so soften it, that it may be opened; if it be hard at what time you put your *Poultresse* thereunto, it will send it backe againe without more to doe. * * *

experimented, and have found it to be right good. But if he be troubled with the *strangles*, and that he is very much inflamed under the *chaule*, then cure them thus: take Basilicon, old Bores greafe, and Dialthea, of each foure ounces, of oyle de Bay, one ounce, incorporate all these well together, and first clipping away the hayre from under the *chaule*, annoynt the swelling and inflamed place therewith very well; this done, binde upon it a piece of Sheeps skin, with the Wooll next to the inflammation, that the warmth thereof may the better helpe to ripen the *Pustils*, which being ripened, open them, and let forth the corruption, that done, taynt it first for three or foure dayes with Basilicon onely, but after heale up the sorance with your blacke *Ægyptiacum*, taught you in *lib. 2. chap. 4. sect. 4. A.* and during the time of this cure, let him eat good sweet Hay, and Bran, in stead of Oates, and let his drinke be onely white Water. * *. This is a most excellent Receipt.

SECT. 5. I.

Hippoph. **VV**hat is good for a Joynt that bath in it any Ache, Numnesse, Weaknesse, or Swellings, which commeth of a cold cause.

Hippof. This commeth sometimes of a Streyne and sometimes of a Cold, taken after a great and violent riding or labour. The signes are apparent, and the Cure is,

Joint grieved Take Acopum, and mixing it with sweet Sacke, all to rub and chafe the *joynt* grieved therewith. And if it come of cold, it will at foure or five times thus doing, cure.

cure it. * * This is singular good. Another.

Take Aqua-vitæ, and warme it upon the fire, and therewith bathe and rub the grieved *member* very well, and hold a hot bar of Iron before it to cause it to sinke in the better; take then a rag, and wet it in the same Aqua-vitæ, and lastly take Pepper finely powdred and searced, and strew it good and thicke upon the said wet rag, and so binde it to the place grieved; take then a dry Rowler of Linnen, and swathe the place therewith, and so let them remaine; and thus doe every day once, and in short time it will recover him. * * Of this I have made often triall.

SECT. 6. I.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to increase the Hoofe of a Horse?

Hippof. I have given you sundry good Receipts before, but I will adde one more, which the most famous *Marishall* of all *Paris* gave me, which he recommended unto me for *tresbonne*, but I never had yet a good occasion to make triall thereof. The Receipt is this.

Take of the oyle of Hemp-seed, of Waxe, of Venice Turpentine, Rosin, Pitch, Bay-seeds dried and powdred of each halfe a pound, Roch Allum two ounces, mixe all these together, and let them boyle softly upon a gentle fire, then straine it through a haire-cloath, and keep it for your use. With this annoynt every day the *hoofes* of your *Horse*, and this will cause them to grow very much. This is probably a good Receipt.

Increase the Hoofe.

CHAR.



CHAP. XII.

SECT. I. L.

Hippophylus.



How doe you cure the Lampas, Hippoferus?
Hippof. This is a malady that every com-
 mon Smith can easily cure, by putting
 into the mouth of the Horse a good big
 bat of wood, whereunto two long pieces
 of the *Head-stall* of an old bridle is nayled at either
 end, which will cause him to keepe open his *mouth*,
 and then holding up his *lip* with your left hand burne
 away the ranke *flesh* with a hot Iron made of purpose,
 and after rubbing the place with Salt, and giving him
 Bran for Oats three or four daies at the most, he will
 be whole. * * This disease is a Swelling proceeding
 from rankness of *bloud*, which groweth in the *mouth*
 adjoining to the *fore-teeth*, which said Swelling is an
 impediment to his feeding; it is apparent enough to
 be seen, and therefore needs no further remonstrance.
 * * Neverthelesse I will shew you how the *Marishals*
 in *France* doe use to cure the *Lampas*, from whom I
 had the Cure, and wherewith I my selfe have cured
 many *horses*.

Take

Take a roasted Onion, and very hot put it upon a clout, or upon hurds, and with it rub the *Lampas* very much ry & do this two or three times a day till it be whole. * *. But many times they burn away the *Lampas*. *Lampas*. like as do our *Smithes* with an iron instrument, which they do call a *Bistory*, which is the very same our that *Smithes* use here in *England*.

S E C T. 2. L.

Hippoph. **H**ow do you stop a Lax or Loofeness, when it commeth to be violent.

Hippof. Very easily Sir, but I had thought I had handled that point sufficiently before, in letter F. where you made your demand touching the Flux in a Horse, notwithstanding I will give you other very good Receipts by me almost forgotten. To illustrate the manner of it's coming, and the signes How to know the same, I hold unfitting for this place, by reason I have sufficiently already performed it. Take of Allume one penny-worth powdred, Bole-Armoniack powdred, one ounce, put these into Milke one quart, continually stirring it till the Milke doth become all of a Curd, give him this with a horne, and it will stay his Laxe be it never so violent. * *. This I have used.

Another.

Take Beane flower, and Bole-Armoniack in fine powder, of each foure ounces, put them into red Wine one quart, and give him this with a horne bloud warme. Let his drinke be white water, onely instead of Wheate-bran, put in flower, and that for three or foure dayes after ; then let him *blond* in the
Temple

Temple veines, and give him warme Mashes, made of ground Malt and Beane-flower, and having drunke up the Wort, let him eate up the residue, but if this doe not stay him within two dayes, then put in each *Nostrill*, Sallet-oyle, and that will do it. * *. This is speciall good.

SECT. 3. L.

Hippoph. **W**hat meanes have you to raise a leane Horse, and to cause him in short time to become very fat?

Hippof. I have shewd you this before, but yet I will give you a Receipt which you yet have not.

*Leane horse
to make fat.*

Take Elecampane dried, Comin, Turmerick, Anniseeds, of each two ounces, Grunsell halfe a handfull, boyle all these very well with three heads of Garlick picked, a little bruised in strong Ale foure quarts, then straine it well, and give unto your Horse of this drinke one quart, in a morning fasting blood warme, & then ride him upon it til he do begin to be warme, but not to sweate, and thus do for foure mornings together, and within some short time after, turne him to grasse, if the time of the yeare be seasonable, and he will feed wonderfully and fatten suddainely; but if the time of the yeare do not serve for grasse, then shall you keepe him in the Stable, and besides his former drinke, you shall give him in his Oates, this powder, *viz.* Take the Powder of Elecampane dry, and of Comin, both pulverized and searced of each like much: mixe them well together, and every time you give your Horse this Provender, take of this Powder

der halfe an ounce, and strew it by little and little among his Provender for feare of offending him, till he hath eaten up all cleane, and do thus but fourteene dayes together, and you shall perceive your *Horse* to thrive, mend, and prosper after a strange manner: provided that you do give him seasonable ayring, moderate exercise, and Mashes or white water. * * *. This is marvellous good.

SECT. 4. L.

Hippoph. **V** *What is to be done to a Horse whose Legges doe swell?*

Hippof. If this swelling be onely in his fore Legges and not behinde, then it is a signe that this his Swelling came by over-violent labour, when the *Horse* was very fat, (especially inwardly) by reason that the grease that was molten fell down into his fore-Legges, which if it had staid in his *Body*, must of necessity have engendred either an *Anticor*, *Feaver*, or a *Surfet* to the great perill of his life; The signes are knowne by the swelling, and therefore to annoynt them with *Acopum Legges swells* were very good. But the best cure is, first to take up *led.* the *thigh veines*, then with your *Fleame* to prick the places most swelled, and hottest, in sundry places, especially below, to the end that the corrupt *bloud* may issue forth; then

Take of white Wine-lees one pint, of Comin bruised one ounce, boyle them together to a pultis with Wheate flower, three handfuls; then with a cloth apply it to the place good and warme, renewing it every day once, and if in two or three dayes it doth draw

draw it to a head (as it is very probable it will do) then lanch it and heale it up either with Shooe-makers waxe, laid on upon a Playster of leather, or also with a salve made of the yolke of an Egge, Wheat flower, and common honey well wrought together to a salve, which you must also apply Plaister-wise * *. But if it do not come to a head, and yet the swelling continue; then

Take of Pitch, and of Virgin-wax, of each three ounces, Rosin halfe a pound, of the iyce of Isop, and of Galbanum of each halfe an ounce, and of Mirrah-secondary halfe a pound, of Bdellium-Arabicum, Populeon, and of the drops of Storax, of each halfe an ounce, and of Deeres-suet halfe a pound; boyle all these together in an earthen Pot, and when it is cold; take of Bitumen halfe a pound, Bole-Armoniack, and of Custus, of each one ounce and halfe; make all these into fine powder, and then incorporate them well with the other, and so boyle them all over againe very well; that done, poure this whole mixture or Medicine into cold water, and so make it up into rowles like a salve for Playsters: and when you are to use it, spread thereof upon Plaisters of Leather, which must be so large as to cover the Legges full so far as the swellings are, which (if any thing can doe it) this will asswage the swelling, and give very much strength, and comfort the *Sinewes* and *Nerves*: neither is this Playster to be removed so long as it will remain on. * *. This I have applyed to many *Horses* very much annoyed with *swolne-Legs*, and brought them their former smalnesse, when as *Ferriers* have spent much time upon the Cure, and given it over at last. But

But if the Swelling do fall into the *binder-Legges*, or into all *four-Legges* together (being but a bad Sorance) causing them to burne and swell exceedingly, and the *hayre* to stare, the cause whereof comming, (as I have before said) from immoderate Riding, heat, and labour whereby the grease melting falleth down into the *Legges*, by reason the *Horse* cannot voyd it in his Excrements, or else being over-hot, he is washed, or negligently set up without sufficient store of litter and rubbing, so as the taking cold, the *bloud* with the grease setleth in the *Legges*, and there congealeth, and so causeth them to swell. This sorance also commeth by having his feet beaten (especially in the Summer) with being ridden & galloped upon hard ground, which first occasioneth wind-gals and those also causeth the *legges* to swell, which truely is the worst kind of swelling of all other, by reason that *lameness* doth immediately follow it, unlesse great Art and diligence be speedily applyed for prevention thereof. Wherefore the signes, being so apparent, need no remoustrance, and therefore I will passe on to the Cure, which is thus.

Take Populeum, Nervell, Hogs grease, of each one *Legges swels*
 ounce, incorporate them very well together cold, and *l:d.*
 annoynt the sorance therewith morning and evening
 foure dayes together, and at foure dayes end, take of
 Claret Wine lees one quart, boyle it upon the fire
 with so much Bran as will bring it to a *Poultesse*,
 apply this to the place grieved plaister-wise with a
 cloth good and hot for foure or five dayes more, re-
 newing it every day once, and in short time he will
 be found againe. * * *. This is a most excellent receipt
 which

which I have often experimented. Another. The swelling of the *legges*, may be easily cured, if in the beginning, they be often times in the day laved and bathed in cold water, unlesse the malady come of too great a surfet, wherefore if this of cold water will not do it, then

Take of common honey one pound, Turpentine, common Gum, meale of Linseed, meale of Fenugrick, of each foure ounces, Bay berries made into very fine powder searced, three ounces, mixe & boyle all these together well, and when you take it from the fire, put unto it of white Wine one pinte, & then boyle it over againe till it doe become thick, spread this upon a cloath reasonable hot, and wrap it about the members swelled, and doe not renew it above once in a weeke, and it will cure them. * * This is a certaine and most approved cure. Another. If you take up the *veines*, and make them to *bleed* below and not above, and then rope up the *legges* with thumbands of soft Hay wet in cold water, and then cast more water upon them, in short time he will be found and well againe. * * This is also very good.

SECT. 5. L.

Hippoph. **V** **V** *What is good to cure the Leprosie?*
 Hippof. This is a moyst *mainge*, very infectious, which commeth by meanes of great surfets, taken by over-riding, which is very ealie to be seen and knowne, and therefore needs no further description. The cure therefore is : first, let him *bleed* well in the *necke*, then scrape away the *scurfe* with

with an old Curry-Combe, Oyster-shell, Hayre-cloth, or some such like thing, till the sorance doe looke raw, and that it be ready to *bleed*, then annoynt the raw places with this oyntment.

Take Arsnick, or Resalgar, and tryed Hogs grease, (the Arsnick, or Resalgar being first beaten unto very fine powder) incorporate these well together to make them into a perfect oyntment; then tye up the *head* of your *Horse* so high to the Rack, as that he may not be able to bite, rub, or lick himselfe, and so annoynt the places therewith, and cause the oyntment to sinke the better in by himselfe, and so annoynt the places therewith, and cause the oyntment to sinke the better in by holding a hot bar of iron neere to the place as you annoynt him, and let him stand so tyed three houres, and then wash away the Vnguent with the strongest Chamber-lye you can get, and wash him so thoroughly, that you may be assured you leave none of the oyntment upon the *Horse*, and then untye him, and give him meat : and thus dresse him once every day till the sores be quite dryed up. * *. This is also good for Scratches, and Kibed-heeles.

Leprosie or elephantick malady.

SECT. 6. L.

Hippoph. **VV** *Hat is good to kill Lice in a Horse?*
Hippo. Lice commonly commeth to a *horse* when he is very poore, especially when he runneth abroad in the Winter time in some Wood, Coppice, or places where are many high trees, for that the dropping of the trees falling upon the *Horse*, together with his poverty, doth cause them to engender

der, and albeit they may be at first but a few, yet will they in short time multiply abundantly : sometimes also a *Horse* will catch them by standing neere to another *horse* that is *lowfie*, and so long as he be visited with them, he can never prosper, but remaine very meager and leane. You may easily know when he is annoyed with this kind of *vermine*, for that he will often scrub and rub himselfe against Walls, Posts, and Doores with his *mouth* and *hinder feet*. The way to destroy them is,

Lic.

Take Staves-Acre, and boyle it in running water, and wash him all over with that water warme, and it wil kill them. * * Another,

Take Quick-silver two ounces, and first kill it with fasting Spittle, and when it is thoroughly mortified, take Hogs grease tryed, and so worke them together till it become of an Ash-colour, and annoynt him therewith, and it will in twice or thrice dressing, kill them all. * * Another:

Take Tobacco as much as will suffice, and shred it very small, and put it into small Beere, and put to it of Allum powdred, as much as will suffice, and when the Allum is dissolved, wash him therewith, and it will kill them. All these I have often tryed, and have found them to be very good

SECT. 7.L.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you make your powder of Lime and Honey, with which you doe heale and dry up sores?

Hippof. Take of English Honey, and of quick-lime newly

newly taken from the Kill unflaked, of each as much as will suffice, beat your Lime into fine Powder, and with your Honey and your Lime knead it into a Paste, and when it is throughly wrought make it into a thin Cake, then lay it upon a cleane fire-pan, and set it upon the fire, and so let it bake, and as it is baking take the soles of two old shooes & cast them into the fire, and let them burn untill they have done flaming, and that they doe come to be fire coale; then take them forth, and when the Cake is baked sufficiently and cold, beat the Cake together with the burnt shooes soles to very fine powder, and so keepe this Powder in a bladder or dry box for your use. * * This will heale and dry up any wound or old sore, and I have often and long used this Powder.

SECT. 8. L.

Hippoph. **V V** *What disease is that we call the Low-worme?*

Hippof. This is the disease which I cannot distinguish from Saint *Anthones fire*, or the *Shingles*, for that it hath the self-same *symptomes*, and this I have cured. This is a *Worme* that breedeth in the *backe*, betwixt the *skiz* and the *bone*, and runneth along the *breast* to the *brain*, and when it commeth to touch the *pannicle* of the *braine*, it maketh the *horse* stark mad. You shall first discover it by these signes, *viz.* presently after a long and tedious journey, the *horse* will be sicke and forsake his meat, and stand out of length with his *feet*, bending down his *back*, and he will often make offer to pisse, but cannot, and if he doe, yet will it be but very

very little at a time, and that in the *sheath*, and in time he will fall mad, gnaw the Walls, Rackstaves, and Manger, and bite and strike at every man that cometh within his reach or danger: and these be the most pregnant and apparent signes; and this disease doth deceive many a good *Ferrier*. For albeit that this infirmity may be many times among *horses*, yet *Ferriers* being ignorant thereof, by mistaking it meerey for the *Stavers*, and applying remedies onely for that cure, doe thereby lose many a good *horse* through their misprision. But now to come unto the Cure it selfe, I will give you two Receipts, the former of which I learned of a *Farmer* in *Suffolke*, who was cried up for a very expert man in this *faculty*, (as indeed he was) and hath perfected in my presence many a great Cure. Then thus,

Loc-worms.

Take of Acrement a quarter of a pound, six heads of Garlick clean pilled, of Rue and Turmentile that beareth the Yellow flower, of each one pound, stamp all these in a stone Morter, and put to it so much white Wine, as that when it is strained there may be of the juyce and Wine two quarts, when you have of this liquor in a readinesse, let your horse bloud under the *taile* a good quantity, then stanch him, and dividing this pottle of liquor into six parts, give it him six mornings together, that is to say, every morning one part or portion, till he hath taken it all, and by that time he will be perfectly cured.* *

The second Receipt was taught mee in *France* by a famous *Marist*, all of *Burbon*, who hath cured very many *horses* of the selfe same malady, but in a quite contrary way. For whereas the first Cure was wrought by medicine,

dicine, this second is perfected by giving of fire. Take an Iron with a Button at one end, and make it red hot, then burne him therewith upon the top of his forehead, and a little under his fore-top, and another in the fore-top, and four other in the necke, clean through upon the crest, wherof two of the holes must be upon the one side of the crest, and two on the other side; and to take away and kill the fire, put into every hole Unguentum Rosarum, and then let him bloud in the neck-veine, and he is cured. * * This is also an approved Cure. The French doe call this malady *ver-coquin*, and the *Italians* doe name *Vermiforme*, but they both have but one manner of Cure for the same. This *Ver-coquin*, or *Low-worme* is a living worme which breedeth upon the back-bone, running along the necke, and so by degrees commeth to the head of the horse, where with its hard beake it first pierceth the panicle, and then worketh it selfe to the very braine of the creature, where it lieth biting, gnawing, and feeding, causeth the horse to become enraged, and to die mad, if otherwise he be not cured in time, and therefore the *French Maristals* doe affirme, that the prime remedy wherewith to kill and destroy this Worme, is, by fire, and they hold that it cannot be destroyed any other way.

SECT. 9. L.

Hippoph. **W**hat remedy have you to helpe the disease of the Lungs?

Hippof. This disease of the Lungs is a malady which is first engendred of cold taken, and let runne till the horse be either frettized or putrified in the lungs, at

what time they become inflamed, and to come at last to rottenesse and corruption : the meanes how to come to the knowledge of this infirmity is, that by carefull obseruance you may perceiue his *flankes* to beat, and his *ribbes* to worke, but most chiefly when he *cougheth*, and then the more slowly they doe beate and heave, the more old and dangerous is the disease; he will also draw his breath at his *nose* short, and yet weakely, and he will grone often, and principally when he lyeth downe and riseth up, and when at any time he *cougheth*, he will seeme to chew some thing betwixt his *teeth*, and from his *nose* will issue much corruption. The Cure is,

Lungs a
disease.

Take of *horse Lung-wort*, *alias* Mullet, it groweth in every place with broad hoary soft leaves which doe feele like velvet; shred it, stampe it and straine it, then take of Fenugricke a good spoonfull, and of Madder as much, make them into fine powder, and give this to your *horse* in Muscadine one pinte, or else in good Ale one quart, and administer this unto him every other day for twelve or fourteene dayes, and sprinckle his Hay with water, and let his Oates be washed in good Ale, and let his drinke be white water, and sometimes sweet Mathes. * * This is very good. Another :

Take a Snake, and cut off the *head* and *taile*, and flea it, and after cut the same into pieces the length of your finger, and rost it as you would an Eele upon a Spit, but doe not baste it with any thing, for it will baste it selfe, reserve carefully the oyle that drippeth from it, and herewith annoynt the *breast* and the *fore-short ribbes* of the *Horse* which be against the *Lungs*, but clip

clip away the hayre first from about the place where you are to annoynt him, otherwise the hayre will take up much of the said Oyle; and thus doing often for some time you shall recover his *lungs* againe, and make him perfectly sound. This was taught me by a great *Marishall of Tours*, but I never could come to make tryall thereof.

CHAP. XIII.

SECT. I. M.

Hippopherus.



Now Hippopherus that we have ended this Chapter, let us proceed to another; and tell me what is good to cure a Malander?

Hippof. This is a noysome forance which groweth upon the inward part of the fore-legs in the bending of the legge over against the knee: it is a Scab hard and dry, which hath a chop or chinke upon it, and it hath hard and stubborn staring hayres growing in and about it, not much unlike to Hogs bristles, by which meanes it cankereth and corrupteth the flesh, which will cause the Horse to goe stiffe, and to halt at first setting forth till he be warm, like as doth the Scratches. It commeth either through the negligence of the *Groome* for default of rubbing, and due and orderly dressing, or else from the corrup-
tion

tion of the *bloud* through hard and immoderate riding; and those *horses* are most especially subject thereunto, which have long *hayre* growing all along the *legges* from the *pasterne* up to the top of the *thigh*, as most commonly have your *Flanders* and *Freeze-land horses*, by reason that the *hayre* in that place, being thicke, long, and shaggy, doth gather sand, dirt, and other filth, which not being continually taken off by the industry of his *Keeper*, will scald, burne, and fret into the joynt, and so breed this kinde of *forance*. I have already shewed you the signes how to know it, now I will also give you very many receipts wherewith to cure it, many of which are speciall good. First therefore (whatsoever you have to apply unto this *forance*) faile not to wash and shave away the *hayre* from off and about the *forances*; first then

Malender.

Take blacke Sope, Vnguentum Populeon, and fresh Butter, of each like much as will suffice: mixe them well together, and so bring them to a formall Vnguent, and apply it to the *forance* every other day till it be whole. * * *. But you must withall understand that unlesse you doe picke away and rubbe off the dry crust or scurfe, as well as wash and shave away the *hayre* which doth annoy the *forance*, you doe nothing in the perfecting of the Cure, for be you confident unlesse you doe this, the *Malender* will not be taken away, nor any medicine that you shall apply to it, be able to heale it up. Another:

Take blacke sope, and allay it with Buck-lye, and wash the place well therewith: this done, apply unto the *forance* a plaister of Goose-dung, and renew it twice a day till it be whole. * * *. Another: Take

Take quick-silver, and kill it in Orpiment, then take Buck-lye, and mixe ordinary durt which lyeth in the street (wherein must be neither stones nor gravel) with the Buck-lye, Quick-silver, and Orpiment, and herewith annoynt the sorance twice a day if need be, and when the oyntment is well rubbed in, then clap a plaister of the same medicine to the grieffe every time you doe annoynt it. * * *. This is very good.

Another:

Take of the strongest white Wine Vineger, and boyle it, and so boyling hot, rub the Malender therewith twice every day till it doe bleed, that done, put upon it the powder of Verdigrease good and thicke, and so binde it on with a clout, and let it so remaine till a crust come thereon, and when you shall finde the crust to be dry, and withall to chop, annoynt the griev'd place with tryed Hogs grease, and that will cause the crust to fall off, and the sore to heale up. * * *. This is a most excellent Cure, and it did never faile me.

Another:

Rub the sore with the oyle of Hemp-seed, or with the oyle of Nuts, or with sharp Mustard, but the oyle of Hemp-seed is the very best, if it may be had. This was taught me by a *French Marisball*, but I never made tryall thereof. Another:

First rub off the outward scurfe, till it bleed, then binde upon the place this medicine; take of blacke Sope, and of Quick-silver mortified with fasting spitte as much as will suffice, and so worke them to a salve, and plaister-wise binde it to the sorance, renewing it every day once till it be killed, and after heale up the sore with fresh or sweet Butter. Another:

Take

Take *Glovers shreds* which he cutteth from his white leather, and boyle them in *Vineger* of the best and strongest till they be soft, binde this to the *malender* very hot, and it will perfectly cure the same. I did never make tryall thereof, but it was given me for very good. Another:

Take the fat or lard of Bacon one pound, red Lead, Verdegrease and Lethurge of gold, of each two ounces, make them all into fine powder, and boyle them well together with the said fat of Bacon, keeping them in the boyling continually stirring; then having very well cleansed the sore, and made it raw, annoynt it with this medicine morning and evening till it be cleane dried up. * *. This is very good. Another which is onely to annoynt the sorance with the oyle of Turpentine, and it will heale it up, and make it marvellous sound. * *. And this will likewise cure Scratches, Sores, Hurts, or the like maladies in a *horse*. Another:

Take a salt barrelled Herring out of the pickle, which hath a soft row, and cut off the *head* and *taile*, and cast them away, then mince all the Herring very small, and put it in a stone mortar, and put thereto of blacke Sope two spoonfuls, and of Allum powdred halfe an ounce, stampe all these things together till you have made them to be of one body, and plaisterwise apply it to the *Malender*, renewing it once a day for three dayes: And this will kill the *kumour* that feedeth it; which once done, annoynt the place with the oyle of *Roses*, and that will cause the *Crust* to fall away, then wash it once every day with *Chamber-ly*, and strew upon it the powder of *Oystershels*, and it is made

made whole and sound againe. This I dare promise to be a very good Receipt.

SECT. 2. M.

Hippoph. **V**Vell what say you now to the Mainge?
 Hippof. This of all other is the worst, vildest, and most filthy, and it will cause the Horse to be ever more rubbing, scrubbing, and scratching. It is a formall Leprosie, and the French doe call it the Elephantick Malady, by reason that Elephants are very much subject thereunto. The hair will stare and in many places pill and fall away, and a lothsome Scurfe will be upon the places touched therewith, and he will infect all other horses which reside in the same stable with him: Wherefore so soone as the Malady may be espyed, let him be separated from his fellowes, whether in the Stable, or abroad at Grasse. This disease commeth of corrupt and melancholy blood, by meanes of it's over-heating, and sometimes by feeding upon naughty and unwholsome meate. It is so easie to be discovered, as that it needs no other description, then what hath been already shewed: and I will give you many good Receipts for this Malady.

Take Spurge, Salendine, Brimstone, all in fine powder, of each three ounces, Hogge-grease tryed, new-Wax, Sheeps-suet, and quick-Silver well mortified with fasting-spittle, of each two ounces, melt and incorporate all these two dayes together, and so bring them to an oyntment, then first wash and make raw the places infected with stale Urine and greene Copperas.

peras boyled together, the infected places being scraped, and made raw with a Curry-combe or some such like thing, and then annoynt him with this Vnguent, but first of all you must take *bloud* from the *Neck-veine*, the day before you dresse him with this Vnguent. * * This is one of the best Receipts for a *Maigne* that I have, and with it I have done very many rare Cures.

Take the rootes of Elecampane newly gathered, and the roote of red Dockes, of each like much, slice and cut them thin, and put unto them of Chamber-ly three quarts, and of Bay-salt, one hand full : boyle these till one quart be consumed, then take it off, and with a rag fastned to the end of a stick, wash the places infected very hot, you having first made the places raw with an old Curry-combe, oyster-shell, &c. Use this foure or five mornings together, then some three mornings after annoynt the places grieved with this Oyntment.

Take quick-Silver one ounce, let it be well mortified in fasting spittle, and mix with it so much Hogsgrease as a Hens Eg, or better : then take Powder of Brimstone, so much as will suffice, and incorporate all these very well together, and annoynt all the Maingy places therewith till they be perfectly whole. * * This is very good. Another.

Take the Oyle of Pilchards, and of Chamber-lye of each one quart, Guinny powder, and the Powder of Brimstone, of each three ounces, white Wine-Vinegar one pint, boyle all these together till they be thicke, make the places raw, and annoint them therewith three times in nine daies, that is to say, every three dayes once, and this will cure him. * * This is very

very good, but you must not forget evermore for this Malady, to take store of *blond* from your *Horse* a day or two before you do administer any thing unto him, for untill such time as the *Melancholy* and *corrupt-blond* be first let out he will not easily be cured. Another for a Mainge, Itch, or Running Scab, &c.

Take as much Auripigmentum finely powdred, and mixed with Hogges-grease as will bring it to be yellowish; but not too yellow a colour, annoint the places infected therewith, and it will kill it in three or foure dressings: This Vnguent will take away both the Scab and *hayre* together: but have you no feare, for it will not be long ere new *hayre* will come in it's place. * * With this receipt I have cured very many *horses*, who have not beene a little over-run with this disease. Another,

The first day let him *blood* on the left side of the Neck, then two daies after open the other *Veine*, and three daies after that let him *blood* on the *Spurre-Veines*, and lastly two dayes after that under the *Tayle*, and let him *bleed* in every of these *Veines*, then scarrifie all the places and wash them with new Brine made very salt: that done annoint the places with this Vnguent.

Take of quicksilver one ounce, tryed Hogs-grease one pound, Brimstone made into fine powder foure ounces, Rape-oyle one pint. First kill the quick-silver with fasting-spittle, and then incorporate them together throughly with all the other Ingredients, and having annointed all the raw places with this Ointment, cause it the better to sinke in by holding a barre of hot iron neere to the places, and then touch him

no more in three daies after, and ever more when you dresse him, forget not first to rub and scarrifie the places infected till they doe begin to bleed; but if all this will not availe, then burne the rankest places of the *Mainge* with an iron, having a button on the end thereof, but then take heed you enter not the *flesh*, but beare your hand light upon the *skin* onely, and let each hole be well-nigh a span from the other. *
This I have often used. Another.

Take of Chamberly foure quarts, Bay-salt foure handfuls, boyle them well together, and wash the *Horse* therewith, so hot as he can well suffer it, and when he is well washed, take Neats-foote oyle and and put it into water, and beate them well together, and therewith annoint the raw places, and in foure or five times thus doing, he will be well. This seemes to be a good cure, but I do not remember that I ever did use it. Another.

Take Mother of Salt-Peter, the best and strongest, and wash the sores therewith so hot as the *Horse* is able to suffer it, and in three or foure times dressing it, it will cure him. This I never tryed, but the party that taught it me, averred that it would not onely kill any *Mainge*, but all Scratches, Paines, Rats-tayles, &c. Another.

Take Sopers-lees, and first make the *Maingie* places raw, and after wash them with the said Sopers-lees, and in once or twice dressing, he will be well.
*
** This was taught me by the most able *Ferrier*, I do now know living in *England*, and I have often used it, and I have done with it very many great Cures. It cureth the *Mainge* both in *Horses* and *Dogges*, provided

ded they get not to it with their mouth and teeth.
Another.

Take Hogges-grease halfe a pound, Oile de Bay one ounce and halfe, Crude-Mercury, and white Elebore, of each one ounce, incorporate these well together and first make the places raw, and then annoint them with the said ointment. * *. This is very good for I have often tryed it. Another.

Take of Hemp-seed, and of Mutton-suet of each one pound, bray the Hempe-seed marvellous well in a Morter, then take of old Bores-grease one pound, Verdegrease, Quick-silver, Elebore, Gunpowder, Tartar, of each foure drams, and of Brimstone three ounces, make all into very fine powder, that is to be powdred and mix them well, making them into one body, and then dissolve them upon a gentle fire, keeping them alwaies stirring till it be enough, and sufficiently dissolved, and when it is cold, put it into a cleane Pot, and keep it for your Vse, and when you have occasion to make use thereof, first scarrifie the places, and then annoint them, holding a hot Barre of iron neere, and in three or foure times thus dressing, he will be well. * *. This is a most soveraigne receipt for this malady, for I have had great prooffe thereof. Another whereby to cure the *Maine* in the *Maine* or *Tayle*.

Make ashes of the hearb called *Absinthus*, so much as will suffice, quick-lime and Soot, of each so much as will suffice : mingle all these together, and with warm water make a Ly thereof, with which you shall wash the *Maine* and *Tayle* in the places infected, and this Ly will not only cure this Malady, but also cause

the *haire* to grow againe very fast. This was taught me by a very good *Marishal* of France, but I could never make use thereof, by reason the hearbe *Abscintibus* was hard to get here. Another.

Take a little Brimstone, Masculine-Frankincence, Niter of Tartar, of the Barke of Ashen-trees, Vitreall, Verdegrease, Black-Helebore, Aristolochia Rotunda, of each as much as will suffice, powder all your simples, and mixe them well together with the yolkes of Egges and Sallet oyle, of each as much as will suffice, and so boyle it, and annoynt the place well there with warme. This seemes to be good, but I never tryed it.

Another for the *tayle*: Take Mulberries which be not ripe, with the barke of the roots of the Mulberry tree, and Barly, of each as much as will suffice, boyle all these in faire water, and wash the places grieved therewith, and if the sorance doe open of it selfe, then take Sanguis Draconis, the juyce of Leeks, Salt, Pitch, Sallet oyle, and old Bores grease, of each as much as will suffice, and make thereof a salve, and apply it plaister wise, but this I never tryed. Another:

Take of Orpin one pound, Brimstone and Euforbium, of each one ounce, Cantharides twenty five, make all these into fine powder, and with Hogs grease make it into an Vnguent, and apply it to the sorance, rubbing it in all along the places visited, and foure or five dayes after, to the end the corruption may the more easily passe away, annoynt him again with Hogs grease onely, and when the scurfe is false off, wash the necke of the horse with Buck-lye made bloud-warme, and he will doe well. * *. This is a very good receipt. Another:

You

You must first scrape the *leprovs* places till they doe bleed; then take of Vineger one pinte, white Elebore, Cantharides, Euforbium, of each one ounce, make all these into fine powder, and boyle them all well together, and apply it very hot to the place grieved, then when the scurfe or crust is fallen away, wash the sorance with Buck-lye mixed with blacke Sope, and it will be well. * * This is a speciall good receipt. Another:

Take of the oyle of Hempseed, halfe a pinte, Brimstone in fine powder, one ounce, Gunpowder finely pulverized, and Quick-silver, of each halfe an ounce, and a little Vineger, then beat them all together a long time, and so apply it cold to the place, and as you doe annoynt him, let one stand by with a hot bar of iron, whereby to cause it the better to sinke in, and this will cure him in few times dressing, but suffer the crust to fall away of its own accord. * * This is a most pretious receipt. Another.

Take of Vineger one pinte and a halfe, Euforbium halfe an ounce, made into fine powder, boyle them well together, and boyling hot, wash the sorance therewith, and it will heale it; neither need you to clip away the *hayre*, unlesse you please. * * This I have often used. Another:

Take of black or blew Salt, and make it into fine powder, and mingle it with fresh Butter, of each like much: mixe them well together to a perfect Vnguent, and annoynt the place therewith, and it will cure him, but this I never tryed. Another:

Take of the hearbe called in *French*, *Ouraige*, one handfull, boyle it in Vineger, two quarts, then take
of

of greene Coperas halfe a pound, and of Salt two handfuls, rub the place therewith so hot as he may well suffer it, and in few times dressing him thus, it will cure him. This I had of a *French Marisball*, but because I could never finde the hearbe *owraige*, I did never make tryall thereof. Another:

Take of white Wine Vineger halfe a pinte, Cantharides in fine powder, one ounce, boyle them together, and boyling hot apply it to the forance, and your *Horſe* will ſooner be cured. * *. This I have often tryed, and it is very good.

Thus I have delivered you many receipts for this one malady, which we call the *mainge*, most of them I have tryed, and can promise them to be speciall good, whereof many will not onely cure the *mainge* in the *body* it ſelfe, but in the *mayne* and *taile* also if you please to make use of them.

Another most excellent receipt for the *mainge*?

Take Lithurgy of gold, two pound, beat it to very fine powder, and searce it through a fine searcer, and put it into a glasse which will hold a pottle; then put thereto of the strongest and best white Wine Vineger that can be gotten, three pintes or better, and for foure and twenty houres after, shake it together ever and anone, but the first time it must be beaten or shaken a good time together, to wit, a quarter of an hour at the least without intermission, and then let it settle, and so keepe it in the same glasse close stopped for your use. Now when you would use the medicine, you must make it into a salve after this manner: Take of the oyle of *Roses* two ounces, and of the cleereſt of the said Vineger in the glasse (which must
not

not have any of the Lithurgy in it) two ounces also ; beat these together with a wooden splatter, untill you have brought it into a thicke salve : Take then of Quick-silver the weight of a shilling, and first mortifie it very well in a little of the sirrup of Damaske Roses, the quantity of six or eight drops, and about three or foure drops of the spirit or oyle of Turpentine ; with the sirrup and oyle, mingle and worke these things well untill the Quick-silver be very well mortified, then mixe it well with the former salve, and then put it up into a cleane gally pot, and so keepe it; and first making the places raw, annoynt them with these Vnguents, and it will kill any *mainge* in the *body*, *mayne*, or *tayle*. * *. This is very good. Another very good.

Take of Tarre a gallon, of tryed Hogs grease, and Bolcarmoniacke of each two pound, of Pepper one pound, beat the Pepper and Bolcarmoniacke to very fine powder, and then mixe all the ingredieats together, making them into one body, then first scrape the sorance, so as you doe raise the scurfe and dry crusty stuffe, but not to make it raw, or to bleed much, and then annoynt all the places infected, rubbing and chafing it in very well, as if it be in winter, let one hold a barre of hot iron neere to the places as you annoynt and chafe it in ; but if in Summer, the sunne will doe it much better as he runneth at grasse ; and thus dresse him every three dayes so long as the unguent lasteth, and he will be cured. * *. This is an approved cure.

Another. To performe this cure, the best way is, to give the fire to the place after this manner : the iron
being

being hot, first draw it along either side of the chinke, then draw it upon the top of the chinke, then draw three strakes (if need so require) overthwart, and in short time the hoofe will grow againe, so as the chinke will be closed, and remaine sound and whole. And over and above, you may exercise him that very next day after you have thus given him the fire, provided his exercise be not upon hard, but upon soft or sandy ground. * * *. This is a very able cure taught me by a singular *Marishall of Bruxels*, and I have practised the same upon sundry good *horses* here in *England*.

SECT. 3. M.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to cure a sore Mouth?

Hippof. This is a disease that sometimes comes by much corrupt *bloud*, and sometimes by cold: for this malady most commonly be-
 ginneth in the *palat* of the *mouth*, which will cause it to looke red and be inflamed; and from the *palate* it will fall into his *chaps*, whereby he will not be able to shut them, as if he had there a *convulsion*. The cure is, if it be but yet in the *palate*, then let him *bloud* there, and let him bleed well, then, Take of Life-honey four ounces, Chibbals or young Onyons halfe a handfull, toasted Cheese as much as will suffice; boyle these in faire water very well, and bloudwarm wash the *palat*, *tongue*, and all other places in and about the *mouth* well with this liquor foure or five times, and he will doe well. * * * This is very good. Another.

Mouth sore.

After you have let forth the corrupt *bloud*, then take Verjuyce of the Crab, and Bay-salt, as much as will

will suffice, and warme it upon the fire, and bloud-warme with a rag wash well every part of the *mouth* and *tongue* twice or thrice a day til it be well. * * This is also very good; but if it be come into his *chaps*, which you may easily know by observing his wide yawning and gaping, whereby his *chaps* will be so fallen, as that he will not be able to bring them together to shut close again, wherefore so soon as you doe perceive him in that posture, Take Verjuyce of the Crab onely, and make it warme, and then fastning a rag upon a sticke, wash his *mouth* very well therewith, the Verjuyce being bloudwarm, and then with your hand help him to close up his mouth, and doing thus two or three times, he will be perfectly cured. * * These be speciall good Receipts.

S E C T. 4. M.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to cure the Mellet in the heeles?

Hippof. I have shewed you that cure before, *lib. 2. chap. 4. sect. 9. lit. A.* But yet I will give you one Receipt more.

Take of Honey one pint, and of Sope three ounces, *Mellet.* and of white Wine Vinegar five or six spoonfuls, and as much Allum as an Egge, and of Beane-flower two spoonfuls, mixe all these together, and apply it to the sorance so farre as the *mellet* goeth, and let it lie on five daies, and then take it away: that done, wash the *leg, foot,* and sorance with warm beef-broth, & so keep his *legs* roped up, well moystned in the beefe-broth two or three daies after, and he will be well. * * This

I have often used, and it is a most rare cure.

SECT. 5. M.

Hippoph. **V V** *What is best to mollifie humours?*
Hippof. This I have also formerly
 handled, yet take with you this onely one Receipt
 more.

*Mollifie hu-
 mours.*

Take of Rosin three ounces, of fresh Butter five ounces, of new Waxe one ounce, melt all these upon the fire, and so bring them to an unguent, and here- with annoynt the humours four or five daies together and this will mollifie them very well. * * This is most precious for this cause.

SECT. 6. M.

Hippoph. **V V** *What shall a man doe to a Horse that is
 Morfounded?*


Morfounded.

Hippof. *Morfounding* is but the French word: signi- fying melting of grease or *foundring* in the *body*, wher- of I have before sufficiently intreated; neverthelesse I will give you for this malady two singular receipts, the one I had of an *Italian rider* in *Brussels*, and the o- ther of a *French Marishall* in *Avinion*, a man esteemed most famous, & of both those receipts I have made of- ten use, and I have perfected them for most rare cures. That which the *Italian* taught me is this; first open the *necke veyne*, and draw away the inflamed and corrupt bloud, then take of white Wine one pinte, Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, of *Rhubarb* and of *Aloes*, of each two drams, of *Senæ* half an ounce, of *Agarick* three drams,
 Bay

Bay berries halfe an ounce, Saffron two drams, Duck or Duke powder, and of cordiall powder, of each two drams, make what is to be powdred into very fine powder, and mixe them well together, adding thereunto of life Honey foure ounces, all which being made warm upon the fire, and well brewed together, give it your *horse* bloud warme, but you must withall understand that the same day you shall administer this drinke unto him, he doe stand fasting upon the Trench three or foure houres before, and as many after; neither must you the same day give him any Oates, and let his drinke be either a sweet Mash, or white water, and keepe him warme, and with white water five or six dayes after, and then give him Oates, but in the interim in stead of Oates, let him have either bread made for him of purpose, or else Bran prepared, and when you doe give him Oates, put in amongst them Fenugricke bruised.* * This is, I doe assure you, a most excellent receipt, with which I saved the life, and brought to perfect sanity a *horse* of price, which was visited with this infirmity; the second receipt which I had of the *Marissball* of *Avinion* is this: (*viz.*) so soone as you doe perceive or suspect him to be *morfounded*,

Take of Salt one handfull, and put to it of faire water one pinte, and give it him to drinke, and ride him moderately upon it till he *sweate*, and this will cure him if it be administered so soone as you may suspect the malady, but if you stay three or foure dayes, or longer, before you doe give him this water and salt, then take of the powder of Hellebore one spoonfull, and of Saffron one penny worth, of *Assafetida*, and

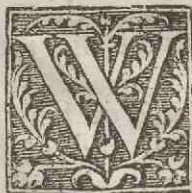
and of Sope of Venice, of each two drams, of *Bacca alias* the seeds of Bayes, a farthing worth made also into fine powder, mixe and pound all these together well, putting to them of Vineger one pinte, and give it him bloud warme, then cover him with a wet cloth, and clothe him warme, and set him upon the Trench, that he may neither lye downe, nor vomit, but let him sweat an houre after, and then coole and dry him by degrees, and let him be well rubbed, and he will doe well againe. * *. This is also a very good receipt.



CHAP. XIV.

SECT. I. N.

Hippopherus.



Nose running

Ell now Hippopherus, let us goe on, what will cure the running at the Nose?

Hippof. I have shewed you that before, but yet I will give you two or three receipts more.

Take Orpin and Brimstone, as much as will suffice, and cast them upon burning coles, and so perfume his *head* and *nose* therewith, and that will dissolve the *humours* congealed in the *head* and *braine*.

* *. This is very good. Another:

* Take Auripigmentum, and Tuffilago, of each two drams

drams, make them into fine powder, and with good Venice Turpentine washed, make it into a stiffe paste, and thereof make small cakes the breadth of your thumb naile, and dry them a little, and therewith perfume your horse over a Chafing-dish and coles every day; but before you doe perfume him, give him the drinke prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap. sect.* which be- ginneth thus (first let him bleed in the necke veine well, then take Assafætida as much as a hassle nut, &c.)
* * * and this is very good.

sect. 2. N.

Hippoph. **VV** *Hat is good to cure a Navell gald ?*
Hippof. This is a naughty so-
rance comming by meanes of a Saddle behind, which
being let run a while, will be long in curing. It is cal-
led a *Navell galled*, by reason that the hurt is upon the
top of the *back*, right over against the *Navell*, the signes
are so demonstrative, as that they need no descripti-
on; the cure therefore is,

Take oyle de Bay, Costus, Foxe grease, oyle of Sa-
vine, of each one ounce, then take great garden
Wormes a hundred, and scowre them well in white
Wine and Salt, then put all the ingredients together
into an earthen pot very well stopped, and boyle it
well, then adde thereto of Sallet oyle one ounce and
a halfe, and boyle it over againe till it come to a per-
fect oyntment, then straine it into a Galley pot or
glasse, and so keepe it close stopped for your use, and
when you are to use it, onely warme it, and so dresse
the sorance therewith, with Lint or Hurds, and it will
soon

soon be whole. * *. This by prooffe I doe know to be very good.

SECT. 3. N.

Hippoph. **V** *What helpe have you for a Horse that is troubled with a disease commonly called the Night-mare?*

Night-mare. Hippof. This disease is so called indeed, but yet all able and skilfull Ferriers doe laugh at those that give it the same *Epiphrafe*, for it is none other thing but a *Melancholly bloud* wherewith the creature is oppressed, for it doth perplex the *heart* more then any other member or part of the body, causing him in the night to sweat more then in the day, bereaving of him his sleep and natural rest; and the best signes to know this disease, is by observing well the *Horse* when you come unto him in the morning, you shall perceive him to have sweat aswell in the *Flankes*, as *Neck* and *Short-ribs* next to the place where the heart lieth. The Cure for the malady is:

Take of Salt one handfull, Sallet-oyle halfe a pint, and of browne Sugar-Candy made into fine powder, four ounces; mixe all these very well, then warm them upon the fire, and so give it him with a horne bloud-warm, give him this two mornings together, and it will cure him: But the day before you drench him, first open the two *Spur-veines*, and let him bleed there very well. * *

I have knowne many who have taken a good great stone which hath had an hole in it, and they have taken a withe and put it through the hole of the said stone,

stone, and so hung it upon the top of Rack, just over the horse, whereby he hath been perfectly cured.



CHAP. XV.

SECT. I. O.

Hippophylus.



What good Receipt have you wherewith to cure old Sores?

Hippof. Sir, I have many, and the most of them be very good, whereof I will give you onely one, and leave the residue to their proper places:

Take of Roch-allum a good quantity, and burne it in a hot fire Pan, then take so much Bay-salt, and burn that also; beat these together to very fine Powder, then take of common Honey and of sweet Butter, of each like much, so much as will suffice, and so incorporate all these Ingredients together; neither must it be warmed upon the fire, but onely thus brought to a Salve, and so keep it for your use: which must be applied either Plaisterwise, or Taint-wise, or both, according as you shall see cause, and this will heale any sores very soundly; neither will it permit any dead or proud *flesh* to remaine in the place. * * *
This I have often times tried.

SECT.

SECT. 2. O.

Hippoph. **V**Vhat is best to be applied to an over-reach upon the Heele?

Hippof. I have handled this Malady before in *lib. 2. chap. 4. sect. 10. lit. A.* notwithstanding I will give you one or two Receipts more. First, cut out the over-reach with your incision Knife, making it plain as may be, then wash it with Beere and Salt, and apply this Plaister unto it.

Over reach in
the heele.

Take Oat-meale and Butter so much as will suffice, to bring it to a Salve, pound them together in a Morter, working them into one body, and apply this Plaisterwise to the Sorance, renewing it every day once till it be whole. * * This is very good. Another.

Mollifie the heeles of the Horse with suppling things, whereof I have given you store, then open the sole of the foot round about, and presse the heele to enlarge it, then when you have made the sole firme againe, keep his feet moyst with *Unguentum Rosatum*, or some such like suppling thing, and he will be whole and sound again. This I never tried. Another.

If the malady doth proceed from a disease which the French doe call *Encastelure*, then take out the sole of the foot where the Sorance is, open it close to the hayre, then take up the veine in the ball of the foot, and give him the fire all along the hayre, upon the said sorance, and lay unto it black Sope upon the Hurds, and when the scurfe falleth off, dresse it with black *Aegyptiacum*, untill such time as it hath produced a circle of a new horne, and keepe the hoose alwaies supple with

with *Vnguentum-rosarum*, and the griefe will heale up,
and weare away in short time, This is very good.

SECT. 3. 0.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you make Oyle of Oates, and what
is it vertue?

Hippof. To deale ingeniously with you, neither my
Master nor my selfe did ever know the nature of this
Oile, or how to make it, untill such time as we met
with Master *Markeham's Master-peece*, from whence
since we have made very good use thereof, and doe
finde it to be a most singular Receipt: I will give it you
just as we have it from him.

Take of Milke eight quarts, and warming it upon
the fire put thereunto of burnt Allome foure ounces,
which will cause it to run into a Curd like to a Posset;
take of the Curd and cast it away, and straine the
Whey through a course cloth into a cleane vessell:
then take of *Oates* a quarter of a Peck, dry and cleane
husked, that were never dryed, and put them into
the Whey, and so set the Whey upon the fire, and let
them boyle untill the *Oates* do burst, and be soft; then
take them off, and put them into a Cullender, so that
the Whey may go gently from them without any
pressing: (for you must keep the *Oates* as moist as may
be) this done, put the *Oates* into a frying-Panne, and
set them over the fire, stirring them continually, till
you see the vapour or smoake of them, not to ascend
upwards: But as it were to run about the Pan; then
suddenly take them off: and putting them into a
Presse, presse them most exceedingly, and looke what
comes

comes from them is onely their Oile, which you must reserve in a close glasse and so stop it well.

Now there are others more artificiall and curious waies whereby to distill and extract this Oile, yet this above them all, is both the easiest, surest and least troublesome way, and the very best for every meane capacitie. * * This Oile of Oates is of all medicines whatsoever the most excellent, and soveraigne for the *Body* of the *Hor'e*, as being abstracted from the most naturall, wholesome, and best nourishing food, which doth belong to the sustentation and lively-hood of the *Hor'e*, this Oile being given by foure or five spoonfuls in sweet Wine, one pint, or strong Ale one quart, and some of the Whey poured into his nostrils, doth Cure the Glanders before all other Medicines. It is also (given in the same manner) the best of all *Purgations*, for it purgeth away al those venemous and *Peccant-humours* that feedeth the most incurable *Furcin* whatsoever; and for my owne part at what time I can conveniently come by this oyle of Oates, I will never use any other Oile or unctious matter in any medicine whatsoever, to be administred inwardly but this onely: I having found by good experience, that it is the most Soveraigne of all simples of that kind, and thus I have shewed you what Master *Mark-hams* opinion (which is the same both with my *Master* and my *Selfe*) is, both of this Oile and it's vertues, and so I remit you to the use and practice thereof. * * *



CHAP. XVI.

SECT. I. P.

Hippophilus.



What is that Receipt which I have often-times heard so highly commended among Ferriers, called *Pastons*, and to what use doth it serve?

Hippof. This thing which is called *Pastons* is none other then a plaine *Plaster*; onely some of our verball *Ferriers* have gotten hold of the *French* word *Paston*, which doth signifie a *Playster*, and that they deliver & vent among ignorant people, whereby to cry themselves up for learned, and skilfull *Doctors* in *Horse-leech-craft*; now forasmuch as maladies and diseases, are of sundry sorts and different natures: so ought the *Pastons*, *Plaisters*, and *Medicines* be discrepant each from other, but since you were pleased to understand the true nature of this word *Paston*, I have in a word delivered the same unto you, and now I will give you the Receipt of one of the *Pastons* which will be well worth your acceptance, it being the most soveraigne remedy of any that ever I could come to know, which is as good to dissolve and take away evill *humors*, which shall at any time fall down into the *Legges* of your *Horse*, as any other *Medicine* you can use. And this it is.

Take of comon Honey one pound, of Turpentine halfe a pound, of Mastick in fine powder, two ounces, of Frankincense and Bole-armoniack both made into fine powder, of each foure ounces, of Sanguis Draconis, three ounces, of new laid Egges fixe, of the strongest white Wine Vinger one pinte, of the flower of Rice seven ounces, mixe all these together, and hereof make a plaister, and lap the *legges* of the *horse* from the *feet* to the upper joynts, and do this but foure or five times, and you shall see it will performe a strange and rare cure. * *

SECT 2. P.

Hippoph. **V** *What is good to he'pe a strainz in the pasterne joynt?*

Hippof. If it be onely a strain in or upon the *pasterne joynt*, and not upon the *blacker sinew* :

*Pasterne joynt
strained.*

Take then of Chamber-ly one quart, and boyle it untill the scum doth arise, then straine it, and put unto it of Tansey and of Mallowes, of each one handfull, and of ordinary Honey two spoonfuls, and of Sheeps tallow foure ounces, chop the hearbs small, and then mingle all these ingredients together, and so apply the medicine to the place with a linnen cloth bound up, and stitched close with a needle and threed, that it may not remove, renewing this plaister every day once, for three or foure daies, and he will be sound and goe upright againe. * * This is speciall good. Another:

Take of Brine one quart, and boyle it till it ariseth, and then straine it, and put to it of Tansey and Mallowes,

lowes, of each one handfull, of Honey two spoonfuls, and of Sheepes tallow four ounces; chop all these together, and then pound them well: and set them upon the fire, and so boyle them, as much as will suffice, apply this warme to the place with a cloth *plaster-wise*, sewing it fast on, and so let it remaine five daies, and if this doth not cure him, then wash the place with warme water, and shave away the *hayre*, and scarrifie the *joynt*, and then apply the medicine of Cantharides and Euforbium, &c. as you are shewed in the cure for an upper attaint in *lib. 2. cap. 4. Sect. 9. lit. A.* and so he will be cured, this is very good.

SECT. 3. P

Hippoph. ¶ *Would gladly Hippocrates, learne a good pill for the Glanders.*

Hippof. I have delivered you many already, but since you are pleased to renew this cure againe, I will give you two *pils*, which shall be of most vertue, which shall cure any violent cold or Glanders; prevent *heart sicknesse*, purge away all *molten grease*, recover a *lost stomacke*, keep the *heart* from fainting in and after hard travell, and violent riding and exercise, and these *pils* will raise a leane *Horse*, and make him fat suddenly.

Take Anniseeds, Comin, dryed Elecampane, Canthamus, of each two ounces, make all these into very fine powder, and searce them; then adde unto them of the powder of Brimstone, and of the juyce of Licoris, of each one ounce, which said juyce of Licoris must be dissolved in white Wine one pinte, then take
of

Pill for the Glanders.

of the oile of Anniseeds, and of the Sirrup of Colts foot, of each one ounce, of Sallet oile and life Honey, of each halfe a pinte ; mixe all these with the former ingredients, and with as much fine wheat flower as will knead it into a stiffe paste, and so make it up into *pils* somewhat bigger then a *French Walnut*, and so keep them close stopped in a glasse or galley pot, for they will last good the whole yeare, and when you shall have occasion to use them, take forth one and annoynt it all over with sweet Butter, and so give it your *horse*, and continue thus to doe every morning one for some time, and ride him a little after the taking thereof gently, if the weather be temperate, and let him stand upon the Snaffle or trench three houres after, then feed him, and at night you may either give him a Mash, or white water. * *. and thus doe (if it be to prevent sickenesse) three or foure mornings together, but if it be to take away any infirmity, as Cold, Glanders, or the like, then administer it eight or ten dayes together at least, but if it be to cleanse his *body* from *molten grease*, or to take away foulness, then give it him either in his heat, or presently after ; but if it be to make him fat being meager, poore, and leane, then use it fifteen dayes at the least. If you shall finde any difficulty in the giving of this *pill*, you may then at your pleasure dissolve it either in sweet Wine, or else in good Ale or Beere, and so give it him with a horne drench-wise. * * The other *pill* is,

Take of Wheat flower one pound, or so much as shall suffice to make a stiffe paste, then take of Anni-seeds, Fenugricke, Brimstone, of each two ounces, Sallet

Sallet oyle one pinte, common Honey one pound and a halfe, white Wine two quarts; make the hard simples into fine powder, and scarce them, then with the residue make a stiffe paste, and of this paste make a pill the bignesse of a mans fist, and dissolve it into two or three gallons of faire water, by washing and laying the said paste therein within your hands, and so let your *horse* drinke the same at his ordinary watering times, or at any other time, when he is willing to drinke, for he cannot drinke too much of this water, then ride him to warme it in his *belly*, but not otherwise, and when the water is spent, doe not cast away the bottome, but filling againe the vessell wherein he drinketh, with fresh water, the next time he drinketh, dissolve another ball therein, and thus doe for fifteen dayes together at least, and you shall see some wonderfull effects thereof. This water scowreth, cleanseth, and feedeth after an admirable manner, and the former lesser pills doe purge the *stomacke* and entrals from all foulness, it voydeth and carrieth away in his ordure molten and dissolved grease, and fortifieth nature so powerfully, as that it leaveth no evill humours in the *body*. * * *. This was taught me by a *scotch man* who was Groome in *Prince Henry* his Stable under Monsieur Saint *Anthony*, and a singular good Groome he was. I have often times made prooffe and use thereof, and have found it to be right good, and for that reason I doe rather commend it unto you.

SECT.

SECT. 4. P.

Hippoph. **W**hat good Antidote or preservative have you for the Pestilence?

Hippof. This disease which we call the *Pestilence* or *Plague*, hath also sundry other names, for some doe call it the *murraine*, others the *garget*, others the *gargill*, and the *French* doe call it *mal de montaine*, the *mountaine* cvill: it is a most contagious and infectious disease, it is sometimes engendred of a surfeit by riding, when the *horse* afterwards taketh cold, and sometimes it commeth of the contagiousnesse of the ayre, when as a *horse* commeth upon a sudden into *fenny* or *marsh* places, where he never was before, having been ever bred and kept in pure, sweet, and wholesome ayre; as once happened to a young *Gelding* of mine owne, when I comming into the hundreds in *Essex*, and travelling late, I came to my *Inne*, where my *horse* the very next day fell into a *pestilent Feaver*, whereof he had doubtlesse died, had not I administered help instantly: wherefore whensoever you doe suspect your *horse* to be never so little touched with this malady, remove him presently, lest he should infect so many *horses* as be in the same *Stable* with him. This comes also to a *horse* many times by meanes of corrupt bloud and bad *humours* which doe lie lurking in his *body*, which washing, drinking being hot, and surfets doe often cause; but let it come as it may, it brings with it a *pestilent Feaver*, which is seconded by ensuing death, if speedy prevention be not at hand.

The

The signes be these: after that he hath drooped and languished two, three, or foure daies at most, he will begin to swell under the roots of his eares, as if he had the vices, and under the *chanle*, and so this swelling will runne up his *cheeks* through the malignancy of the disease, and become very hard; he will hang down his *head* and *face*, and seeme alway to *sleep* and forsake his meat, and his eyes will be yellowish; he will draw his breath short, which will be also very hot and offensive, and sometimes he will put forth Carbuncles, and swellings in his groine, bigger then a mans fist, and his stones will hang, but this not alwaies, and this I have knowne in *horses* more then in one or two. The cure is,

Take of white Wine one quart, and the hearb cal- *Pestilence.*
led in French *Mairelle*, which we in English doe tearm *Night-shade*: stamp it, and take the juyce thereof, and boyle it in the Wine, and when it is boyled as much as will suffice, take then Linseed meale, and Barley-meale, and sift out the bran, taking onely the Flower of them both, as much as will suffice, and put it into the liquor, and so boyle them againe to a Poultesse, and make Plaisters thereof, and apply it to the swellings, but before you lay on the Plaister, strew upon them the Powder of burnt Egge-shels, and thus renewing the Plaisters every day once, you shall either ripen or break them, or they will drive the swellings back again without further trouble; but if the swellings doe breake, then heale them with your greene Oyntment so often shewed you; but then to drive away the malignancy of the infection from the heart, and to send it forth, first let him bloud in the *necke* and

and *weeping* veines, and then give him of Diapent two spoonfuls, with white Wine one pinte, and of London-Treacle one ounce, and this will recover him. And for your other *horses* which you may have just cause to suspect to be infected, to prevent their danger give him this preparative.

Preparativz.

Take two Walnuts, the kernels onely, and (the older the Nuts be, the better:) take also two Figs, and twenty leaves of Rue, stampe them all well together, and let every *horse* have his proportion three or foure mornings together fasting, being made up and given in *pils*, and let them fast three houres after, and this will both preserve and free them. These things I have often used, and found them to be speciall good.

SECT. 5. P.

Hippoph. **V** *What good purging Pils have you?*

Hippof. I have already shewed you many in *lib. 2. chap. sect.* But yet I will give you one or two more.

Take fresh Butter one pound, Aloes and Fenugrick, of each one ounce, life Honey, and white refined Sugar powdred, of each foure ounces, Agaricke halfe an ounce, make all these into fine powder, and being well incorporated with the Butter and Honey, make *Pils* thereof and give them to your *horse*, and if he be a small or weake *horse*, then you must give him but two parts of three, but if your *horse* have a strong cold, and cough withall, then

Take of fresh Butter, and of Mel-Rosarum, of each foure ounces, of Aloes and Sene, of each one ounce, Rubarb

Rubarb and Bay berries, of each three ounces, Collo-
 quintida and Saffron, of each two drams, Cordiall
 Powder one ounce, Ducke or Dutch Powder foure
 ounces, make all these into fine Powder, and mixe
 them well with Mithridate two ounces, & with your
 Butter and Mel Rosarum, beat and pound them well
 together, and so make them into *pils*, and give them
 your *horse*, this receipt will purge him very well, albeit
 it may heat him for some time; and as touching the
 ordering him in his diet, or otherwise, let all things
 be done as in other *physicall* cures of the like nature:
 if it be a small *horse*, then give him two parts in three,
 and proportion the *pils* according to the strength,
 and greatnesse, and corpulency of your *horse*. * * This is
 very good.

SECT. 6. P.

Hippoph. **V** *What is good to cure the paines in the
 Heeles of a Horse?*

Hippof. This is a noysome Sorance, comming to a
Horse, either by ill *humours*, and corrupt *blood*, by means
 of Surfets, proceeding from great heats, by intempe-
 rat ridings, as I have sufficiently declared before, or
 else through the negligence of his *Groom*, or *Keeper*,
 for want of good rubbing, elensing and picking, this
 doth grow betweene the *Fetlock-joyn*, and the *hee*,
 in the very *Pasterne*, which will cause the place to
 swell, and to have chops, from whence will issue a
 thin and stinking water, and those *horses* which have
 shaggy, and long *hayre* upon their *Fet-locks*, are most
 subject to this Malady; the signes be easily knowne,
 by

by reason that the chops may be soone felt, for they will cause the *Legges* of the *horse* to swell, and much filthy matter will come from the place grieved, being of that hot nature, as that it will scald the very *hayre* from about the sorance, and this will cause the *horse* to goe very stiffe, and lame, at first setting forth: The cure is.

Take of the Lees of red Wine one pint, of Wheat-branne one handfull, of House-leek one head, of common Hony, two spoonfuls, of the dust of *Tanners* bark, Allome, and tryed Hogges-grease, of each one pound, and of Verveine halfe a handfull, bray all these well in a Morter, and adde unto them of the leane of *Martlemas* or dryed *Beefe*, burned, and made unto fine powder, halfe a pound, and so worke them to a kind of salve, and apply it unto the Sorance, so hot as the *horse* can suffer it: But before you doe apply this medicine, you must draw the *skin* with a hot iron, a little above the *houghes*, or *knees*, or else take up the *veines* (which I altogether use to doe) then take of Tarre, and of sweet Butter, and of Hony, of each two spoonfuls, and warme them upon the fire, and either annoynt the places seared, or else the *veine*, so taken up with this Vnguent, once every day, till his Oyntment be all spent, and by that time, your *horse* will be perfectly cured, especially if you continue this former Emplayster daily to the sorance, having first clipped, and shaven away the *hayre*; from about the place grieved. * * * With this I have cured many *horses*. Another.

Pastons.

Take of Turpentine, Hogs-grease, and Honey, of each like much so much as will suffice, a little Bole-
armoniacke

armoniacke in fine powder, and yolkes of two Egges: with so much Wheat -ower, as will thicken all the other ingredients : incorporate all these well together, and so bring it to a salve, and Plaister-wise apply it to the Sorance, and so binde it up, renewing it every day, and let him not come out of the Stable, or come into any wet, and he will be soone cured. * *

This is also very good. Another.

Take of tryed Hogges-grease one pound, Verdegrease one penny-worth, of strong Mustard two ounces, Nervall foure ounces, of oyle de Bay, of Hony and Wax, of each halfe a pound, Arsenicke one ounce, Red-lead two ounces, and of white-Wine-Vineger halfe a pinte, powder your Verdegrease, and then boyle all together, and the *hayre* first clipt away, which must alwayes be done in any of these Cures) apply this Medicine hot to the place, and renew it daily, and it will not only cure the paines, but all manner of scratches, scabbed, and kibed *Heeles*; to wash also the Sorance, with Vinegar and Gunpowder is very good to helpe the paines, and scratches. * *. This I have often used.

SECT. 7. P.

Hippoph. **D**oe you not use to purge a Horse that is Purfive and Short winded?

Hippof. Yea Sir, and I doe it after this manner.

Take of the fat of a Boare three pound, mince it very small, and lay it in faire Water foure and twenty houres, to the end the salt (if any be in it) may soake out of it; then, Take of Agaricke Pulverized two ounces,

*Purfive nesse
a Pill.*

ounces, of Colloquintida in powder halfe an ounce,
melrosarum six ounces, incorporate all these well to-
 gether, and worke it to a paste; which you must make
 into Pills, the bignesse of an ordinary tennis Ball, one
 of which you most give him at a time rowled up
 within the powder of Lycoris, but the night before
 you doe administer it, you must give him no Oats at
 all, but a little Hay and wheat-Branne prepared only,
 then the next morning about sixe or seven of the
 clocke, give him one of these Pills, and then cover
 him up warme; and ride or walke him two houres
 space; then bring him in, and let him stand upon the
 Trench two houres more, then unbridle him, and
 give him a little Hay sprinkled with water, and eight
 or nine houres after the taking of his *Pill* (which will
 be about three of the clocke, give him white Water
 to drinke, and let him eate of the Branne, then at
 night when you are to goe to bed, put a muzzel upon
 his *mouth*, and let him remaine so all night fasting, and
 let him be warme covered, and the next morning un-
 muzzell him, and give him Hay sprinkled with water
 to eate, and continue to let his drinke be white Wa-
 ter, only, the third day give him another of these Pills,
 after which you may begin to give him Oates, but a
 little at once; but then the dayes he does not take his
 Pills, you must remember ever more an houre after
 you give him his white Water, to give him of Aga-
 ricke, and of Rubarbe in powder, of each one ounce,
 which he must take in fresh or sweet Butter made up
 like to a Pill: This *purgation* may be given to any *horse*,
 but especially to that *Horse* you shall feare is in dan-
 ger, to become either purfivive of Glandery, and if per-
 haps

haps the Malady have beene longer upon him, give him then of Antimony thirty drams more or lesse, according to the strength and age of the *horse*, and also according to the nature and quality of the disease; and if after the application of this medicine your *horse* will not feed (as it may be very probably) you may cherish him with milke mingled with the yolkes of Egges and Sugar, well beaten and brewed together. *^{*} This I applyed to a *horse* of more then twelve yeares old, who in seven dayes ate not one bit of any thing but onely the said Milke, Egges, and Sugar, and yet in fourteene dayes after, I cured him, and made him perfectly healthy and sound.

SECT. 8. P.

Hippoph. **VV**hat remedy have you for a horse that pisseth blood?

Hippof. This disease comes sometimes being troubled with the *stone*, like as we have it often times among men; sometimes it comes to a *horse*, that being very fat, is put to more then his strength is well able to performe, like as I once saw a very proper Gelding (a young Gentleman being upon his backe in hunting) who comming to a great leap, and the *horse* being ridden off from his winde, his Rider inconsiderately forcing him to take that leap, which the Gelding with much difficulty tooke, but withall fell, and was not able to arise but with the helpe of men, and comming home the same night he pissed blood, whereof he dyed foure dayes after, maugre the endeavours of three very able *Ferriers*, and being opened, they found

found two veynes broken neere to the kidneys, and much *blacke blond* found in the place. This malady may also come by bearing too great a weight, as also when a *horse* is too hard ridden, he will pisse water like to *bloud*: your eye sheweth you the disease, and therefore it needs no further remonstrance. The cure is :

Pissing of
bloud.

Take of *Ambrosio Sanguinario*, alias *Bloud-wort*, and *Bursa Pastoris*, of each three ounces, stamp them well, and boyle them in faire water very well, and so give the liquor thereof being strained, to the *horse* bloud warme. * *. Give him this five mornings together, and it will helpe him. Another :

Take *Barly*, and boyle it in the juyce of *Gumfolly*, and give him the *Barly* to eate, and the liquor to drinke, and this will cure him. * *. This is also very good. Another :

First cleanse his *yard* from all filth, and his sheath also with broken *Beere* and *Butter*, then let him *bloud* in the *necke* and *mouth*, then take the juyce of *Leekes* or *greene Onyons*, to wit, the water wherein they have beene steeped twelve or sixteene houres at the least, the vessell wherein they be steeped being kept close stopped.

Take of this liquor, and of white *Wine*, of each one pinte, and stirre and jumble them together till they become slimy, then give it him to drinke, and doe this sixe or seven mornings together, and it will stay his fluxe of *bloud*, and bring his *wine* to its naturall and ordinary colour. * *. This is a very good medicine, and I have often tried it.

Another no whit inferiour to the former.

Take

Take Beane flower finely sifted, and adde unto it the Suet of a Stagge as much as will suffice, and give it him three mornings together warme, with a horne, with a sufficient quantity of red Wine, and during that time, let his drinke be either sweet Mashcs, or white water, made with Beane-meale. * *. This is an approved good receipt.

S E C T. 9. P.

Hippoph. **W**Hat good receipt have you for a horse that hath taken a surfet by Provender?

Hippof. This comes commonly to such horses as are insatiabie feeders, and therefore it is requisite that they be dyeted, especially if they have too much rest, and too little exercise; for such horses if they can either breake, or steale to a Bing of Provender, and drinke presently after, will undoubtedly surfet upon them, for drinking after Oates, Pease, or Beanes, doth cause the Provender to swell in their belly and stomach, and so clogge the stomacke, as that crudities will arise, and so cause him to be very sicke, yea and perhaps to no little danger, that you shall see him to stand with his foure legges asunder, the one farre from the other, and he will scowre and cast forth of his fundament, corne which will goe forth as whole and entire, as he did greedily swallow them without chewing, or grinding them. The cure is, first open a veine in the necke to keep the blood from inflaming, then draw his yard, and wash it with broken Beere, and Butter, then annoynt it with soft grease, and put into the pipe of his yard a small piece of a clove of Garlicke, whereby to

provoke him to *stale*, then racke him, and give him the *Clister* prescribed in *lib. 2. cap. 6. Sect. 8. Clister 8. C.* and it is called a *Clister lenitive*, then keepe him warm, and to a spare dyet, for foure or five dayes after, and let his drinke be white water during that time. * * with this receit I have cured many a *horse*, but one *horse* amongst the rest of very great *price*, who otherwise had infallibly dyed.

SECT. IO. P.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you cure the Poll-evill?
 Hippof. This malady we doe tearme the *Poll evill*, because it breedeth in the top of the *Poll* behinde the *eares* of the *horse*, but let it assume what name it shall, yet it is none other thing then a *Fistula in graine*, that is a formall *Fistula* which doth begin like all other *Fistulaes* with a great inflammation and impostume in the *nape* of the *necke*: sometimes it comes by meanes of his unruly striving, the halter being new, and therefore hard, which doth so pinch and gall him, that the harme thereof by reason the *flesh* is bruised, doth fester and inflame, and from thence is ingendred this most lothsome forance, and sometimes it comes again of bilious and evill *humours*, which do approach to that place: sometimes it comes again by the meanes of a stroke or blow given by some cudgell by his *Keeper* or *Rider*, betwixt his *eares* whereby it festreth inwardly, and inflaming breedeth an impostumation, so as if it be not in time taken, it will grow to a very foule *Fistula*, not easie to be cured; for the *poll* of the *horse* is so tender a member, as to be soon offended,

fended, and therefore easily damnified; I need not to deliver you the signes, for the swelling will be so apparent, as that it cannot be mistaken, albeit it will putrifie much more inwardly then outwardly; and therefore you ought to apply your diligence to open it, before it doe breake of it selfe. The cure is,

First to lay unto the place swollen, such things as *Poll-will*, will ripen it, and to prepare it ready to be opened: and as touching the ripening thereof.

Take the loame of a mud wall which had never any Lime in it, but much Straw or Litter; and the elder this Loame or mud wall is, the better; boyle so much as you shall please thereof in the strongest white Wine Vineger, and let it boyle till it come to be a very Poultesse, then being very hot, lay it to the swelling, renewing it morning and evening till it be ripe enough to be opened, then open it with a red hot iron made sharpe at the end, and let the iron be the bignesse of a naile rod, but you must begin below, thrusting your instruments upwards, cleane through, that it may come forth in the softest place, and when it is thus opened, so as the corruption may issue forth at ease; annoynt the orifices with tryed Hogs grease two or three dayes together, to get out the fire, but howsoever faile not to dresse it twice every day with the said Poultesse, taynts being dipped in the Poultesse, and put downe to the bottome, as well to carnie and heale the *Fistula* at the bottome, as to keepe open the orifices, and this Poultesse will cure him.

* * * But withall you must remember to make him a hood or night cap to keepe warme the *nape* of his *necke*, and to keepe in the taints also: this also cureth

the Botch in the groine, hurts in the withers, navell-galles, galled-backe, or Sit-falts, &c. Another :

First ripen it as before, or else with tryed Hogs grease scalding hot, making him a Biggin wherewith to keepe his *poll* very warme, and renew this Emplaster every day, and it will ripen it the sooner ; then when you finde it to be softest, and most likely to breake, open it with a hot iron two inches beneath the soft place, carrying your hand upward into the soft and most matterative place, to draw forth the corruption downwards, then taint it with Flaxe or Hurds dipped into molten Hogs grease, and lay also a plaister of Hogs grease upon it, renewing it for foure or five dayes once every day, to get forth the fire : after this, take of Turpentine of *Venice*, halfe a pound thrice washed, and dryed from the water, the yolkes of two Egges, and of Saffron one penny worth in powder, incorporate all these together very wel, then with a probat search the depth of the sorance, and taint it with a sponge full as bigge as the hole of the wound, and as long, and convey the taint downe to the very bottome, well annoynted with the said medicine : but this must be done with the helpe of your instrument, and then cover it with a plaister of Hogs grease, renewing it twice a day, but when the swelling is allaid, then use no plaister, and in short time it will be perfectly whole and sound. * * . This is a very good cure. Another :

First ripen and open it as before is taught you, and apply Hogs grease to fetch forth the fire, then heale it thus.

Take Roman Vitreall, Allum and Rose water, of each

each two ounces, boyle all these together on a quicke fire till they doe come to be as hard as a stone, and then beat it into a very fine powder, and when you are to dresse the sore, first dippe a taint into Vnguentum Egyptiacum, and so rowle it in the said powder, and convey the taint with the helpe of your instrument, to the very bottome, and it will in short time make it perfectly whole and sound. * *. This powder being strewed upon an old sore or ulcer, will both heat and dry it up. Another :

Take of Quick-silver one ounce, let it be well mortified with fasting spittle, and mixe with it tryed Hogs greafe the quantity of a Hens Egge, and Brimstone pulverised ; incorporate these very well together, and annoynt the swelling very well with this unguent ; having thus done, take presently of red Tarre one penny worth, of the reddest and best, of Hogs greafe halfe a pound, and greene Copperas and bay Salt of each one handfull, both made into fine powder ; boyle all these on the fire exceeding well, and then boyling hot (even as it comes from the fire) with a clout fastened upon the end of a sticke ; apply this medicine upon the place (being so lately annoynted with the Quick-silver, Hogs greafe, and Brimstone) and thus by scalding it three or foure mornings together, you shall after those mornings but onely warme the Tarre medicine upon the fire, so that it be but molten, and apply it, and it will be cured ; for this scalding of the place doth so kill the malice of the *Fistula*, that it can never breake to annoy the *Horse* any further. * *. And thus with this medicine I have not onely cured many *poll-evils*, but sundry other

*Powder for
old sores.*

ther *Fistulaes*; it cureth all impostumations and foule Vlcers, being thus applied.

SECT. II. P.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good in case of Purfivenesse or shortnesse of Breath?

Hippof. This disease commeth by two meanes: the first *naturall*, the second *accidentall*; *naturall*, as when a horse is (as we doe usually say) *cock-thropled*, for that his *throppell* or *winde-pipe* being too long, and so becomes crooked as his *winde* is thereby so straightned or stopped, as that he is not able to draw it in and put it forth with that ease and pleasure that other horses doe that are loose *thropled*, for that the *winde-pipe* is (I say) straightned, which doth convey his breath into his *lungs*, and vent it forth againe. In like manner, a horse becommeth *purfive* and *short winded*, when the *pipe* is too much filled, with fat or other *phlegmaticke* stuffe, whereby he is very much suffocated, which causeth his *lungs* to labour the more, and therefore if you shall be pleased to follow my counsell, never breed with that horse that is *cock-thropled*.

This disease commeth secondly by *accident*, when a horse shall be too hard strained upon his water, like as many of your ignorant *loctries* use to doe, when morning and evening they doe make them *watering courses* (as they are frequently so termed) so also this infirmity commeth by riding galloping, or straining a horse upon a full *stomacke*, before he hath either digested his meat, or emptied himselfe; for by this meanes *phlegmaticke humours* doe distill out of the head into

into the *winde-pipe*, and so fall upon the *lungs*, where they doe rest, and there congeale, hindring the drawing of his *breath*: it comes also by Colds, Glanders, and the like; the signes are so apparent, as that they need no description, onely this inconvenience (besides many more) it bringeth with it; as to be heavy, sad, and dull in travell, be marvellous subject to sweats, and be ready to fall downe if he be but a little strained. A right skilfull *Ferrier* not long since told me of a strange cure in this kinde, which a Gentleman *Groome* relateth to him of a Gelding which the *Groome* had in his said keeping, who was so *pursive* (or as we plainly say) *broken-winded*, as that he became almost unusefull, and his cure was after this manner; he suffered his Gelding to eate what he would, as well his fill (*viz.*) of good Hay, as of Provender, but debarred him of all drinke for the space of two or three dayes together, then leaping his backe, he rode him upon a foote pace to the water, at which time he suffered him to drinke his fill, then comming forth of the water, he clapt spures suddenly to him, and ran him with a loose hand upon the top of his speed so long, untill for want of *breath* he fell with him, and for some time lay as if he were dead, but recovering *breath*, he arose, and being well recovered of his *winde*, he rode him into the water the second time, where he also dranke, and being come out of the water, he did as before, and so being againe ridden from off his *winde*, he fell like as at first, having thus the second time recovered *breath*, he gave him water the third time, and then rode him as formerly, but now this third time being fallen, when he began to get *breath* againe

again he coughed most vehemently, at what time through the violence of his coughing, the Gelding cast forth of his *mouth*, and that out of his *winde pipe* a hard lump of congealed *Flegmaticke stuffe* of a good bignesse, which by this meanes brought up, the Gelding was ever after freed from the malady, and made sound, and from that houre, had the use of his *winde*, as ably, and as well as ever before, and this was the story which one of the ablest *Ferriers* I doe know in *England* delivered unto me (as he affirmed, and I doe believe him, for that I doe know him to be a right honest man) from the *mouth* of the *Groome*, who with many vehement asseverations affirmed the thing to be most true, neverthelesse albeit I doe Mathematically believe that the *Groome* delivered this history to the *Ferrier*, I must say with the *French man* *Je croy en Dieu*: But leaving this famous *Groome* to his rare *cure*, let us proceed to cures that are more probable, and now of such cures as I have met with for this disease, You shall participate.

Take of new Milk one pint, and of Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, give him this bloud warme, which done, put down his throate two new laid Egges, doe thus three or foure mornings together, and then you shall perceive amendment, but for his Hay, let it be sprinkled with water, and his Oates well wet in good Ale or Beere, and let his drinke be altogether white water.

* * * This is very good. Another.

Keepe your *horse* three or foure dayes to a spare Dyet, before you doe administer to him; then give him this drinke: Take Fenugricke three ounces, of Bay-berries one ounce and a halfe, of the inner rind

Purificence
or sovernesse
of breath.

of Elder halfe a pound, the whites of fixe new laid Egges, of browne-Sugar-Candy, water-Cressets, Primrose leaves, if they may be had, red Mints, red Fennell, white or Hawthorne leaves, of each one pound, bray all these together in a Morter, (the Spices before beaten by themselves) and when they be well powdred, put to the Ingredients of Ale one quart, and so boyle it, and after strain it, and so give the liquor thereof to your *Horse* to drinke bloud warme, and set him upon the Trench, and let him fast six houres after, then give him meat, and an houre after that, give him a warme Mash, or white Water, and let him be kept to a strickt Dyet, and let his drinke be Mashes or white Water, nine dayes together after, and his Hay sprinkled with Water, and his Provender wet in Ale or Beere; and thus you may cure him. * * *. With this medicine I have done very great cures. Another.

Take the guts of a Hedge-hogge, and hang them in an Oven till they be dry, then make them into Powder, then take three or foure Spoonfuls of the Powder, and put it into sweet Wine, Ale or Beere, and so give it him to drinke, and the residue of the Powder mixe with the Powder of Anniseeds and Licoris, and with sweet Butter make it into Pils, and give him two or three of the Pils presently after his drench, and keep him fasting three or four houres after, then you may give him Hay first sprinkled with water, and after Provender or bread wet or moystned in good Ale or Beere, putting also thereunto of this Powder; and if you have not enough of this Powder to serve, then, Take of Comin, Lycoris, Centaury, and Anniseeds, of each like much, make these into fine Powder,

der, and give him thereof two spoonfuls with his Provender, and put also into his Mashcs and bread of the Powder of Fennel-seed, mixed with the Powder of Brimstone; this is very good for this malady, for I have seen a *horse* for a moneth together to eate no other Provender but what hath been mixed with this Powder, and also his Mashcs and white Water, so made and compounded, and I have also brought him to drinke new Milke mingled with the Powder of Brimstone, by means whereof he hath been the sooner recovered, and made perfectly sound. * * And this is very good. Another.

First let him *bloud*, then take of sweet Wine one pint, and of the juyce of Hore-hound halfe a pound, of the Oyle of Frankincense halfe an ounce, of the Powder of Anniseed, Licoris, and browne Sugar-Candy, of each halfe an ounce, let all these be made into fine Powder, incorporated well together, and give it him once or twice in the week, for a while, and ride him not at all that day you drench him, but keep him warme cloathed, and well littered, and let him stand upon the Trench four houres after fasting, then give him meat, and three houres after a sweet Mash, putting thereinto of the Powder of Licoris, and Anniseeds. Of this I never made triall, but it hath been highly commended unto me for right good. Another.

Take of Barley two gallons, steepe it in water two daies, and shift the water every day, then take it clean from the water wherein it was last steeped, and boyle it in three gallons of faire cleare water till it burst, putting thereto of Anniseeds and Licoris, and of Rai-
fins

skins of the Sunne stoned, of each one pound; and so let it boyle one houre, then take it from the fire, and straine it very dry, and put unto the liquor of Honey one Pint, and of Sugar-Candy in Powder six ounces; then put the liquor into a cleane earthen Pot, or Bottle, keeping it close stopped, and thereof give your *horse* bloud-warme four mornings together, the quantity of an Ale-pint at a time, and let him eate the Barley if he will, howsoever put it not away, but heat some of it every day, and being hot, put it into a bag, and therewith perfume his head. * * This is very good for I have often used it. Another.

First you must keep him to a very spare dyet, and inure him five or six daies to eate his Oats steeped in Chamber-ly, and after that

Take of Bayberries, Fennell, Cummin, Smalage, Fenugrick, Fearn-roots dried, and Licoris foure ounces in the whole, or, of each halfe an ounce, according to the bignesse, age, strength, or Corpulency of the *horse*; make all these into Powder, then take one part of the Powder, and put unto it of fresh or sweet Butter halfe a pound, and of new milke halfe a pinte, and so give it your *horse* bloud-warm: the next day do the like with the other halfe of the Powder, and the third day let him not forth of the Stable, and give it him so long as he shall be in *Physicke*; for his drinke let it be white Water made of Barley-meale, but not with Wheate-bran, and let him stand upon the Trench, at least two houres before his drench, and two houres after, then after that give him that which followeth.

Take of fresh Butter halfe a pound, of good Agarrick, night-shade, and Cassia, of each one ounce, make

all these into Pills (being first powdered, searced, and well mixed,) and administer them to your *horse*, then give him of white Wine halfe a pint, whereby the better to swallow Pills, the fifth day let him rest, and keepe him alwaies warme covered, and well littered, and if you doe perceive him to be loose in his *body*, and that he hath purged well, let him rest three or foure daies quiet, without doing any thing unto him, but if he hath not purged after one daies rest onely, then give him this drink.

Take Mithridate, Diacartami, Senæ, of each two ounces, and of good white Wine one pint, mixe and brew all these together, and so give it him to drinke, and let him rest three daies, giving him every one of these three daies about noone, of fresh Butter onely, halfe a pound, made into the manner of Pills; these three daies being ended, you must administer unto him as followeth, and continue it weekly till he be perfectly cured.

Take of Agarick, Aloes, and of Diacartami of each one ounce, of Saffron, Mirrh, halfe an ounce, make all these into fine Powder, and so make them into Pills with fresh Butter foure ounces, and give it to your *horse*, and then presently after give him of white Wine one pint, to wash downe the Pills. * * This is a most excellent cure, and by me often practised. Another.

Take of white Wine one pint, of Sallet-oyle three quarts, of Aloes and Licoris, of each one ounce, of Colloquintida, of Agarick, and Mirrh, of each halfe an ounce, of Aristolochia-rotunda three drams, of Nightshade one ounce, of Bay berries three drams; make
all

all these into fine Powder, then take of Venice Turpentine two drams, of *Mel rosarum* three ounces, mixe all these together, and make it bloud warme, and so give it your *horse* to drink with a horne, but give him no Oates in fifteen daies, and let his drinke be white water; it will not be good to give him much Hay, but Wheat-flower, which should not be much beaten or threshed, and instead of his Oates give him Wheate-bran, or Barley-meale, and keepe him warme, six daies after let him bloud in the *necke*. * * * Let him have this drink twice, to wit, after the first drinke let him rest one day, and then drench him againe, as you did before. Another. First give him this purgation.

Take of fresh Butter halfe a pound, of Sene, and of Agarick, of each halfe an ounce made into fine Powder, of Aloes, and of loafe Sugar, both powdred, of each one ounce, of Cordiall Powder halfe an ounce, make all these into fine Powder; then

Take common Honey foure ounces, mixe and beat all these together, and so make them into Pils, and give them to your *horse*; but before you doe administer these Pils he must stand upon the Trench two houres, and so likewise two houres after; that day give him no Oates, and let his drinke be white water, and for your other directions you may give him his allowance of Oates all the other daies, but you must then wet them either in strong Ale or good Beere, and you may travell or give him exercise, but with moderation all those other daies, and three times every day you shall give him three or foure handfuls of Wheat-bran prepared, as before is shewed you in *lib.*

2. chap. 9. sect. 4. F. and thus continue him to this dyet.

at.

at your pleasure. * * * I have made triall of this cure, and I doe know it to be right good, for in a moneth or six weekes I have brought a gaunt and Purfive horse to have a belly as round, fresh, and as cleare, as that of a sucking Colt, nor is this cure very chargeable or costly; you must give him Wheat-straw instead of Hay, onely in the night you may give him Hay, provided it be sprinkled with water.

SECT. 12. P.

Hippoph. **VV**hat cure have you for a Horse that is Prickt?

Hippof. This sorance hath many names; It is called *Accloyed, Cloyd, Retraite, Prickt, &c.* All which names, we for the most part doe fetch from the *French*, and all is but onely plaine *Trickt*, which occurreth to the horse either through the unskilfulnesse or negligence of the *Ferrier*, in the driving of his *Nayles*, or in the weaknesse of the *Nayles* of their evill pointing, or if a *Nayle* should fortune to breake in the quicke, and not be immediately drawne forth, it will in short time fester in the *flesh*, and soon after impostumate, and so in time beget a fowle Sore, which may aske much Art to cure. The signes be, that he will complaine when he treadeth upon stony or hard ground specially, which so soon as you perceive you have then just cause to suspect him to be *prickt* if he were lately shod; wherefore the better to make triall, your way must be to search the *foot* whereof he complaineth, and you shall no sooner put your *Pinsors* to the place, but that he will presently shrink in his *foot* by reason
the

the nipping of the Pinfors doth paine him to the quick; or if you doe but cast water upon the *foote* whereon he halteth, in short time you shall perceiue the *hoofe* to be sooner dry against the *nayle* or place which grieveth him before, before any other part of the *hoofe*. Again, if you shall with your hammer knock upon the top of the *clenches*, when you doe come to that *nayle* which grieveth him, he will lift up his *foot*; so likewise there be many other such like signes, whereby to discover the place *prickt*, which be familiar to every common Smith, and therefore I shall not need to speak any more thereof. But let us now passe to the Cure.

First therefore after you have made triall with *Prickt.* your *Pinfors*, or otherwise, as before is inculcated; pluck off the *shoe*, and either with your drawing-iron, or your Butter, search the place to the very bottome, and if you can see or feele any stub of any *nayle* therein, leave not till you have got it away; and if the place be festred, or matterative, wipe or wash the wound very well, so as you may leave no part thereof behind; then take of the tender tops of red Nettles, a little handfull, and stampe them in a mortar, of *Badgers grease* two ounces, of red Wine Vinegar, and of black Sope, of each two spoonfulls, or for want of *Badgers grease* take the like quantity of the fat of Bacon, which is salt. Beat all these together in a mortar to an Unguent, and stop the wound well therewith, and after cover it with Hurds, and so tacked on the shoe againe, and doe not remove it in two daies, and when you dresse it the second time with the said Unguent, you may shoe him up, but drive no *nayle* at that

that place, and so you may travell him for he will be whole and sound. * * This is an excellent cure, and I have often used the same. Another.

Open the forance well as before is shewed you, and wash it cleane with Vinegar and Salt, and then lay unto it the tender tops of Elder buds beaten to a very Unguent, if it be in Summer that those buds or leaves may be had, if not, then in Winter take the inward rinde of Elder so pounded and brayed, and upon that melt into the wound hard Tallow, with a hot iron, and then lay upon it to keepe it close stopped, some Hurds, and so tack on the shooe, and in few times dressing, he will be whole. * * With these two Receipts I have done many (whereof some have been very great) Cures. Another.

First open the place, cleanse the fore well as before, then take red Nettles, and Bay salt, of each like much; beate them unto a salve, then fill up the hole of the wound therewith; that done, lay upon it bolsterwise Hurds, and melt upon the Hurds hard Tallow to keep wet, durt, and gravell from it, which would annoy the forance; then tacked on the shooe, causing the *foof* to be well pared, and drive no nayle neere the place, and after twice or thrice dressing, you may ride him, for then the more exercise he hath, the sooner will he be whole. * *. This is special good. Another:

Take off the shooe, and cause him to be well pared and searched as before, then take of Turpentine, brown Sugar-candy powdred, and white Ginger in powder also, of each the quantity of a Garden-beane, then melt them all together in an iron spoon, and so poure it into the wound hot, and lay Hurds upon it, and

and after doe as you are directed in the former Cures.

* * This also is very good. Another.

Search the place, as before is shewed, then take Roch-Allum and burn it, and make it into fine Powder, and so fill the hole therewith, and lay a boulder of Hurds upon it, and after doe as before you are taught. * * And this is very good. Another.

Search the place as before is shewed, then take of Goats grease, or for want thereof Deeres-suet, or Sheeps-suet, of Turpentine, Sallet-oyle, and new Waxe, of each two ounces; melt them all together, and whilst it is upon the fire, adde thereunto of ordinary Honey, three ounces, and of Sanguis Draconis one dramme made into fine Powder, incorporate all these together upon a gentle fire, and bring it to an Oyntment, and of this you must poure a sufficient quantity into the wound warme, then put on Hurds, and doe as before is prescribed you, and let the *foot* be very well stopped, and let him come in no wet if you can prevent the same, neither let any nayle be driven neere the griued place. * * This is one of the best Receipts of this kind. Another:

Search the place as before, and cleanse it with Salt and Vinegar. Then take Salt, and make it into fine Powder, then take foure times so much Turpentine, and boyle them together; and so poure it hot into the wound, and then put upon it the powder of Brimstone dissolved in white Wine, and lay upon it Hurds, and then doe as before is declared. * * Very good. Another most singular Receipt which the *French* doe call *Retoire*. First search and wash as before. Then

Take of Oyle de Bay four ounces, of Orpin, of Can-

Cccc

tharides,

thanides, and of Euforbium, of each two ounces, make them all into fine powder, and set it upon a gentle fire, stirring it till you have brought it to an Unguent, with which dresse him, as before is taught you.

SECT. 13. P.

Hippoph. **V** *What hold you good wherewith to perfume a Horse?*

Hippof. Perfumes are very necessary to be applied to *horses* in some cases, viz. in Colds, Glanders, Rhumes, Murs, Pozes, Catars, &c. for the better expiation of which *maladies*, Perfumes are admirable helps, for sometimes they breake a cold, sometimes they dissipate congealed *humours* which doe annoy the *head*, *braine*, and *stomacke* of the *horse*, sometimes they expell and cause the *horse* to vent and to send away at his *nose* and *mouth* much filth and corruption, which doth stop, clog, and pester his *head* and *body*, and sometimes they doe siccate and dry up many bad *humours* which are ingendred in the *head* and *braine*, and so likewise many vertues *Perfumes* have whereof very many of our *Ferriers* here in *England* are most ignorant: for did they truely know the nature of *Perfumes*, and how rightly to apply them in their proper places, they might easily doe cures for which they should be not a little admired. The *Ingredients* and *simples* wherewith we usually perfume *sicke horses* are many, as *Frankincense*, *Storax*, *Benjamin*, *Brimstone*, *Olibanum*, &c. sometimes *Hearbs*, *Roots*, *Graine* or *Corne*, and such like things, which are very much behoofesfull for the cures of such *diseases*, for which they

they are frequently administred, as you shall finde in many of my cures set you downe at large: yet I will for example sake set you down two or three for your better satisfaction.

Take the best Olibanum, Storax, Benjamin, and Frankincense of each one ounce, bruisse all these, and mixe them well together, but not too small, and when you are to perfume your horse take all these so well mixed, and putting thereof upon a Chasing-dish and coles, cover the coles with a Tunnell, and so apply the small end to one *nostrill* at once, and after to the other, to the end he may receive the smoke or fume up into his *head*, and let him be thus perfumed a quarter of an houre together. * * Another. 1 Perfume.

Take Brimstone made into fine Powder, and mixe with it fresh Butter and Sallet-oyle, as much as will suffice; let him not take this with fire, like as he did the former, but let it be conveyed into his nose with a linnen clout rowled up in the fashion of a great Taynt, and this will bring forth much bad matter. * * Another. 2 Perfume.

Take Penny-royall, Sage, and Wheate, of each as much as will suffice, and boyle them in faire water till the Wheat doe burst, put the Wheate and Hearbs being first drained from the water so hot as it comineth from the fire, and so fasten the bag unto the head of the *Horse*, wherby he may receive the fume up into his head. And thus you may perfume him at pleasure, and as you shall see cause. * * The residue of perfumes, and the manner how to apply them you shall finde among my Cures, and therefore it will be superfluous for me to treat any further of them. 3 Perfume.

S E C T. I 4. P.

Hippoph. **W**hat is the best manner of administering Purgations to a Horse?

Hippof. As touching Purgations, I have spoken before very largely, as well for inward purging, as for outward, and therefore what I shall say more, is in effect but one and the same thing : neverthelesse for your further satisfaction, I will briefly deliver unto you, what can be said of Purgations. Five wayes we have whereby to purge a horse, viz. by Pills, Potions, Clusters, Suppositories, and Grasse. Pills for the most part doe purge and cleanse the head and braine, by drawing the peccant humours downe into the body, and so sending them forth with the excrements. Potions doe free the stomacke, belly, and guts, from such naughty humours which Glanders, Colds, and Surfets have engendred in the body. Clusters are of sundry, and those of different natures, some to ease and appease griefes, some to allay the bilioufnesse and sharpenesse of evill humours, some to binde, and some to loosen, and some to heale as in case of Ulcers and old Sores within the body principally, and those doe also cleanse the guts, refresh the inward parts and spirits vitall, and prepare the body before hand for the receiving of purging pills or potions. Suppositories helpe the diseases in the guts, being of nature and condition more gentle then Clusters are, and may be applyed when Clusters cannot. It therefore remaineth that the skill of the Ferrier be such, as to be able judiciously to understand the severall natures of every of these things, to know how to
make

make choice of his ingredients and simples aptly, to understand how to compound them punctually and artificially, to discern rightly before he doe administer what be the *humours* and maladies wherewith the creature is annoyed and visited, as wherher (V. G.) it be *Choler*, *Melancholy*, *Flegme*, or *Rhume*, as also in what part of the *body* the *humour* offensive, is most predominant, and what simples will purge or remove those evill *humours*, for it is requisite he be able to know right well, and *ad unguem*, the nature and property of every one of them in particular, by reason that some are much more asperous and violent then others be, yea many simples are *strong poysons* if they be not well prepared and corrected, and yet their qualities well weighed and compounded by true Art, and great good judgement, will work wonderfull effects. Those simples which be strong, are *Colloquintida*, *Scamony*, *Elebore*, &c. the more gentle are *Manna*, *Cassia*, *Whey*, *Prunes*, &c. But those that be of the meane, or indifferent working, are *Rubarb*, *Agarick*, *Aloes*, *Sene*, &c. and this I am bold to intimate unto you, to the end you may the better understand their natures, vertues, and qualities, and come to know the more securely how to worke when occasion shall be offered. The fift and last way of *purging* is by *grasse*, especially if the *horse* be *surfatted*, and hath beene overtoyled the *Winter* before, for this must be done in the *Summer* time, when *grasse* is in its best heart; but that *grasse* which will scoure and purge most, is a new mowne meadow, for that will rake his *guts* very well, nor will he in such a place gather flesh; I doe therefore counsell you not to suffer him to remaine in such grounds.

grounds above fourteene or fifteene dayes, and then take him forth, and put him into some other pasture, where the grasse hath not beene touched with the *Sithe*, for then he will *belly* well, and in short time recover much *flesh*, and become fat and lusty. This manner of scowring will cause him to empty himselfe well, to purge, and send away all his bad *humours* and *surfets*, ease his *limbs* marvellously well, doe his *legges* and *feet* very much good, refine his corrupt *bloud*, and make him agile and full of *spirit*. To mow green Rye before it be eared, is also most wholesome, for it scowreth, cleanseth, and cooleth the *body* very much; so doth the leaves of Sallowes, and of the Elme: but as touching the administring of Scowrings and *Purgations* in the Stable, you must understand that some skilfull *Ferriers* who have beene farre travelled in this *Mystery*, have very diligently and studiously set you downe many very good rudiments and instructions, wherewith to worke with all security, whose observations I doe advise you punctually to observe: as first the seasons of the yeere are to be pondred: (*V. G.*) in winter, if his *body* be to be purged, it must be first prepared by *Phlebotomy* or *Bloud-letting*, together with artificiall dyet, therefore you shall administer either *Suppository*, *Clyster*, *Potion*, or *Pill*, &c. You must keepe him a day or two from hay, straw, or such like hard-meats of digestion, for that those things will be a great impediment to the working of *physicke* or medicine, and he must also be kept for a time from meate; because *emprinosse* is a great helpe to *physicall operation*, otherwise it may happen (as it doth oftentimes) that more danger then good may accrew to the

the *Horse*. Wherefore two or three dayes before you doe intend to *purge* him, let his meate be either Wheat or Rye-bran prepared, like as before is taught you, and give him also either good bread made of purpose with Beanes, Pease, and some Rye in it, or else Oates well sifted which must be dry and sweet, and let his drinke be white water onely, and that morning you intend to give him a *purge*, let him be fasting from either meate or drinke, but about sixe or seven a clocke in the morning, give him this or some other *purge*, which I have already taught you, or shall hereafter, which must be correspondent unto the malady, for which you are to *purge* him, for one *Purgation* will not sort to every infirmity, but this *purge* is most profitable for the causes which I shall presently deliver unto you: And this it is, *viz.*

Take of white Wine one pint, or of strong new Ale ¹ *Purgation.* one quart, so much of the powder of Mechoacan of the best, and choycest as you may take up upon a shilling at foure times, give him this drinke warme with a horne, then Trot him but a matter of a Mile gently upon good ground, and so set him up warme, and let him stand upon the Trench till one of the clock, then give him a warme Mash. This will purge and fetch away his filth and slime, and carry away his *peccant humours*, which Surfets have engended; halfe an houre after he hath had his Mash, give him Bread or else a few Oats mingled with wheat bran, and that little and oft for feare of cloying his *stomacke*, and at night give him white water, and so give him bread and hay sprinkled with water for all night. * *. This is an excellent *Purge*. Another.

2 Purgation.

If it be in the Spring prepare him as before, then for three or foure dayes together give him greene Rye so much as he will eate, and after feed him with Bread, or else Oates and Bran, like as you are told before, but instead of Hay, continue him those nights with green Rye, by reason his teeth will be on edge. * *. This cooleth his *body*, and cleareth it from all *Flegmatique* and *Rhumatique humours*: as for his *bloud-letting*, let that be according as your judgement shall dictate unto you, and you may use this so long as you may see cause. * *. If you doe perceive your *Horse* to be sicke, Surfetted, full of colds, or otherwise ill disposed, whether in *Summer* or in *Winter*, after you have opened a *Veine*, give him this *Purge*.

3 Purgation.

Take of Aloes, Siccatrina, made into fine powder two ounces, and make it up into *pils* with fresh or sweete Butter, and give it to your *Horse* over night, he having beene kept fasting the whole day before, and prepared also with the *Dyet* before prescribed; and after he hath taken those *pils*, give him either a sweet Mash, or white water the next morning early, for that will cause his *pils* to worke the more kindly, that day, and so let him fast till night, during which time he will *purge* freely; then at night (he having stood upon the Trench all day,) give him white water, and after Oates and Branne, and then give him Hay sprinkled with water for all night, neverthelesse he may not the first day *purge*, by reason that some *horses* are of so strong a *Constitution*, as that *Physicke* will not easily or suddenly worke, but then be you confident it will the next day: you must therefore be carefull how you doe order him. After his *purging* keepe him still warm clothed

clothed and well littered, take him from the Trench, and put on his Coller-halter, give him sweet Mash or white water, and after feed him well, but by discretion, both with Hay, Oates, and Bran, and keepe him to white water two or three dayes after, or longer, if you shall so please, and when you give him cold water, let it be with excesse. * *. This I have often tryed. Another.

If your *horse* be newly taken from Grasse, and that you hold it needfull his *body* be cleansed, and to free him of his many bad *humours*, which either his Grasse or former Surfets might bring: Then first Rake him, and administer unto him the *Clyster* prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap. 6. sect. 8. letter C. Clyster 4.* and the next day after give him this drinke.

Take of the strongest Ale-wort one quart, of ordinary Honey a quarter of a pint, of London Treacle two ounces, mixe and brew all together well, and so give it him bloud-warme: this done, keepe him upon the Trench warme clothed, and well littered fixe houres after, and let his drinke be a sweet Mash, or white water, and let his Racke meate be sweete Wheate-straw, Oates, and Branne. * *. This both purgeth and comforteth. Another which must be given the next day.

4 Purgation.

Take of white-Wine one pint, and put thereto of Sene one ounce, which must be infused all night in the Wine; the next morning betimes straine it, and put into it of the best and choycest Aloes one ounce, made into fine powder, and Agaricke halfe an ounce, of Licoris powdred one spoonefull, warme this a little upon the fire, and mixe and brew it well together,

5 Purgation.

cate, which must be mixed by rubbing the Oates and Honey betwixt your hands, so that the Honey may be very well mixed, let him eat his Oates thus mingled, untill you doe finde him to be quite cured, which will be when he hath quite done running at the *nose*.
 * * This is one of the best, and most certaine cordials that I know, neither have I made use of any so much as of this, for the time I have known the same, for this disperseth all flegme and choler; it also purgerh the *head* and *braine*; it purifieth the *bloud*, it venteth the evill *humours*; it causeth good digestion, and freeth a *Horse* from Glanders, Colds, Catars, Rhumes, Running at the *nose*, and the like.



CHAP. XVII.

SECT. I. 2.

Hippophylus.

What cure have you for the quicke or running Scab?

Hippof. This is a noysome disease, and infectious, a very formall *mainge*, and meere neighbour to the *Leprosie* or *Elephantique disease*. It commeth by surfeit taken by over-riding, when the *bloud* is over-hot; it doth putrifie and corrupt the *bloud*, and consequently the *flesh*.

flesh, and at the last breaketh forth into this malady, which we call the *quick-scab*. And the reason why we doe give it this name is, for that it runneth from one member of the *horse* to the other; sometimes it will be in the *necke*, and at other times in the *breast* of the *horse*, now in the *maine*, and then in the *taile*, &c. The cure is,

Quick-scab. First shave or clip away the *hayre* from that place visited, so close as may be, and take off the *scurfe* and *scabs* with some old Curry-Combe, Oyster-shell, or some such like thing. Then

Take faire cold Water with a linnen cloth, wash and bathe the places very well, and lay the linnen cloath well wet upon the place, and so touch it no more in ten daies, and if in that time the *quick-scab* doe not heale, then dresse it as before, and so a third time, or a fourth, or so oft as necessity requireth, till it be thoroughly healed. But remember that the day before you thus dresse the sorance after this manner, you take (to a reasonable quantity) of blood from the *neck-veine*. * * This is an approved cure. Another as good as the former.

First let him *bloud*, and then shave or clip away the *hayre* close, as in the former cure. Then take Mallows and Marsh-Mallows, of each like much, and boyle them in faire water as much as will suffice, till the hearbs be soft, and with the hearbs and decoction, bathe & wash the sorance two or three daies together warm; then take of common Honey one pint, Coperas, Allum of glasse, and Verdigrease, all made into fine Powder of each foure ounces, Turpentine and Quick-silver mortified, of each two ounces; boyle all these

these together with the Honey unto an Unguent, and herewith dresse him every day till he be whole. * *
This I say is very good.

SECT. 2.Q.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you cure a Quitter-bone?

Hippof. This commeth to a horse by some hurt he hath taken in the *foot*, either by a pricke with a nayle in shooing, or by gravelling, or by a stub, or the like, when it was not so well healed that it impostumated, and so brake out above the *cronet*, which bred the malady; or else being neglected it brake out above the *hoofe* before it was perceived. It is bred also sometimes by a hurt upon the *hoofe* by a blow, or by striking one *foot* upon the other; and sometimes it commeth by evill *humours* which fall down into that place, and it groweth most usually upon the inside of the *foot*, where when it beginneth; it causeth a hard round swelling upon the *cronet* of the *hoofe*, betwixt the *hee*le and the *quarter* of the *long talent*, it begetteth an Ulcer at what time it doth begin to impostumate, and it breaketh out about the *cronet*, like as I said before. The signes I have already given you, for the place will be swelled the bignesse of a hallenut, and the *horse* will halt right down. The cure is, so soon as it is espied to open it above; if it doe begin to be soft, then Take Auripigmentum made into fine Powder, and infuse it in the strongest white Wine-vinegar can be gotten, 48 hours, and then apply it to the sore, and it will so eate about the *quitter-bone*, that you may pluck it away with your
finger

finger or *pliers*, which so soone as the *bone* or *gristle* is taken forth, you may heale up the wound with your Coperas water, and greene oyntment prescribed in *lib. 2. cap. 10. sect. 4. G.* till it be whole, but he must not come into any wet during the time of the cure. * * This is very good. Another.

First cut the *hoofe* to the quicke, then

Take a Snake the greatest you can get, and cut off his *head* and *taile*, and flea it, and so boyle it in water till the flesh come from the bone, and then you may bring the flesh to be a very Oyntment; put of this into the sorance down to the Bottome, and this will kill the *quitter-bone*, and dry up and heale it; but you must not suffer him to come into any wet, dirt, or gravell, during the time you have him in cure. * * With this medicine I cured one *horse* onely, for that I had no cause to use it to any other since. Another.

Take of Arsenicke the quantity of a small Beane, make it into Powder, and put it into the hole of the Sorance, conveying it downe to the bottome with your instrument, and then stop the *mouth* of the wound with Hurds, and binde it on with a cloth, and a rowler, that the *horse* may not bite it away; and so let it remain foure and twenty houres: then open it, and if you shall perceive the wound to looke blacke within, it is a token that the Arsenicke did its Office in well working, then to allay the fire, and to restore the *flesh* that is thereby become mortified, *taynt* the hole with Turpentine and Hogs-grease molten together. Then take Pitch, Rosin, and Waxe, of each like much, and of Turpentine, as much as of all the other three, and melt them, and so make a Plaister of Leather,

ther, with which you must cover the top of the Sorance, but first be sure to convey the aforesaid *taint* to the bottome, and then lay on your Plaister, and thus dresse him daily till you have gotten forth the Core or sharpe *Gristle*, if the Arsenicke have not eaten it out before, for if the *Gristle* be in the bottome of the wound and uncovered, you may raise it with your *fingers* or Instrument, and so plucke it quite away, for till that it be out, the sorance will not heale; that done, heale it up with your greene Oyntment, or else with this Unguent.

Take of common Hony, and of Verdegrease in fine Powder, of each so much as will suffice, boyle this till it be red, and therewith *taint* the wound till it be whole, keeping evermore the *mouth* of the wound open, lest it heale up above before it be well healed at the bottome; neither let your *horse* come into any wet, or goe forth of the Stable untill he be throughly cured: * * Thus I have cured many *quitter-bones*. Another.

Cut the place to the quicke, then take Virgin-Wax Pitch of Greece, Galbanum, Mastick, Sagapenum, Olibanum, and Sallet-oyle, of each one ounce, and of Deere or Sheepes-fuet halfe a pound, melt these upon a soft fire, and incorporate them well together, and therewith *taint* and dresse the same till it be whole. * * This is also very good.

CHAP.



CHAP. XVIII.

SECT. I. R.

Hippophilus.



What is good to cure the Red-water?

Hippof. This *Red-water* is that which issueth out of old incurable *Ulcers*, and *Sores*, which when you shall see it to come forth of any wound, then be you assured that it is very hardly or seldom cured, till that water be gotten away; for it is a signe that the wound is *poysoned* with the said *Red-water*; nor could I ever finde any cure for the *Red-water*, but onely one which a *Marishall* of *France* taught me, which is this, *viz.*

Red water. Take of the root of the hearb called *Emanuel*, alias *Bonus-Henricus*, or good *King-Henry*, or *All-good*; boyle the roots thereof in water, and give it him drenchwise with a horne bloud-warm, and this will take away the *Red-water*, and you may then cure the wound with your other *Salves* or *Unguents*.

This I had never cause to make triall of in *England*; but I have been an *Eye-witnesse* to two or three cures in this kind, which the *Marishall* of whom I had the Receipt did very sufficiently perfect. The *French* calleth this malady *La En Rouse*.

SECT.

SECT. 2. R.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you make a Restrington charge ?
 Hippof. This Restrington charge is to be applied to broken bones, or to bones dislocated or out of joynt, being first set, as also take moyst humours from weeping wounds, and so dry up bad humours which doe preoccupate the body. I will commend unto you one onely receipt which shall be speciall good.

Take of oyle de Bay, foure ounces, Orpin, Cantharides, and Euphorbium, of each two ounces, make all these into fine powder and mixe them with your oyle de Bay very well, and therewith Charge the place grieved. * * *. This is also very good to Charge the swelling of a Back-sinew spraine. Restrington charge.

SECT. 3. R.

Hippoph. **V**Vhat cure have you for a Ring-bone ?
 Hippof. A Ring-bone commeth two wayes, to wit, either by Nature, or by Accident; by Nature, when as either the Stallion or Mare have it, from whom the Colt is ingendred, whereby he taketh it as hereditary from them, and therefore (as I have formerly admonished) I will disswade you from breeding upon any such Horse or Mare that either had or have this malady. It commeth also accidentally by some knocke or blow given either by some other Horse, or by his Keeper or other person, and sometimes by some evill humour, which through over-heats doe

fall downe into the *legges*, and maketh its residence upon the top of the *cronet*. It beginneth first with a slimy *humour*, which in time groweth to a hard gristle; you shall know it, for that there will be a swelling round about the *cronet* of the *hoofe*, adjoyning unto the lower part of the *pasterne*, and the *hayre* will stare, and be bristly, and it will cause the *Horse* to halt. The cure is: first wash the place, and shave away the *hayre*, then

Ring-bone.

Take quicke or *unslaked lime*, newly taken from the Kill, which must be well burned, the best burned you may know by its lightnesse, make your *lime* into fine powder, and lay it upon the place swelled all along of a good thicknesse, and binde upon it a linnen cloth made fast about the *foote*, and so put the *horse* into the water, and let him stand in the water a pretty while, then take him forth, and unbinde the *foote*, and he is infallibly cured, for the burning of the *Lime* doth kill the *Ringbone*, even unto the very root thereof, * *. With this receipt I have cured not so few as a hundred *horses* at the least, but when you are thus to dresse your *horse*, let him be brought close to the water whereinto he is to be ridden, that so soone as you have applyed your *Lime* unto the sorance, you may presently put him into the water. Another. First, shave away the *hayr* as before is advised, then scarrifie the place.

Take then *Cantharides* halfe an ounce, *Euphorbium*, and oyle de Bay of each one ounce, your *Cantharides* and *Euphorbium* must be made into fine powder, and then boyled with your oyle de Bay, stirring it continually, that it run not over, then with two or three

three feathers lay it boyling-hot upon the sorance good and thicke, let him be dressed in the same place where usuall he standeth in the Stable, and let him have no litter neere him, but tye up his head so as he may not reach the medicine with his mouth; but when the hayre doe begin to grow againe, give the fire to the sorance, to wit, three or foure straight lines right downwards, drawing the swelling quite crosse, and let the edge of the iron be no thicker then the backe of an ordinary knife, neither must you burne him any deeper then that the *skin* may looke yellow, that done, apply to the place this charge.

Take of Pitch and Rosin, of each like much, let them be molten together, and whilst it is hot, apply it to the place all along, from the one end of the swelling to the other, and before it be cold, clap Flocks upon it, and about three dayes after, lay on more of the said charge, and new Flocks againe upon that charge, and so let it remaine untill the Flockes and charge fall off of its own accord. * *. This is also very good. Another. First wash and shave, and scarifie, as before, then

Take gray-Sope, and Arnicke pulverized, of each the quantity of a Wall-nut, which being very well mixed, spread it upon the sorance so farre as the Ring-bone goeth, and having thus spread it, apply upon it a few Hurds, and binde a cleane linnen cloth upon it to keepe it on, neither let it be removed in foure and twenty houres, then take it away, and stirre not the *asker* or *scab*, but onely annoynt it with fresh Butter, till it doe fall away of it selfe, and so heale it up with some healing salve, whereof I have given you plenty.

E e e e 2

* *. This

Excretions to
cure.

* *. This I have tryed, and have found to be very good. This medicine will cure a *bone-Spawen*, *Splint*, *Curb*, or any other bony excretion.

S E C T. 4. R.

Hippoph. **H**AVE you any way to recover and make sound a Horse that is rotten ?

Hippof. Truly Sir, for any man to promise that, were great precipitation, onely thus farre he may wade therein, as to give ease and helpe to a horse that hath the *rot*, for it is one thing for a Horse to be rotten, and another thing for him to have the *rot*. For a horse to be rotten, is to have his inward parts wasted and consumed, or at least so rotten, as never possibly to be recovered, to wit, his *Liver*, *Lights*, &c. But for a horse to have the disease called the *rot*, I doe finde the same to be either a formall *dropsie*, or else a disease so allied neerely thereunto, as not to be distinguished easily: as we say, a Sheep is rotten, when his *Liver* is become foule and tainted; neverthelesse men doe eate the *carkas*, and doe averre it to be good meat, wherefore the Sheepe is not rotten, but hath the disease called the *rot*. This malady commeth oft times to horses unhandled, to wit, in their youth, whilst they be yet Colts, which be bred, and doe feed in *Fenny-Marsh*, and *wet grounds*, and sometimes it commeth to them after they have bin backed and ridden; when they have too hard and violent riding, being yet but young, whereby the *bloud* is first enflamed, and after putrified and corrupted, begetting obstructions in the *Liver*, and those doe cause putrefaction, and so knots

knots and pustils doe engender in the *Liver*, which breedeth either a *Dropsie*, a *Feltricke*, or a *rot*. The signes how to know this infirmity, are these: After his journeyes his *bayre* will *stare*, his *legges* swell and burn, and when you shall presse the places swolne with your finger, upon taking your finger away, there will remaine a pit or dint, he will forbear his meat very much, and when he doth eate, it will be without any *stomacke* or *appetite*, he will pant much, lift and beate in the *flanks* many times, he will swell under the *belly*, neither will he cast his *coat* in seasonable time, when other *Hrrses* that be sound doe, and he will be so faint of *body*, as that he will become *lunt*, and utterly to have lost his *mettle*. These and such like be the symptoms of this makady. Now come I to the cure.

Let him first bleed well under the *taile*, then.

Rⁿ.

Take of *Mares-milke* two quarts, if the same may be bad, if not, the like quantity of the milke of a *red Cow*, then take a lump of *Arement*, then take a young *horse* of or about the age of foure yeares, and of colour blacke, if it may be, if not, then of some other colour, run and chafe him about that he may *sweate* much, then with a *spoon*, or with some other such like instrument, rake the *sweate* from his *head*, *necke*, *breast*, *backe*, *sides*, *ribbes*, *buttocks*, *legges*, and in a word, from each part or *member* of the said *horse*, and get off the sweat so much as you can possibly, and so put your *Arement* and your *sweate* into the milke, which all being well mixed, give him this by equall portions three mornings together, till he hath taken it all, and let him drinke none other drinke after it in sixe or seven houres, but immediately after his drinke, let him

him be led forth into some *pasture* where other *horses* be, the better to cause him to *neese, stale, dung,* and *empty* himselfe; for it is very *wholsome* for him so to doe, before he either eate or drink. Having thus done, set him up warm and well littered, and if the season doe serve, give him of the green blades of Rye, if not, giue him Barley steeped in Milke three daies, but renewed every day once. Then after every of these drinks if you feele him cold in the *pasterne joynts,* or that he *trippeth* or *stumbleth* as you lead him in your *hand,* meddle no further with him, for he is past cure; otherwise for nine daies together after morning and evening give him white Water onely, unlesse now and then a sweet Mash, and sometimes give him milk with his white water, if the *horse* be not above nine years old, and so you may cure him: but if he be elder, this may prolong his life, wherby he may do the more service. This I never did experience, but a *Noble Knight,* and a very friend told me that he hath thus recovered sundry *horses* which have been visited with this disease.

CHAP.



CHAP. XVIII.

SECT. I. S.

Hippophilus.



*What good Salves have you wherewith to heale
up sores and wounds?*

Hippof. Sir, I have many, according as
I have before shewed you, but yet I
will give you many more, the greatest
number of which I have tried, and am

able to commend them unto you for very good, and
those not Salves onely, but Unguents, Powders, Wa-
ters, which be most soveraigne.

Take of Perosen, and of hard Rosin, of each one
pound, of Frankincense, Virgin-wax, or for want
thereof new Waxe, and Sheeps-fuet, of each halfe a
pound, of old tried Hogs-grease one pound and a
quarter, boyle the Gummes and Waxe in white Wine
halfe a pint, and then put unto it your Sheepes-tallow
and Hogs-grease, and when all is well molten and
incorporated, strain it, and whilst it is yet hot put in of
Venice Turpentine one ounce, and so worke all well
together, and when it is cold, poure in the liquor
from the Salve, which put up into a clean Galley-pot,
or other clean vessell for your use. * * This is a most
sove-

Salve.

soveraigne *Treate* or Salve wherewith to heale any wound (that is not come to an *Ulcer*) and so dry it up. Another most excellent Powder.

Powder.

Take unslaked Lime, the dry dust of Tanners Oken Barke and old shooe-soles burned to a cole, of each like-much, make these into fine Powder, and mixe them well, and keepe it in a cleane box or glasse for your use. * * This Powder healeth the *buds* or *knots* of the *Farcin*, after they be broken, and it skinneth them, and if they be first washed with the juyce of Vervine and strong Vinegar mingled together, and then this Powder being cast upon them, will (I say) heale and skinn them. It also healeth and skinneth all other sores. Another.

Oyntment.

Take tried Hogs-grease halfe a pound, Verdigrease in fine Powder one penny-worth, boyle these upon the fire two or three walms, then take it off, and put unto it Venice-Turpentine halfe an ounce, and stir it well together till it be cold. * * This Unguent will heale any wound or sore in a *horse*. Another.

Oyntment.

Take of Roch-Allum a good quantity, and burne it, and as much Bay-salt, and burne that also; make both these together into fine Powder, then take of common Hony, and of sweet Butter, of each likemuch as will suffice, incorporate the Allum and Salt with the Hony and Butter by melting them over a gentle fire, and with a taint or plaistet apply it. * * And this cureth any foule sore. This I have often tried. Another.

Water.

Take of faire water one pint, and put into it of green Coperas, and of Bay-salt, of each the quantity of a goon hassle-nut, both made into very fine Powder; let

let these boyl a little upon the fire. With this wash any sore before you doe apply your Salves, Vnguent, or Powders. * * this is a right good water. Another :

Take of common Honey two ounces, Roch-Allum, Verdigrease, and Vineger, of each one ounce, make your Allum and Verdigrease into very fine powder, then take of Sublimate finely powdred, two ounces, boyle all these a walme or two on the fire ; this laid on a Spatula plaister-wise once a day, or if the wounds be deep, with a *taint*, cureth both speedily and soundly ; but before you dresse him with this Salve, let the Sore be well washed and injected with the water last above mentioned, made of faire water, Coperas, and bay Salt. * * This is a most approved cure, and good beyond all peradventure, for it cureth not onely sores and wounds in any part in the *body* of the *Horse*, but in the *foot* which way soever it may happen, and it cleanseth any wound from dead or proud *flesh*. Another :

Take the buds or tendrest tops of the leaves of Elder, one handfull, and first shred, and after pound them very well, till you bring them to a perfect Salve, and apply this to the sore, binding a cloth upon it to keep it from falling off. * * This will cure any old or new sore whatsoever, in any part of the *body*, as galled *backes*, *spurre-galls*, *gravelling*, *prickt*, or *accloyed*, the wound being dressed herewith every day once, it will cure any *Fistula* if the juyce thereof be injected to the bottome. With this one thing alone I have done cures which very good *Ferriers* could not cure. Another :

Take common Honey and Verdigrease finely pulverized,

F fff

*Egyptia-
cum.*

verized, of each as much as will suffice, boyle them together till the medicine waxe red, and this will heale up any old or greene sore in short space. * * This is also very good. Another.

Ointment.

Take the white of a new lead Egge, and Sallet oile as much as will suffice, and beat them well together and before you doe apply it unto the wound, poure into the wound burnt Butter, and then lay on your medicine with Hurds plaister-wise, and this will cure any green wound. * * This is very good. And thus much for sores.

SECT. 2. S.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good for a Horse that hath gotten a wrench in his shoulder?

Hippof. If you doe finde that the grieffe be in the shoulder, and that you do know it to be a wrench, make this charge, and charge the grieved shoulder therewith.

*Shoulder
wrench.*

Take Wheat-meale two pound, and allay it with red Wine in a Pipkin or Postnet, as if you would make thereof a paste, then take of Bole-armoniack made into fine powder halfe a pound, of ordinary Honey one pound, boyle all these together, and adde thereunto in the boyling, of Pitch halfe a pound, and so keep it continually stirring untill your Pitch bee thoroughly molten, but before you take it from the fire, put into it of ordinary Turpentine halfe a pound, of Comin, oyle de Bay, Dialthea, Sanguis Draconis, Bay-berries, Fenugricke, Linseed flower, of each, two ounces, make all these into fine powder, then take of the

the oyle of Aspick one ounce, boyle and mix all these very wel together, that done, charg the grieved shoul- *Charge.*
 der all over very well, even down the knees. * * This
 charg is most soveraign for any wrench or strain in the
shoulder, knees, or hips; it also cureth Kibes, Scratches,
 and all such like sorances, it is also most excellent to
 comfort the *sinewes* offended or hurt; it is very good
 for a *backe-sinew-spraine*, it draweth away all bad hu-
mours, and abateth swellings. * * I have often made
 use of this receipt, but if it be a *shoulder-pight*, or *joynt-*
dislocated, then thus he is to be cured, *viz.*

First cast him and lay him upon that side which is *Shoulder*
 not hurt, then fasten with a cord the *foot* of the same *dislocated.*
legge all along a board, and so fasten the *foot* to some
 tree or post which must be some two or three paces
 distant from the *horse*, and neer to the ground, and let
 one stand at the middle of the board with a stick to
 turn it easly and by degrees in the middle thereof,
 and whilst that is in doing, let another with a paille of
 cold water, rub, wash, and bath the grieved place with
 his *hand* or *foot*, and that very hard, and in so doing,
 he must take up the *member* grieved, which he must
 chafe from the very top to the farther end of the *legge*,
 and by thus doing you shall put in the *bone* which was
 out, into its right place, and after this is done, you
 must raise him as gently as may be, and when he is up,
 let him bloud in the *breest-veine* on that side the grieffe
 lyeth putting a *patten-shooe* upon the contrary *foot*,
 and let his fore-feet be *trammel*ed fifteen dayes after
 at the least, to hinder him from lying downe, and
 charge the grieved *shoulder* dayly with a *restringent*
charge, and look upon the grieved member every two

or three dayes, by the space of fifteene daies; after that you have thus set the same, neither let him be removed out of his place during that time, and after swim him, and apply bathes unto the *shoulder* made of good hearbs, such as I have prescribed you in the Section of *bathes*, & lastly anoint him with this Vnguent:

Take oyle de Bay, the oyle de Petra, oyle de Spike, and Nervall, of each like much: and thus ordering him, he will be sound and well again. * * I have proved this upon sixe *horses*, and cured them all. Another.

If the *shoulder* be either strained or dislocated, it were very good to *swimme* him, then take *blond* from the *breast veine* on that side the griefe lyeth, then trimmell his *forefeet* that he do not lye down, & so let him remaine three weekes, then annoynt the *member* griev'd with Sallet oile onely, and the first time you shall take but of Sallet oile halfe a pound, which you must rub in against the haire very hard, both upon the *shoulder* and the *breast*, by the space of halfe an houre, the next day after you shall likewise rub and chafe the *shoulder* and *breast*, by the space of halfe an houre more, without applying any thing unto them, and so continue rubbing and chafing him for the space of eight or ten daies together; as for the Sallet oyle, you must take foure ounces thereof every third day, wherewith to chafe, rub, and annoynt the *shoulder*, and the other two daies betwixt, you must not rub and chafe it with any oyle at all, and at the end of eight or ten daies, his *shoulder* will be swelled down to the *very knec*, then take of the oile, and apply a restringent charge to the part griev'd and swelled, and adde to it

*Shoulders
strained.*

it of ordinary Turpentine halfe a pound, to cause the charge to remaine on the better, and the next day, and all other daies after instead of this *restringent charge*.

Take Vineger and bath the *shoulder* therewith upon the said charge, and by degrees the *haire* will fall away, & when the swelling is allwaged, send your *horse* in the beginning to the water, upon a *foot pace*, and he will be cured; this receipt certainly is very good, and not costly; but I did never make tryall thereof, albeit it was *highly* recommended unto mee by a famous *French Marisball*, who averred that he had recovered very many *horses* therewith, but for a *horse* that hath gotten a wrench or slip, the onely remedy is to put in a *French rowell*, and then to *blow* him, and put on a *Patten shooe*, and let his *keeper* turne the *rowell* every day once, as well to cause the putrefaction better to issue forth from growing to the *flesh*, and after twenty daies you may take it forth at your pleasure. * * This is good for a new *straine*.

SECT. 3. S.

Hippoph. **V**Were it not much better Hipposerus, that after you have thus rowelled and blowne him, and set a *Patten-shooe* upon the contrary foot, that he were turned forth to *grasse*, for that the horse keeping himselfe in continuall agitation and motion, as he feedeth in the pasture, the humour may the better descend, and so issue forth, whereby he may sooner be cured?

Hippof. Sir, I answer negatively to your assertion, for by his being abroad, the *winde* will take the wound, and cause him to swell, and thereby doe the *horse*
more

Shoulder
rowelled.

more harme then you are aware of: secondly I say, if when he is abroad there might happen to fall *raine*, that the place *rowelled* might take wet and cold, it might therby indanger a *Gangrene*, and therewith endanger the life of your *Horse*, for the like I my self have done; but having rowelled your *horse*, & that you be to blow him, if you use to take *Tobacco*, then forbear to blow him your selfe, but let some other who taketh not any, to blow him, for the very scent and steame of *Tobacco* will cause your *Horse* to swell both in the *shoulder*, and all along under his *belly*, even to the *sheath* and *stones* most violently, and the effect thereof I have very often seen. * * With rowelling I have cured very many *horses*, if the *straine* be newly taken, but if the *horse* have gotten hurt on his *shoulder*, that the *skin* be broken, then first cut away all the dead and bad *flesh* if there be any, then

Shoulder the
skin broken.

Take the white of an *egge*, and beat it, and lay it upon a few *Hurds* *plaister-wise*, but first wash the wound with a little *white Wine* made *bloud warme*, and then apply your *plaister* to the *forance*, and then annoint the *shoulder* round about the *forance* with *sweet Butter*: do this every day once, and it will be whole. * *. This I have often tried. Another:

Take your *lancet* or *fleame*, and make a little hole in the *skin* upon the pitch of the *shoulder*, and blow the place with a *quill*, that the *skin* may arise from the *flesh*, then

Take of *stale Vrine* two quarts, and boyle it to a *moyty*, then straine it, and put thereto of *sweet Butter*, and of *tryed Hogs grease*, of each halfe a pound, then take of *Mallows*, *Tansy*, *Vervine*, *red Nettles*, *Sothern-*

Sothernwood, and of the tender tops of broome, of each halfe a handfull, chop all these together, and boyle them in the Vrine till they be soft, and then first bath the *shoulder* with the decoction or Vrine, and and after annoint the *shoulder* with the hearbs, being first made into an Vnguent, using thus to doe every day once or twice till it be well; but during this cure, the *horse* must be kept within doores, and in a few daies he will goe sound againe. * *. This is very good, for I have often tryed it. Another.

If your *horse* have any grieve in his *shoulder*, first put into it a *French rowell*, and *blow* it, and put a *patten-shoe* upon the contrary *foot*, then apply this *charge* unto the place: take of Pitch and Rosin, of each one pound, and of Tarre halfe a pinte, melt them upon the fire, and before it be cold, *charge* the *shoulder* therewith, and clap Flaxe upon it, and let the *charge* lye on till it fall away of it selfe, and once a day turne the rowell for fifteen dayes together at least, then take out the rowell, and heale up the wound, (then if the season be fit for it) turne him to grasse with his *patten-shoe* on, and let him runne three or foure moneths, and he will goe upright againe. * *. This is very good. Another.

First swimme him, (as you may doe well to doe for any grieve in the *shoulder* or *hips*) and before you do rowell him, apply unto the grieved *member* this bath and unguent.

Take Pimpernell an arme-full, Bay berries, Primrose leaves, Camomil, Crow-foot, Mallowes, Fennell, Rosemary, and fine upland Hay (which was cut about Midsummer) of each like much, and of each a good quantity

quantity, put all these into a Lead or Cauldron, and there let it steep in faire water two daies and two nights, then boile it untill the hearbs be soft, and bath your *Horse* therewith every day once good and warme, and binde of these hearbs with the Hay to the *shoulder* or place grieved, in what place or joynt soever it be, use this bath foure daies, & at the expiration of foure daies, let him *blood* in the *breast*, on that side the grieffe lyeth, if the grieffe be in the *shoulder*, but if in the *knee* or *fetlocke-joynt*, then let him *bloud* in the *posterne veine*, and so likewise if the paine be behinde, and let him *bleed* well, but if you have not skill or knowledge enough to open any of these *veynes*, then pare the foot very close, and open the *toe veine*, and there let him bleed well; after this his foure daies bathing, when he is dry again, annoint the grieved *member* with this Vnguent.

Take Petroleum, Nervall, Patch or piece grease, and oyle of Wormes of each like much, and annoint herewith by the space of halfe an houre, and then for halfe an houre after, trot him in your hand in a faire soft ground, then bring him into the Stable, and observe if any of the said oinment be come forth, or doth sticke to his *hayre*, which if it doe, let it be rubbed and chafed in againe; also bath him morning and evening, and at noone annoint him, as before is advised, but at night onely binde or rope on the hearbs, & this is the cure. Use this but four daies only for feare of making his *joynts* too supple and weake, (and if this helpe not, as I do beleve it will) then *rowell* him; this I never tryed, but my opinion is that it is a very good receipt. Another.

If your horse be *shoulder-splat* then put upon him a *Shoulder* paire of *short pasterns* upon his *forefeet*, then take of *Di-splat.* *althea* one ounce, of *Sallet-oyle* one pint, of *oyle de Bay* halfe a pinte, of *fish Butter* halfe a pound, melt all these together in a *Pipkin*, and annoynt the grieved place round about (*viz.*) as well all over the *shoulder*, as the *breast*, and betwixt the *fore-legs*, upon and about the *brisket*, and in two or three houres after all the *shoulder* will be swelled, then with your *steame* strike the swelling in very many places, that the corruption may issue forth, and continue to annoynt him with the said oyntment; and if it gather to a head (as it is likely it will) when it is ripe enough, open it where you doe finde it to be softest, and then heale it up with your greene oyntment so often commended unto you, and thus your *horse* will goe sound again. * * This I have often tried, and let this suffice for this malady.

SECT. 4. S.

Hippoph. **Y**ou have delivered your selfe very well, but yet *Hippoferus* (but yet) I am to seeke to know and understand when I see a horse doth halt or com-
plaine, where the giese lieth, being a thing most needfull for a Gentleman to be very perfect in, but more especially for him that is a Ferrier, who is to cure and set upright the Horse that is lame.

Hippes. You speake pure truth Sir, and therefore I will give you such assured rudiments whereby you shall not at any time faile in the discovery of the least lameness that shall proffer it selfe to your eye, if you will

Rules how to know where a horse halts either before or behind.

will be pleased diligently to observe my documents; you must therefore first understand, that if he doe halt before, his griefe must of necessity be either in the *shoulder* or in the *knee*, or in the *shanke*, or in the *pasterne*, or in the *foot*; if it be in the *shoulder*, it must be either towards the *withers*, or in the pitch of the *shoulder*, or in the *elbow*; if in any of these places of the *shoulder*, you may know it, in that he will a little draw his *legge* after him, and not handle it so nimbly and dexteriously as he doth the other; if he cast his *legge* more outward then he doth the other, it is a manifest signe that he is lame, and that the griefe lieth in his *shoulder*, and for the better triall thereof, let your man but turne him short on either hand, and in that *shoulder* where the *lameness* is you shall perceive him to complaine, and to yield, for he will either favour that *legge*, or trip in the turning: you may also finde his *lameness* by his standing in the stable, for there he will hold forwards his lame *legge* more then the other, but yet you come not to understand in what part of the *shoulder* the griefe lieth; wherefore take for an infallible rule, that if he doe complaine more when a man is upon his *backe*, then otherwise, when he is from his back, then be confident that the griefe lieth in the *withers*, and gripe him hard, and you shall perceive him to shrink, and perhaps offer to bite; if the *horse* doe tread thicke and short before, then is the griefe upon the pitch of the *shoulder* close to the *breast*, which you may easily finde by setting your thumbe hard to the place, and by thrusting him with it as if you would have him to goe back, whereat he will shrink, and put back his *legge*, *foot*, and *body*; if the griefe

griefe be in the elbow, you shall discover it by pinching him with your *fore-finger* and *thumb*, good and hard upon that place, at the doing whereof you shall perceiue him to shrinke and hold up his *legge*, and to offer to bite; and these be all the griefes which doe lye in the *shoulders* of the *Horse*, which not being visible, you shall thus discover them, as touching those griefes which lie lower, they must be either in the *knee*, in the *shin*, in the *pasterne*, or in the *foote*. If it be in the *knee*, you shall finde it by his stiffe going, for he will not bend it so actively as he doth the other; if it be in the *shanke* or *shin-bone*, you may both see and feele the same, it being then a *backe sinew spraine*, splent, or some such like sorance or anoyance, so likewise if it be in the bending of the *knee*, then it is a *maler*, which is also most easily descryed; if it be in the *pasterne* or *joynt*, then may you know it by his not bending it so well as the other; besides if you put your hand upon the place, you shall finde it to be very hot, and to burne much: first if it be in the *foot*, it must then be either in the *cronet*, or in the *sole*; if in the *cronet*, it is then probable it came by some straine or wrench, if in the *heeel*, then it came by some overreach, or else by some disease in or about the *Frusto*; if in the *sole*, then it came by some pricke, accloy, retoire, cannel nayle, stub, stone, or gravell. And thus have I discovered unto you all the severall sorts which causeth a *Horse* to halt before, and how to know and distinguish the places grieved, together with the occasion of every particular griefe. It followeth that we discusse yet further the meanes how to distinguish an old griefe, from a new taken straine

When in the knee.

When in the shanke.

When in the pasterne.

or hurt, which without an exact scrutiny, cannot easily be discovered, for oft times a *horse* hath gotten a straine, for which he is presently turned to grasse, where peradventure he runs the whole Summer, and so by that meanes seemeth to goe upright, till he be heated and strained anew, and then will it appeare againe, howbeit upon his first riding it may not appeare: you have therefore three wayes whereby to finde out his lameness, in what *joynt, limb, or member* of the *body* soever it lyeth. 1. The first way is to take him out of the Stable, and to cause him to be turned at the halters end on either hand suddenly and swiftly upon as hard a way as you can picke out, and if he have any ache, wrench, or griefe in his *fore-parts*, it will appeare, for that when he shall turne upon that hand in which the griefe is, you shall perceiue him to favour that *legge*, and so likewise runne both towards you and from you, especially downe a little yeelding hill, and if he have any imperfection, he will soone shew it, for that he will favour that *legge* wherein the griefe resideth; but if you be not able to finde out his *lameness* this way. 2 Then your second way must be for you to take his *backe*, and to ride him out a good round trot or pace a full houre, or so long untill such time as you have throughly heat him, then set him up, and let him stand quiet two or three houres, and then either take his *backe* againe, or else turne him at the halters end as before, and by thus doing, you may discover the least griefe that may be in him, especially when you thus stirre him, if it be done upon stony or hard ground, for then he can neither will or choose, but either to favour the member

Three waies
to finde out
lameness.

grie-

grieved, or else to halt right downe. 3 A third way we have, and that is, to know whether the griefe doth proceed from a hot or cold cause, for if it proceed from a hot cause, then will the *Horse* halt most, when he is hot, and in the middest of his travell; but if it be of a cold cause, then will he halt least whilst he is hot and most ridden and travelled, and most at his first setting forth, whilst he is cold; and thus much for lameness and halting before.

Now you perceiving your *horse* to halt, and that you be assured that his lameness is not before, then may you be confident it must be behinde, which being so, the griefe must of necessity be either in the foote, or in the nether joynt, in the pasterne, or in the legge, in the hamme, or in the hough, in the stifling place, or joynt, or in the hip. If the griefe be either in the legge, pasterne, or foot, if you doe observe him well, you shall understand it by the very same signes which I have inculcated already in the legges, pasternes, or feet, for that the signes be the very same; if it be in the bending of the hamme, you may then easily know it to be a plaine Selander. If it be in the hough, then is it either a bone or blood-Spaven, which is easily enough to be discerned, or else it must come of some blow, wrench, or straine, neither then will the swelling easily appeare, but you shall perceive it either by the stiffness of the joynt, or else you shall finde the place to be hot and burning if the paine shall lye in the stifling place, it is manifestly discovered by his gate, for then you may perceive him in his going, to cast the stifle joynt outward, and you may plainly see the bone on the inside to be bigger then.

then the other, besides, his toe will hardly touch the ground. If it be in the Hip, which is upon the side of the buttocke, and if the hurt or wrench be newly taken, you shall easily know it, in that the *Horse* will goe side-long like a Ciab, not being able so well to follow with the grieved legge as he can doe with the other. Notwithstanding if it be a hurt taken long before, you shall perceiue the Hip to be false lower then the other, and the flesh to shrink, you may also perceiue it the better, as by going up a hill, or upon yeilding ground, by reason he cannot goe with so great ease, as when he goeth upon even or plaine ground. But the better to discover in what part behinde the grieffe lyeth, let his Keeper take him out of the Stable in a long raine or collar-halter, and let him runne him in his hand the full length of the reyne, for that in which legge soever the grieffe is, you shall perceiue him to fauour it, but if you finde him to goe upright, without fauouring any legge, then let your man take his backe, and ride him out a good trot or hand gallop, till he be warmed, then set him up, and let him stand an houre or two till he be cold, then take him forth againe, and let your man trot him in his hand at the end of the Reyne as he did before, and thus you shall perceiue him to halt and complaine, and well observing him and his gate or going, you may easily finde the place grieved. And if any lameness whether before or behinde, doe proceed from any hot cause, then you shall best know it, for that the more you travell or exercise him, and the warmer he is, the more he will halt. But if his grieffe shall proceed from any cold cause, then will he halt most, being cold.

cold after he hath been travelled and set up warme.

SECT. 5. S.

Hippoph. **Y**ou have spoken well of lameness in general terms, but yet would I gladly understand from you somewhat more in particular, as (V.G.) I would know how to distinguish between a pinch in the shoulder, and a wrench in the shoulder; as also betwixt a shoulder-splat, and of the shoulder pight, and so of the other members?

Hippof. In answer to this demand, I say that if you can be cautelous in observing duely and justly the postures and gestures of your horse, you may easily come to know in what member, joynt, or limbe the grieve lieth, and from whence it proceeds; for you must understand that when a horse is pinched in the shoulder, it must come either by carrying too heavy burdens, or by being put to draw, and be over-laboured too young, his joynts and limbs not being knit, and this you may easily finde, in that the horse will appeare to your eye to be very narrow brested, and to consume and waste in his flesh from those parts where grieve remaineth; and you may also perceive it, in that the shoulder bone will stick out further then the other, and thus you may finde it; but if he hath gotten a wrench in the shoulder, it comes commonly by means of some slip, or by causing him to make too sudder a stop upon false ground, or by some fall upon yielding or slippery ground, or by too short or sudder turning him upon false grounds, or upon the planks in a Stable, or by some rash going out of a doore, or other narrow place.

Shoulder
flat.

Shoulder
pight.

place, or by some stroke given by another *horse*, you shall know it (like as before I told you) by his not well lifting and handling his *legge* with that dexterity he doth the other, as also by taking him upon the pitch of the *shoulder bone*, and as touching a *shoulder splat*, which also commeth by a slide or slip, especially upon some side or yeilding ground, where one *legge* doth slide from the other, whereby he teareth the *flesh* which is in the inside neere the *brisket*, which causeth a *bauke* to be underneath the body, which will after be swelled, and the *horse* will thereupon halt right down, and he will draw his *legge* after him; but if he be *shoulder-pight*, this commeth by some brush, straine, or fall, which the *horse* receiveth by some *leap*, *skip*, *stroke*, or *bruise* against some doore, tree, or the like: infomuch that often times the joynt is dislocated, and this will also cause him to halt down-right: wherefore your cures for each of these mischiefs and mis-haps must be handled accordingly; and if the pain doe lie in any of the nether joynts, it commeth most commonly by means of some wrench, as by putting his *foot* into some cart-root of rough uneven ground, or by going upon loose stones, and many times by turning him too short in places that may be dangerous for his limbs, for by such like causes doe occurre lameness to a *horse*, which when it shall happen, you shall thus know them, and know also in what *joynt* or member the griefe hath it abode, and the manner of curing each of these severall griefes, I have already sufficiently shewed you, and therefore now let us passe to other matters.

SECT.

S E C T. 6. S.

Hippoph. **V**WELL then tell me what is good to cure the Scratches?

Hippof. Of this malady we have sundry sorts and degrees, unto which albeit we doe give severall names, neverthelesse they be all in effect but one and the same disease, as Mules, Kibes, Rats tayles, Crepanches, paines, &c. every of which are none other thing but the very *Scratches*, being certaine scabs which ingender betwixt the *heeles* and the *pasterne joynt*, and so goeth many times above the *pasterne*, even up to the *bough*, and albeit you may have this sorance sometimes upon all foure *legges*, yet not ordinary, for that it breedeth most commonly in the *hinder legges*, this is a noysome sorance, and comes sometimes through the negligence of the *Groome*, in that he doth not daily annoynt the *horse heeles* with store of *elbow grease*, (as we tearme it) especially after journeyes and hard travell; or when he brings his *horse* in from water, and then doth not rub his *legges* and *heelles* dry, for that the sand and durt doth burne and fret his *heelles*, which doe occasion swellings, and such like swellings doe occasion the *Scratches*. It is therefore requisite that the *Groome* doe clip away the long *shag haire* from about the *pasternes* (if he have any) and *setlocks*: as also from the inside of his *legs*, unto the bending of the *knee*, by meanes whereof he may the better keepe the *legges* of his *horse* from this disease; sometimes it also comes from the corruption of the *bloud* after great heats and surfeits taken; sometimes againe for

H h h h

that

that the *horse* hath beene bred in *marrish*, *fenny*, and *watery grounds*, sometimes it is ingendered from *melancholy humours* which doe fall down to the *legges*, and sometimes by standing continually upon his own *dung*, which will through the heat and steame thereof, breed the *Scratches* without other helpe, and sometimes againe, the *Scratches* will fall down into the heeles of the *horse*, and there make its way forth after a desperate sickenesse taken by a surfet; and lastly it comes by reason the *grease of the horse* had beene molten by over-riding or labour, whereby the *grease* falleth downe and resteth in the *pasterne* and *fetlocks*, and so causeth the *Scratches* to be ingendered. It be- ginneth first with a dry *scab*, and after it sendeth forth fretting, watriſh, and matterative stuffe, which will stinke and be most noysome, and his *pasternes* and *fetlocke joynts* will be full of *chaps* and *chinkes*, sometimes all along, sometimes right downe, and sometimes overthwart, and the places will swell, and the cracks or chinkes will cause the *legges* to be very *gourdy*, and to runne with much noysome and offensive matter, and the *horse* will be many times so lame, as not to be well able at first setting forth to goe, but with much trouble, and no lesse paine, and by these very signes you shall know this malady: neither shall you want store of receipts wherewith to cure it; the *French* doe call this disease *grappes*, *grapes*, and *lavars*, and *Ar-raistes*, as also such other like tearmes and epithetons, all which (as before is touched) makes but onely one and the same disease: the first thing which is to be done towards the cure, is to bathe and wash the places all about, and then either to shave or clip away

the hayre very close, otherwise you can hardly make a perfect cure thereof; then

Take the spawne of Toads, which in the begin- *Scratches.*
ning of March you shall finde in pooles, ponds, dit-
ches, and standing water; and first draine the water
from the said spawn, and then distill it, and keep the
water in a glasse close stopped to serve you for the
whole yeare, and herewith wash and bathe the pla-
ces every day warme, and in short space it will cure
them: this I have often used. Another:

Take Honey and Pepper made into very fine pow-
der, of each as much as will suffice, and boyle them
together and annoint the sorance therewith, and
they will soon heale and dry up; this I did never
try, but a famous *Ferrier* of *France* taught it me. Ano-
ther.

Take Lime and Salt, and make them both into fine
powder, which being well mixed, apply it to the pla-
ces grieved good and thicke, then take Hurds, and
cut them very small, and clap them upon it, and so
binde up the place with a linnen cloth, that it doth
not remove, and so let it remaine two whole dayes
and nights, and this will cause the sorance to purge,
and after heale it up very kindly: This I did never
try. Another:

Take Verdigrease and the fat of Bacon, and pound
them to a formall Salve, and so *plasterwise* apply it to
the sore, and it will heale up the *scratches* in short
time. This is very good. Another.

Take old Bores grease and common Honey, of each
as much as will suffice, and worke it to an Vnguent,
annoynt the sorance therewith, foure or five dayes,
H h h h 2 and

and no longer, and it will cure the Scratches. * * *
This is very good. Another.

Take Verdigrease in fine powder, Gals, Brimstone, and Bolearmoniacke, of each one ounce, make all into fine powder, and mixe them with Bores grease as much as will suffice, and so bring it to an Vnguent, and annoynt the sorance therewith, and this will both heale and dry them up. * * * This I have often tried. Another.

First cauterize five strakes on either side, and your iron must be somewhat broad, and you must goe but onely one crosse-wise, and after heale it up as it is usuall in your Cures of Cauterize. This I never did practise. Another.

Take Pepper, Garlicke, Cole-wort-leaves, and old Boares-grease, of each so much as will suffice, pound them together to an Vnguent, and herewith annoynt the Sorance, and in few dayes it will ripen the *Scratches*, and kill the mallice of the disease, and heale it up. * * * of this Receipt I have made often use, and it is good; you must not faile alwaies before you dresse any *horse* that hath the *Scratches*, first to wash and bathe the place well with warme water, and then to shave or clip away the *hayre* very close, also every time you are to dresse any *horse* of this malady, wash the place with Chamberly and greene Copperas boyled together, and after dresse him up with your other Salves, Unguent, &c. Another.

Take Hogs-grease and strong Mustard, and annoynt the Sorance therewith, and in short time he will be whole. * * * This is very good. Another.

Take first of white-Wine-Vineger one pint, and put

put unto it of the strongest *Tobacco* in the Rowle you can get one ounce, open the leaves, and shread the *Tobacco* small, and boyle it untill the Vineger doe begin to consume, then take it from the fire, and strain it, wringing it hard, then take white-Wine one pint, of Roach Allome the quantity of a Walnut, of Bay-salt, and of common Honey, of each one Spooonefull, red Sage, Rue, Hony-suckle-leaves, Yarrow, Plantaine, Rib-wort, Bramble-leaves, of each like much, halfe a handfull in the whole; boyle all these in the Wine till one quart be consumed, then straine this water also, and mixe them both together, and set it upon the fire till it begin to boile, then take it off, and when it is through cold, put it up into a glasse, and so keepe it close stopped, that no ayre come unto it, and when you would use it for the *Scratches*, wash the Sorance, and then put upon it the powder of burnt Allome; and this will cure the *Scratches*. * *. This I have often tryed, and it is singular good. Another.

Take Verdegrease and make it into fine powder, and then take common hony, and worke them together to an Vnguent, and therewith annoynt the sorance, and in short time it will infallibly cure him. * *. With this Receipt I have cured very many *Horses*. Another.

Take tryed Hogs-grease, and Gun-powder, of each so much as will suffice, first beat your Gun-powder to very fine powder, and incorporate them very well together, and annoynt the places grieved once a day therewith, and it will soone cure the *Scratches*. * *.

This is a speciall good receipt. Another.

Take Trayne oyle, white-lead, made into very fine powder,

powder, and the Jelly which you shall find upon the ground, which many doe report to be the falling of a Star in the night where it shooteth, of each like much, incorporate these well together, and annoynt the sore twice every day therewith, but if you cannot get of this Jelly then adde to the former ingredients a little Arsenick pulverised, and in ten or twelve dayes this will heale him. * *. This also is very good. Another.

Take the tender tops of Elder-buds, and the berries of the brambles while they be red, and before they be ripe, of each one handfull, boyle them in Wort two quarts, and put unto it of Allome the quantity of an Egge, and therewith wash and bathe the sorance good and hot twice every day, and this water will cure him. * *. This is also very good. Another.

Take of Hemlock a good quantity, shred it very small, then take of Creame one quart, and boyle it with the Hemlock till the Creame doe turne into an Oyle, which done take it from the fire, and straine it into a cleane galley-pot, and keepe it for your use with this annoynt the Sorance, and it will soon heale it. Of this I never had triall. Another.

Take Brimstone, and make it into fine powder, and mixe with it of sweet Butter, so much as will suffice, to bring it to an Unguent, which will be of the colour of Gold, herewith annoint the sores, and it will cure them. This I never tried. Another.

Take unslaked Lime, Salt, and Soot, of each like much, all made into very fine Powder; boyl this in the strongest white Wine-vinegar you can get, so much

as will suffice, till it become as thick as a Pultis; then soften it with tried Hogs-grease, and so work it to an Unguent, and herewith annoint the places grieved till they be perfectly cured. * * This is very good; but to prevent all sorts of Scratches, Kibes, Rat-tailes, &c. take up the *Thigh-veines*, and your *horse* shall never have any of these maladies, or if he have them, yet by so doing they wil of themselves be cured. * * This I have oft experienced.

SECT. 7. S.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you cure a Sit-fast?

Hippof. This malady the *French* doe call *Mal de la Corn*; it is a hard knob which hath been formerly a *Saddle-gald*, but by reason that the owner of the *horse* was unwilling to spare his work till it was fully cured; it is converted into a *Sit-fast*, which is oft times troublesome to the *horse*, by reason it is grown to a dry knob so hard as a horne. The cure is.

Take the greene outward leaves of a Cabbage, *Sit-fast.* and stampe them with old Boares-grease, or tried Hogs-grease, and worke them to an Oyntment; and then mount his *backe*, and then set the Saddle, to the end that the Oyntment may the better enter, or sinke into his *backe*, and in a few daies it will cure him. * * This is a very good cure.

SECT. 8. S.

Hippoph. **T**Here be yet certaine Scabbes which doe grow upon *horse-heeles*, which Ferriers doe deny.

deny to be the Scratches, but they will have it to be a disease wholly different. How doe you cure them?

Hippof. Sir, men may say what they shall please, but I doe assure you these are all plain *Scratches*. But yet I will give a few Receipts for them.

*Scabs and
Scratches.*

Take of Salet-oyle three ounces, Red-wax gummed one ounce, common Honey two ounces, mixe and melt all these together, and make them into an Unguent, with which you must oft annoynt the sores, and this will cure them. * * I have often used it. Another.

Take ordinary Turpentine two ounces, new Wax, oyle de Bay, quick-Brimstone, of each three ounces, common Honey one ounce, Allum and Zacacon, of each halfe an ounce; mixe, melt, and incorporate all these well together, and every evening annoynt the places grieved therewith, having first cleansed the Sores, as before is taught you. This I did never try, but I hold it to be very good. Another.

Take the strongest white Wine-Vinegar, Mustard, and Soot, of each so much as will suffice, and mixe them well, then adde to them the yolks of two Egges, and of Hogs-grease one ounce, Rape-oyle, and new Wax, of each two ounces, quick-Brimstone in fine Powder halfe an ounce; melt all these, and make them into an Unguent, and therewith annoynt the grieved Sores. * * This I have often tried, and I know it to be very good.

SECT

SECT. 9. S.

Hippoph. **W**Hat is good for a horse that can neither stale nor dung?

Hippof. This accident oftimes hapneth to a horse that is suddenly travelled, being newly taken from Grass, or hath been long time kept and pampered in the Stable without any exercise at all, for as those who be too hard Riders doe soon surfeit their horses, so likewise do these much wrong their horses who be too indulgent and tender of them; and therefore the golden mean is evermore the best. The signe to know this malady is plain, for that his paine will be so great as that it will cause him oft to lie down and tumble, as if he had the Bots. I will give you one onely Receipt which a famous French Marisshal gave me, with which I cured one horse, for that I had never occasion to practise it upon any since, but I doe hold it to be most soveraigne in a case of this nature.

Take the root of *Male-Brake* or *Fearne*, and put a piece thereof upon his tongue, and it will cause him both to stale and dung, and so he will be cured. The male of *Fearne* is to be known by the root, from the female, for if you take a *Fearne-root*, and cut it in two pieces, you shall see the perfect figure of an Eagle, and thereby you may know it to be the male, which is for your turne. And the female root will beare other effigies different from the male, which wanteth its vertue to perfect this cure. * * This (I say) I have once tried.

SECT. 10. 8.

Hippoph. **V**hat is to be done to a Horse that falleth sicke in his journey or travell?

Hippof. This also hapneth as the former doth, but yet oftner and sooner, especially if he be very fat and pursive, and wanting *breath*, as also if he be travelled being fat and heavy, the Sunne shining and scorching much, for such a *horse* is in danger either to tire, or to fall desperately sicke, which may also endanger his life, as I have frequently known. The cure must be,

Sicke in travell.

Take Muskadine or sweet Sacke one pinte, Aqua vita a quarter of a pinte, of London-Treacle two ounces, and of the best Sallet-oyle a quarter of a pinte: warme all these upon the fire, and brew it well, and give him one hornfull thereof; then take his *tongue* in your *hand*, and put down his *throat* a new laid Egge, breaking it with your fingers as you put it forth of your hand: then give him a second hornfull, and then another Egge, and after all the residue of the drink, and so after that a third Egge; then let him *bloud* in the *palat*, and rub it well with white Salt, then set him upon the *Trench*, cloath, stop, and litter him again warme, and let him fast an houre or two after it, and then feed him by degrees both with Hay and Oates, giving him either a sweet Mash or white Water, and he will doe well againe. This drink refresheth all the *spirits*, being over-laid through heat and labour, and causeth a good appetite to meat. * * With this drinke I have cured many sicke *horses*, as well of mine own, as of my friends, which have fallen away very

very desperately sick upon the way in travell; but if I doe finde that his *bloud* is inflamed, as many times it will be, I then use to open a *veine* in the neck.

SECT. II. S.

Hippoph. **B**ut what is given to a Horse that falleth suddenly sick?

Hippof. First let him bleed in both *breast veines*, or if you have no skill sufficient to open these *veines*, then let him bleed in both sides the *necke*, and let him bleed well nigh two quarts, then give him this comfortable drinke.

Take of sweet Sacke one quart, and burne it with *Sudden sick-*
Graines, Cloves, and Cinamon, of each like much, be-*nesse.*
ing all beaten grosse, put to it of Sugar three ounces, and when it is burnt adde unto it of Sallet Oyle halfe a pinte, and of London Treacle two ounces; warme all these, and brew them well together, and so give it to your Horse bloud-warme, then ride him gently untill he doe begin to sweate, and so fet him up warme clothed and littered, but be sure to keepe his head and heart warme, neither must you stusse and cloath him too hot, for this drinke will cause him to sweate sufficiently of it selfe, yet litter him well, keeping the Stable close, and so let him fast six houres after, against which time let him be rubbed very dry, and give him to eate sweet Wheat straw, and after give him either a sweet Mash or white Water, and boyle therein of Mallows and Water-creesses, of each one handfull, of Fennell-seed, and of Parsley-seed, of each one ounce, if he will drinke the same. After that morning and evening

evening (your horse being fasting) ride him a mile or two, to the end he may take the ayre, which is very wholesome for him, if the weather be temperate, and let his meat be sweet straw, old clean dry Oates, and some Wheat, and Pease mixed therewith: give him a little at once, and often, untill you doe perceive his stomacke to come well unto him, and let him be daily well rubbed, and warme clothed, to provoke him to sweat, and let him be also well littered, and his drink either sweet Mashes, or white water; and by this manner of keeping and ordering of him, in short time he will recover his pristine sanity * * This I have often tried, and it is very good.

SECT. 12. S.

Hippoph. **W**hat cure have you for a Selender?

Hippof. This disease is the very same with the *Malander*, but the sole difference is, in that the *malander* breedeth upon the bending of the *knee*, or the *legge* before, and the *Selender* engendreth of the bending of the *hough* in the *legge* behinde: but it commeth just as doth the *malander*, and the cure is the very same with it: but yet I will give you one good receipt which will cure both: First wash and shave away the *haire*, and rub the sorance with a wisp or haire-cloth till it be raw, then take the shreds of white Leather untanned, which *Glovers* doe make, and boyle them in Vinegar till they be soft, and binde of this hot to the place; but if you doe not finde that by once or twice dressing, it taketh not away the scurf or scab, renew it daily untill it doth, for by this means

Selender.

means the roots of the bristly haire which groweth in and about the sorance, is the onely thing that feedeth the *Malander*, wherefore the roots of the *hayre* being taken off (which this medicine will doe) the sorance will soon be cured; and to heale up the rawnesse thereof.

Take fresh or sweet Butter, bay Salt, and Frankincense, both made into fine powder, of each as much as will suffice, and boyle them all together on the fire, and with a rag upon a sticke apply this medicine to the place scalding hot two mornings together, and after heale it up, and cause the *hayre* to come againe, being daily annoynted with Mallowes and sweet Butter made into an Unguent. * * This is a very good cure.

SECT. 13. S.

Hippoph. **VV** *Hat is to be given to a horse sicke, surfeited, and his grease molten?*

Hippof. The onely way is first to take *bloud* from him, *Sick or sur-* if there be just cause, and after to scowre his guts with *fettered.* this purge.

Take Cassia one ounce, Filonio-perfico, and Trifor magna, of each halfe an ounce, sirrop of Violets two ounces, dissolve these in mel Rosarum foure ounces, and give it him with a horne in a morning fasting, and after either ride him gently, or else walke him up and down an houre or better, and for an houre after at the least let him stand upon the Trench; then give him a sweet Mash, which when he hath dispatched, give him old dry Oats clean and well sifted, and after
sweet

sweet Hay, neither let him have any cold water in eight daies after, nor after that time, but with exercise. * * And this is a speciall good cure.

SECT. 14. 8.

Hippoph. **N**ow let us come to the sinews, what say you to a sinew-spraine?

Hippof. I have already handled this point sufficiently in *lib. 2. cap. 4. Sect. 9. A.* for an Attaint upper, nevertheless I will give you more receipts for a *sinew-spraine*, albeit it be the same malady; the first shall be for a *sinew sprung*, or when the *sinew* is broken, and severed from the *flesh*, as many times it falleth out, then

Sinew sprung

Take Tartar, and the lees of Claret or red Wine, of each three ounces, Wheat-bran one handfull, boyle these with the juyce of Smalladge, two handfuls or better, and when you take it from the fire, put into it of Turpentine one ounce, binde this to the *sinew* grieved, so hot as he may well suffer it, and using this medicine foure or five daies, he will be found againe. * * This is very good. Another. If the *sinew* or *artery* be broken with Corrasives, or other accident, to cause it to soder or joyn again,

Take the leaves and roots of *Solomons seate*, and of great Cumfrey, of each like much, pound them small, and infuse it in white Wine four and twenty houres, bathe the sorance herewith warm (you having first boyled it) and after you have bathed the place well, binde the hearbs and roots to the place grieved, dressing him every day once, untill he be perfectly consolidated. And if the *flesh* be still broken, when you doe

doe finde the *sinew* to be knit, strew thereon the powder of Lime and Honey, which will heale and skin it in short time. * * This is good, for I have often tried it. Another for a *sinew* grieved.

If the *sinew* be so far grieved, whereby to cause the *horse* to complain, and to halt, *Sinew grie- v'd.*

Take then of Mallows a good quantity, boyle them in faire water untill they shall become tender, then draine the water from the hearbs, and so stampe them to mash, and apply them to the *member* grieved hot over night, and the next morning he will be upright again, but then he must have eight or ten daies rest at the least after. But if it be a *sinew spraine*, then clip away the haire close, or shave it, then

Take of the Oyle of Sulphur, and of the Oyle of Turpentine, of each one ounce, take first the one halfe thereof being well mixed, and chafe and rub it into the *sinew* well, and so let him be tied up to the Rack, that he may not come unto it with his mouth, for that it will greatly perplex him for four or five houres after his dressing; and the next day annoint him, as you did the day before, and he will be cured, but the place will be raw, and therefore heale him up with sweet Butter or Hogs grease, and when the place healeth the skinne will peelee, and yet the *haire* will come again, but he must either run at grasse, or else be kept in the Stable without any exercise at all, by the space of a moneth at least. If the *sinew* be cut, then

Take new Wax, and Gumme-Arabick, of each two *Sinew cut.* ounces, of the marrow of an Oxe or Cow, four ounces, of the oyle of Roses three ounces, melt and incorporate all these on the fire, and so keepe it for your use, and

and when you are to use it, warme it, and so apply it either Unguent wise, or raint wise, according as you shall see cause, and it will cure any sorance of this nature. ** This I have often tried. Another.

If your *horse* have a *sinew* *sprained* by an over-reach, stroke, or otherwise weakned, the better to strengthen the same,

Sinew sprain

Take tried Hogs greafe, Horse greafe, May or fresh Butter, Sallet oyle, of each six ounces; take also of the oyntment called Agrippa, two drams, or new Waxe two ounces and a halfe, and of Camphier a third part to all the rest, melt them all together upon the fire, and so work it to an Unguent, and good and warm annoynt the swelled or grieved part therewith morning and evening, and what remaineth of this medicine, let it be reserved in a galley-pot for other times, for it will keepe a whole yeere. ** This is very good. Another, if it be a *sinew* *spraine* onely, then

Take Goats, Kids, or Deeres suet, and Rosin, of each one pound, Fig dust halfe a pound, Verdigrease in fine powder, halfe a pound, melt and mixe all these well, and therewith annoynt the *sinew* grieved every day, and chafe it into the *sinew* by holding a hot barre of iron neere it. This will both comfort and strengthen the *sinew*, but I did never make tryall thereof.

SECT. 15. S.

Hippoph. **B**ut Hippoferus, is it needfull that by applying your Unguents, you doe evermore worke them in with a hot bar of iron?

Hippof.

Hippof. Truly Sir, those that are for Straines, Aches, Mainges, Farcins, and such like maladies, and sorances, the further they doe sinke into the *skin* and *flesh*, the sooner and better will the cure be performed, and therefore albeit I doe not alwayes put you in minde of the hot bar of iron in every of my *receits*, yet it is needfull to be used. But to proceed with another receipt for a *sinew spraine*.

Take ordinary Sope, and Aqua vitæ, of each as *Sinew sprain* much as will suffice, boyle them, and in the boyling, keep it by continuall stirring, then take it off, and (so hot as he can well suffer it) bath and chafe in the oyntment, and he will be found againe. This was commended unto me for most soveraigne, but I never made tryall thereof. Another for a *straine* taken in travell.

Take so much of the best gray Sope as will serve to annoynt the *sinew* strained, but before you doe annoynt him, having caused his legge to be cleansed from dirt, sand, or gravell, and made dry againe, annoynt him therewith, and then swathe the legge with a thumband of Hay, and so let him stand all night, and the next morning he will be found againe, so that you may securely travell him againe, without feare. * * *. This I have often used, and it is very good. Another if it be a *straine* newly taken.

Take then of the strongest white Wine Vineger *Straine newly taken.* you can get, one pinte, and May or fresh Butter halfe an ounce, then put to it of Wheat bran as much as will suffice, which by boyling will bring it to a Poultesse, and apply it so hot as he can suffer it; doe this morning and evening, untill the swelling be asswaged

ged. * *. This is very good. Another, but if it be an old taken straine, then

Take Mallows and Chickweed, of each like much, boyle them either in the grounds of Ale or Beere, or else in old Chamberlye, and apply it to the place. * *. This is a speciall good cure. Another for an old *straine* which is thought to be incurable, in somuch as the *straine* being swelled, is become very hard and knotty.

Straine old.

Take Patch-grease, *alias* Peere or Peece-grease, as much as will suffice, melt it upon the fire, and annoynt the *straine* therewith very hot, and chafe and heat it very well, then rope the place as before is shewed you, but before you rope him up, wrap a rowler of linnen upon the place, and doe thus daily, and it will dissolve the hardnesse, and make him sound againe. * *. This is most excellent. Another for a *spraine* of the same nature.

Take Nervall, Bolearmoniacke, Bores grease, blacke Sope, of each like much, melt them together, but first pulverize your Bolearmoniack, and annoynt the so-
rance herewith, chafing and heating in very well; continue thus to doe twice a day till it be well. * *. This is also very soveraign.

SECT. 16. S.

Hippoph. **VV**hat is good for a Horse that hath a stinking Breath?

Hippof. This commeth by meanes of corrupted and infected *lungs*, the signes how to know it is by the smell onely, the cure is,

*Sinking
breath.*

Take Cinamon, Cloves, Galingall, Comine and Co-riander

riander seeds, of each three ounces, Fenugricke eight ounces, make all these into fine powder, and searce and mixe them well with Wheat flowre two pound, and put thereto so much white Wine as will bring it to a stiffe paste, and make a cake thereof and bake it in an Oven till it be as dry and as hard as *bisket*, and when it is cold, beat it to fine powder, and give him every morning an houre at least before his water, of this powder foure Spoonfuls in white Wine or strong Ale, of each one pinte. This will take away all the corrupt and evill favours of his breath, for this powder healeth all his inward parts that he putrifieth, from whence his bad breath taketh its origen. * * * This is very good and approved, and a better remedy you shall finde none.

SECT. 17.S.

Hippoph. **V**V *What is the best way to cure or take off a Splent?*

Hippof. This is to be done many wayes, but because we are come to treat of this cure, I hold it not amisse to make you understand what a *splent* is, by what meanes it commeth, how to know it, and which way to cure the same, and to take it cleane away. A *splent* is in the beginning, a very *gristle*, howbeit if it be long let alone, it will come to be a hard *bone* or *excretion*, and then it will not be so easily cured. It commeth to a *Horse* by meanes of too hard travell and sore riding, whilst he is very young, or by bearing in his youth too heavy burthens, by both which meanes the greafe being molten, falleth downe into his *legges*,
 K k k k 2 and

and so breedeth this sorance, you shall have it bigger or lesser, according as the cause of its comming was, it taketh its residence for the most part upon the inside of the *shanke* about the middle therof, but sometimes again higher even adjoyning to the *knee*, which if it be there, then it is more difficile to cure. It will many times cause the *Horse* to halt, but howsoever it will make him oft to *stumble*, and to *trip*, and many times to *fall* in his travell. Sometimes it commeth to a *horse* hereditarily, like as doth the *spaven*, and other sorances and maladies: as if either the *Stalion* or *Mare* be visited therewith, as I have formerly intimated. The signes how to know it are most facile, *viz.* either by the *sight* or *feeling*, for that you may both *see* and *feele* its swelling. Now to the cure, for which I shall give you very many receipts.

First wash the place with warm water, and shave away the *bayre*, then with your *incision knife* slit a hole cleane through the *skin*, more then the length of a Barly corne, and then convey into the said hole so much *Arsnicke* as the fourth part of a halle Nut, which must be bound on with a boulster and rowler of linnen, and made fast with a needle and threed, and so let remaine untouched three whole daies & nights, in which time the *Arsnicke*, will eate and corrode cleane away the *splent*, then to kill the fire, annoint the place (having first taken off the rowler and boulster, and washed cleane the sorance) with sweet or fresh Butter molten, eight or ten daies after, and it will be whole. * *. With this I have done very many cures of this kinde. Anothe:

First, annoint the place with ordinary soft washing
Sope

Sope, then tye a red woollen cloth about the *legga* just upon the *splent*, that done, heat a Brick glowing hot, and lay it upon the cloth against the place where the *splent* is, and hold it so close unto it a pretty space, then so soone as you do take that away, have another as hot in readinesse, and clap that too also, doing as before, and so a third, or so many as shall be needfull, till you doe finde that the *splent* is dissolved and taken away, which commonly will be in applying two or three hot Bricks. * * With this I have taken off very many *splents*. Another :

First wash and shave away the *hayre*, then *knocke, rub,* and *pricke* it with your *bloud staffe* and *fleame*, and after you have so done, rub and knock it again, then

Take Vervine and Salt of each one handfull, pound them together to an Vnguent, and apply it to the place, and binde it up with a rowler stitched on fast with a needle and threed, and so let it remaine foure and twenty houres, and then unbinde it, and it is cured without any more to doe. * * This is very good. Another :

Wash and shave as before, and rub and knock as before also, then with your incision knife lay open the place a little, then knocke and rubbe againe with a little Salt, then apply unto it this ointment which the *French* do tearme a *Retoyre*.

Take of oyle de bay foure ounces, Cantharides, Euforbium, and orpin, of each one ounce, all these being made into fine powder, let them be well incorporate into the said oyle, and wrought to an Vnguent, lay of this to the *splent*, and bind it up with a Bowlder and Rowler, and sew it up fast, and let him stand

so by the space of three houres upon the Trench, so tyed up that he bite not off the rowler & Medicine: at three hours end unrowle the place, and put unto it againe the said Retore or Ointment, being made warme and let the *Horse* stand tramelled foure daies, and at foure daies end send him to the water a *foot pace*, where every day he must be ridden up and downe, to the *belly*: If you doe love the *horse*, and have a desire to have him perfectly cured, let him not be ridden more then a *foote pace* to the water in a *moneth* after, for indangering the growing of it againe, for nothing can be more soveraign for him then rest. * * *. This *Retore* is a speciall good thing for this Malady, and I have often used it, and it did never faile me. I had this in *France* of a famous *Marishall* who cured many *horses* therewith in my presence. Another.

After you have washed and shaven, knocked, rubbed, and laid it open, as before is taught you, take a head of *Garlicke*, picked and pilled, three or foure drops of the best white *Wine Vineger*, a penny weight of greene *Copperas*, all well beaten together, apply it to the *splent*, and then bind and stich it up, and let it lye on foure and twenty houres, then open it, and if the *splent* be not taken quite away, make more of the same *Medicine*, and administer it againe, binding it up as before, and after other foure and twenty houres take of the *medicine*, and then you shall need do nothing more unto him, but onely what you are prescribed in the precedent cure. This I did never try. Another. First burne away the *haire* with a hot *tyle*, then shave it close with your *Rasor*, that done have in a readinesse a peece of *Leather*, the breadth of the *Sorance*

rance and bind it hard upon it, and let it so remaine by the space of an houre, then take him off, and lead him to the water, without doing any more unto him, and he is cured. This cure I never tryed. Another.

Take Mustard seed, and beat it, & let it steep a little in faire water, and after make a Plaister thereof, and lay it to the place, and three daies after take it away, but have a care your *horse* come not unto it with his teeth, the *haire* also being shaven away before you do apply your Plaister, and this will cure him. This also I never proved. Another. First wash and shave away the *hayre*, then take of the tender tops of Wormewood, Smalage, Pellitory, and of *Brauca-ursina*, of each like much, and beat them together with old Bores-grease, so much as will suffice, and apply it to the place: neither did I try this. Another. First wash and shave as before, and knocke, beat, and rub the *splent* three or foure times, then take marsh mallow rootes boyled with the *skin* on, and laid to the place, and it will take away the *splent*: This I never made use of, but a very good *Ferrier* taught it me, who avowed it to be right good. Another.

Take Mustard-seed, Mallow roots, and Oxe dung, all stamped and boyled together, and plaister-wise apply it to the place three or foure times. This I never used. Another.

Take Auripigmentum made into fine powder, and lay it upon the *splent*, and it will take it off; but beware that this powder doe touch neither *veine* nor *sinew*, for it is a very corroding thing, * *. Another.

Take two heads of Garlicke and pill them, and cut them

them small, but do neither stampe nor bruise them: then take of Salt the like quantity, and mixe them with your Garlicke, and divide them into two equall parts, and so put them into two fine linnen cloutes, and bind them upon the ends of two sticks, of a foote in length a peece of the fashion of two short wooden *foyles* but nothing so long, being not above twelve inches a peece. Take then your bloud sticke, and rub, knock, and beat, the *Splent* therewith very well to soften it, then prick it, through the *skin* with your *bloud staffe* and *Fleame*; then take of the oile of Nuts one pint, and put it into a small Pipkin, and set it upon the fire in a Chasingdish with coles, and make it boyling hot, and when it is ready to boyle, put into it your short sticks or *foyles* which hath the Garlicke and Salt fastned unto them, and first with the *foyle*, and then with the other (I meane by turnes) apply them hot to the *Splent*, and betweene whiles, rub and stroke the *Splent* downwards, with your thumbe, whereby to bring forth the *bloud*, till having with the *foyles* very well mollified the said *Splent*, you may the more easily crush forth the *bloud* whereof the *Splent* is ingenerated, and formed; it being indeed compact of bad and corrupt *bloud*: and thus is the *Splent* cured, onely you must remember to annoint the place two or three times after with sweet or fresh Butter, * *. This of all the cures I have is the best, for this Malady, howbeit it may seeme intricate; I gate it of a *French Rider* to a *Noble Knight in England*, and I have herewith taken off more then one hundred *Splents*, I have used this more then thirty yeares since. Another.

Take

Take up the contrary *Legge*, and beat the *splent* with your *bloud-staffe* till it doe begin to be soft, then with your *Fleame* prick it in sundry places that the *bloud* may issue forth. Take then the greatest red Onion, and cut off the top, and picke out the core, and put into it so much of the powder of *Verdegreafe* as the end of your *thumbe*, then put on the top again, and wrap it up in a wet browne paper, and so rost it in the hot embers, as you doe a *Warden*, till it be as soft as pap, then take it out of the *Embers*, and put away the paper and all that is burnt from about it, and stamp it, and being yet very hot apply it unto the *Splent*, and lay a *Bowlster* upon it, and then swathe it up with a linnen *Rowler*, stitching it fast, and so let it remaine five or sixe dayes, and then open it, and after annoint the place every day once, with sweet Butter till it be whole. * *. This is a very good cure. Another.

Take a great Onion, and pick out the core, and put into it of the powder of *unslaked Lime*, and of the powder of *Verdegreafe*, of each as much as will suffice, but so much as will fill it up, then rost it, as before is shewed you, and stamp it in a mortar well, then slit the *skinne* a little, that the medicine may come unto it, to eat away the *splent*, and shave not away the *hayre*, but lay on the medicine and bouldster, and bind it up fast, and so let it remaine on three daies, without stirring it, then unbind it and wash it cleane, and annoint it every day with sweet Butter till it be whole. * *. This is very good. Another.

Take an *Elecampane* root, and make it cleane, and wrap it up in a brown paper, and rost it in the *embers*

as you did the *Onions*, and being soft like pap, apply it to the *splent*, you having first rubbed, knocked, and prickt it as before is taught you, the *bayre* also being washed and shaven off, it must be laid on so hot as he is able to suffer it, and let it lye on two daies and two nights, then take off that, and lay on a second, and after a third, til the *splent* be quite consumed, and then annoint the place with fresh butter onely every day till it be whole. * * This is speciall good. Another.

Take of the oile of Exeter, & taking every day once or twice a little thereof upon the brawne of your thumbe, rub and annoint the place therewith, and thus doing, it will take it quite away, but this will aske long time to doe. * * This have I tryed. Thus have I given you very many *receipts* for this malady, most of which I know to be good from my owne experience: the residue which I never tryed, were cryed up unto me by very skilfull *Ferriers* and *Marishals*, for very good. The *French* do call this malady *Surots*, and *Epineles*, or *Espinuls*.

SECT. 18. S.

Hippoph. **VV**hat helpe have you for *stumbling*?
Hippof. This inconvenience commeth many waies, sometimes it cometh *naturally*, and sometimes *accidentally*, it commeth *naturally* by reason the *sinewes* of the *fore-legges* are somewhat straight, so that the *horse* is not able to handle his *legs* with that dexterity and agility he should, and the onely remedy to cure him of this defect is, to cut him of the *Cords* (as we terme it) *viz.* by cutting a slit up-
 on.

on the very top of his *nose*, and with you *cornet* to take up the two great *sinewes* which you shall there finde, and so cut them in sunder, and after to heale it up againe with some healing Salve, and this will doe him no harme, but good, for by this doing, it will give him the use of his *legges* so perfectly, as that he will seldome or never after *trip* any more, and this can every ordinary Smith doe. * * And my counsell is, that when at any time you shall either breed or buy a yong *horse*, before, or presently after you shall *backe* him, let him be thus cut of the *cords*, and you shall finde great profit thereby. The second cause that maketh a *horse* to *stumble*, is *accidentall*, and this cometh either by meanes of the putting forth of a *splent* or a *ridge bone*, or about *wind gals*, or by some detriment taken in the *foote*, as by being hot, foundred, prickt, stubd, graveld, or the like, or by some *sinew spraine*, or some hurt or wrench in the *shoulder*, or by some pinch in the *withers*; and it cometh also by over-riding, and then negligently set up, which causeth him to goe *stiffe*, and then the cure must be done with *bathes* and *unguents*, whereby to stretch, supple, mollifie, and to comfort the *stiffe members*, for remedy and ease whereof, I have given you very many good *receipts* before prescribed you, as well of *bathes* as of *unguents*. But yet I will give you one more which I have often made use of, and have done much good therewith for *stiffe legges*, *viz.*

Take of Hogs-grease one pound, of fresh Butter, *Stiffe legges.*
 Altheæ, and of oile de Bay, of each halfe a pound, mix
 and incorporate all these together, and therewith
 annoint, rub, and chafe the *legges* and *sinewes* of the
 horse

horse, every third day three times a day, and let his shooes be made wide enough, especially at the heels, and let him be pared thin; the *sineps* being well suppled, it is needfull he be also out of the cords, which will prevent his *stumbling* the better. *Stumbling* cometh also by meanes of carrying heavy *burdens*, and when the rider is a man of an extraordinary weight, especially if the horse be young. * * This is a very good cure.

SECT. 19. S.

Hippoph. **VV** *What is to be given to a Horse that cannot Stale or Pisse?*

Hippof. This infirmity cometh either of the *collick*, or by meanes of too much hard riding: the cure is,

Take Grummel seed, Saxafrage-feed, and the roots, of each halfe an ounce, make them into fine Powder, boyle them a walm or two in white Wine one quart, and give it him warm. * * This is very good. Another.

Stale or pissc.

Take the tops of greene Broome, and burn a good quantity of them, so as you may have so many of the *ashes* as will come to be a pretty handfull, searce them, and put them into white Wine a pinte, and after it hath infused an houre, give him the Wine, but not the *ashes*. * * This is very good. Another.

Take black buds of the Ashen tree, and burn them, then take the ashes cleansed, and as before is shewed you of the Broome *ashes*, and administer it to the horse just as you did the other. * * This is a most approved cure.

SECT. 20.S.

Hippoph. **W**hat good cure have you for the Stavers ?
 Hippos. This disease is *secundum vulgus*, called the *Staggers*, but the true name thereof is the *Stavers*, it is a dizziness in the *head*, neerly allyed unto the *frenzy* when it seizeth the *braine*. It is ingendred sometimes of corrupt *bloud*, and heavy and bad *humours*, which doe intoxicate and oppresse the *braine*. It is a disease incident to almost every *horse*, yea and that most dangerous if it be not soone espied. Sometimes it commeth by feeding and grazing, at what time the *Horse* is hard ridden, that he be hot and sweateth, for by his feeding and holding downe his head so low as to graze upon the ground, the *peccant humours* doe fall downe to the *head*, and there settle, and in short time seizeth the *braine*, which bringeth this mortall disease. Sometimes it commeth by what was occasioned by hard and over-violent riding, whereby the whole *body* became distempered, and the *bloud* inflamed and putrified: and sometimes it commeth by eating over-much, for thereby is the *stomacke* so overcharged with meat, as not to be able to digest and convert it all as it ought into good *bloud* and nutriment, and therefore must necessarily breed evill *humours*, which attaching the *head* and *braine*, it is in conclusion the cause of this disease. The symptomes whereby to discover it, is, in that his *sight* will faile him, and he will hardly be able to see a white Wall, he will flaver at the *mouth*, and his *eyes* will be swelled, and runne with much water and other filth, and his

Of melancholy.

Corrupt bloud.

his gate will be reeling and staggering, he will oft lye downe and beate his *head* against the planks, floore, and walles, and when he is laid, his *body* will quiver and shake, and he will forsake his meat; and these be most certaine signes which I have ever observed to be in *horses* oppressed and exercised with this infirmity.

But now to come to the cure : I will give you first a cure which a *French Marisball* taught me, which by reason it sounded to be so much improbable, I would never make tryall thereof, but such as it is you shall have it. Fasten unto the end of a sticke a linnen ragge, and annoynt it well with Barbary Sope, and put it up into his *nose* gently, and by degrees, and so draw it out againe as treatably. Another.

If you doe perceive your *horse* in his travell to fall sicke suddenly of the *Stavers*, and that you be in such a place, where for the present you can get no helpe, then thrust up the greater end of your riding rod into either *nostrill* good and hard, causing him thereby to bleed well, and this will preserve him for the time, till you come where you may meet with better remedy : then take a piece of Wheaten leaven, bay Salt, Rue, Aqua vitæ, and strong white Wine Vineger, of each as much as will suffice, bray all these in a stone mortar very well, then put this medicine into two thin fine linnen clothes or rags, by equall portions, and then moisten it well in the liquor, and so convey those clouts into either of his *eares* one, and then stitch them up close, that he get not the medicine forth, but that the substance thereof may be diffused into his *head*, and let the medicine remaine so foure and twenty houres, then take forth the rags, and this will make him

him a sound and whole *horse*. * *. But before you apply this medicine to his *ears*, runne him through the *gristle* of the *nose* with a long *iron Bodkin*, and the next day after let him *bloud* in the *necke* and *mouth*, and then give him this drinke, which will keep off the *Yellowes* for comming too fast upon him; then take Turmericke, Mirrha, Ivory, or Harts-horne, of each one ounce, of Saffaron one penny worth, pound all these by themselves to very fine powder, then take Seladine a good handfull, stamp it and straine it, and put the juyce thereof to the other ingredients, then put unto it of Muskadine or sweet Sack, one pinte, or for want thereof, of strong Ale one quart, adding unto it of London Treacle one ounce; set these upon the fire, and let it boyle one walme or two, and in the taking off, put unto it of sweet Butter the quantity of an Egge, and so having well brewed the same, give it him *bloud* warme, and for three or foure dayes, give him either sweet Mashs, or white water. * *. This is very good. Another.

First take *bloud* from him in the *necke* and *mouth*, and let him chew and swallow downe his own *bloud*, being most wholesome for him; and whilst he is thus *bleeding*, thrust an iron Bodkin through the *gristle* of his *nose*, *skin* and all, then

Take Asa-fetida, the quantity of a hasle nut, and dissolve it into a sawcer full of white Wine Vineger, then take Lint or fine Flax, and dip it into the liquor, and so stop both your *Horse ears* therewith, and so stitch them up, and at the end of foure and twenty houres, unstitch them, and he is cured. * *. This is very good. Another.

First

First let him *bloud* in both the *weeping veynes*, and in the *month*, then

Take of bitter Almonds one ounce and a halfe, of the gall of an Oxe two drams, of black Ellebore made into fine powder, a halfe penny worth, of Graynes, Castoreum, Vineger, and of Varnish, of each five drams, boyle all these together, untill the Vineger be all consumed, then straine it, and put it into his *eares*, and doe as before. * * This is very good. Another. Bloudy him as before, then with your incision knife, make a slit downe his *forehead* an inch long and better, and with your *cornet* loosen the *skin* round about, but most toward the *foretop*, then put into the place the root of a red great Dock, cut thin, and let it remaine there fourteene or fifteen dayes, and once in two dayes at furmost, crush out the mattrative stufte, and then take forth the Dock roots, and heale up the place with your healing Salve, and give him during these fourteene dayes, white water onely, and he will doe well. * * This I assure you is very good. Another Bloudy, &c. Then take Aqua-vitæ, and Garlicke, of each so much as will suffice, stamp them together, and convey it into his *eares* doing *ut supra*, * *. This is singular good. Another. Let him bleed well in the *necke* and *mouth* (for the abundance of bad *bloud* is the cause of this disease) then with your *Incision knife* slit the *forehead* of the *Horse*, and with your *Cornet* raise the *skin* especially upwards, and put in three or foure *cloves* of *Garlicke* pilled, and put upon it a little lint or fine Flax to keepe away the *Wind* (for that is dangerous) and then give the *Orifice* a *stitch* to keepe in the Medicine the better. Then.

Take

Take the seeds of Cresses, of Poppy, of Smallage, of Parsly, of Dill (I say the seeds onely of these hearbs) and take also pepper, and Saffron, of each two drammes, make them all into fine powder, and put unto them of Barley water two quarts, as it commeth boyling from the fire, and let it infuse therein three houres, and then straine it, and give him one quart thereof, if it may be in the morning fasting bloud-warme, and walke him up and downe an houre and better, and then set him up warme, and give him Hay sprinkled with water, and the next day give him the other quart fasting, and then doe as before, neit her let him drinke any cold water in foure or five dayes after, but onely white water, unlesse sometimes a sweet Mash: And thus doing he will be cured. * * This is a most excellent Receipt, and I have often used it.

SECT. 21. S.

Hippoph. **W**hat remedy have you for a Horse that hath Swelled-Legges?

Hippof. This Malady of swelled or Gourdy-Legs cometh est-soones by long standing in the Stable, when as the upper parts of the planks at his fore-feete, are much higher then that at the hinder feete, as I have before observed in *lib. 1. cap. 4.* for by that meanes the Horse not standing even, and therefore not at his ease, the bloud setleth in the hinder-legges, which causeth them to swell. Sometimes they doe come by reason the Horse being hard ridden, was brought into the Stable too hot, and carelesly set up, who taking cold, the bloud, grease, and humours doe fall downe into the

M m m m

Legges,

Legges, and so cause them to *swell*. Sometimes it cometh by over-riding, whereby the *Horse* hath his *bloud* stirred, and his *grease* melted, which falleth downe, and resteth in the *hinder-Legges*, causing them to *swell*. Sometimes by being ridden and gallopping upon hard wayes in the Heates, and by that meanes the *bloud* and *grease* falleth downe into his *Legges*, congealeth there, whereby they doe become *gouty* and *gourdy*. And sometimes *gourdy-legges* cometh by sicke-nesse and sursets taken, which after remedy had, yet the *feces* or *dregges* thereof still remaining in the *body* of the *horse*, falleth downe, and causeth the *legges* to *swell*, as I have frequently seene. And these be the prime causes and reasons which we have observed for this Malady. The signes your eye doth demonstrate, and you may without teaching point to it with your *finger*, and therefore we may say nothing thereof. Wherefore now we will to the cure. If the *swelling* come by ordinary meanes, then take up the *high-veines*, and then you need doe no more, for that alone will cure him, and after open the *heebe veines*, and lay a *Retoyre* to the *Legges*, or else give him the *fire* which will siccate and dry up the bad *humours*, which must be given gently, and lightly, neither would I have you give him the *fire*, unlessse you might thinke or find it in your judgement to be very requisite. But my meaning is not that this remedy of the *fire* be applyed, but onely to an old grieffe, otherwise not at all, * * *. This is good. But if besides his *swelled-Legges*, they also be stiffe, comming to him after much labour and travell; therefore

Take of Violet-leaves, Primrose-leaves, and Strawberry-

berry-leaves, of each a handfull, boyle all these in new Milke till they become very soft, and then take it from the fire, and put to it of the Oyle of *Nervall*, of *Petroleum*, and of *Pamphilion*, of each one ounce, and so stirre all together untill it becommeth bloudwarne, and therewith chafe, rub and annoynt the *Legs*, *Nerves*, *Sinews*, and *Joynts*, holding a hot barre of Iron neere to the place, to cause the Unguent to sinke the better in: Annoynt him thus with this Unguent five or six daies together, and it will help him. * * This I have often used. Another.

Take *Traine-oyle*, and warme it upon the *fire*, and therewith bathe his *legges* morning and evening, and in short time he will be well. * * This is very good; also to ride your *horse* into the water morning and evening up to the *belly* doth take away the swelling of his *legs*. * * This is marvellous good.

SECT. 22. S.

Hippoph. **VV**hat is good to asswage the swelling of the Cods in a Horse? Another.

Hippof. This malady commeth many waies, to wit, by violent riding and heats, when there was not sufficient care had of him, but was neglected in the setting up; also it commeth by washing, walking, and cold taken after immoderate labour, and sometimes by feeding intemperately upon Provender, and sometimes by feeding upon unwholsome meat. The signes to know it, are, his *stomacke* may be peradventure good to his meate, but yet it will doe him little good, for he will be alwaies meagre and leane, his

haire will stare, neither will he cast his coate at usuall times like as other *horses* doe, he will lose his mettle, and become very *lunt*, and his *eyes* will runne with water and matter, and his *stones* will swell; in a word, he will be out of *joynt*, that is, out of good temper throughout every part and member of his *body*. Other causes there be of this malady, whereof I have intreated before in *lib. 2. cap. 6. sect. 2. let. C.* to which place I doe referre you; neverthelesse I will give you a Receipt or two which I have often used, and doe know them to be right good.

Smelled coals.

Take Turmerick and long Pepper, of each a penny-worth, Anniseeds, and Fenugrick, of each halfe a penny-worth, sweet Butter so much as will suffice, boyle all these (being first powdred) in Ale three pints, till one pint be consumed, and then take it from the fire, and strain it, and dissolve it in London Treacle one ounce, and so well brewed, give it your *horse* bloudwarne; let him have this drinke sundry times, and let otherwise his drink be white water, and sometimes a sweet Mash till he be well, * *. This is very good. Another.

Take of the best Tarre two spoonfuls, Life-honey one spoonfull, Black-sope the quantity of a Nutmeg, Diapente one ounce, and of Bay-salt two spoonfuls, mixe all these well together, and convey it into two or three Egge-shells, the tops being so opened as that you may but get forth the meat; then fill up the shells with this medicine, and so put them down his *throat* in a morning fasting, and give him presently after two or three hornfuls of Ale or Beere, to send down the medicine the better, but the surplussage of what remaineth.

maineth of the Medicine, let it be spread upon the roose of his *mouth*, do thus every morning for eight daies together, and when he hath taken his medicine, let him be ridden gently an houre or two, and then set him up warme cloathed and littered, and set him upon the Trench three houres, and let his drinke be white water, and sometimes a sweet Mash, both then and for sometime after. * *. This is also very good.

S E C T. 23. S.

Hippoph. **H**ow do you take off a Spongy-Wart?

Hippof. A Spongy-Wart, is that very thing which our Ferriers call an *Anberry*, which is a kind of *Wen*, which swelleth sometimes to a great bignesse, sometimes againe it will be but small, but then commonly they are many, and doe grow into *clusters*; this commeth by meanes of *peccant humours* caused of bad *bloud*, and that *Horse* that is inclined to *Warts* will seldome be ever free of them, for take them off in one place, and he will put forth more in other parts of his *body*, but to breed of either *Horse* or *Mare* inclined to them, I will dissuade you; for most commonly he will put them forth about the *eyes*, yea, and oft-times so neere to the *eye* it selfe as to endanger the *sight* thereof; They be easily knowne by reason they be so apparently seen, and therefore need no further description. The cure is, It were good first to purge him, and to take *bloud* from the *Master-veine* which you doe finde doth most feed them, as well to divert as to stop the malice of that bad *humour* which doth occasion

Spongy-wart

occasion

occasion the malady. If the *Wart* or *Anberry* be farre enough extant from the *skinne*, then tie two of his strongest *haynes* taken from his *taile* hard about the sorance so fast as you possibly can, & so as that it may not loosen, and in few daies it will fret and eate it clean off, which done, strew upon it the Powder of verdegrease to kill it at the root, and after heale it up again with your green Salve. But if you cannot come to tie it either with haire or thred, then either with your Incision-knife cut it away close to the *skin*, or else burn it off with an hot Iron, and then first kill the fire with Turpentine and Hogs grease molten together, and after heale it up, as before is prescribed you.

* * This is very good.

SECT 23. S.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to be applied to a Horse that is Surbated?

Hippof. Two waies a *horse* doth surbate; the first is when a *horse* is newly backt and weighed, upon his first shooing, and when the owner of the *horse* will not have patience with him, but will presently journey him upon hard and stony waies, his *hoofes* and *feet* being yer but tender to what they will be afterwards, and so the *horse* must needs surbate. The second way is, when a *horse* hath of himselfe bad *feet*, and is also either ill shod, or else his *shoes* be very thinne worne, or that they be too narrow or too short, and that he be ridden upon bad, hard, stony, and rough waies; in such like cases your *horse* will surbate; you shall finde it by the handling of his *feet*, especially the next day

day after a long journey, by reason he will not stand still long upon his *feet* without hitching them up, and removing them, for they will be so sore as that he will not know how or where to place them; and you shall also perceive him to be *subated*, by reason that after a journey he will lie much, standing being painfull unto him; and in his lying you shall see him covet to lie and stretch himselfe all along upon one side, and if you feele the *coffins* of his *hoofes*, you shall finde them to burn very hot, and his *hoofes* to be very dry. The cure is very facile.

Take two new layd Egges, and after you have well picked his *fore-feet* break them raw into the *soles*, and then stop them up with Oxe or Cow-dung, and he will be well by the next morning. This is an approved good cure.

Subated
feet.

SECT. 24.S.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you cure a Horse that is stified?
Hippof. This mischief commeth accidentally, to wit, either by a *straine* in leaping, or by a slip in travell, or by the stroke of some other *horse*, and thus the *bone* is either out of its place, or else the joynt is very much strained or hurt. The signes to know it is, if the *bone* be out, you may see it plainly, for besides his halting, the bone dislocated wil so stick out, as that the *horse* can doe no more then touch the ground with his *toe*, till it be put in again; and the way to put it in is thus: First tie down his head to the manger, then take a cord and fasten it to the *pasterne* of the *stified legge*, and draw his *legge* forwards,

Stified.

and

and so the bone will come right by helping it with your hand, which being in, your care then must be to keep it in with your *hand*, and then tie the other end of the cord to the Rack, so as he may not put backe his *legge* to dislocate the *bone* any more for an houre or two after till it be settled and dressed. Wherefore let his *Keeper* stand by him all the time, lest the *horse* should lie down, or be unruly. This done, take pitch which you must have molten in a pot, in a readinesse, and with a clout upon a sticke annoint the stifling three or four inches broad at the least, and ten inches long, and presently before the Pitch can coole have a strong piece of new Canvas cut fit for that purpose, which being made very warme by a fire, clap it upon the place so neatly, that the bone cannot goe forth againe. This Plaiher must not lie towards the *flanke* and *foot* longst-waies, but crosse-waies upon the *joynt*, as it were about the *thigh*, otherwise it cannot hold in the *bone*. Having thus done, annoint the Plaister on the outside all over with the said molten Pitch, and whilst it is warme clap flockes of the *horses* colour all over the outside of the Canvas, and let the Plaister remain on untill it fall away of it selfe, and after that you may apply such good Unguents as you may think to be most expedient for the malady. But if the *bone* be not out, then put in a *French Rowell* a little beneath the stifling place, and let the *Rowell* remain in fiftene daies, turning it once every day, and at fifteen daies end take it forth, and heale up the *orifice*, like as before you have been taught. * * This is speciall good.

SECT. 25. S.

Hippoph. **V** *What remedy may be had for a Horse that is troubled with the Stone?*

Hippof. This is a very troublesome disease, and it commeth of grosse and bad *humours*, gotten principally by violent exercise, and intemperate riding, and it commeth from the *Liver* and *Spleene*, which falling downe into the *kidneyes* and *bladder*, setleth there, whereby there groweth in the *mouth* of the *conduct* certaine inflamed hard knots which stoppeth his *urine*, whereby he is not able to *pisse*, but with great difficulty, by reason the *sinewes* and the *pores* about the necke of the *bladder* are benumbed, which taketh away the sense and feeling of the *bladder*. And sometimes this infirmity commeth by reason that in his travell, the *horse* is kept so long in agitation, as not to suffer him to *stale* and *pisse*, for the water being made hot by exercise, doth conglutinate, and becommeth viscous and thicke, so as it cannot passe away from him, as nature requireth it should doe, whereby there is made too great a retention of the *Vrine*, by meanes of the obstructions he hath in his *kidneyes*, which engendreth gravell, sometimes red, and sometimes grey, which falling downe into the *conducts*, ingendreth *phlegmaticke* and *grosse humours*, which occasioneth conglutination, and so becommeth to be the *stone*, waxing so hard, and thereby stopping the current of his *water*, so as he will not be able to *pisse* or *stale*. And you may come easily to know it, by reason that he can neither draw his *yard*, nor *pisse*, but with great

paine and difficulty in his sheath, and that many times drop by drop.

Stone.

The cure is, take Saxafrage, Nettle-roots, Parsley-roots, Fennell-roots, Sperage-roots, and of Dodder, of each one handfull, bruise all these things, and boyle them on a gentle fire with white Wine, untill a third part be consumed, then put unto it of Salt one handfull, of Sallet oyle, and of the Lard of a Goat, of each three ounces, Honey halfe a pound; when all this is boyled, straine it, and wring it very hard, and of this give your *Horse* one pinte every morning fasting, made bloud warme, and if in the boyling or by standing, it happen to become thicke, dissolve it againe with white Wine, and after the first boyling it must be but onely warmed. And give to him this drinke every morning so long as it will last. * * *. This is very good, for I have often tried it. Another as good as the former.

Take of strong Ale one quart, and put it into a pottle pot, then take so many of the reddest Radish roots, cleane washed and sliced into small pieces as will fill up the pot, then stop up the pot so close, as that the *ayre* cannot get in, and let it remaine foure and twenty houres, then straine the roots from the Ale very hard into some other cleane pot, and so give it him in a morning fasting with a *horne*, then ride him a while upon it, and so set him up warme, covered and well littered, and in a little while you shall see him *pisse*, give him this drinke sundry mornings together, and during this cure, let him have but onely white water to drinke. * * *. This is speciall good.

SECRET.

SECT. 26. S.

Hippoph. **V**V *What cure have you for a String-halt?*
Hippof. This is a malady which for the most part the best metled *horses* be many times troubled with; it commeth meerly of cold, as by taking cold suddenly after hard riding, especially when by being washed, for the *bloud* and *sinewes* being by that meanes stupified and benumbed, is the cause of the disease by reason the sense and feeling of the *member* is taken from him; you may easily know it by the manner of the unsightly lifting, and sudden snatching up of his *legge* much higher then the other, and it commonly commeth into the *hinder legge*, rather then into the *fore-legge*. The cure is, first to take up the *veine* in the thigh, and after to annoynt all the *legge* and the *thigh* from the *body* downe unto the very *foot* a long time together, one holding a red hot Barre of iron neere to the place, and let him be annoynted with this oyntment.

Stringhalt.

Take of the oyle of Petroleum, of the oyle of Wormes, of the oyle of Nervall, of Patch or Piece grease, of the oyle of Spike, of each one ounce, of *London* Treacle two ounces, and of Hogs grease one pound, melt all these upon the fire, and then take it off, and keep it with continuall stirring till it be thorough cold, and with this annoynt the visited member every day once, and then wispe him up with a soft thumb band of Hay from the *pasterne* to the top of the *hoofe*, and thus doe for ten dayes together, rubbing and chafing in the oyntment very well a long

time together, holding (as before I have advised) a hot barre of iron neere to it, to cause this Vnguent the better to sinke into the *sinewes*, *nerves*, and *joynts*. But after you have done annoynting him, you must keep him warme and well littered, and let the thumb band be daily made lesfer and lesfer, and shorter and shorter, till you perceiue him to handle both *legges* alike, and your *Horse* to be recovered; but you must not ride him that he may sweat much in a *moneth* after, and so soone as warme weather commeth, turne him to grasse into some dry pasture where is water, and take him up againe about *Bartholomew* Tide, or before the cold commeth, and whilst he doth remaine in the Stable, keepe him warme, and so he will be free of his *String-halt*, and be a sound *horse* againe. To annoynt him also with *Acopum* is very good. * *. Thus I have recovered sundry *horses* of this malady.

SECT. 27. S.

Hippoph. **V** *What is the nature of Suppositories?*
 Hippof. The nature of *Suppositories* are to helpe a *horse* that cannot well empty himselfe; for a *Suppository* causeth him to discharge himselfe of many superfluous and evill *humours* which doe disturb, annoy, and distemper his *body* with their *pec-cant qualities* and conditions, for they breed bad *nutriment*, which oft times good dyet cannot amend, and therefore must be sent away by *purgation*, that is to say, by *Suppository*, or *Clyster*, or *Potion*; I have spoken already sufficiently, and therefore I will now in-treat of *Suppositories* onely, which of all other wayes is
 the

the gentlest, wherewith to *purge* and *cleanse* the *guts* : for a *Suppository* is but a preparative to a *Clistor* or *Potion*, whereby to loosen the *guts*, which may be bound and clogged with dry, hot, and hard *excrements*, which a *Suppository* rather than a *Clistor* can loosen ; and as I have already given you receipts for *Clistors*, so now will I give you for *Suppositories*, whereof you may make use according as occasion and necessity shall require.

Take a great Candle of foure in the pound, and cut off three inches at the smaller end, and then annoynt the bigger and longer part either with Sallet oyle, or fresh or sweet Butter, and so convey it into his *fundament*, then with your hand hold his *taile* to his *tuell* a good half houre, or else tye his *taile* with a *strap* to his girt or *Suringle*, by which time the *Suppository* will be dissolved, then let loose his *taile*, & then presently leap his *backe* and trot him up and downe till he doe begin to *empty* and *purge* himselfe, for by this meanes it will worke the better and more kindly. * * This is the most gentle of all *Suppositories* can be given. * * This dissolveth all hard, dry, and hot *excrements*, and sendeth them forth, and besides it suppleth the *guts*. Another; If you doe finde your *horse* to be so exceeding weake, as that you dare not without perill of his *life*, administer unto him any *Potion* or *purging medicine*, then give him this *Suppository*.

Take of common Honey sixe ounces, of Salt-Niter one ounce and a halfe, of Wheate flowre, and of Anniseeds in fine powder, of each one ounce, boyle all these to a stiffe thicknesse, and so make it into *suppositories*, then take one of them and annoynt it all over with Sallet oyle, and your hand also, and so put it up into.

into his *fundament* the length of your hand, then tye his *taile* betwixt his *legges*, as before is shewed, and let it remaine so halfe an houre, by which time the *suppository* will be dissolved, then ride and order him as before. * * This is also very good, especially in case of *sursets* or inward *sickenesse*. Another.

3 *Suppository*. Take a piece of *Castle-Sope*, and paring it bring it into the fashion of a *Suppository*, and apply it, and order him as before is taught you. * *

This is speciall good to purge *phlegme*, and it is very gentle. Another.

4 *Suppository*. Take *Saven*, so much as will suffice, and stamp it to mash, and stamp with it *Stavefaker* and *Salt*, of each two ounces, boyle these in common *Honey* so much as will suffice, till it be thicke, and so make it up into *Suppositories*, and administer one of them, like as you are before shewed, and order him so likewise. * * This purgeth *Choler*. Another.

5 *Suppository*. Take an angry red *Onion* and pill it, and jagge it crosse wayes with your knife, and so administer it, and order him as before. * * This purgeth *Melancholy*. Another.

6 *Suppository*. Take common-honey one pint, and boyle it till it be thicke, and make it up into *Suppositories* as it cooleth, and administer it, and order him as before is prescribed you. * * This purgeth evill *humours*, it cooleth and comforteth the *body* very much, and causeth a good appetite to meate. All these I have often used, and I doe know them to be very good. But you must take with you some instructions fit to be known, which are; First, when at any time you doe administer either *Suppositories*, *Clysters*, *Potions*, you must doe
it

it in a morning fasting unless necessity urge the contrary: Secondly, you must not at those times suffer him to drinke any cold water, no not with exercise, but either sweet Mashes, or white water. Thirdly, it is very needfull that before you shall administer either *Suppository*, *Clyster*, or *Potion*, that the *Horse* be raked. And fourthly, that he be after kept warme.

2

3

4

S E C T. 28. S.

Hippoph. **V**What benefit commeth to a Horse by Sweating?

Hippof. Truly Sir very much, for by moderate and judicious giving of *sweats*, as well in his cloathes in the Stable, as abroad in his exercise, you may cure him of many Maladies, & prevent many infirmities which otherwise might accrew unto him. For *Sweating* doth open the *pores*, and sendeth forth those peccant and malignant humours which doe annoy, oppresse, and vexe him. But as touching this manner of *sweating* by you proposed, it hath relation unto what I have already handled in *lib. 2. cap. 2.* where I intreating of what is to be done to a *Horse*, newly taken from grass, I there tooke occasion to advise *sweating*, and there I referred you to this place, and therefore I will here illustrate it. Wherefore if you be in the way of *ensaying your Horse* having already purged, bloodied and cleansed him, and prepared his body fit for *sweating* (if need shall require) Then if the weather be faite and warme, ride him a mile upon his trot, and then home againe, then presently litter him very well, and cloath him up so warme as that he may *sweate*, but not yet so violent-

Sweating.

violent-

violently as to stirre the *humours* in his *body* too much, neither let him sweat above an *houre*, and then coole him again by degrees, and that with great care and moderation; and thus ride and sweat him for three daies together; then for six daies together keepe him warm, but not to sweat any more, and during the time of his sweating, and six or eight daies after, let him have no cold drink, but white Water, & sometimes a sweet Mash. And thus briefly of sweating.* * This manner of giving sweats I have often used, with great commodity to the horse. But let us passe on to another Chapter.



CHAP. XIX.

SECT. I. T.

Hippophilus.



What cure have you for a Horse whose Tongue is hurt?

Hippof. This malady commeth by accident, as with a Bit, Halter, or the like.

Take therefore of Arman halfe an ounce, and rost it in the embers till it be red hot, then take it up and beate it to very fine Powder: then take of Life-honey a Sawcerfull, and of white Wine one pint, mixe and steepe these with the Powder together, and so let it boyle over the fire, stirring it continually; then take it off, and let it coole,

coole, and so wash his *tongue* therewith morning and evening, or as you shall please til it be whole. * * This is very good. Another.

Take the juyce of Salendine, and wash the *hurr-tongue* therewith nine daies together, and it will cure it, albeit it be halfe cut in sunder, for the juyce of Salendine will conglutinate and fodder the *tongue* together being cut or wounded. * * This also is very good.

SECT. 2. T.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you help a horse that hath an Itch in his Tayle?

Hippof. This commeth of ranknesse of *bloud*, and therefore it is requisite that first he be let *bloud* in the *Tayle*, and that he *bleed* well. After,

Take Buck-lye, and with a Ragge or Hurds in the *Tayle* as itch
Lye wash the place infected every day often, or as many times as it shall be dry, and continue thus doing four or five daies, and this will cure it. * * This is very good. Another. But if the *hayre* doe fall away with the *Mainge* or *Itch*, then slit the skin from within two inches of the *Tuell* to the fourth *joynt*, and with your *Cornet* take out a certaine *bone* or *gristle*, which the *French* doe call *Barivole*, then fill up the clift with Salt made into fine Powder, and with a hot Iron burn the *tayle* in sundry places, & wash it with Buck-lie, as before; but your Lye must be made very strong. This cure I never practised, but I once saw a *Marishall* of *Paris* dresse, and so cured a *horse* in this manner of this malady, of whom I had the cure.

SECT. 3. T.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you make your Unguentum Theriacum?

Hippof. This *Unguentum Theriacum* is most soveraigne for any ache in any of the joynts; it is also specciall good for horses that doe fall lame, if the grieffe be in the Hip, Stifling-place, legs, shoulders, pasterne, or any other part of the legs, a black-sinew-sprain onely excepted. And thus I doe make it.

*Theriacum
Unguentum.*

Take of Nervell, of Oyle of Pamphilion, and of black Sope, of each two ounces, and of tried Hogs-grease halfe a pound, melt all these upon a gentle fire, and being molten put into it of ordinary Treacle two penny-worth, then take it from the fire, then with a Splatter or Spoon, keepe it by continuall stirring till it be through cold, then will it be of a dun-colour; keepe this in a Gally-pot for your use; and when you shall have occasion to use the same, annoint the place grieved therewith, rubbing and chafing it in very well, and let one hold a barre of hot Iron neer, as you doe annoynt the grieffe. And thus it is made.

* * This is most excellent to raise the veine from the sinew at what time you are to take up the veine. I have tried it *sape & sapins*.

SECT. 4. T.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you destroy a Tetter?

Hippof. This malady or sorance the French doe call *Vervolant*, the Flying-worme, which

isa Tetter or Ring-worme, and the cure is this.

Take the roots of Elecampane, and the rootes of ^{Tetter or} red-Dock, of each like much, slice them thinne, and ^{Ring-worme} put them into urine three quarts with Bay-salt, two handfulls, let it boile untill one quart be consumed, then take it off, and with a clout fastned to a sticke wash the Sorance very hot. Use this foure or five mornings together, and it will kill it. * * This is very good.

SECT 5. T.

Hippoph. **V**What is to be done to a horse that tyreth in travell, and falleth sicke?

Hippof. For a Horse to tire upon the way, the causes are many: First, for that he is travelled when he shall be too young; Secondly in that he is lately taken from grasse whilst he is yet foule and foggy, before he be well *ensaimed*; thirdly, in that he hath beene long kept and pampered in the Stable, without giving him breath or moderate exercise; Fourthly, by being travelled beyond his strength in longer journeyes, and deeper waies then he is well able to performe; Fifthly, it might be through the covetousnesse or carelessnesse of his *rider*, in not feeding or seeing him fed so well as was fitting; Sixtly and lastly, by reason the Horse might have some secret infirmity whereof his *master* might be ignorant. Wherefore if your Horse may happen in his travell to *tire* or *faint*, have patience with him, and do not force him beyond what he may be able to performe, either by spurring or beating him, like as many *cholericke* and *passionate* people do usu-

ally, but get to some house or Inne so soone as conveniently you may, when first you see him begin to sinke or to faint under you, set him presently up warm clothed, and well littered, that he take no cold, and let his Keeper or the *Ostler* of the *Inne* rub & chafe him all over with fresh dry straw, but especially let him rub him against the *hayre*, and let him have no meat till two houres or more after you have given him this drink.

Take of the best sweet Sacke one pinte, but if that cannot be had, then take the same quantity of White or Claret Wine, and put thereto of Cinamon, Ginger, Nutmegs, Graines, Cloves, Anniseeds, and Fennell-seeds, of each one ounce, all made into fine powder: then take red Sage, Rosemary-tops, Mints, Camomill, and wild Thyme, of each like much, so that in all they amount to halfe a handfull, chop the Hearbs very small, and then put all these hearbs and Spices into the Wine, and then boyle them a pretty while, then take it from the fire, and straine it hard, and unbit your *horse*, and give him this drink bloud warme; this done, Bit him up againe, and with a switch stir him up and downe as he standeth in his place tyed to the Rack, then coole him, and two houres after his drink, give him first some Hay, and halfe an hour after that, give him either a sweet Mash, or white water, and after feed him at your pleasure, but be you considerate in giving him his Provender by little at once and often, and howsoever feed him well, and thus ordering him, by morning he will be well recovered, and able to travell againe. * * This is an excellent drink, and of great vertue for any *Horse*, that *tyreth* or falleth sicke upon the way. It is also very

Tying in
travell.

ry requisite that with a Syringe you do inject of this drinke into his *nostrils*. Another. If you doe feare that your *horse* may tire in his journey, for prevention, carry with you a boxe of powder of dryed Elecampane roots, and let the powder be also searced, and when you do come unto your Inne, let him not be walked, but set up warme in the Stable clothed and littered, his *legges, body, head, and necke*, be by the *Groome* or *Ostler* well rubbed, but chiefly his *Poll* betwixt his *eaes*. Then take of strong Ale one quart, or of sweet Sacke one pinte, which is much better, and put into it of your Elecampane halfe an ounce, brew them well together, and give it him with a horne, then bridle him, and tie him to the Racke, but not too high, so as he may put downe his *nose*, and let him stand so an hour, then unbridle him, and give him Hay, and an houre or better after that, give him either a sweet Mash or white water, and then Provender sufficient but with discretion and by degrees, and so also in the morning, give him both Oates and Bread, whether he will eate best, feeding him by little and little so long as he will eate, and in the morning when you are ready to take his *backe*, give him the same drinke againe, and you shall finde him to travell with *spirit* and *mettle*, and if you tye a branch of Penny-royall upon his Bit, it will greatly comfort him. But yet for all that which hath been said, if he happen to tire, then

Take Arsmart, and rub his *bare back* where the Saddle resteth, and lay also some of the leaves upon his backe under the Saddle, and so clap on the Saddle, and this will cause him the better to hold out. * *
This is good. Another.

Take

Take the best Spanish Tobacco you can get, shred it small, and dry it, and make it into fine powder, and mixe therewith the powder of Cockle shels of the like quantity, which must be searced, and put this powder into a glasse, keeping it close stopped, and so keep it to your use. And when you are to use it, take of this powder, and mix therewith of the oile of Dill, and of the oile of Cloves such a quantity as will make this powder into a stiffe paste, and so make it into *pils*, every Pill the bignesse of a Walnut, which must be dried in the shade (these Pills must be made in Canicular or Dogges daies onely) then keep them close stopped in some glasse or gally pot, that no aire can get into it, and when you have cause to use any of them, give him one of them at what time you shall perceive your *horse* to faint or tire, or that you doe perceive him to have taken a cold or surfet, which may very well be the cause of his debility, give him (I say) one of these *Pils* when you do come unto your Inne. But if he hath taken a cold or surfet, then give him a *Pill* in the morning fasting, and let him be well rubbed, clothed warme, and well littered, and suffer him not to drinke any cold water, but either a sweet Mash or white water, for there is not any thing more noxious then to give a *horse* in this case cold water, and let his travell be moderate and with great discretion, and he will both hold out his journey, and get strength and flesh also in his travell. * * And this I have often tryed both upon my own *horses* & others, in whose company I have travelled, as well in *England* as in parts abroad.



CHAP. XX.

SECT. I. V.

Hippophilus.

Now do you prescribe a Vomit to a Horse?

Hippof. Of this I have spoken a little already, where I did remit you to this place. We doe usually give vomits unto *horses* newly taken up from *grasse*, by

reason they are thereby full of very grosse phlegmaticke humours, which doe abound in the stomacke, and head, which if they be not fetched from the *horse* in its due time, will be meanes to impaire greatly the health of the *horse*, which must be oft times necessarily expelled by vomit, and you shall have a receipt of a vomit which I had in *France* from a speciall Ferrier there, who (as I have before touched) hath in my presence administred to sundry *horses*, which did worke very kindly upon them, and I my selfe have administred the same to sundry *Horses*, here in *England*, to very great profit unto them. The receipt is this.

Take two of the greatest roots of Polipodium you can get from the Oake, wash and serape them very cleane, and tye it to his Snaffle, Trench, or Bit, then let it be steeped in the oile of Spike a whole night, and in the morning fast-

Vomiting

ing

ing put on his bridle with the said roots, and ride him with it in his mouth an houre or better faire and softly, and if he be troubled with any rhumaticke or phlegmaticke humour, or with any cold or filthy matter, which may any way pester, clogge, or annoy his stomacke; this thing will force him to vent them at his mouth and nose, and it will cause him to cough and neeze, where he will send forth a great abundance of filth and evill slimy stufte from off his stomacke and head, as that in short time he will become very cleane in his body, for this will both refine his bloud, and exhaust all his watry humours, in such sort as by temperate ordering him, & doing as I have here prescribed you, you may be confident to keep him a long sound, perfect, & serviceable *horse*. And this is not to be applyed only to a *horse* newly taken from grasse, but to any other *horse* that hath taken a cold, or to any ketty, foule, foggy, or purfive *horse* whatsoever. * * * This may seeme strange here amongst us, but let any man make tryall, and he shall finde it to be most admirable.

SECT. 2. V.

Hippoph. **VV** *What is to be given to a Horse that hath a violent Cough?*

Hippof. If this great and very violent *Cough* proceed from a cold (as commonly all *Coughs* doe) then give him first *Wheat bran* prepared, as sundry times before is prescribed you, and take bloud from the neck vein, then with his *Oates* give him this powder following,
viz.

Take

Take of Comin, Fenugrick, Sileris-Montani, *alias Violent*
 Sifileos, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linseed, of each *Cough.*
 two ounces, Quick-Brimstone fixe ounces, make all
 these into fine powder, and of this powder give him
 every night with his Oates one spoonfull. But be-
 cause this powder disperfeth the corrupt, grosse, and
 phlegmatick humours which are predominant in the
 body of the *horse*, which doe occasion the said violent
 Cough, so soone as you shall perceiue that with this
 powder he hath purged sufficiently, use it then no
 longer, but faile not to continue his white water, but
 before you give him his water, take a sticke about the
 bignesse of your thumb at least, and well-nigh a foot
 long, and wrap a fine rag about it foure or five times
 steeped before hand in oile de Bay, and so put it into
 his mouth, like as you would do a Snaffle, and with
 straps made fast to the ends of the sticke, fastned then
 over his Poll, like as Smiths use to doe when they
 burne *horses* for the Lampas, and let him drinke with
 it in his mouth, that done, let him stand with it in his
 mouth one houre after at the least, to the end he may
 lick and suck up the said oile upon the rag or cloth,
 and when you do give him his Oates, mix them with
 this powder following *viz.*

Take of Fennell-seeds, foure ounces, of Fenugrick
 two ounces, of Cardamom one ounce, beat all toge-
 ther but grossly, otherwise he will blow it away as he
 eateth his Oates, and keep him warme as before is ad-
 vised you. * *. This is very good, for I have often
 used it.

SECT. 3. V.

Hippoph. **F**Or what causes doe you take up Veines?

Hippof. As touching taking up of *veines*, you shall understand, that it is a thing in many cases so much behoofefull, as that many times the most exquisite Ferrier living, shall not be able to perfect this cure but by that way and means, for unlesse such *veines* be either taken up, or some waies stopped, which are noxious to the cure, by feeding the malady with its peccant humours, the Ferrier can never work by true Art. Again, *veines* well taken up doe prevent many maladies whereunto many *Horses* are much more propense then others are. And lastly, the taking up of *veines* cureth some diseases, which could otherwise never be cured. For the taking up of the *thigh-veines*, sendeth away Spavens, Splents, Curbs, Kibed-heeles, Swelled-legs, Scratches, Malenders, Faricion in the legges, and the like sorances; besides it easeth all pains, aches, strains, stiffnesse in limbs, &c. Take up the *shackle-veines*, and it preventeth the Quitter-bone, Ring-bone, swellings in the lower-joynts, foundrings, &c. Wherefore forasmuch as ignorant people, whatsoever opinion they may have of their superabundant skill, yet are they very much to seek in that they doe so much exclaime against taking up of *veins*, absurdly affirming it to be a great means of laming of *horses*: but let them not mistake themselves, for assuredly it is the best and only remedy against these and many more maladies, and when they shall have made trial, they will not be of so prejudicate opinions.

Veines to take up.

CHAP.



CHAP. XXI.

SECT. I. W.

Hippophilus.



What good thing have you wherewith to preserve the Wind of a Horse?

Hippof. Sir, for this infirmity I make a Cataplasme, which is this.

Take Wheat-flowre foure pound, *Winde to preserve.*
 Elecampane and Gentian, of each one
 ounce, Anniseeds, Fenugrick, Comin, Brimstone, and
 Licoris, of each halfe a pound, let all these be made
 into very fine Powder and searced, then put unto
 it of common English Honey halfe a pound, and so
 much white Wine as will make all these into a Cata-
 plasme; boyle all these sufficiently, till it be so thicke
 that you may make it into Pils, and give your *Horse*
 of them three or foure at a time for six or eight mor-
 nings together. Use this often, for it will conserve a
horse in health, and keepeth him sound of his body,
 winde, and courage. * * This is most excellent. But if
 you doe perceive a taint in his winde, then

Take a close earthen Pot or Pipkin, and put there-
 into of the strongest white Wine-vinegar three pints,
 and foure new laid Egges unbroken, and foure heads
 of Garlick cleane pilled and bruised, then cover the

Pot very close, and bury it in a Mixen or Dung-hill twelve houres, then take it up, and take forth the Egges, but break them not; then strain the Vinegar and Garlick through a fine linnen cloth, putting unto it the liquor of Life-honey foure ounces, and of brown Sugar-Candy, Anniseeds, and Licoris, all made into very fine Powder, of each two ounces, and your horse having fasted all night till morning, give him one of the steeped Egges, and then one hornfull of this liquor or drinke, and then another Egge, and after that another hornfull, and so a third Egge, and then an hornfull, and lastly a fourth Egge, and so the residue of the liquor, remembring to give him into either nosethrill halfe a hornfull of his drinke, and it must be administred bloud-warm; then set him upon the Trench, cloath, stop, and litter him warm, and let him stand so foure houres, then unbit him, and if it be in Winter time give him sweet Wheat straw, but no Hay; and if it be in Summer give him Grasse, greene Corne, or the leaves of Sallowes, and for nine daies give him either sweet Mashs, or white water, putting therein some Sallet-oyle, and be you assured he will doe well again. * * This is also very good. Another.

Take a Hedge-hog alive, and bake him in the Oven in an earthen pot, close stopped untill he doe become so dry as that you may make him into Powder: give him also of this Powder one spoonfull in a quart of good Ale every other day, and this will infinitely help and preserve his wind. * * This is also speciall good.

SECT.

SECT. 2. W.

Hippoph. *Is there such a disease which is called the Wilde-Fire?*

Hippof. Yea Sir, there is, and it is a disease most dangerous and very difficult to cure, but by a Receipt of a powder which once I obtained of a skilfull Chirurgeon, which said powder is not fit to be applyed to any living creature, but to a horse onely, it is so terrible. And thus it is to be made, viz.

Take of living Toads foure, the greatest and blackest can be found, living Moles or Ants three, and of old Shoo-soles sixe, and heads of Garlick unpilled, and with their beards or roots remaining upon them forty, then take of the leanest and saltest Martlemas beefe three pounds, cut it into thin and small pieces and slices, such Martlemas beefe I meane which hath longest hangd in the smoake: take also of Oates eight pints, and of old woollen-rags the courser the better two pounds; take also of Swallowes-dung a good quantity, and foure or five living Swallowes, put all these things into an Earthen-pot new, and well nayled, and let it be big enough to be able to hold all the Ingredients, and put also all those living creatures among them alive, and then make a Cake of Clay, and therewith lute up the Pot so close, as that neither smoake nor ayre can either get in or out; having so done carry your Pot into some Orchard or other Close, or Back-side, from Houfing or Straw, and there place it, and so make a great fire both round about it, and upon it, and so keep the fire unto the Pot, till

till it be as red-hot as the very fiery-coles themselves, and let the fire continue so great after the pot is red-hot by the space of halfe an houre at the least: then let the fire remaine untouched untill it be all consumed to ashes, and so goe forth of it selfe, without either quenching the same, or taking away any of the fire about it, and so let it stand till it be through cold, which will hardly be done the same day, so when the Pot is through cold, take it from the place, and opening it, take forth the stuffe, and put it into some Trough or great Morter made for the purpose, which must stand in some out or open place where no winde can come, the Trough or Morter being covered with a cloth, that the powder may not flye away, there pound and stamp these things together into fine powder, and in the stamping, adde thereunto of unslacked-Lime one pound. Let him that stampeth it be close muffled, and his eyes covered with a glasse-case made for the purpose for feare of hurting them; and when it is throughly powdred, searse the powder through a course Haire-cloth, and so keepe the very finest of the powder for your use, in some cleane glasse or gally-pot. This powder killeth all *Wilde-fires* whatsoever, and all running Sores and Vicers, provided it be applyed to fleshy places, and not to places where *veines* or *sinewes* be, for that it will burne them in sunder. * *. This I have made sundry times, and often used it, and to cure and dry up old sores and Vicers (this powder being discreetly used and rightly applyed) a better thing then this truly I know not, especially if the cure be either desperate or dangerous.

SECT. 3. W.

Hippoph. **V**V *What good Plaiſter have you to lay upon a Wound, whereby to keep in the Taint or Salve?*

Hippof. Take Pitch, Roſin, Maſticke, Turpentine, Hogge-greaſe, of each ſo much as will ſuffice, melt all theſe together, and ſo keepe it: and when you would uſe it, ſpread what will ſerve upon a plaiſter of Leather, and ſo cover the wound therewith. * * *. This ſalve doth infinitely comfort a wound greene or old, be the ſame Fiſtula or otherwiſe. Very good. Wounds.

SECT. 4. W.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you take away a Wen, or other excretion ariſing in the Fleſh?

Hippof. A *Wenne* is a hard riſing out of the fleſh, which commeth ſometimes by bad-humours, but moſt commonly by ſome Hurt, Stroke, Bruiſe, Blow, or with a ſtone throwne at that place, it is outwardly fleſhy, but towards the roote it is matterative, you neede no ſignes whereby to know it, for it will betray it ſelfe by its ſwelling, The cure is.

If you cannot come to tye a double threed about it whereby to eate it off, as I have formerly ſhewed you in the cure of a *Spongy-Wart*: then with your Inciſion knife cut it a croſſe into foure equall parts or quarters to the very bottome, but beware you touch not either *veines* or *ſinewes*, then with Mercury eate away the foure quarters, or elſe burne them off with your hot Wen or excretion.

hot-iron; then heale the place with your healing salve. * *. This is very good.

SECT. 5. W.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to take away Wind-galls? Hippof. Wind galls are terrible Sorances, which doe breed in the legges of a Horse, as well on the outside as on the inside, a little above the Fetlocke joynt, and by their swelling are plainly discovered, and made visible to the Eye, for they be bladders, wherein lyeth a Jelly, which being let forth is thicke, and of the colour of the yolke of an Egge, whereof some will be bigger, and some lesser. It commeth most commonly to Horses in the Summer-time, by reason they are ridden upon hard ground, and the Horse being over-heat by too hard riding, his grease falleth downe into his legges, and setleth there, and by that meanes breedeth this Malady, we call Wind-galls, and they will be so painefull unto him, as to cause him many times to halt. The signes to know them are by the swellings in that place before named, which be most easie to be seen and felt. The cure is either to strike with your Fleame or to open them with your Incision-knife, and to let and crush out all the congealed stuffe which is therein, opening the place no further then through the skin, and you must be carefull of the sinew, which lyeth close to that place: then.

Wind galls. Take the white of an Egge, and Oyle-de Bay so much as will suffice, incorporate them together, and apply it with Hurds, Plaisterwise, and in three or foure dayes thus dressing it, he will be cured. * *.

Thus

Thus have I cured many *Horses*. Another. After you have let forth the Jelly.

Take Pitch, Rosin, and Masticke, of each like much, boyle or but melt them together, and as it cooleth, make it up into rowles bigger or lesser at your pleasure, and being thorough cold, apply it with a hot iron to the orifice, and so round about the place of the sorance on either side of the legge, and so soon as you have layed on this charge, and before it can be cold, clap on Flocks, and this will dry up the Wind-galls, and heale them. * *. This is speciall good. But during not onely these two cures, but all other for this malady, you must not suffer your *horse* to come into any Well by any meanes. Another. First shave away the hayre as you must doe in all these kinde of cures, then open the sorance as before is taught you, and crush forth the jelly and filth, then.

Take Tacha-Mahacha, Masticke, Parrosin, of each to the quantity of a halle nut, and of Stone-Pitch to the quantity of a Wall-nut, with a little Brimstone powdred, melt all these together, and when it is molten, put in so much Turpentine as a Wall-nut, and so stirre them together, and when it is cold, make a plaister thereof upon leather, and apply it warme to the place upon the out-side onely upon the orifice, which ought evermore to be made on the out-side, then put on the plaister it selfe, and round about it with the same Salve, and clap Flocks upon it, and so let him rest in the Stable, and by keeping him from wet till he be whole, and let the plaister remaine on untill it shall fall away of it self. * *. This is a most excellent cure, and I have often made good use thereof. Another.

Q q q q

Take

Take the oyle of Vineger, and dip your thumbe therein, and rub the forance therewith every day till the haire doe fall off, which will cause the Wind galls to breake, run, and bleed, then heale and cure the Wind-galls well and soundly. * *. This is as good as the former. Another. Wash and shave as formerly is shewed you, then give fire to the place, that done, open the Wind-galls just in the middle line or stroke, halfe an inch at least, and so crush forth the jelly with your thumb, then

Take Pitch, Rosin, and Mastick, of each like much, and therewith charge the place as before is taught you. This is very good. Another. First wash and shave, and open the place with your fleame, &c. then take of oyle de Bay, and of Turpentine, of each one spoonfull, Verdigrease in fine powder, one penny worth, the white of an Egge, and of red Leade two ounces in powder, boyle all these to a Salve, and administer it to the place plaister-wise. * *. This is one of the best cures for Wind-galls that I doe know.

SECT. .6 W.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good for a Horse that is wrung or hurt in the Withers?

Hippof. This is a thing that I have handled before, yet I will give you a few more receipts. Having travelled him, and comming home, or to your Inne, when you take off the saddle, and that you doe finde the horse to be wrung in the withers, and his backe or withers thereby to be swelled, immediately clap on the Saddle againe, and lay upon the swolne place some
wet

wet litter, and so let the Saddle abide on againe; then cut up a thin Turfe of grasse and earth together, that done, put the Turfe upon the fire, and let it there remaine till it becommeth red hot, and being well burned, take it from the fire, and moisten the grassy-side very well with white Wine Vineger, then take off the wet litter, and lay the Turfe very hot with the grassy-side next to the place, and so put on the Saddle againe, and let it so remaine for all night, and this presently helpeth any swellings in the *withers*, or any other part of the backe, as also any swellings by Spurgalls or Navell-galls. * * This is very good. Another. If the skin be broken or ulcerated, then

*Withers
wrung.*

Take sweet Butter, Bay-salt, and powder of Frankincense, of each as much as will suffice, boile all these upon the fire, and with a clowt fastened to the end of a sticke, even as it commeth boyling from the fire, scald it two or three times, but if it be full of corruption, then make incision on both sides from beneath, that the matterative stuffe may the more easily void away downwards, and after use none other thing wherewith to heale it up, but onely your usuall powder of Lime and Honey, which will heale that, or dry other such like hurts. * * This is most excellent, I have often experimented the same. Another. But if it be a wrinkle either in the shoulder, or in any other joynt or member, then

Take of white Wine one pinte, halfe a porringer full of Wheate flower, of common Honey one pinte, of Syzes three ounces, boyle all these together to an Vnguent, and annoynt the places grieved therewith. And this also is very soveraigne for Cones, Cracks,

and Chops in the heeles of the *horſe*. * * *. This I often using have found it to be very good. Another.

Take three great Onyons, picke forth the cores, making a concavity or hollowneſſe in them, then fill them up with the powder of Frankincenſe, then wrap them up in three or foure handfulls of Hurds or Tow, then wet the Hurds, and ſo cover and heale them up in the hot embers, and lay upon the top of the embers a good Shovell-full of hot burning coales, and ſo let it remaine untill the Onions be thoroughly roſted, then take them forth, and ſeparate the Hurds and burned part from the other, and the ſoft and pappy-part you ſhall apply to the ſorance very hot, and let it remaine three dayes before it be removed, and doe thus ſo oft as need ſhall require, untill it be through whole; but unleſſe the hurt or bruiſe be very great, it will be cured at firſt dreſſing. * * *. This is very good. Another. But if the place grieved be broken,

Take then of the oyle of Worms, of Turpentine, and common Honey, of each two ounces, incorporate all theſe together very well till you have brought them to be one body, and either by Taint or Plaifter dreſſe the ſorance therewith, and it will heale it up ſound. * * *. And this alſo is very good. Another. If your Horſe hath taken a wrench in the ſhoulder, or in the hippe, knee, or hoofe; then firſt ſwin him, then after for thirteene or fourteene dayes together, annoynt the member grieved all over, and a good way about with this unguent.

Take of the oyle de Bay, of Nervall, or Dialthea, of tryed Hogs greaſe, of each two ounces, melt all theſe together, and ſtirre them well till they be well incor-

incorporated, and herewith annoynt him against the haire, with a hot bar of iron to be holden before you as you annoynt him, and after let him be rowelled with a *French Rowell*, and let a Patten-shooc be put upon the contrary foot, and let him be kept in the house, and the Rowell turned daily, and the corruption put forth, and then let him be either gently ridden or walked every day halfe an houre, and let the Rowell remaine in the Horse fourteene dayes at the least, then take it out, and heale up the orifice with your greene Oyntment, and so soone as he is whole, with your cauterizing-iron draw crosse lines eight or nine inches long over against the joynt that was pained, so as the rowelled place may be in the middle, but yet burne him no deeper then that the skin may looke yellow, and then charge all that place with this charge.

Take Pitch one pound, Rosin halfe a pound, and Tarre halfe a pint, melt these together, and whilst it is warme, charge the place therewith, and clap Flocks upon the charge, and then if the season of the yeare will serve, let him be turned to grasse, and so let him run three moneths at the least. * * *. This is very good.

SECT. 7. W.

Hippoph. **VV** *hat is good to cure wormes of what sort soever in a Horse ?*


Hippof. Of this malady I have treated sufficiently before in the *sect.* of Bots, where I have given you many good receipts. Neverthelesse I will give you one

or

or two more for wormes onely, and so leave you to practise.

Take the entrails of a great Chick, and with the powder of Brimstone and Bay-Salt rowled in the said entrails, give it him downe his throat, and cause him to swallow them so warme as they come out of the belly of the Chicken, but cast away the Gizard, give him this three mornings together, and every time ride or walke him till he dungeth, and keep him warme, and give him white water, and at three dayes end, give him Rice boyled in water, and after dried in the Sun, and give him also to eate the leaves of Sallows, and it will cause him to voyd the Worms with his ordure, but if you shall rake him first, it will be the better. * * This is very good. Another.

Take the tender tops of Broome and Saven, of each halfe a handfull, chop them very small, and worke them into Pils with sweet Butter, and having kept your Horse fasting over night, give him them in the morning, to wit, three of those Pils at a time, and then set him upon the Trench for two or three houres after, and then give him meat, but no drinke at all till night by any meanes, and then let him have warme, but no white water. * *. This I have often experienced, and doe know it to be a most excellent receipt.



CHAP. XXII.

SECT. I. T.

Hippophilus.



What is your best cure for the Yellowes?

Hippof. This disease of the *Yellowes* in a Horse is the very same that Physicians doe call the Jaundise in a man; and as there be two sorts of Jaundise in a man,

so also are there the like in a Horse, *viz.* the Yellow and the Blacke, the yellow being moyst, the blacke dry; the yellow proceeding from the over-flowing of the gall, occasioned of choler, and the blacke coming from the over-working of the Spleen, by means of over-much melancholy, both bad infirmities, but the blacke worst, more dangerous and most mortall, the yellow is more easily discovered by reason of its colour, for it coloureth the whites of the eyes, the tongue, the lips, and the inward parts of the nostrils, which the blacke Jaundise doth not apparantly, albeit by due and strict observation, you may come to know when your Horse hath a blacke Jaundise, for then you shall perceiv the whites of his eyes, lips, tongue, and mouth to be of a thicke and duskish colour, and not so cleere and sanguine as before when
he

he was not visited with any such infirmity, both which are so mortall (especially the latter) as that if very great care be not taken whereby to pry into its symptomes, the Horse may fall downe upon a sudden (as I have often scene and known) even as he travel- leth, and dye, or else he appearing to be sound and healthy, and to eat his meat like as he was accusto- med over night when you left him, comming againe unto him in the morning, you may finde him dead, stiffe, and cold. And the origin of this malady com- meth principally of unkindly and unnaturall heats given him by most violent and intemperate riding, whereby the Liver becommeth inflamed; the Liver, the Bloud, Gall, and the Spleen, which causeth chol- ler to have soveraignty and dominion over the other humours, and so engendreth this perilous disease, which seldome bringeth a lingring or languishing death, but that which endeth him suddenly, and therefore it is most requisite that the greater eye and care be had unto it. The best symptomes how to know it is thus. Your Horse will be dry in his body, mouth, and nostrils, being marvellous hot through the abundance of choller that reigneth in him, and he will be very gaunt in his belly towards the flanks, he will be also very faint, and not only sweat upon every the least motion, but also as he standeth in the Stable: his eyes, the insides of his lips, mouth, and tongue, will be yellow as Saffron, and he will seldome lye downe, and being laid, he will sometimes groane. The cure. First let him bloud in the necke and mouth, and let him bleed well, then give him this drinke.

Take of Turmericke and long Pepper, of each one penny-

pennyworth, Anniseeds and Licoris in fine powder and searced, of each halfe a spoonfull, Selendine, the leaves and roots one handfull, chop, stamp, and straine the Selendine, and so put all these together into strong Ale one quart, warme this upon the fire, and in the warming adde unto it of London Treacle one ounce, and of sweet Butter the quantity of an Egge, and give it him bloud warme, and after keepe him warme, and give him white water, and he will doe well. * *. This is very good. Another. First bloody him as before, and then

Take Turmericke, Myrrah, Ivory or Harts-horne, of each halfe an ounce, Saffron one penny worth, make all these into fine powder, and searce them, and put unto it of the juyce of Selendine a good quantity, put all these into Muscadine one pinte, Sack or Ale, and let it boyle upon the fire a walme or two, then put unto it of sweet Butter as much as will suffice, and of London Treacle one ounce, and so give it him bloud warme, but let him first be raked. This is very good. Another. First bloody him as before, then

Take of white wine one quart, of Saffron two drams, and of Turmericke halfe an ounce, and a good quantity of the juyce of Selendine; give him this bloud warme, and keep him warme, and give him white water. * *. This is very good. Another. First let him bloud, as you are prescribed before. Then

Take of sweet Wine one pint, of strong Ale and Beere one quart and put unto it of the luyce of Salendine six spoonfuls, and of the juyce of Rue two spoonfuls, and let all these boyle upon the fire a little,

R r r

then

then strain into it of English Saffron halfe an ounce, and put into it of Life-honey three ounces, and so give it him bloud-warm, then leap his backe, and so ride or else walk him a foot pace a quarter of an hour, then set him up warm, letting him to fast three hours after, and after give him meat, and a sweet Mash, or white Water.* * This is very good. Another. Bloudy him as before. Then

Take of the best Life-honey halfe a pound, of Saffron made into fine Powder, and of the powder of Fenugrick, of each so much as will suffice, incorporate these with your Honey to a stiffe paste, and so make thereof three Pills, and dipping them into Sallet oyle give them to your horse, which after he hath taken ride or walk him gently an houre, then set him up warm, and order him as before.* * This is a particular good Pill. Another. First let him bloud as before; Then take of white Wine one quart, or Ale to the same quantity, and put therein of Saffron one ounce, and Turmerick one ounce, both made into fine Powder, with the juyce of Salendine so much as will suffice, and give him this bloud-warm, and order him as before.* * This also is very good.

SECT. 2. 2.

Hippoph. **V V** *What cure have you for the mattering of the Yard?*

Hippof. This disease commeth commonly in Covering-time, by overmuch spending upon Mares, for that the heat of the Mares, and the Horses own heate and Coity, doth burne the Horse, giving him the running

ning of the reines, as we truly term it. And the signes to know it, is, you shall perceive the end of the *Yard* to be swelled, and when he pisses, you may observe him to doe it with much paine, and you may also see at other times the *Yard* to drop with yellow matter. The cure. Give him first a Purge prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap. 16. sect. 14. let. P.* and it is the first Purgation which will ease his pain in pissing; then the next day,

Take Roch-Allum one ounce, and white Wine one Pint, boyle them till the Allum be dissolved, then bloud-warm inject this Lotion with a Syringe, putting it up into his *Yard* so farre as may be, foure or five times a day till it be well. * * * This is a perfect cure; nor shall you need any other.

FINIS.

R III 2

A



A Table of the Contents.

The First Booke.

The Contents of all the Chapters contained
in the first Booke.

| | |
|---|-----------------|
| T He Introduction | Chap. 1. Page 1 |
| Of the best manner of breeding | 2,6 |
| How to make and order your Stable | 3,18 |
| Of the marks, colours, and shapes of Horses | 4,27 |
| Of the Office of the Groome and Rider | 5,43 |

The Second Booke.

The Contents of all the Chapters contained
in the second Booke.

| | |
|---|----------------|
| O F what points consisteth the Office of the Ferrrier, handled Dialogue-wise: as also a formall examine of the Ferrier | chap. 1. p. 59 |
| Of the causes of sicknesse in generall, and the causes of health and long life | 2.78 |
| Of such things which are of necessity to be known by every expert Ferrier before he doe adventure to administer | 3.97 |
| The manner of handling the particular cures | 4.113 |
| Chap. 4. A. | |
| A Copum and its vertues | 117 |
| Arman 1. | 118 |
| | Arman 2. |

The Table,

| | |
|---|-----|
| <i>Arman 2.</i> | 119 |
| <i>Ach in the head</i> | 123 |
| <i>Ægyptiacum 1. Ægyptiacum 2.</i> | 127 |
| <i>Accloy</i> | 128 |
| <i>All diseases a Cataplasme 1.</i> | 129 |
| <i>All diseases a Cataplasme 2.</i> | 130 |
| <i>All diseases. 3.</i> | 131 |
| <i>S. Antonies fire</i> | 133 |
| <i>Anticor</i> | 135 |
| <i>Attaint upper</i> | 136 |
| <i>Attaint upper or backe sinew spraine</i> | 138 |
| <i>Attaint Neather</i> | 141 |
| <i>Avises</i> | 142 |
| <i>Arraistes or Rat-Tailes</i> | 145 |
| <i>Ayering</i> | 147 |

Chap. 5. B.

| | |
|---|-----|
| B <i>ack swelled</i> | 146 |
| <i>Barbs</i> | 148 |
| <i>Bath for Humours to dry them up</i> | 149 |
| <i>Bath for stiffe legges</i> | 150 |
| <i>Bath 1. Bath 2.</i> | 151 |
| <i>Bath 3. Bath 4.</i> | 152 |
| <i>Belly gaunt</i> | 153 |
| <i>Belly paine</i> | 154 |
| <i>Bit wherewith the tongue is hurt</i> | 155 |
| <i>Bleeding to stanch</i> | 156 |
| <i>Blindnesse</i> | 157 |
| <i>Biting of a mad Dogge</i> | 159 |
| <i>Bloud-Spaven</i> | 161 |
| <i>Bath for a bloud-Spaven.</i> | 162 |
| <i>Bone-Spaven</i> | 164 |
| <i>Bloud-shotten eyes</i> | 167 |

Bloud

The Table.

| | |
|---|---------|
| Bloud-shotten eyes: a charge | 168 |
| Bloud-running itch | 170 |
| Blowing and Pursevenesse | 171 |
| Bots, &c. | 174 |
| Bots 1. | 175 |
| Botts | 177 |
| Brittle hoofe | 180 |
| Bruised heeles and feet | 182 |
| Burning with shot | ibid. |
| Bunches, knots, &c. | 184 |
| Bran prepared - 320 | 185 |
| Black drink for the Glanders | 234 |
| Chap. 6. C. | |
| C ast in a Halter | 188 |
| Canker | 189 |
| Casting the hoofe | 192 |
| Cordiall powder | 119 |
| Cautery actuall | 194 |
| Cautery potentiall | 196 |
| Corasive 1. | ibid. |
| Causstick | 197 |
| Charge for surbating | 198 |
| Cleanse a Horse | 199 |
| Clifts and cracks in the heeles | 200 |
| Clifters | 202 |
| Clister 1. | 207 |
| Clister laxative 2. | 208 |
| Clister restrigent 3. | 209 |
| Clister for a fat Horse 4. | ibid. |
| Clister for melancholy 5. | 210 |
| Clister in case of desperate sicknesse 6. | ibid. |
| Clister for the Pestilence 7. | ibid. |
| | Clister |

The Table.

| | |
|---|-------|
| Clyster lenitive 8. | 211 |
| Clyster for the Collicke 9. | ibid. |
| Cloyed | 212 |
| Cods swelled | ibid. |
| Cods swelled, a charge | 214 |
| Collicke | ibid. |
| Collicke and stone | 216 |
| Colt-Ewill | 217 |
| Cold | 218 |
| Consumption | 240 |
| Consumption of the flesh | 242 |
| Convulsion | 244 |
| Costiveness or belly-bound | 249 |
| Crown-scab | 250 |
| Curb | 251 |
| Cold or running at the nose | 275 |
| Coperas water | 379 |
| Charge | 543 |
| Corrupt blood | 585 |
| Chap. 7. D. | |
| D angerous sicknesse, how it commeth | 253 |
| D angerous sicknesse, how to know | 254 |
| D angerous sicknesse, how to prevent | 258 |
| D angerous sicknesse, how to cure | 259 |
| Diapente | 260 |
| Diatefferon | 261 |
| Desperate and dangerous sicknesse | 262 |
| Dissolve tumors | 266 |
| Desperate sicknesse | 267 |
| Drooping | 270 |
| Dropse | 273 |
| Dead flesh | 267 |
| | Deepe |

The Table.

| | |
|---|-------|
| Deepe wounds | 268 |
| Desperate straine | 269 |
| Dissolve grease | 270 |
| Disease of the Liver | 273 |
| Draw his yard | 276 |
| Draw a thorne | 277 |
| Drinke to preserve lungs | 278 |
| Diseases to prevent | 281 |
| Drinke comfortable | 282 |
| Dislocated joynt | ibid. |
| Disease of tranchaisons, or the chollicke | 284 |
| Dry up soares | 285 |

Chap. 8. E.

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| E Ate a taint | 288 |
| Eate a feather | 289 |
| Eate a Spider | 290 |
| Eye a stroke | 290 |
| Eye Filme, Pin and Web Dragons | 292 |
| Eye a Canker | 293 |
| Eye a charge | 295 |
| Electuarium Theriacum | 12 |
| Excretion to cure | 535 |
| Eye a Wart | 298 |
| Eye broken | 301 |
| Excretion | 302 |
| Eares impostumated | 303 |

Chap. 9. F.

| | |
|-------------------|---------|
| F Arcin | 306 |
| Farcin wet | 317 |
| Flanks | 319 |
| Fat Horse | 320 |
| Fat a leane Horse | 321 |
| | Falling |

The Table.

| | |
|---------------------------------|-------|
| Falling of the fundament | 322 |
| Feaver defined | 323 |
| Feaver how to know | 326 |
| Feaver ordinary | 327 |
| Feaver Heſtique | 331 |
| Feaver peſtilent | 332 |
| Flying worme or Tetter | 335 |
| Feet to mollifie | 337 |
| Figge in the foot | 338 |
| Fiftula | 340 |
| Fiftula water | 341 |
| Fetlock hurt | 344 |
| Froathy or weeping hoofe | 345 |
| Foundring in the feet | 346 |
| Foundred long | 348 |
| Foundred in the feet and body | ibid. |
| Faſſe quarter | 357 |
| Flankes or maldeſtanks | 363 |
| Flux | 364 |
| Foule and old ſores to mundifie | 365 |
| Forſaking meat | 368 |
| Erushrumming | 370 |
| Feltrick | 374 |
| Eye | 372 |
| Chap. 10. G. | |
| G alled back | 375 |
| G alled with the ſhackle | 376 |
| Gravelling | 378 |
| Green oyntment | 380 |
| Greafe molten | 381 |
| Glanders | 385 |
| Glanders a purging drink | 400 |
| | Chap. |

The Table.

Chap. 11. H.

| | |
|---|-------|
| H Ayre from the mayne and tayle falling away | 409 |
| Hayre to grow | 410 |
| Head-ache | ibid. |
| Heeles scabbed, Heeles kiked | 411 |
| Heele Mellet | 412 |
| Hide-bound | 414 |
| Honey-charge | 419 |
| Hoofe to grow | 420 |
| Hoofe weeping | 422 |
| Hoofe loose, Hoofe hurt | 423 |
| Hoofe bound | 424 |
| Hoofe bound a charge | 427 |
| Hoofe brittle, Hoofe straight, Hoofe loose | 428 |
| Hoofe trodden upon or hurt | 429 |
| Hoofe brittle to make tough | ibid. |
| Hoofe to grow | ibid. |
| Halter-cast | 430 |
| Hough-swelled | 431 |
| Humours to dry up | ibid. |
| Hurt shoulder | 432 |
| Hurts old to cure | ibid. |
| Honey | 122 |
| Horse-bread | 264 |
| Haw | 293 |

Chap. 12. I.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| I mperfections in the feet | 433 |
| Impostumation to ripen | 434 |
| Inward sicknesse | 435 |
| Inward sicknesse a suppository | 436 |
| Inflammations | 437 |
| Ioynt grieved | 438 |

The Table.

Increase the hoof 439

Chap. 12. L.

L Ampas 441
 Lax to stop *ibid.*
 Leane horse to make fat 442
 Legs swelled 443, 445
 Leprosie or Elephantick malady 447
 Lice 448
 Lime and Honey *ibid.*
 Loe-worme 450
 Lungs a disease 452
 Lint wherewith to heale ulcers or old sores 285
 Lunatick eyes 298
 Lameness to finde out, three waies 552

Chap. 13. M.

M Alender 454
 Mainge 457
 Mouth sore 466
 Mellet 467
 Mollifie humours 468
 Morfounded *ibid.*
 Melancholy 585

Chap. 14. N.

Nose running 470
 Navell galled 471
 Night-mare 472

Chap. 15. O.

Old sores 473
 Over-reach in the heele 474
 Oynment 540, 542
 Chap.

The Table.

Chap. 16. P.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| P Astern joynt strained | 478 |
| Pill for the Glanders | 479 |
| Pestilence | 493 |
| Preparative | 494 |
| Rafsons | 496 |
| Purfwenesse, a Pill | 497 |
| Pissing of bloud | 500 |
| Poll-evil | 503 |
| Powder for old sores | 505 |
| Purfwenesse or shortnesse of breath | 447 |
| Prickt | 508 |
| Perfume 1. Perfume 2. Perfume 3. | 519 |
| Purgation 1. | 523 |
| Purgation 2. Purgation 3. | 524 |
| Purgation 4. Purgation 5. | 525 |
| Purgation 6. | 526 |
| Putrefactive | 197 |
| Purgation destined | 203 |
| Pin and Web | 291 |
| Pearle or filme | 292 |
| Perfume | 460 |
| Powder | 540 |

Chap. 17. Q.

Q Wick scab
Quitter-bone

Chap. 18. R.

| | |
|--------------------|-------|
| R Ed water | 528 |
| Restrington charge | 529 |
| Ring-bone | 332 |
| Excretion to cure | 333 |
| Rot | 333 |
| | 535 |
| | 537 |
| | Rules |

The Table,

Rules to know where a Horse halteth either before or behinde

Chap. 18. S.

550

| | |
|--------------------------|----------|
| S Alve | 539, 541 |
| Shoulder wrench | 542 |
| Shoulder dislocated | 543 |
| Shoulder strained | 544 |
| Shoulder rowelled | 546 |
| Shoulder the skin broken | ibid. |
| Shoulder splat | 549, 556 |
| Shoulder-pight | ibid. |
| Scratches | 559 |
| Sit fast | 563 |
| Scabs and Scratches | 564 |
| Stale or dung | 565 |
| Sick in travell | 566 |
| Sudden sicknesse | 567 |
| Selender | 568 |
| Sick or surfeited | 569 |
| Sinew sprung | 570 |
| Sinew grieved | 571 |
| Sinew cut | ibid. |
| Sinew sprain | 572, 573 |
| Strain newly taken | ibid. |
| Strain old | 574 |
| Stinking breath | ibid. |
| Splent | 576 |
| Stumbling | 583 |
| Stiffe legges | ibid. |
| Stale or pisse | 584 |
| Staders | 586 |
| Swelled legges | 590 |
| | Swelled |

The Table.

| | |
|-------------------------------|-------|
| swelled coods | 592 |
| spongy wart | 593 |
| Surbated feet | 595 |
| stified | ibid. |
| Stone | 598 |
| String-halt | 599 |
| 1 Suppository. 2 Suppository. | 601 |
| 3 Suppository. 4 Suppository. | 602 |
| 5 Suppository. 6 Suppository. | ibid. |
| Sweating | 603 |
| Spirit of Tinne | 606 |

Chap. 19. T.

| | |
|---|-----|
| T ongue hurt | 604 |
| Taile an itch | 605 |
| Theriacum Unguentum | 606 |
| Tetter or Ring-worme | 607 |
| Tyring in travell | 608 |
| Trunchions | 175 |
| Two things to be observed in every cure | 114 |
| Three sorts of Vermin which doe ingender in the body of the Horse | 174 |

Chap. 20. V.

| | |
|-------------------|-----|
| V omiting | 611 |
| Violent cough | 613 |
| Vinegar | 122 |
| Ver volant | 334 |
| Veines to take up | 614 |

Chap. 21. W.

| | |
|---------------------------|-------|
| W inde to preserve | 615 |
| Wild-stre | 617 |
| Wounds | 619 |
| Wen or excretion | ibid. |
| Wind- | |

The Table.

| | |
|----------------------|-------|
| Wind-galles | 620 |
| Wit her-wrning | 623 |
| Wormes | 626 |
| White-water | 120 |
| Water | 540 |
| When in the knee | 551 |
| When in the shanke | ibid. |
| When in the pasterne | ibid. |
| ibid | |
| Y ellowes | 628 |
| Yard mattering | 631 |

Chap. 22. Y.

I N I S.

ck 1618